Introduction to Perturbative QCD

partons, factorization, resummation, and all that

Marco Stratmann

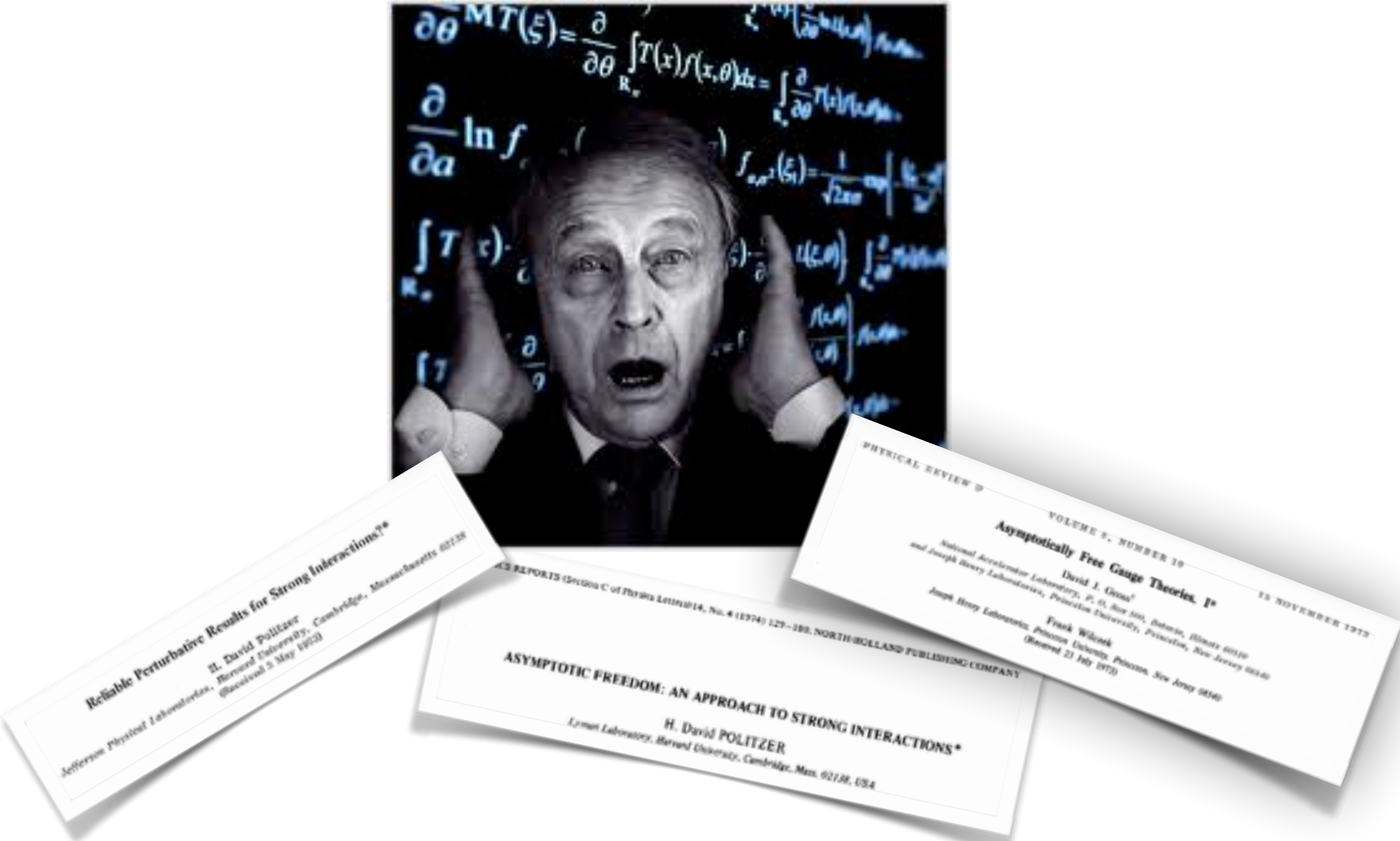
EBERHARD KARLS UNIVERSITÄT TÜBINGEN

marco.stratmann@uni-tuebingen.de

June 30th/ July 1st, 2014

disclaimer:

pQCD is about 40 years old – impossible to review in 6 hrs



Reliable Perturbative Results for Strong Interactions?*

H. David Politzer

Jefferson Physical Laboratories, Harvard University, Cambridge, Massachusetts 02138

(Received 5 May 1973)

PHYSICAL REVIEW D VOLUME 8, NUMBER 10 15 NOVEMBER 1973

Asymptotically Free Gauge Theories. I*

David J. Gross†

National Accelerator Laboratory, P. O. Box 500, Batavia, Illinois 60510 and Joseph Henry Laboratories, Princeton University, Princeton, New Jersey 08540

Frank Wilczek

Joseph Henry Laboratories, Princeton University, Princeton, New Jersey 08540

(Received 23 July 1973)

CS REPORTS (Section C of Physics Letters) 14, No. 4 (1974) 129–180. NORTH-HOLLAND PUBLISHING COMPANY

ASYMPTOTIC FREEDOM: AN APPROACH TO STRONG INTERACTIONS*

H. David POLITZER

Lyman Laboratory, Harvard University, Cambridge, Mass. 02138, USA

topics & questions to be addressed

we will mainly concentrate on a few basics
and their consequences for phenomenology

- What are the foundations of QCD?
  keywords: color; SU(3) gauge group; local gauge invariance; Feynman rules
- What are the general features of QCD?
  keywords: asymptotic freedom; infrared safety; origin of "singularities"
- How to relate QCD to experiment?
  keywords: partons; factorization; renormalization group eqs. / evolution
- How reliable is a theoretical QCD calculation?
  keywords: scale dependence; NLO; small-x; all-order resummations
- What is the status of some non-perturbative inputs
  keywords: global QCD analysis

throughout this will be blended with discussions of some recent results and
advanced topics relevant for LHC, RHIC, HERA, COMPASS, EIC, …

bibliography – a personal selection

textbooks:

- the "pink book" on QCD and Collider Physics by R.K. Ellis, W.J. Stirling, and B.R. Webber always a good reference
- R.D. Field, Applications of pQCD detailed examples
- Y.V. Kovchegov, E. Levin, QCD at High Energy focus on small x physics
- J. Collins, Foundations of pQCD focus on formal aspects of evolution

lecture notes & write-ups:

- D. Soper, Basics of QCD Perturbation Theory, hep-ph/9702203
- Collins, Soper, Sterman, Factorization of Hard Processes in QCD, hep-ph/0409313
- G. Salam, Elements of QCD for Hadron Colliders, arXiv:1011.5131
- Particle Data Group, Review of Particle Physics, pdg.lbl.gov

talks & lectures on the web:

e.g. by D. Soper; G. Salam; G. Zanderighi; J. Campbell; G. Sterman; …

- annual CTEQ summer school, tons of material on www.cteq.org
- annual CERN/FNAL Hadron Collider Physics School hcpss.web.cern.ch/hcpss

tentative outline of the lectures

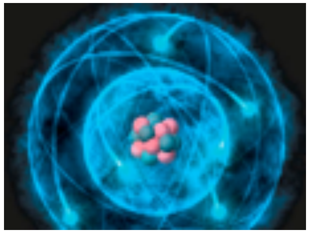
Part 1: the foundations

SU(3); color algebra; gauge invariance;
QCD Lagrangian; Feynman rules

Part 2: the QCD toolbox

asymptotic freedom; infrared safety;
the QCD final-state; jets; factorization

Part 3: inward bound: "femto spectroscopy"



QCD initial-state; DIS process; partons;
factorization; renormalization group; scales;
hadron-hadron collisions

Part 4: applications:

global analysis of PDFs; scales and theoretical
uncertainties; all-order resummations; ...

Part I

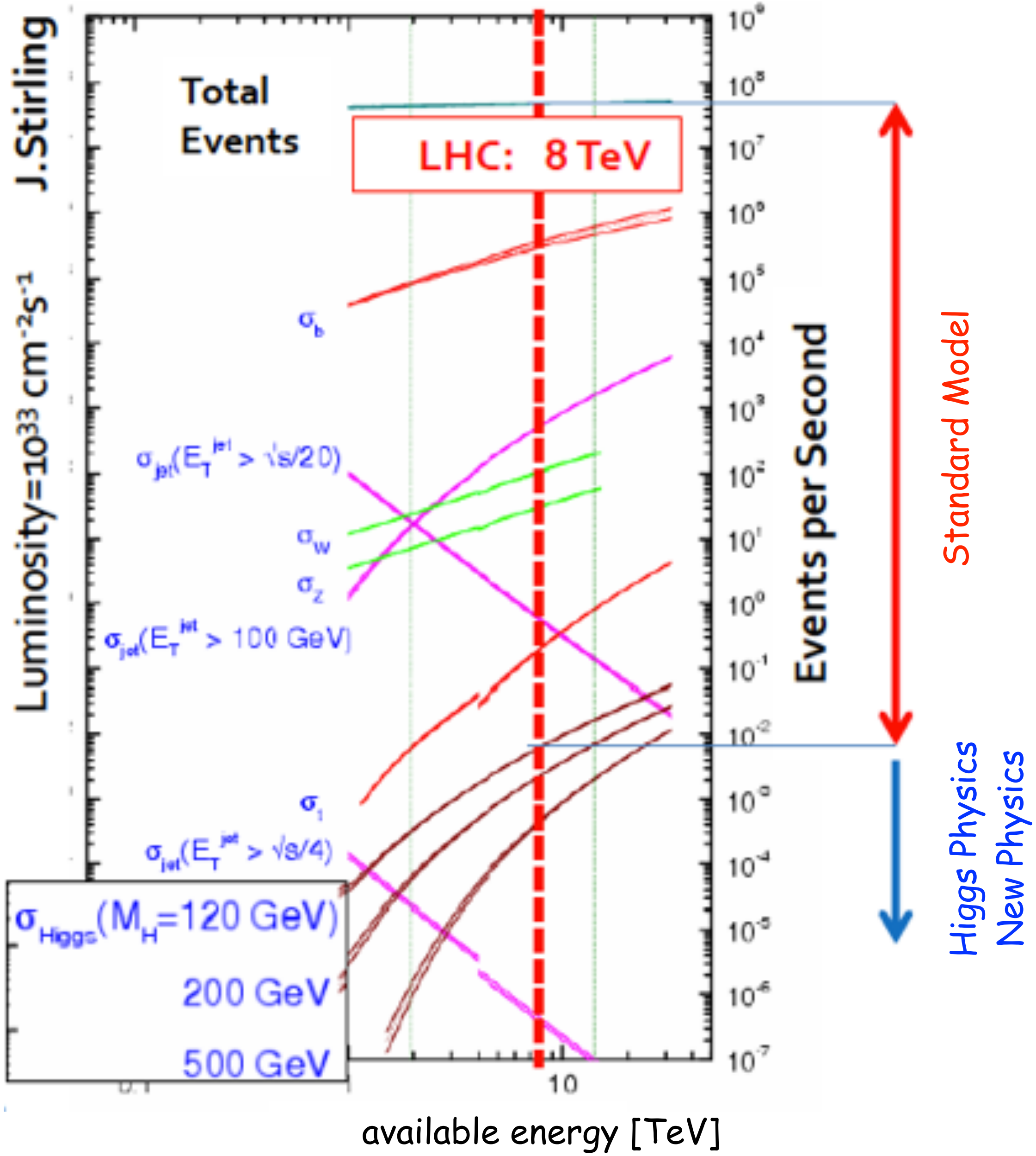
the QCD fundamentals

all about color

the concept of gauge invariance

shamelessly adapted
some material from
excellent QCD lectures by
G.Zanderighi & J.Campbell

QCD – why do we still care (or perhaps more than ever)



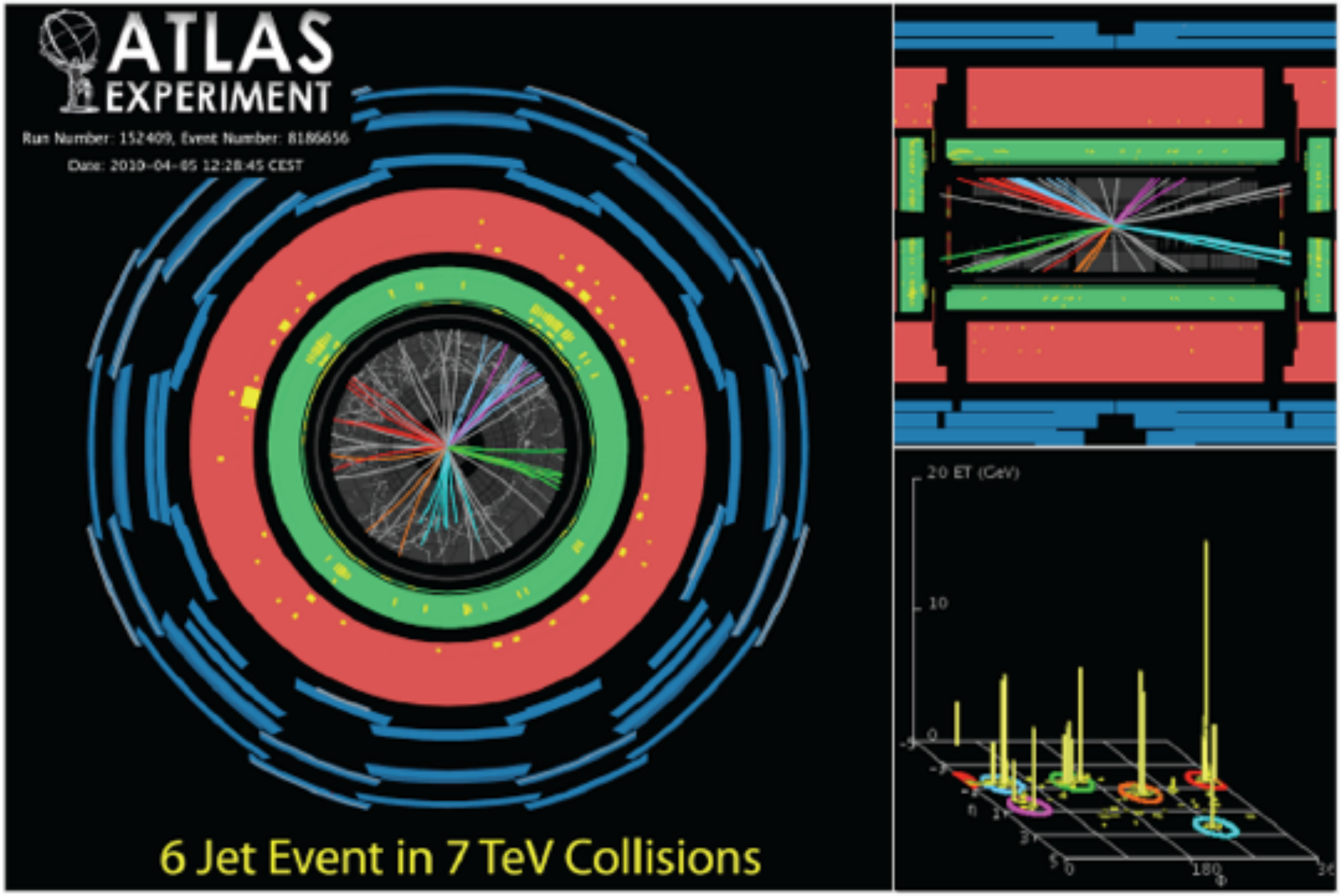
hadron colliders inevitably have to deal with QCD

studying the Higgs boson or discovering (perhaps) some New Physics requires a sophisticated quantitative understanding of QCD

P.W. Higgs, F. Englert (2013)

achieving that can be quite a challenge ...

$$\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{QCD}} = -\frac{1}{4} F^{A}_{\mu\nu} F^{\mu\nu}_{A} + \sum_{\mathrm{flavors}} \bar{q}_i \left(i \not{D} - m \right)_{ij} q_j$$



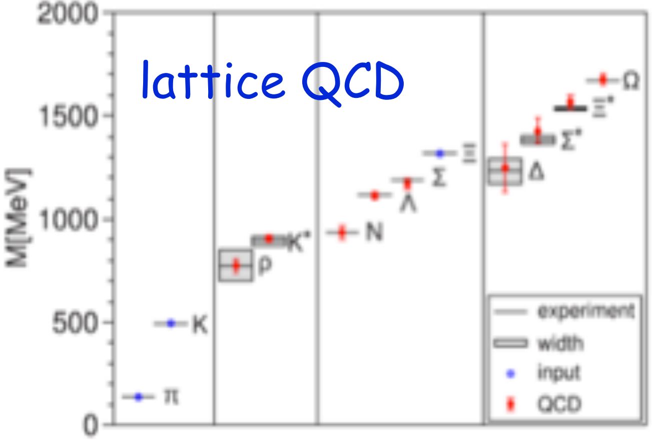
QCD – the theory of strong interactions

a simple QED-like theory, leading to extremely rich & complex phenomena

QCD – the theory of strong interactions

a simple QED-like theory, leading to extremely rich & complex phenomena

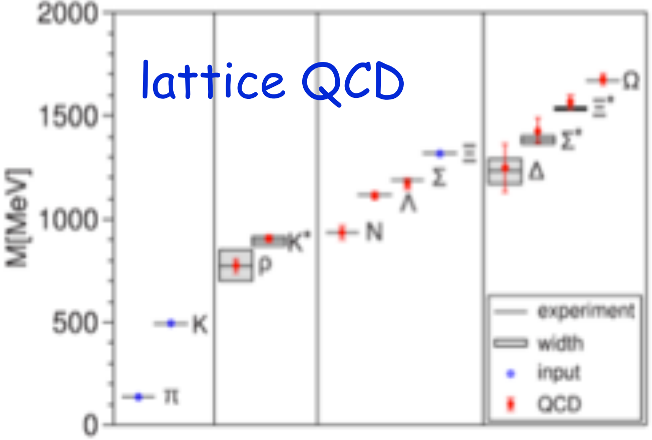
Durr et al., Science 322



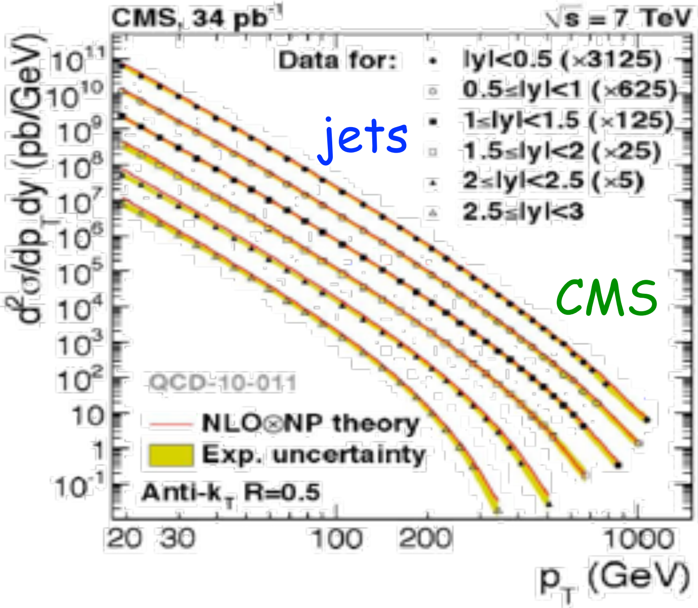
QCD – the theory of strong interactions

a simple QED-like theory, leading to extremely rich & complex phenomena

Durr et al., Science 322



lattice QCD



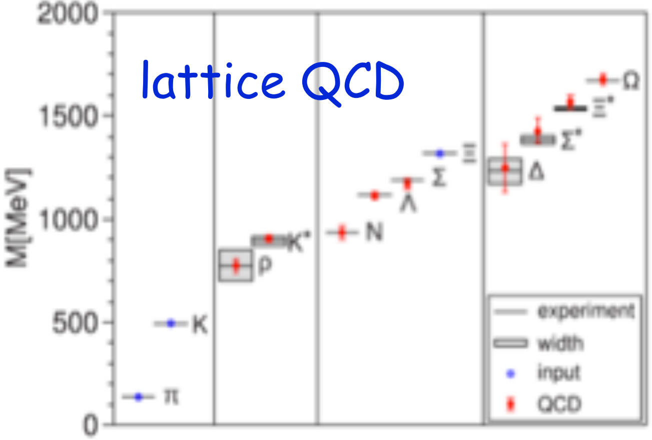
jets

CMS

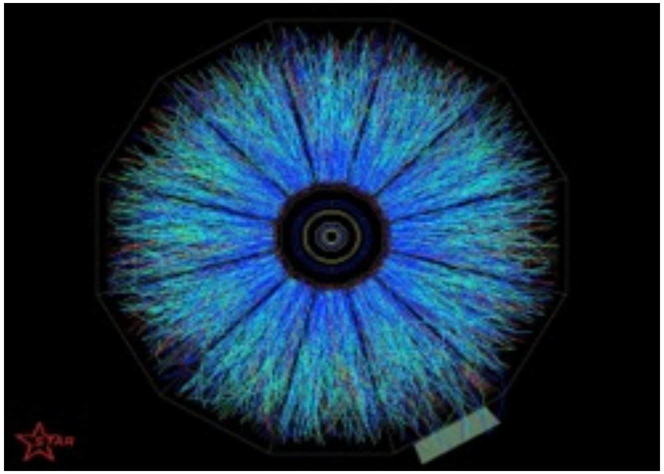
QCD – the theory of strong interactions

a simple QED-like theory, leading to extremely rich & complex phenomena

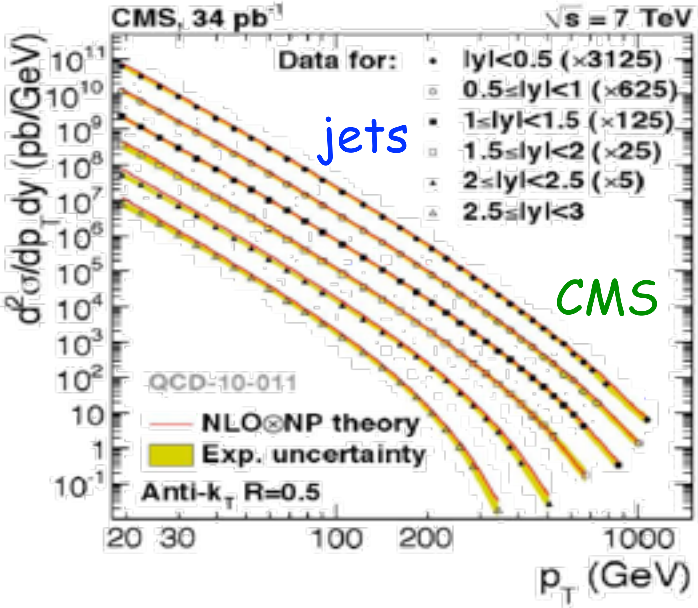
Durr et al., Science 322



lattice QCD



AuAu collision at STAR



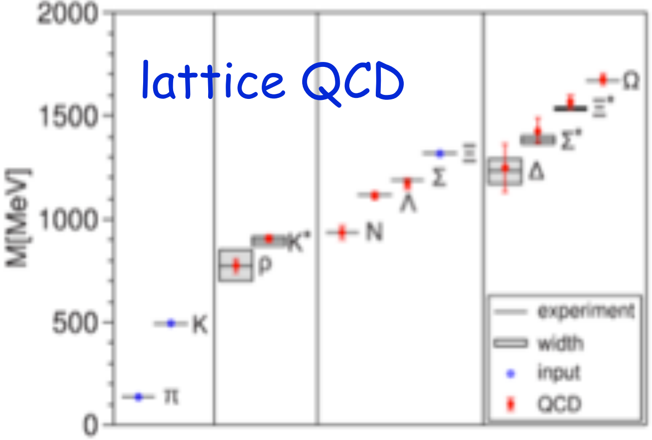
jets

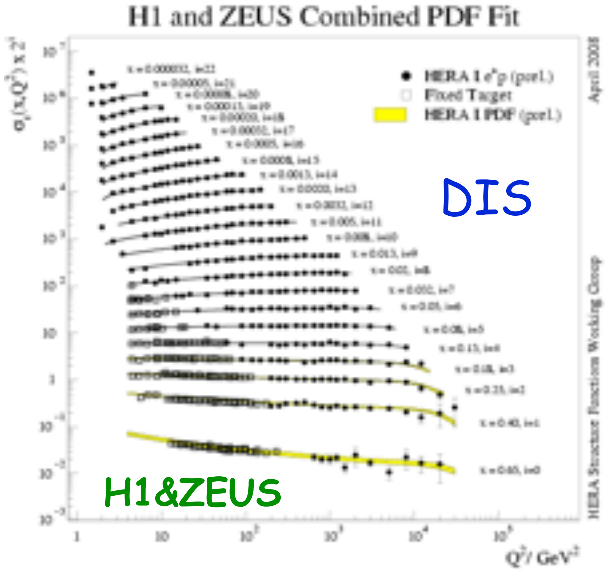
CMS

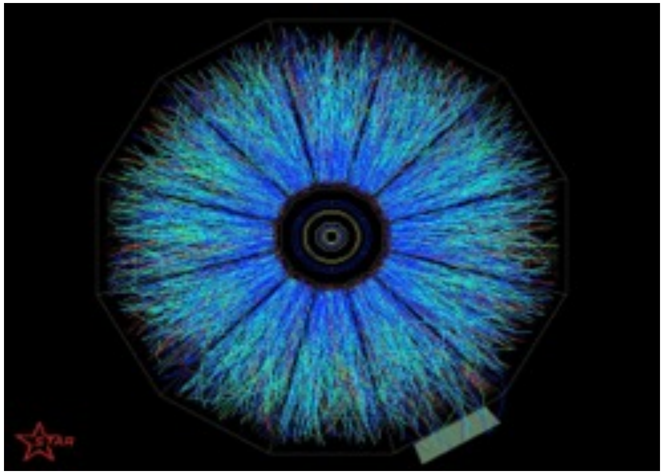
QCD – the theory of strong interactions

a simple QED-like theory, leading to extremely rich & complex phenomena

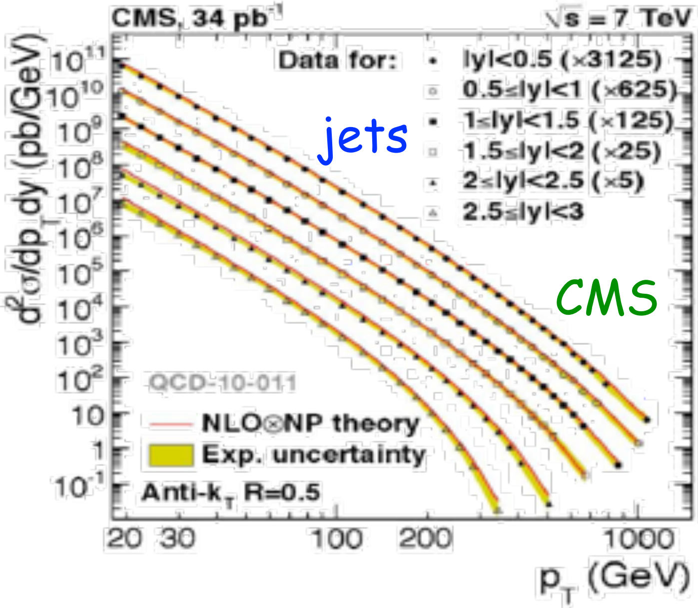
Durr et al., Science 322


lattice QCD


DIS
H1&ZEUS



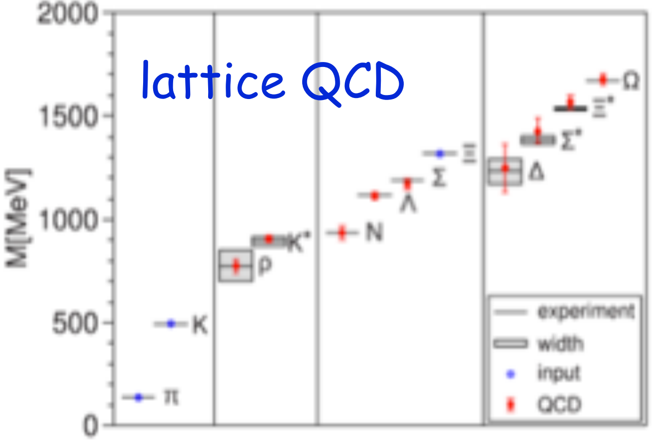
AuAu collision at STAR

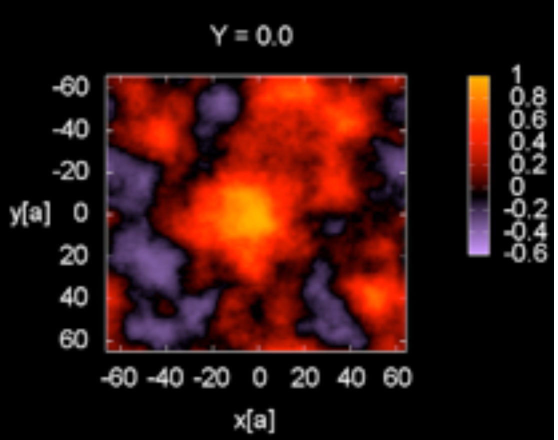

jets
CMS

QCD – the theory of strong interactions

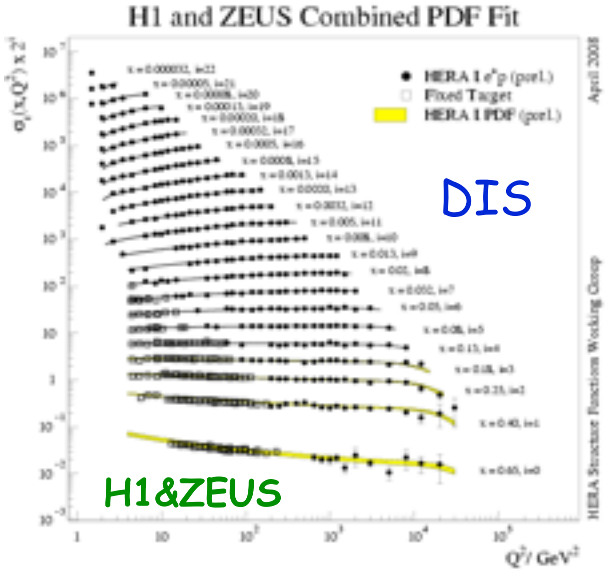
a simple QED-like theory, leading to extremely rich & complex phenomena

Durr et al., Science 322

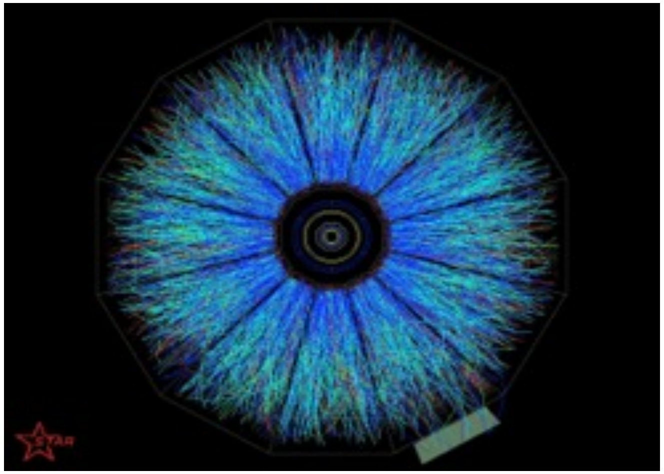

lattice QCD



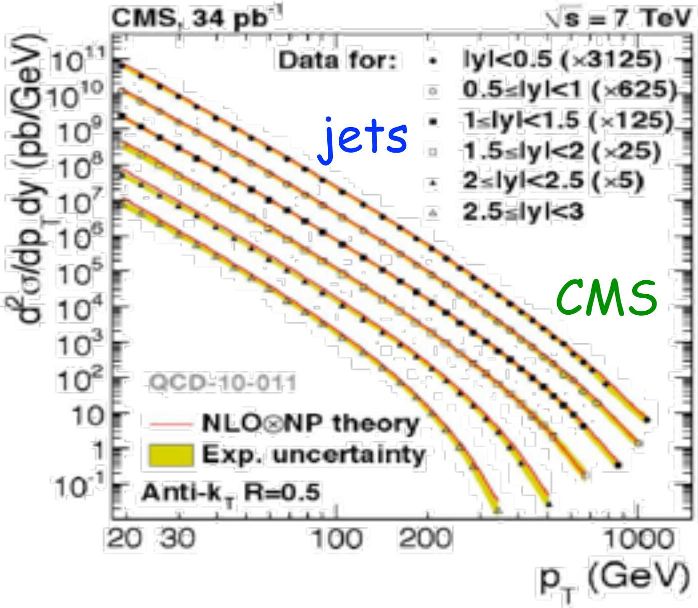
RGE evolution of gluon correlators
arXiv:1108.4764


DIS

H1&ZEUS



AuAu collision at STAR

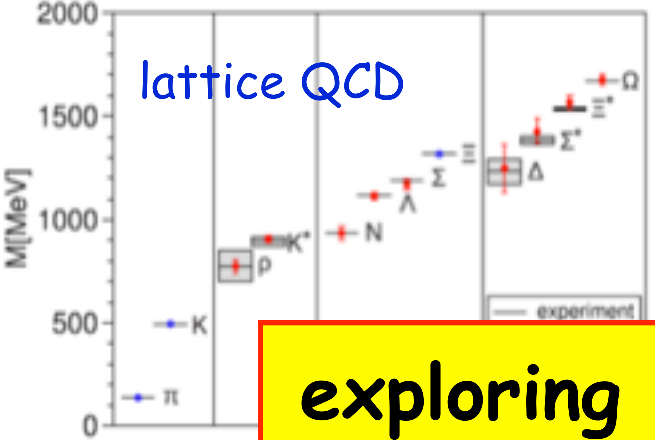

jets

CMS

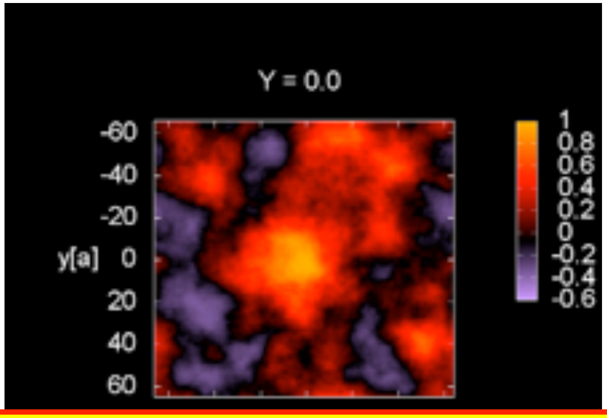
QCD – the theory of strong interactions

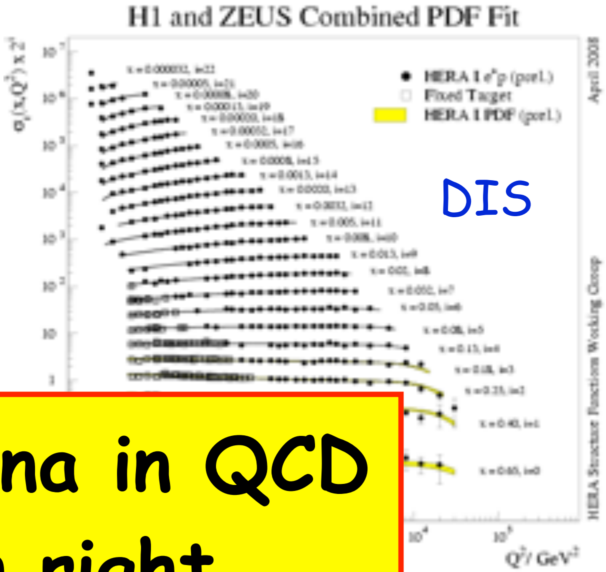
a simple QED-like theory, leading to extremely rich & complex phenomena

Durr et al., Science 322



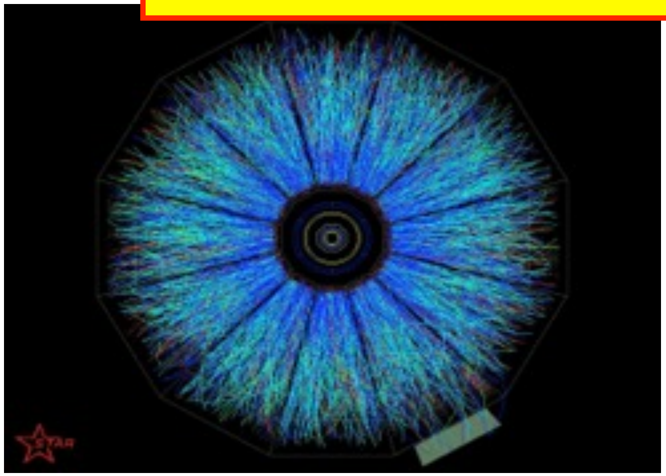
lattice QCD



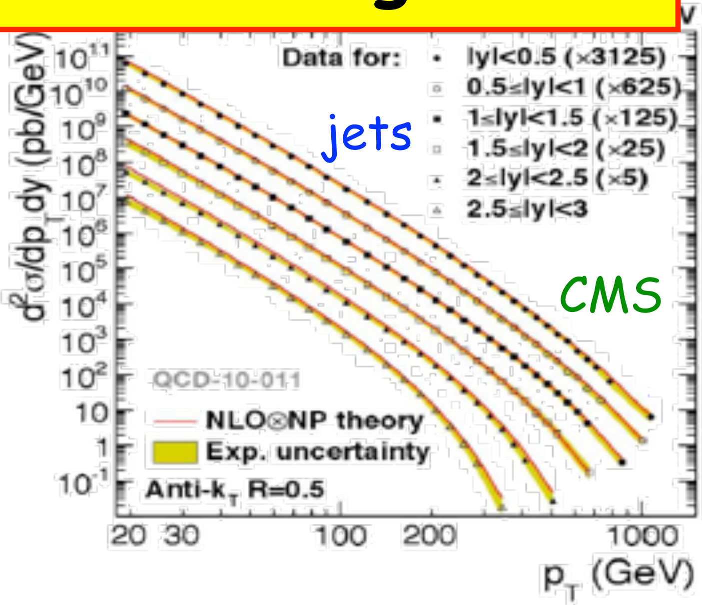


DIS

exploring all these phenomena in QCD is interesting in its own right



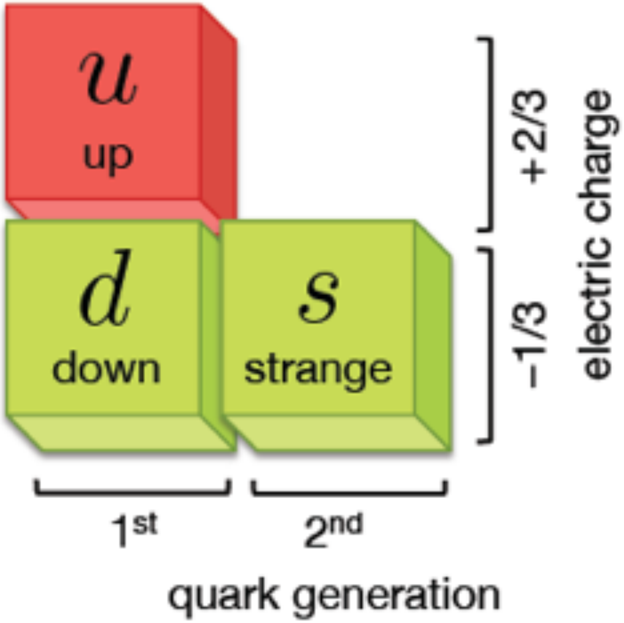
AuAu collision at STAR

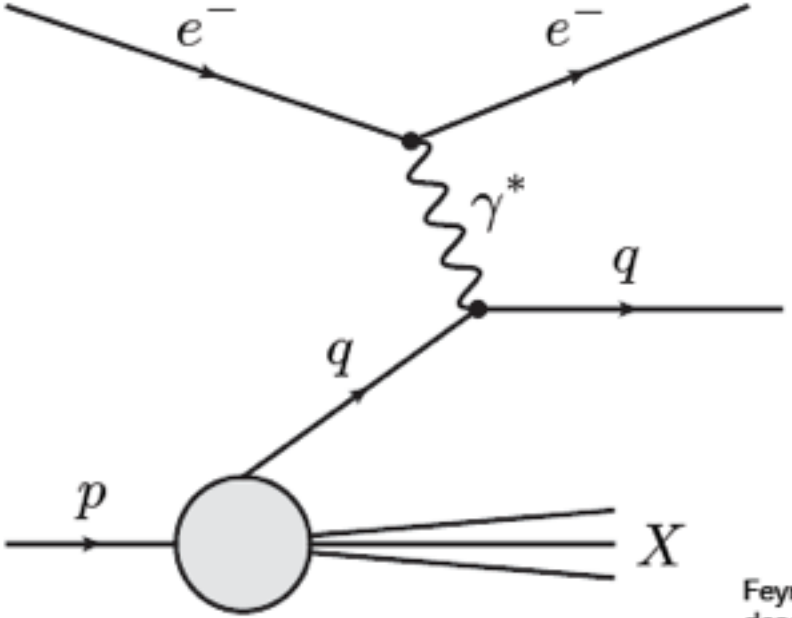


jets

CMS

QCD matter sector: Three Quarks for Muster Mark

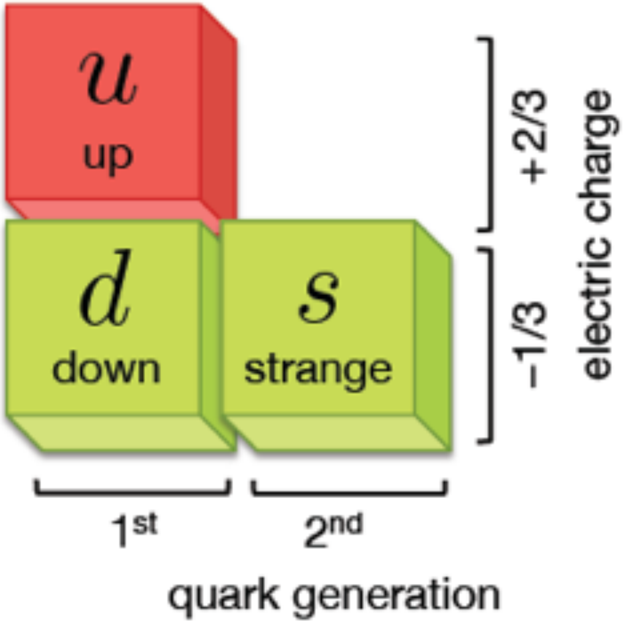


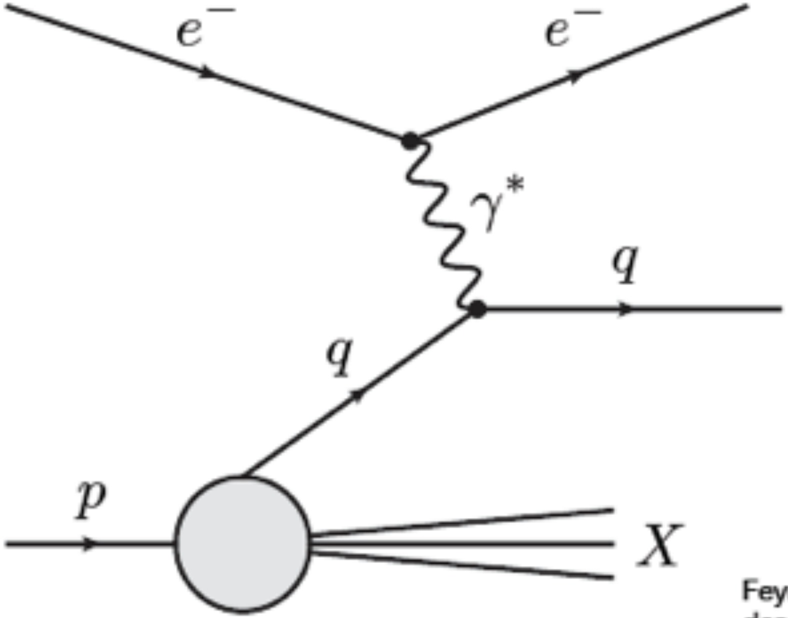


Feynman diagram describing DIS of an electron on a proton

existence of light quarks validated in deep-inelastic scattering (DIS) experiments carried out at SLAC in 1968

QCD matter sector: Three Quarks for Muster Mark





Feynman diagram describing DIS of an electron on a proton

existence of light quarks validated in deep-inelastic scattering (DIS) experiments carried out at SLAC in 1968

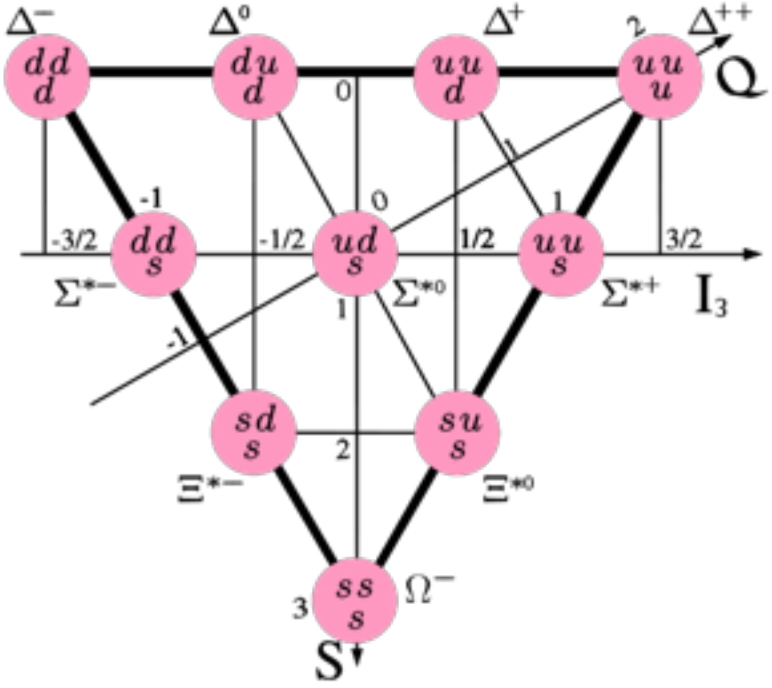
strange quarks necessary component in **quark model** to classify the observed slew of mesons/baryons Gell-Mann, Zweig (1964)

based on "**Eightfold Way**" (= $SU(3)_{flavor}$) Gell-Mann; Ne'eman (1961)

quark model: mesons and baryons

categorizes mesons (baryons) in terms of two (three) constituent quarks in **SU(3)$_{\text{flavor}}$ multiplets** = octets and decuplets

baryon decuplet



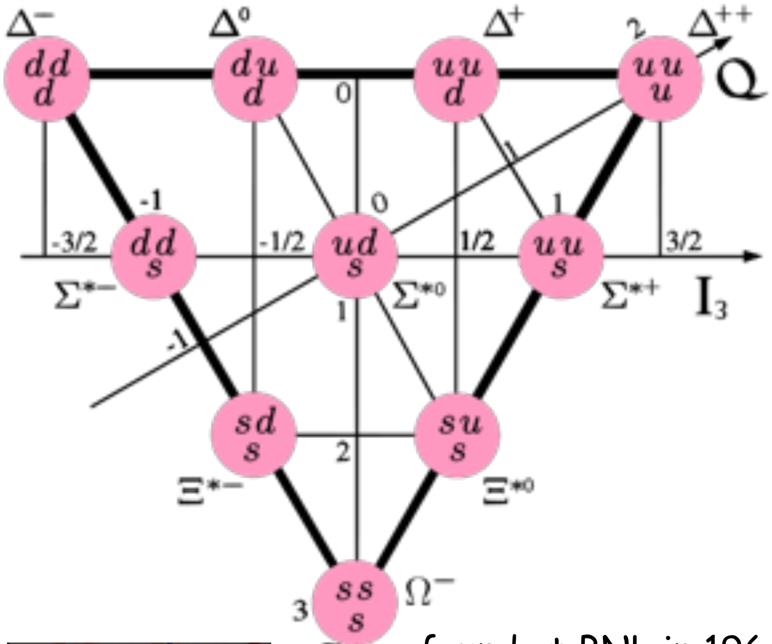
spectrum fully classified by assuming:

- quarks have spin $\frac{1}{2}$
- quarks have fractional charges
  (but combine into hadrons with integer charges)

quark model: mesons and baryons

categorizes mesons (baryons) in terms of two (three) constituent quarks in **SU(3)$_{\text{flavor}}$ multiplets** = octets and decuplets

baryon decuplet



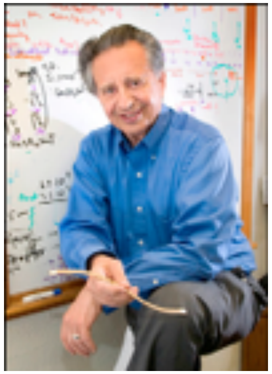
spectrum fully classified by assuming:

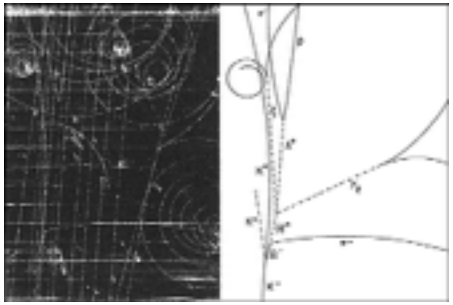
- quarks have spin ½
- quarks have fractional charges
  (but combine into hadrons with integer charges)

big success: prediction of Ω⁻ (sss)

found at BNL in 1964

N. Samios et al.

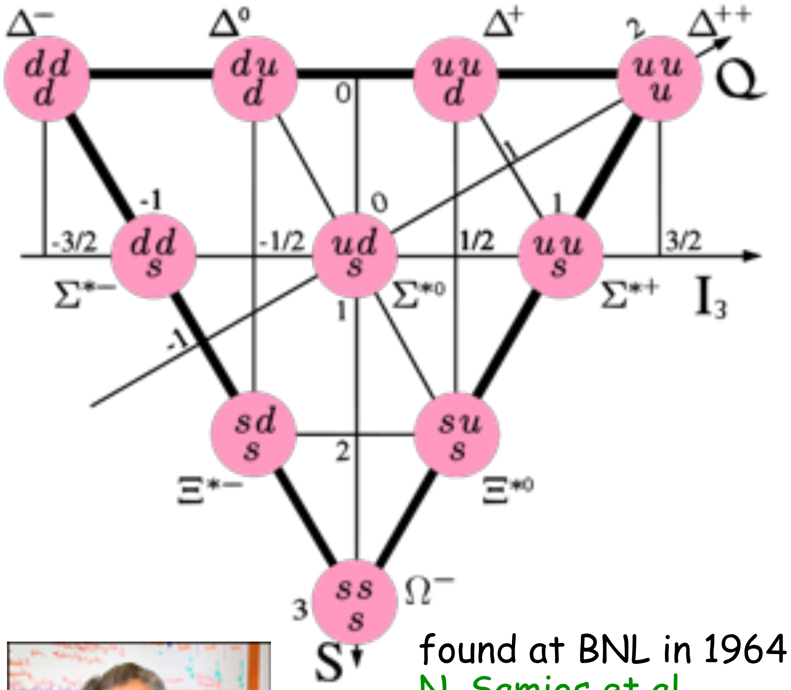




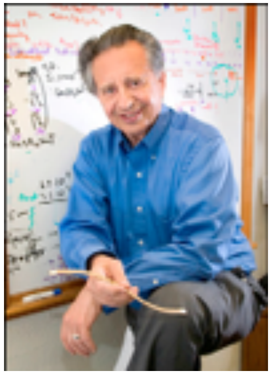
quark model: mesons and baryons

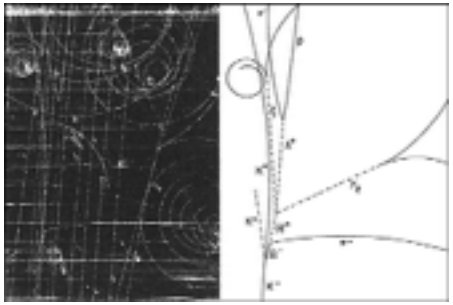
categorizes mesons (baryons) in terms of two (three) constituent quarks in **SU(3)$_{\text{flavor}}$ multiplets** = octets and decuplets

baryon decuplet



found at BNL in 1964
N. Samios et al.





spectrum fully classified by assuming:

- quarks have spin ½
- quarks have fractional charges
  (but combine into hadrons with integer charges)

big success: prediction of Ω^- (sss)

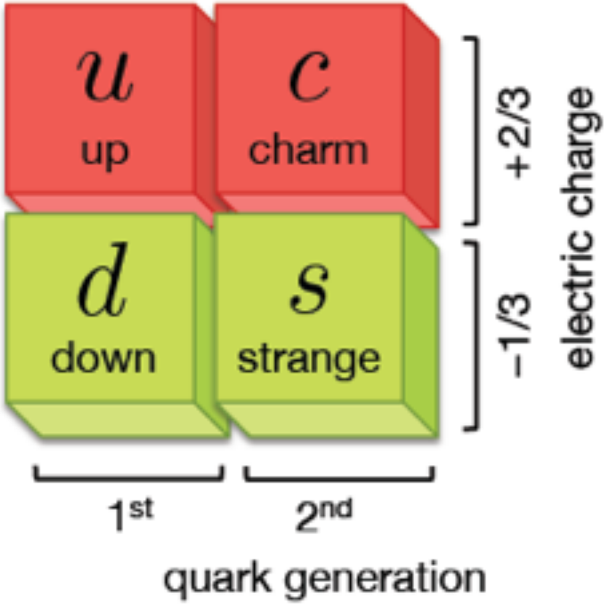
also, **first evidence of color**

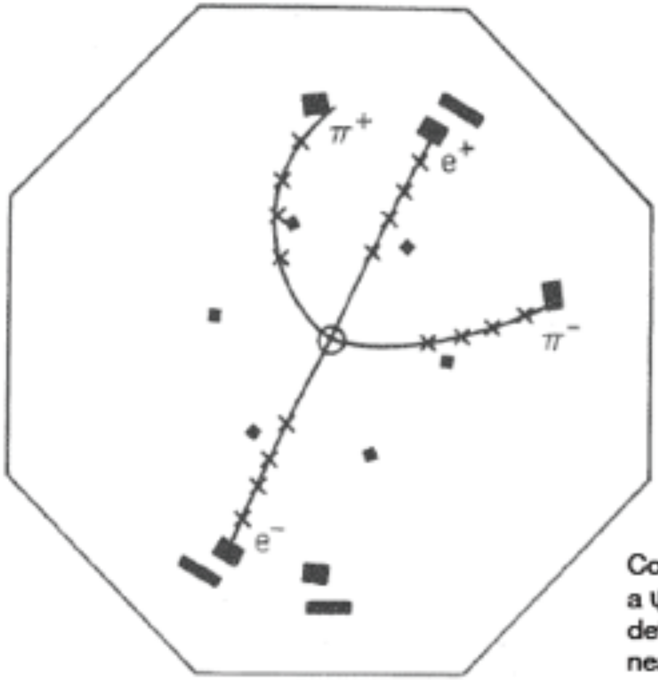
- Δ^{++} wave function |uuu> not anti-sym
  (violates Pauli principle)
- remedy: color quantum number
  but hadrons remain colorless/color singlets

$$\sim \sum_{ijk} \epsilon_{ijk} |q_i q_j q_k\rangle$$

$$\sim \sum_{i} |\bar{q}_i q_i\rangle$$

QCD matter sector: charm



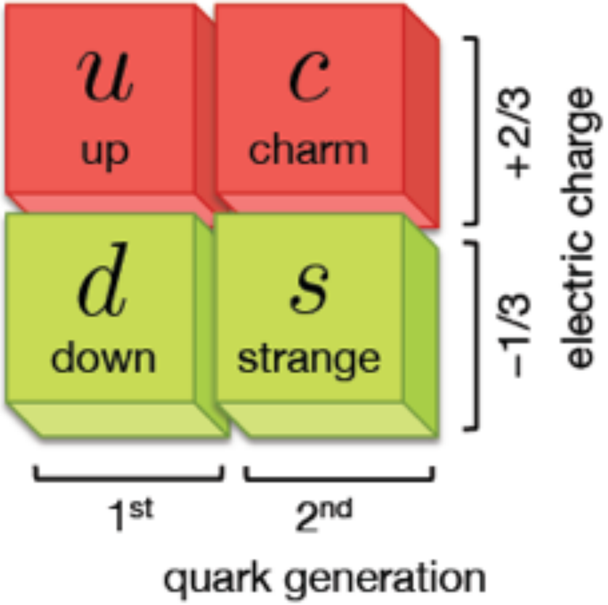


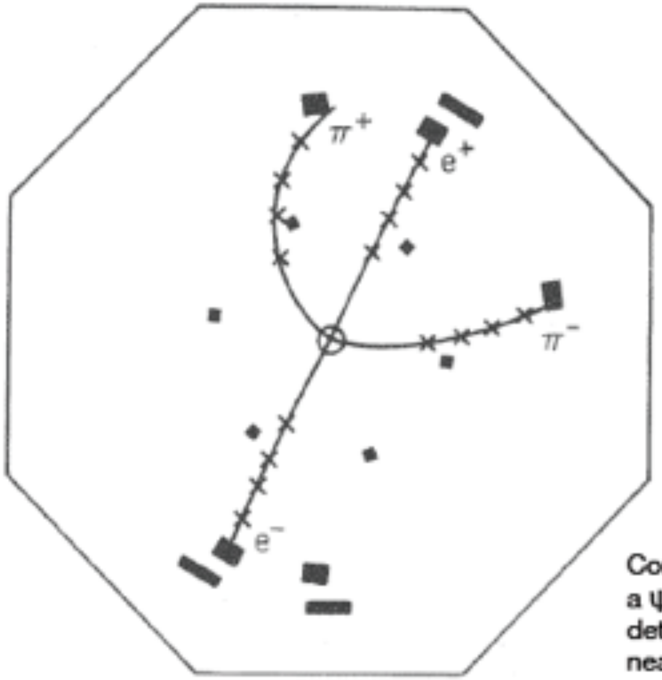
Computer reconstruction of a ψ′ decay in the Mark I detector at SLAC, making a near-perfect image of the Greek letter ψ

predicted on strong theoretical grounds (suppression of FCNC)

"GIM mechanism" in 1970 Glashow, Iliopolus, Maiani

QCD matter sector: charm



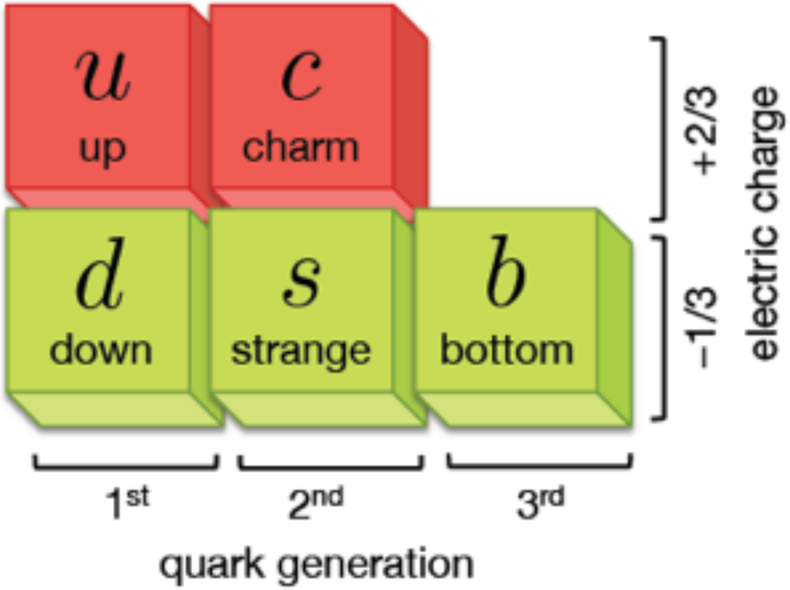


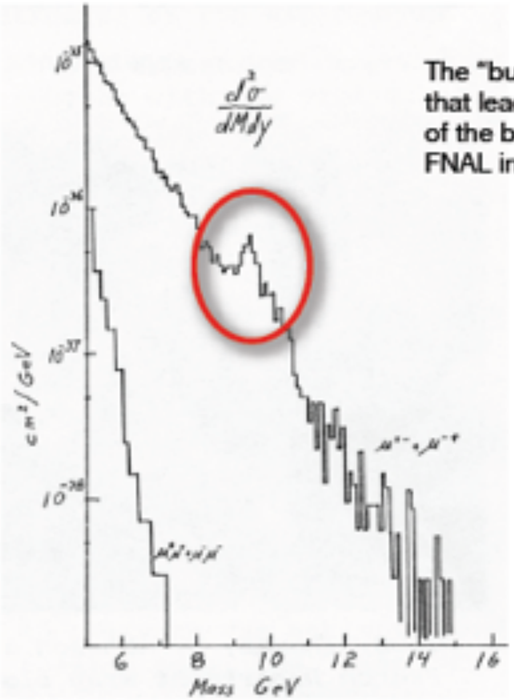
Computer reconstruction of a ψ′ decay in the Mark I detector at SLAC, making a near-perfect image of the Greek letter ψ

predicted on strong theoretical grounds (suppression of FCNC)
"GIM mechanism" in 1970 Glashow, Iliopolus, Maiani

observed during "November revolution" in 1974 both at SLAC (Richter et al.) and BNL (Ting et al.)
discovered meson became known as J/Ψ; Nobel Prize in 1976

QCD matter sector: bottom



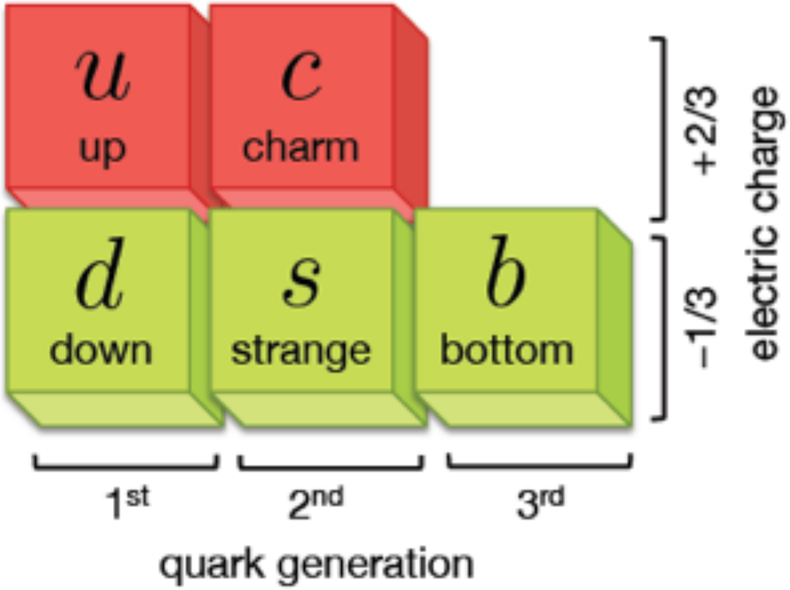


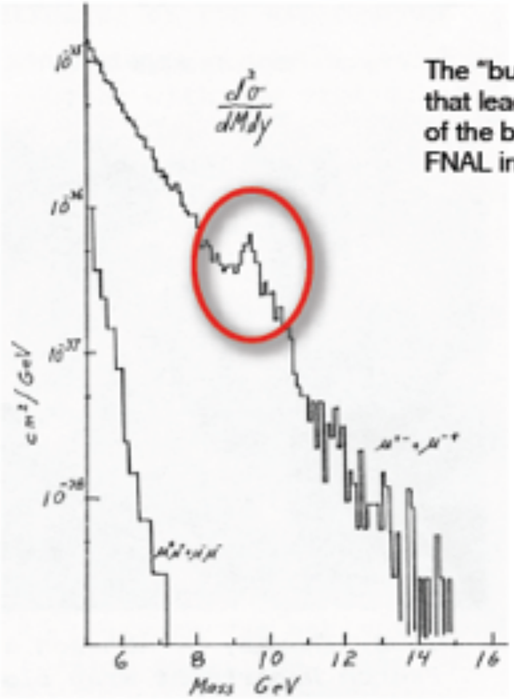
The "bump" at 9.5 GeV that lead to the discovery of the bottom quark at FNAL in 1977

theorized in 1973 in order to accommodate CP violation
(requires third generation)

Kobayashi, Maskawa Nobel Prize 2008

QCD matter sector: bottom





The "bump" at 9.5 GeV that lead to the discovery of the bottom quark at FNAL in 1977

theorized in 1973 in order to accommodate CP violation

(requires third generation)

Kobayashi, Maskawa Nobel Prize 2008

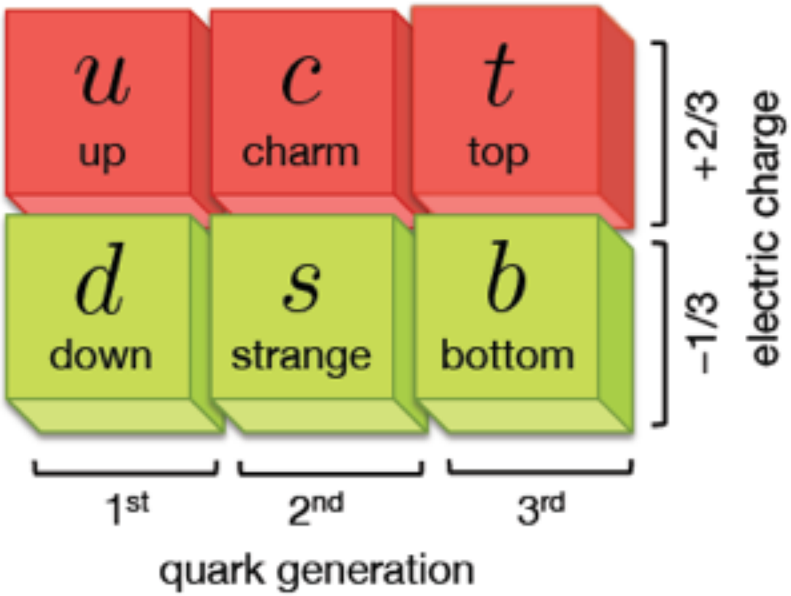
discovered in 1977 at FNAL (Υ meson or "bottomium")

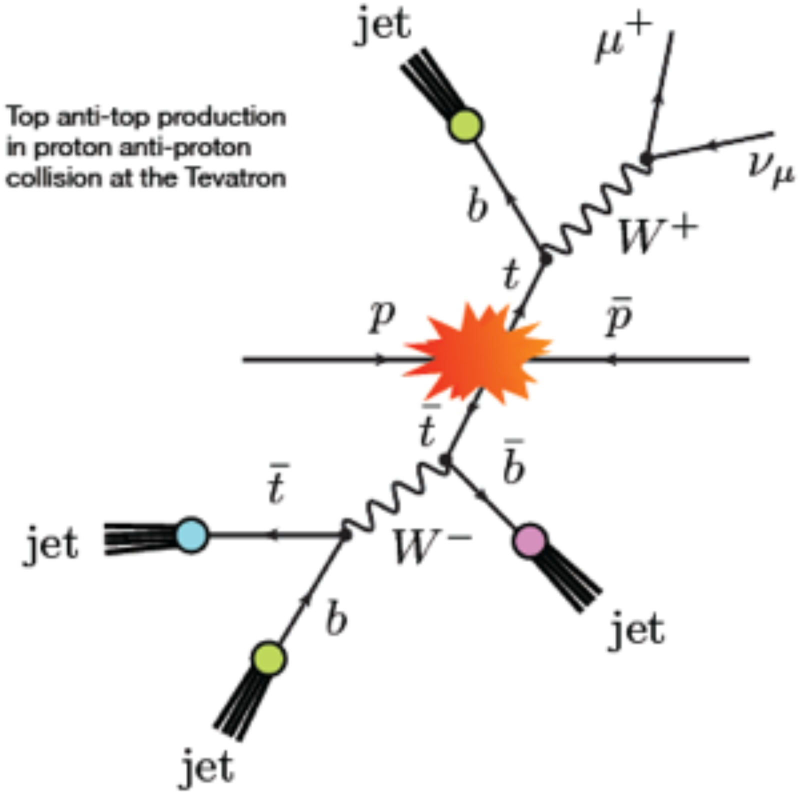
Ledermann et al.

L.L. coined also the term "God particle"

Nobel Prize in 1988 for muon neutrino

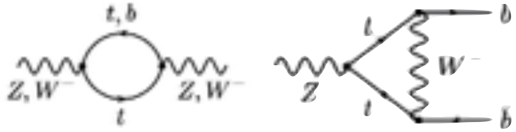
QCD matter sector: top




Top anti-top production in proton anti-proton collision at the Tevatron

by around 1994 electroweak precision fits point towards mass in range 145-185 GeV

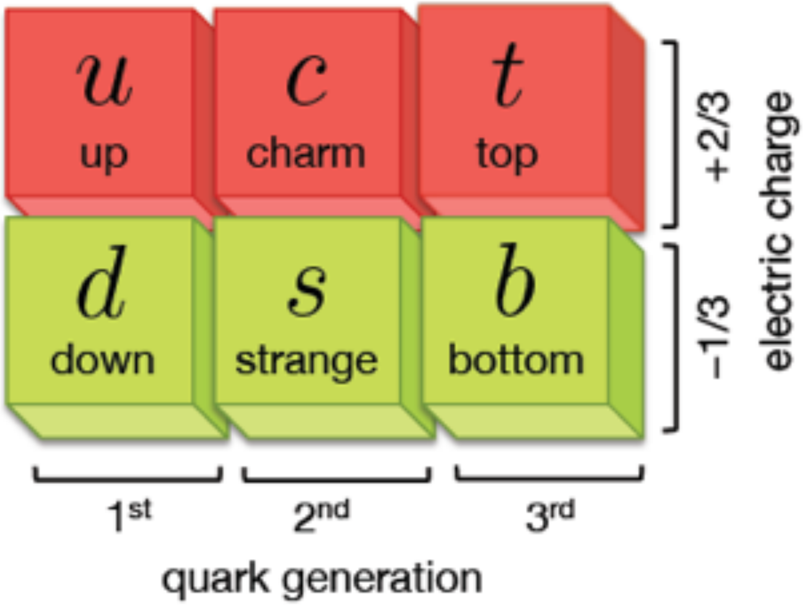
(vector boson mass and couplings are sensitive to top mass)

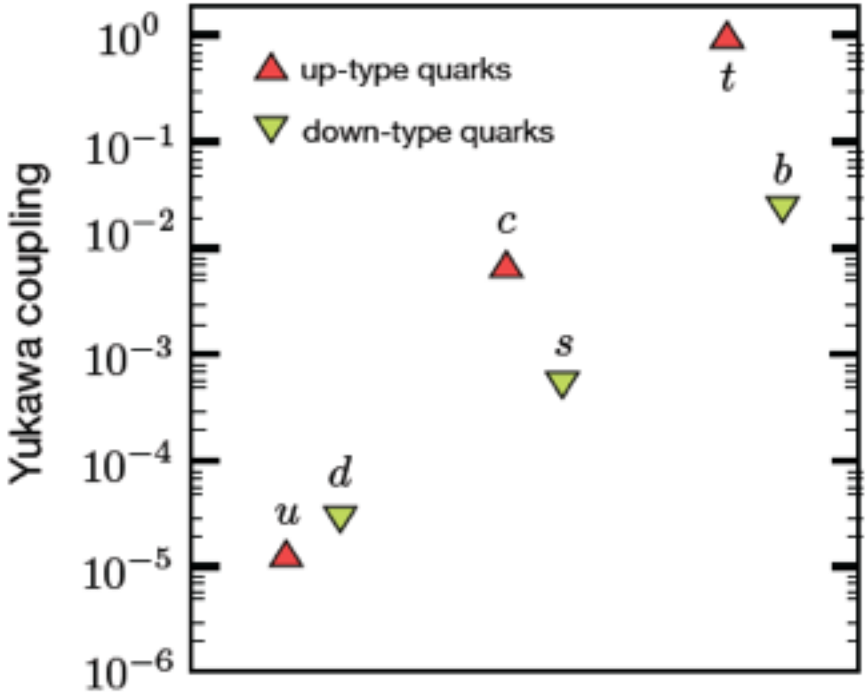


eventually discovered in 1995 by CDF and DØ at FNAL

(mass nowadays know to about 1 GeV)

QCD matter sector: 3 generations

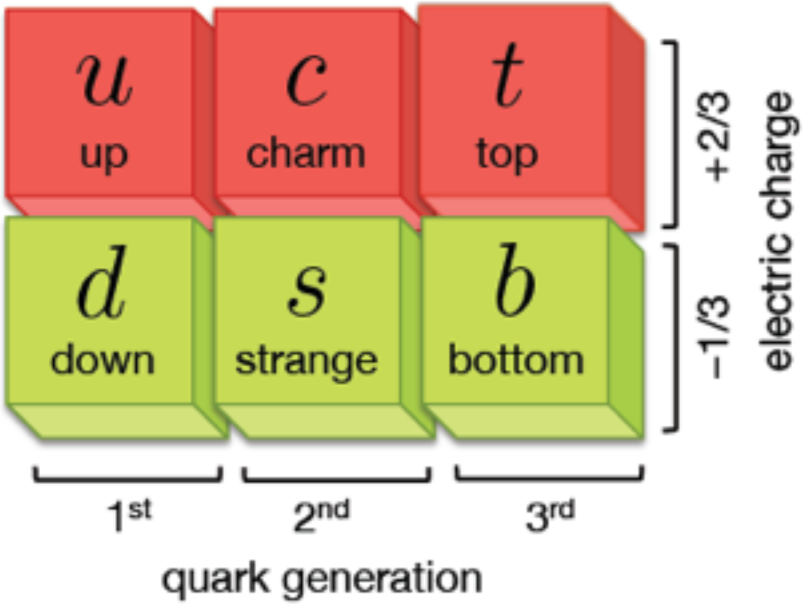


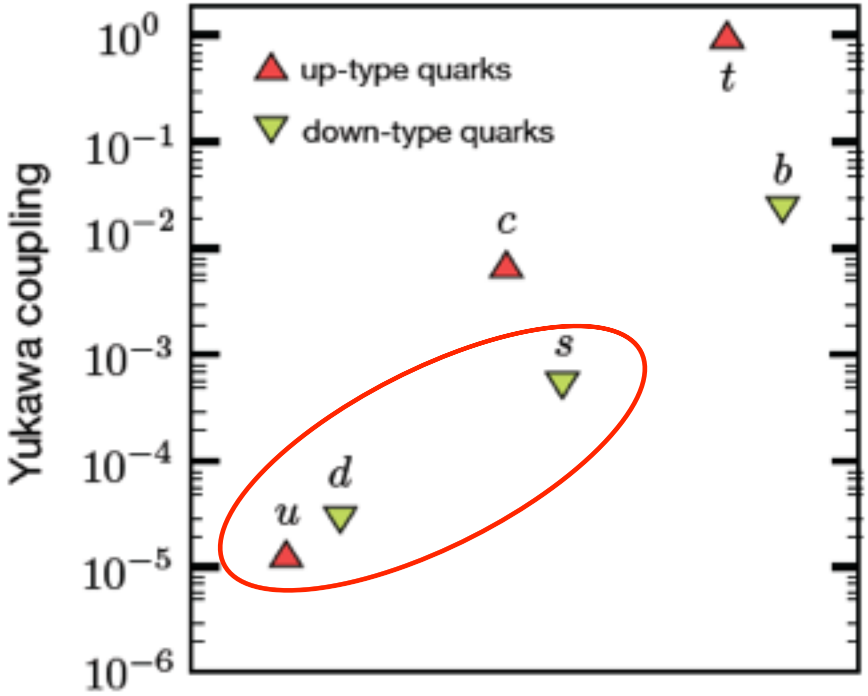


- masses of six quarks range from O(MeV) to about 175 GeV

  why the masses are split by almost six orders of magnitude remains a big mystery

QCD matter sector: 3 generations





- masses of six quarks range from O(MeV) to about 175 GeV
  why the masses are split by almost six orders of magnitude remains a big mystery

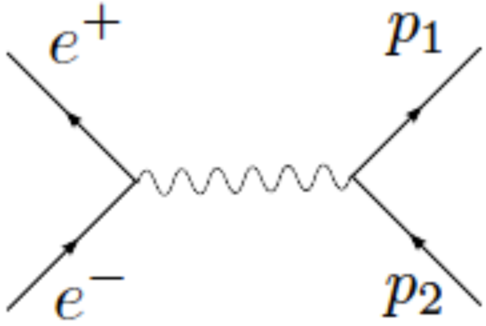
- masses of u, d, s quarks are lighter than 1 GeV (proton mass)
  in the limit of vanishing u,d,s masses there is an exact $SU(3)_{\text{flavor}}$ symmetry

further evidence for color quantum number

- **color can be probed directly in e^+e^- collisions**

  idea:

  production of fermion pairs (leptons or quarks) through a virtual photon sensitive to electric charge and number of degrees of freedom

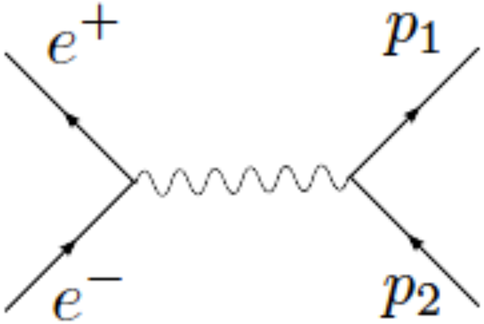


further evidence for color quantum number

- **color can be probed directly in e^+e^- collisions**

  idea:

  production of fermion pairs (leptons or quarks) through a virtual photon sensitive to electric charge and number of degrees of freedom



- hence, investigate quarks through "**R ratio**"

$$R \equiv \frac{e^+e^- \to \text{hadrons}}{e^+e^- \to \mu^+\mu^-} \propto N_c \sum_f Q_f^2$$

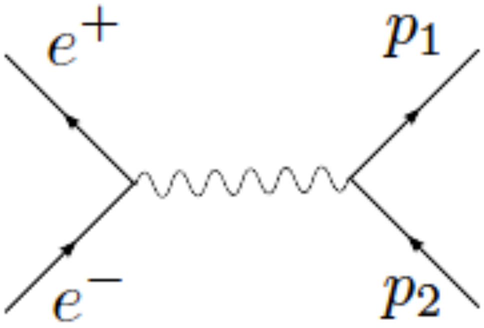
assumed number
of colors of quark

further evidence for color quantum number

- **color can be probed directly in e^+e^- collisions**

idea:

production of fermion pairs (leptons or quarks) through a virtual photon sensitive to electric charge and number of degrees of freedom



- hence, investigate quarks through "**R ratio**"

$$R \equiv \frac{e^+e^- \rightarrow \text{hadrons}}{e^+e^- \rightarrow \mu^+\mu^-} \propto N_c \sum_f Q_f^2$$

electric charge of quark [in units of e]

assumed number of colors of quark

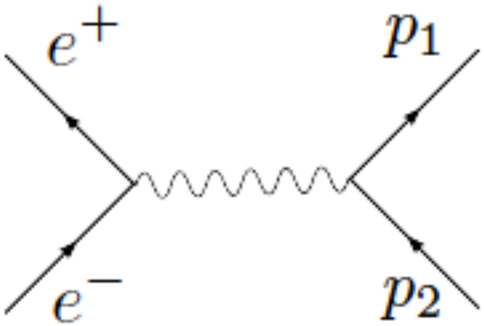
- in LO described by process $\mathbf{e^+e^- \rightarrow q\bar{q}}$

further evidence for color quantum number

- **color can be probed directly in e^+e^- collisions**

  idea:

  production of fermion pairs (leptons or quarks) through a virtual photon sensitive to electric charge and number of degrees of freedom



- hence, investigate quarks through "**R ratio**"

electric charge of quark [in units of e]

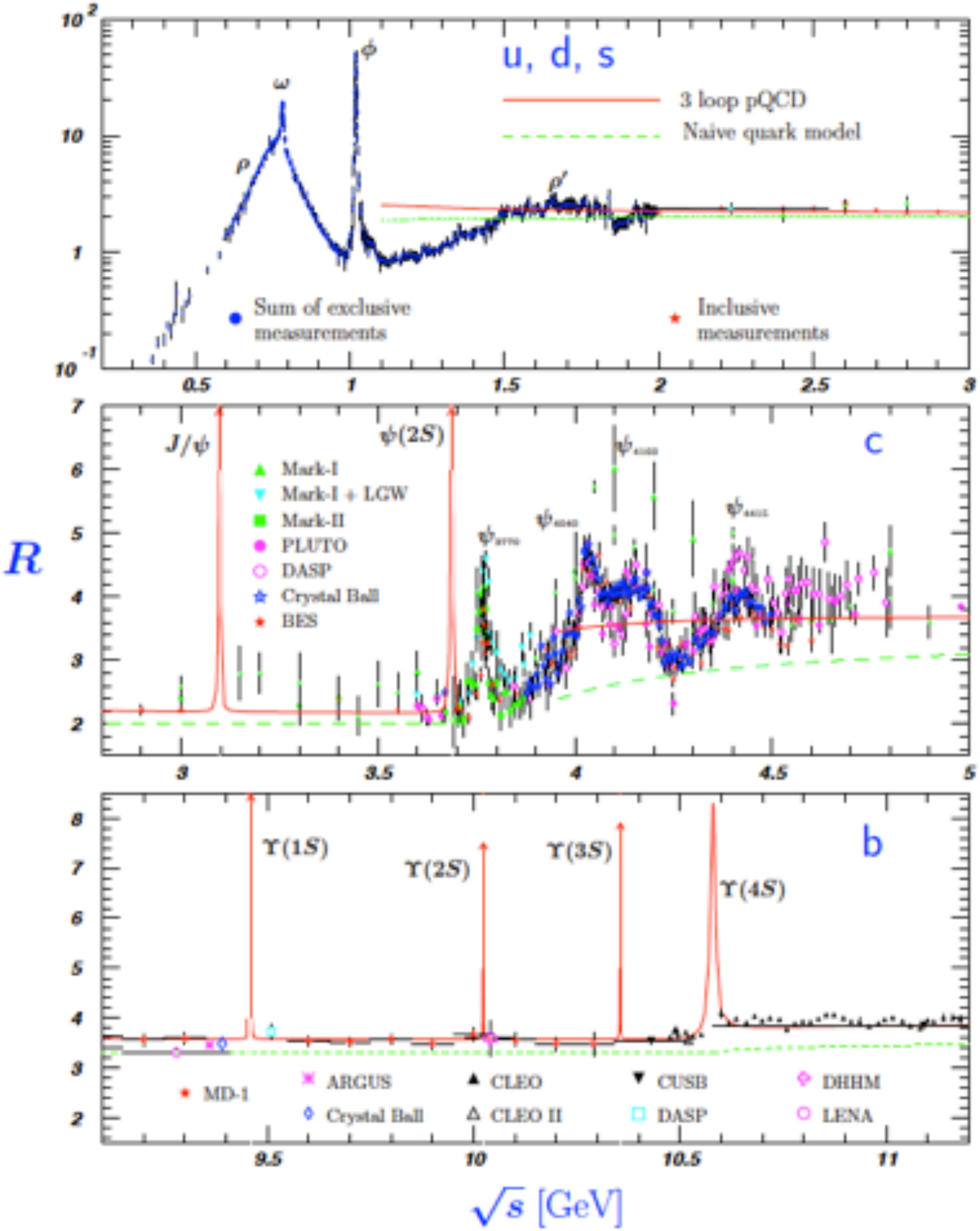
$$R \equiv \frac{e^+e^- \to \text{hadrons}}{e^+e^- \to \mu^+\mu^-} \propto N_c \sum_f Q_f^2$$

assumed number of colors of quark

sum over active quarks

  - in LO described by process $\mathbf{e^+e^- \to q\bar{q}}$
  - each active quark is produced in one out of N_c colors above kinematic threshold

experimental results for R ratio



$$
\begin{aligned}
R_{u,d,s} &= 3\times\left[\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^2+\left(-\frac{1}{3}\right)^2+\left(-\frac{1}{3}\right)^2\right]\\
&= 2
\end{aligned}
$$

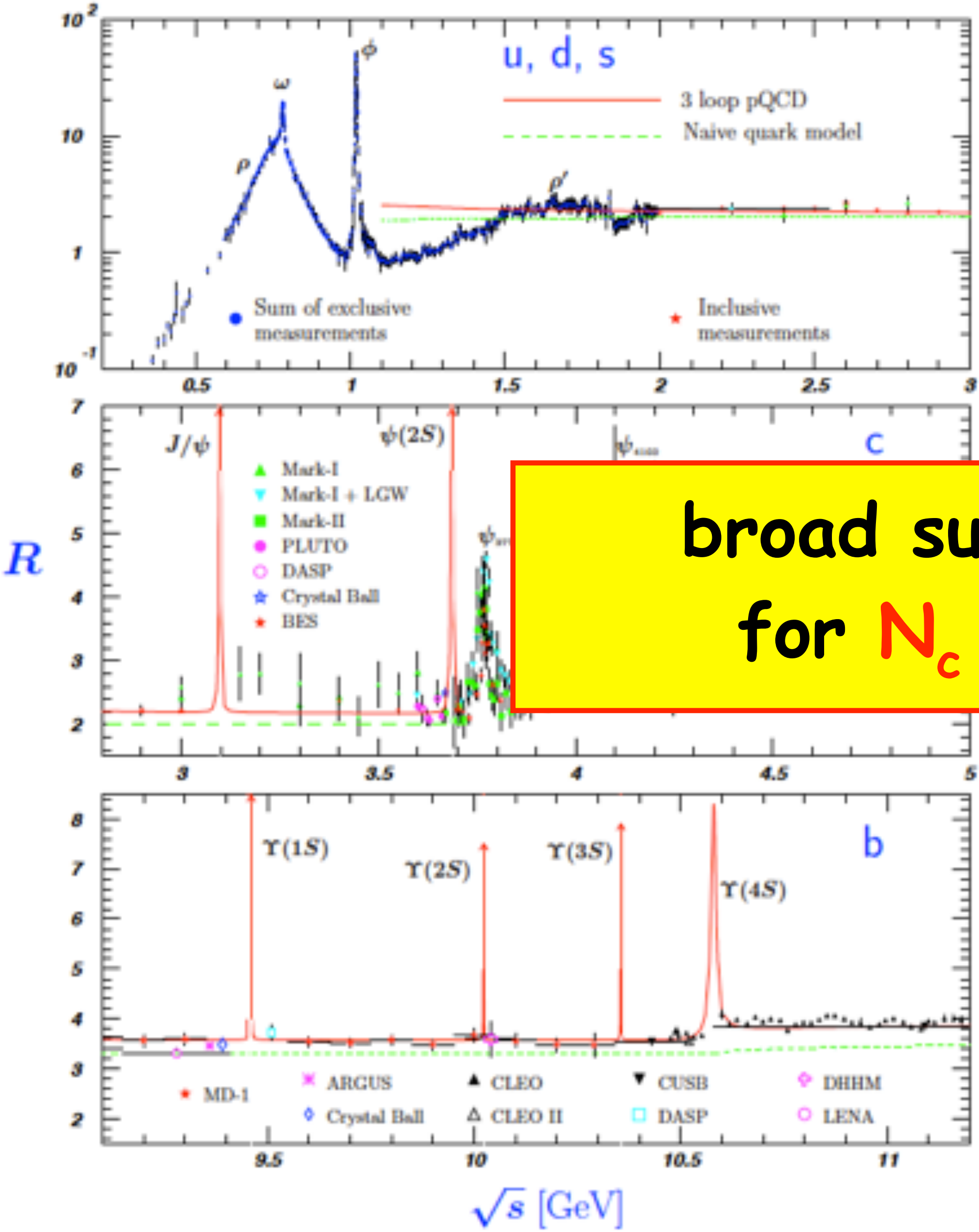
$$
\begin{aligned}
R_{u,d,s,c} &= R_{u,d,s}+3\times\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^2\\
&= \frac{10}{3}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
R_{u,d,s,c,b} &= R_{u,d,s,c}+3\times\left(-\frac{1}{3}\right)^2\\
&= \frac{11}{3}
\end{aligned}
$$

caveats:

- higher order corrections
- mass effects near threshold

experimental results for R ratio



broad support for $N_c = 3$

$$R_{u,d,s} = 3\times\left[\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^2+\left(-\frac{1}{3}\right)^2+\left(-\frac{1}{3}\right)^2\right] = 2$$

$$R_{u,d,s,c} = R_{u,d,s}+3\times\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^2$$

$$R_{u,d,s,c,b} = R_{u,d,s,c}+3\times\left(-\frac{1}{3}\right)^2 = \frac{11}{3}$$

caveats:

- higher order corrections
- mass effects near threshold

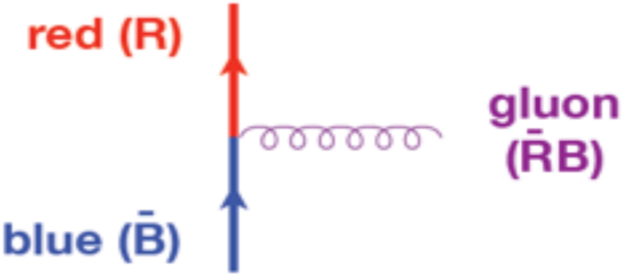
QCD color interactions heuristically

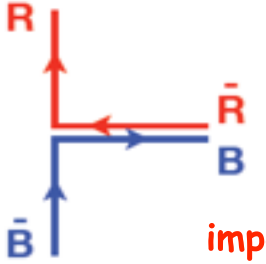
- QCD color quantum number is mediated by the **gluon**

  analogous to the photon in QED
- gluons are changing quarks from one color to another

  as such they must also carry a color charge (unlike the charge neutral photon in QED)

example:





"color flow"

important calculational tool

QCD color interactions heuristically

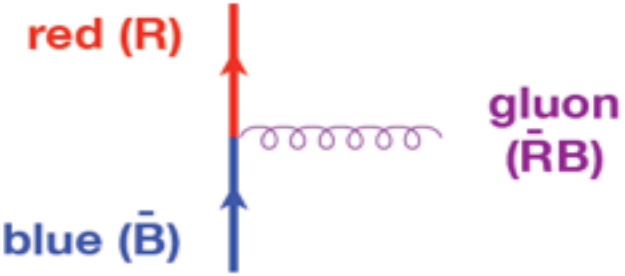
- QCD color quantum number is mediated by the **gluon**

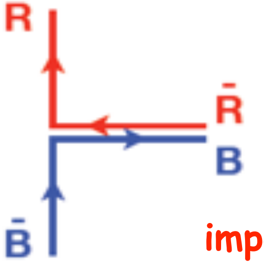
  analogous to the photon in QED

- gluons are changing quarks from one color to another

  as such they must also carry a color charge (unlike the charge neutral photon in QED)

example:





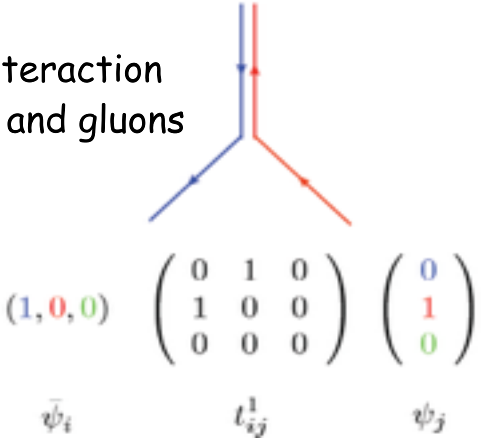
"color flow"

important calculational tool

- color charge of each gluon represented by a 3x3 matrix in color space

  conventional choice: express t^a (a=1…8) in terms of **Gell-Mann matrices**

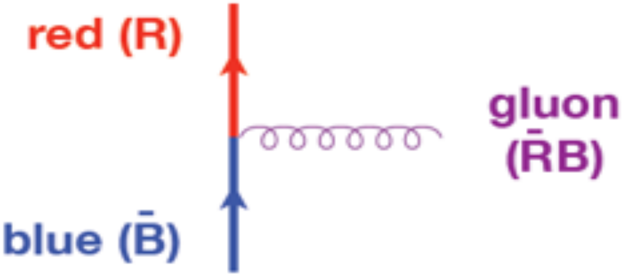
typical color interaction between quarks and gluons

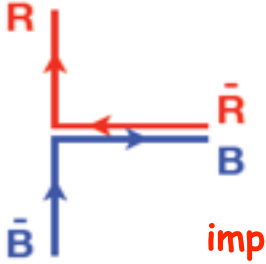


QCD color interactions heuristically

- QCD color quantum number is mediated by the **gluon**
  analogous to the photon in QED
- gluons are changing quarks from one color to another
  as such they must also carry a color charge (unlike the charge neutral photon in QED)

example:



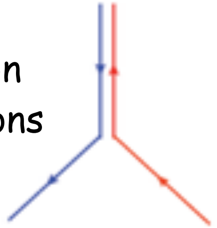


"color flow"

important calculational tool

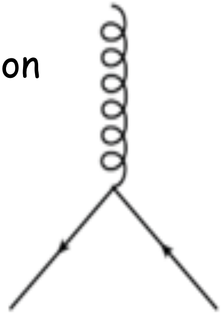
- color charge of each gluon represented by a 3x3 matrix in color space
  conventional choice: express t^a (a=1…8) in terms of **Gell-Mann matrices**

typical color interaction between quarks and gluons



$$\underset{\bar{\psi}_i}{(1,0,0)} \underset{t^1_{ij}}{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}} \underset{\psi_j}{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}}$$

more formal expression as **Feynman rule**
[only color structure here]



$$\bar{\psi}_i \, t^A_{ij} \, \psi_j$$

QCD: an unbroken SU(3) Quantum Field Theory

guiding principle for all field theories: **local gauge invariance** of the underlying Lagrangian

i.e., redefining the quark and gluon fields independently at each space-time point has no impact on the physics

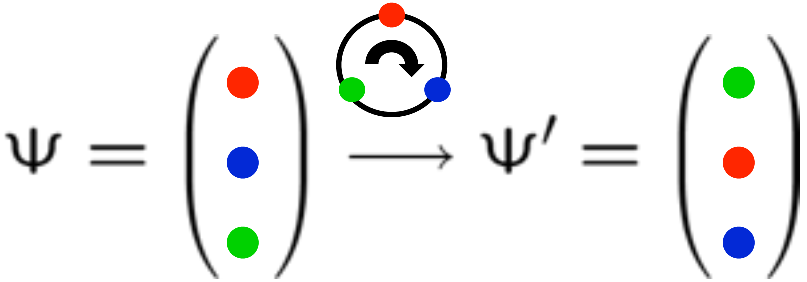
QCD: an unbroken SU(3) Quantum Field Theory

guiding principle for all field theories: local gauge invariance of the underlying Lagrangian

i.e., redefining the quark and gluon fields independently at each space-time point has no impact on the physics

here: local SU(3) rotations in color space

spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ quark fields
come as colors triplets
(fundamental representation)



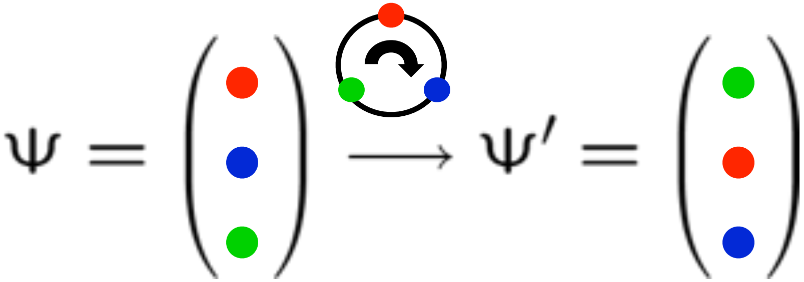
QCD: an unbroken SU(3) Quantum Field Theory

guiding principle for all field theories: local gauge invariance of the underlying Lagrangian

i.e., redefining the quark and gluon fields independently at each space-time point has no impact on the physics

here: local SU(3) rotations in color space

spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ quark fields
come as colors triplets
(fundamental representation)



local SU(3) invariance dictates:

- 8 massless spin-1 gluons
  (adjoint representation)
- all interactions between quarks and gluons (covariant derivative)

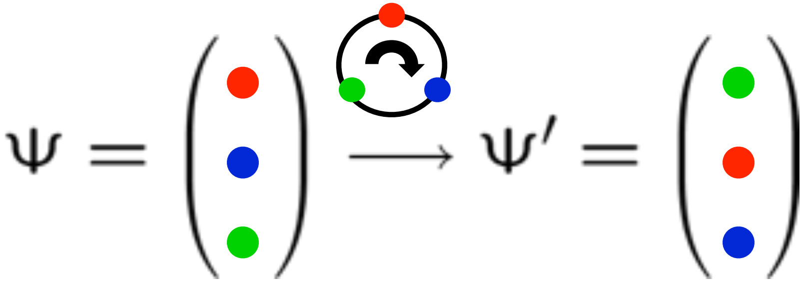
QCD: an unbroken SU(3) Quantum Field Theory

guiding principle for all field theories: local gauge invariance of the underlying Lagrangian

i.e., redefining the quark and gluon fields independently at each space-time point has no impact on the physics

here: local SU(3) rotations in color space

spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ quark fields
come as colors triplets
(fundamental representation)



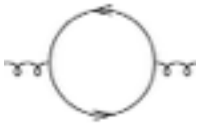
local SU(3) invariance dictates:

- 8 massless spin-1 gluons
  (adjoint representation)
- all interactions between quarks and gluons (covariant derivative)

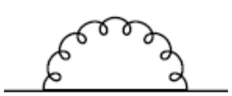
non-Abelian group structure:

- Lie algebra: $[t_a, t_b] = i\, f_{abc} t_c$

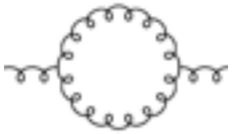
- invariants ("color factors") :



$T_F = 1/2$



$C_F = 4/3$



$C_A = 3$

the gauge group SU(N) with N=3

- choose special unitary group SU(3) as the gauge group for QCD
  - SU(N) is group of N x N matrices U
  - N x N generic complex matrix has N^2 complex (= 2 N^2 real) values

the gauge group SU(N) with N=3

- choose special unitary group SU(3) as the gauge group for QCD
  - SU(N) is group of N x N matrices U
  - N x N generic complex matrix has N^2 complex (= 2 N^2 real) values

$$UU^\dagger = U^\dagger U = 1_{N\times N} \qquad \det(U) = 1$$

unitary provides N^2 conditions　　unit determinant ("special"): 1 condition

-> SU(N) group has N^2 – 1 generators (-> QCD has 8 gluons)

the gauge group SU(N) with N=3

- choose special unitary group SU(3) as the gauge group for QCD
  - SU(N) is group of N x N matrices U
  - N x N generic complex matrix has N^2 complex (= 2 N^2 real) values

$$UU^\dagger = U^\dagger U = 1_{N\times N} \qquad \det(U) = 1$$

unitary provides N^2 conditions — unit determinant ("special"): 1 condition

-> SU(N) group has N^2 – 1 generators (-> QCD has 8 gluons)

  - generators are traceless hermitian N x N matrices

$$\mathbf{U = e^{i\theta_a(x)t^a}} \qquad \mathbf{a = 1, 2, ..., N^2 - 1}$$

element of the group
"rotations in color space"

the gauge group SU(N) with N=3

- choose special unitary group SU(3) as the gauge group for QCD
  - SU(N) is group of N x N matrices U
  - N x N generic complex matrix has N^2 complex (= 2 N^2 real) values

$$UU^\dagger = U^\dagger U = 1_{N\times N} \qquad \det(U) = 1$$

unitary provides N^2 conditions

unit determinant ("special"): 1 condition

-> SU(N) group has N^2 – 1 generators (-> QCD has 8 gluons)

  - generators are traceless hermitian N x N matrices

generator

$$\mathbf{U = e^{i\theta_a(x)t^a}} \qquad \mathbf{a = 1, 2, ..., N^2 - 1}$$

element of the group
"rotations in color space"

arbitrary parameter
constant or x dep.
"generalized phase"

the gauge group SU(N) with N=3

- choose special unitary group SU(3) as the gauge group for QCD
  - SU(N) is group of N x N matrices U
  - N x N generic complex matrix has N^2 complex (= 2 N^2 real) values

$$UU^\dagger = U^\dagger U = 1_{N\times N} \qquad \det(U) = 1$$

unitary provides N^2 conditions — unit determinant ("special"): 1 condition

-> SU(N) group has N^2 – 1 generators (-> QCD has 8 gluons)

  - generators are traceless hermitian N x N matrices

generator

$$\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{e}^{\mathbf{i}\theta_{\mathbf{a}}(\mathbf{x})\mathbf{t}^{\mathbf{a}}} \qquad \mathbf{a} = \mathbf{1}, \mathbf{2}, ..., \mathbf{N}^{\mathbf{2}} - \mathbf{1}$$

element of the group
"rotations in color space"

arbitrary parameter
constant or x dep.
"generalized phase"

$$\approx \mathbf{1} + \mathbf{i}\theta_{\mathbf{a}}(\mathbf{x})\mathbf{t}^{\mathbf{a}} + \mathcal{O}(\theta^{\mathbf{2}})$$

properties can be studied from
infinitesimal transformations

the gauge group SU(N) with N=3

- choose special unitary group SU(3) as the gauge group for QCD
  - SU(N) is group of N x N matrices U
  - N x N generic complex matrix has N^2 complex (= 2 N^2 real) values

$$UU^\dagger = U^\dagger U = 1_{N\times N} \qquad \det(U) = 1$$

unitary provides N^2 conditions

unit determinant ("special"): 1 condition

-> SU(N) group has N^2 – 1 generators (-> QCD has 8 gluons)

  - generators are traceless hermitian N x N matrices

generator

$$\mathbf{U = e^{i\theta_a(x)t^a}} \qquad \mathbf{a = 1, 2, ..., N^2 - 1}$$

element of the group

"rotations in color space"

arbitrary parameter

constant or x dep.

"generalized phase"

$$\approx \mathbf{1 + i\theta_a(x)t^a} + \mathcal{O}(\theta^2)$$

properties can be studied from infinitesimal transformations

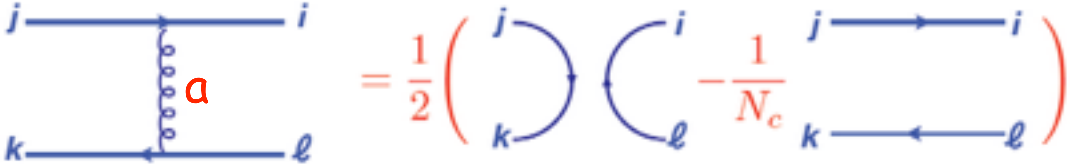
- why SU(3) ?

quarks and anti-quarks are different [rules out real SO(3)]

  - only compact simple Lie group with complex triplet representation

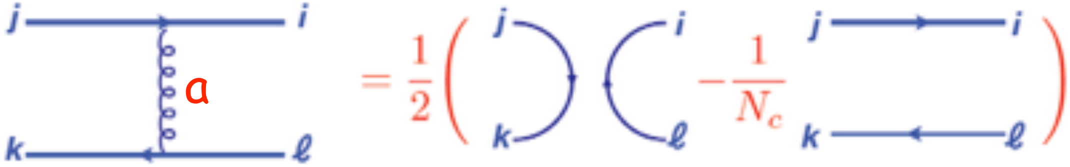
color algebra: Fierz identity, Casimir operators

- powerful Fierz identity $$\sum_{\mathbf{a}} (\mathbf{t^a})_{\mathbf{ij}} \, (\mathbf{t^a})_{\mathbf{kl}} = \frac{\mathbf{1}}{\mathbf{2}}\left(\delta_{\mathbf{il}}\delta_{\mathbf{jk}} - \frac{\mathbf{1}}{\mathbf{N}}\delta_{\mathbf{ij}}\delta_{\mathbf{kl}}\right)$$



color algebra: Fierz identity, Casimir operators

- powerful Fierz identity $\sum_{a}(t^a)_{ij}\,(t^a)_{kl} = \frac{1}{2}\left(\delta_{il}\delta_{jk} - \frac{1}{N}\delta_{ij}\delta_{kl}\right)$

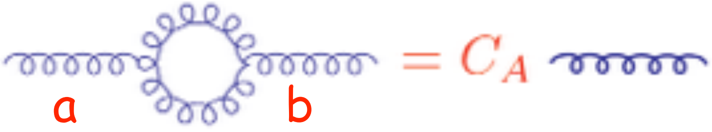


- N-1 Casimir operators (commute with all generators; proportional to identity)

  - fundamental representation

$$\sum_{a}\sum_{k}(t^a)_{ik}\,(t^a)_{kj} = C_F\delta_{ij} \qquad C_F = \frac{N^2-1}{2N}$$

  - adjoint representation (defined by $if_{abc} = 2\mathrm{Tr}([t^a, t^b]t^c)$ —> 8 (8x8) matrices)

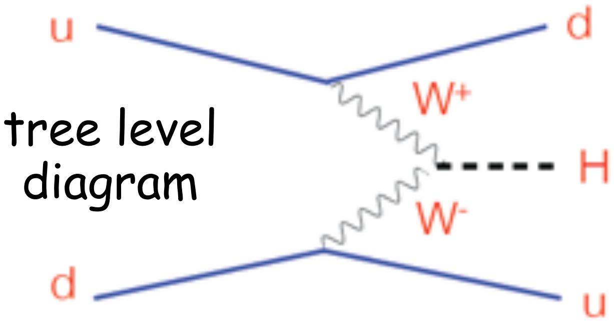


$$\sum_{cd} f_{acd}f_{bcd} = C_A\delta_{ab} \qquad C_A = N$$

color at work: a loop calculation

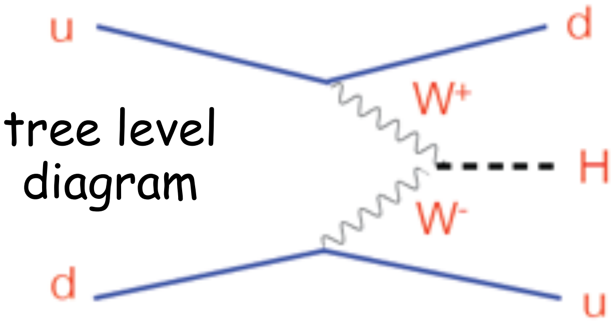
- vector boson fusion is an important Higgs search channel at the LHC

tree level diagram



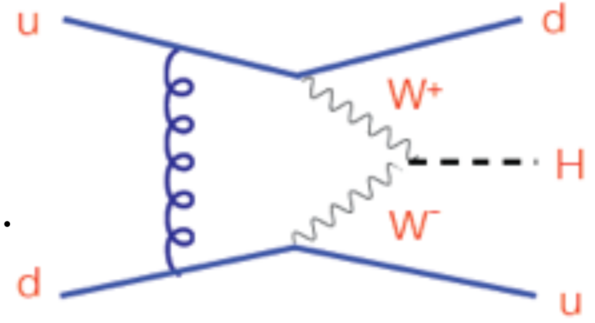
color at work: a loop calculation

- vector boson fusion is an important Higgs search channel at the LHC



tree level
diagram

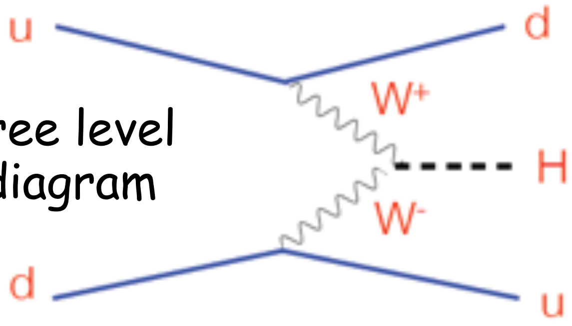
simple picture
receives NLO
corrections, e.g.



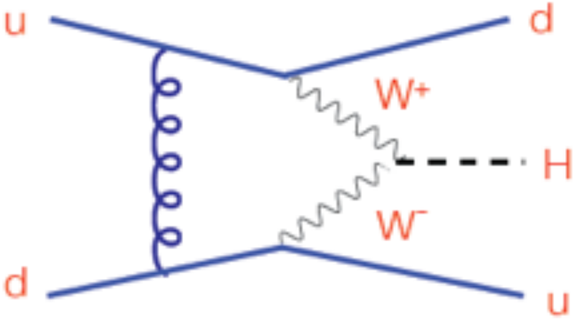
color at work: a loop calculation

- vector boson fusion is an important Higgs search channel at the LHC

tree level diagram



simple picture receives NLO corrections, e.g.



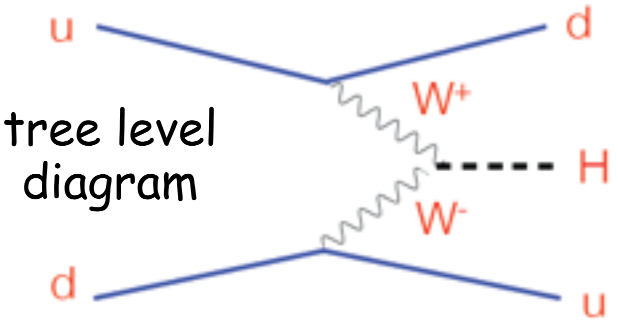
vanishes when interfered with LO diagram

WHY ?

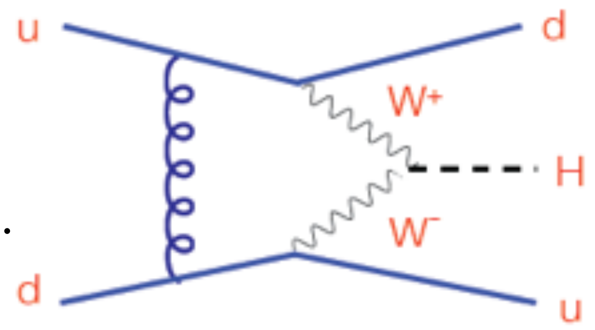
color at work: a loop calculation

- vector boson fusion is an important Higgs search channel at the LHC

tree level diagram

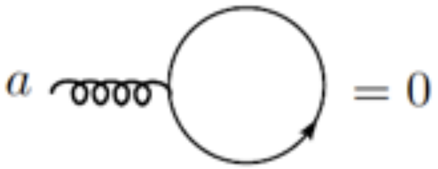


simple picture receives NLO corrections, e.g.



vanishes when interfered with LO diagram

WHY ?

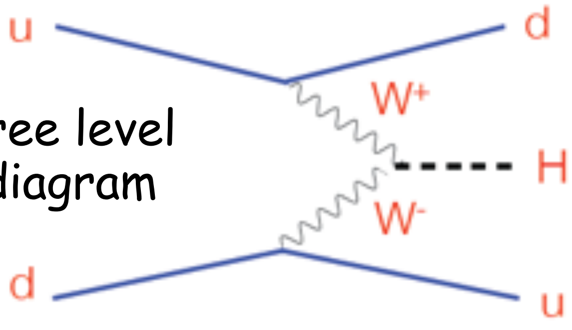


$$\mathrm{Tr}(t^a) = 0$$

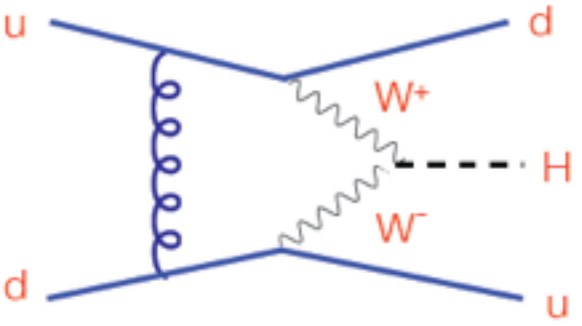
color at work: a loop calculation

- vector boson fusion is an important Higgs search channel at the LHC

tree level diagram



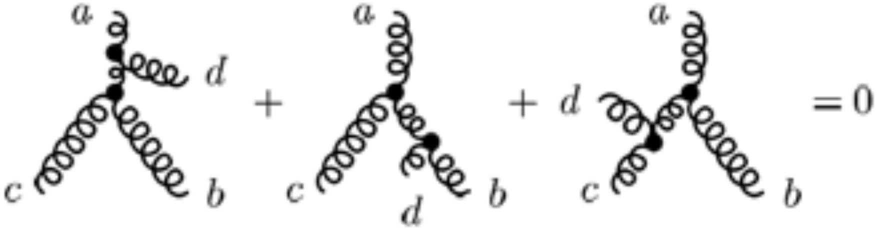
simple picture receives NLO corrections, e.g.



vanishes when interfered with LO diagram

- useful Jacobi identity

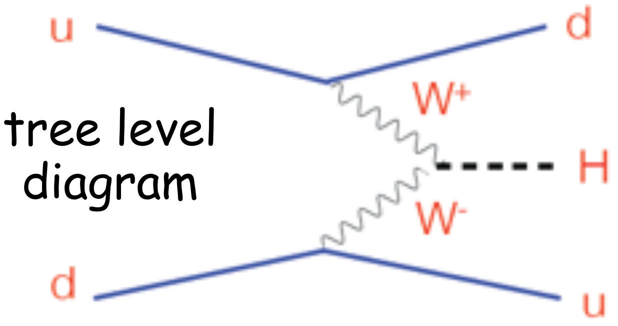
$$f_{abe}f_{cde} + f_{bce}f_{ade} + f_{cae}f_{bde} = 0$$



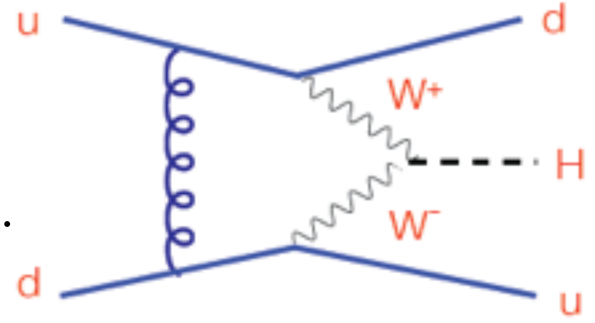
color at work: a loop calculation

- vector boson fusion is an important Higgs search channel at the LHC

tree level diagram



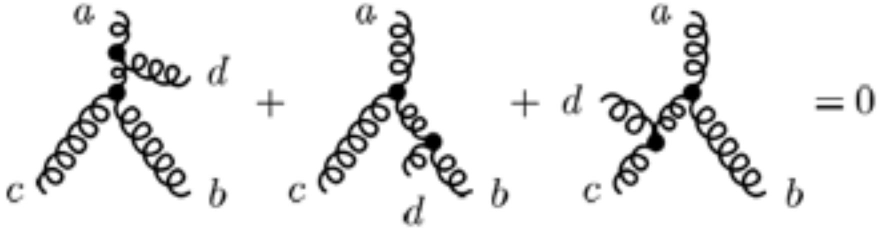
simple picture receives NLO corrections, e.g.



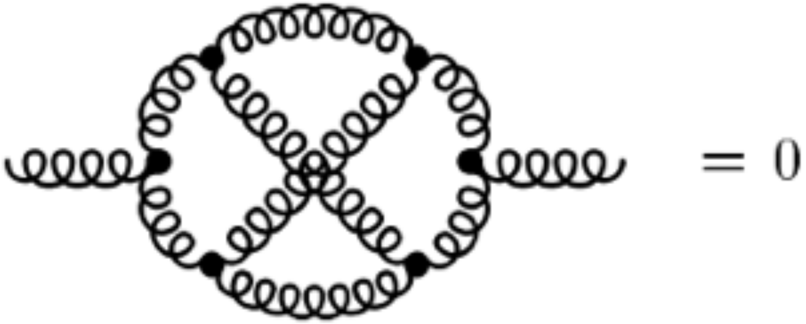
vanishes when interfered with LO diagram

- useful Jacobi identity

$$\mathbf{f_{abe}f_{cde} + f_{bce}f_{ade} + f_{cae}f_{bde} = 0}$$



find



color at work: leading color approximation

example from J. Campbell's lectures

- to simplify large scale QCD calculations, one often works in the **leading color approximation**

what is it all about?

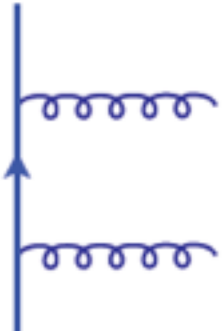
color at work: leading color approximation

example from J. Campbell's lectures

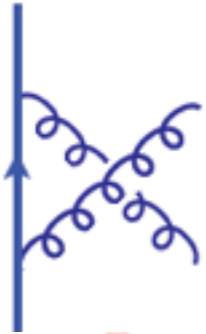
- to simplify large scale QCD calculations, one often works in the leading color approximation

what is it all about?

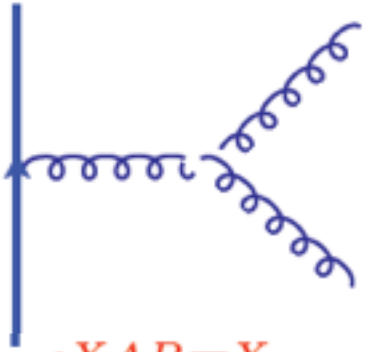
- simplest example: 2gluon + W production (W boson dropped - color neutral)



$C_1 : T^A T^B$



$C_2 : T^B T^A$



$C_3 : f^{XAB} T^X$

$= T^A T^B - T^B T^A$

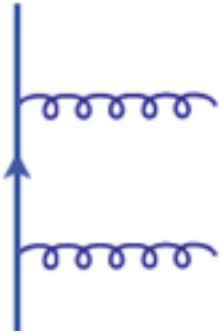
color at work: leading color approximation

example from J. Campbell's lectures

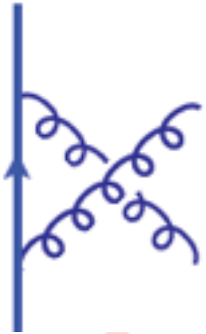
- to simplify large scale QCD calculations, one often works in the **leading color approximation**

what is it all about?

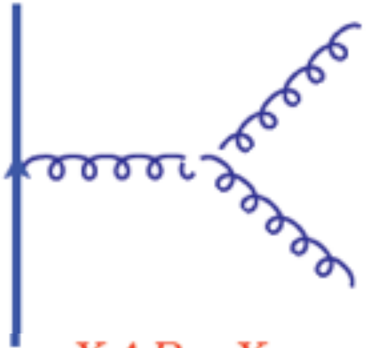
- simplest example: 2gluon + W production (W boson dropped - color neutral)



$C_1 : T^A T^B$



$C_2 : T^B T^A$

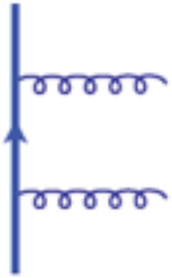


$C_3 : f^{XAB} T^X$

$= T^A T^B - T^B T^A$

hence, only two color ordered structures

$C_1 + C_3 :$

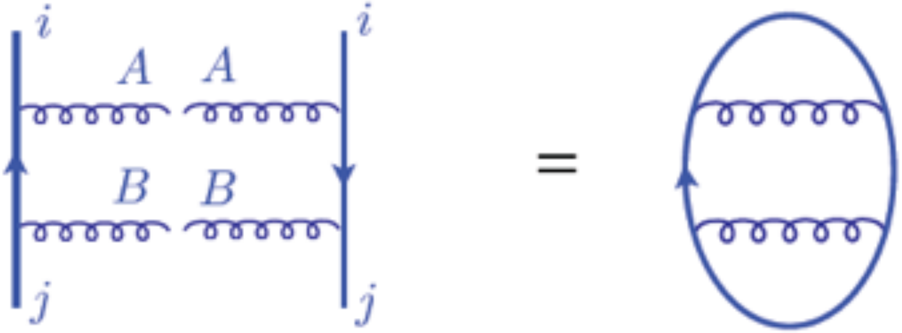


$C_2 - C_3 :$

leading color approximation (cont'd)

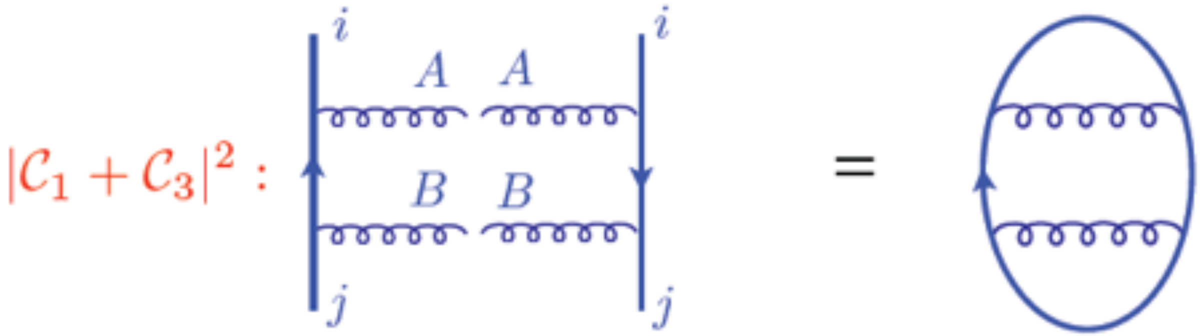
- need to square amplitudes to get cross section, e.g.:

$|\mathcal{C}_1 + \mathcal{C}_3|^2 :$

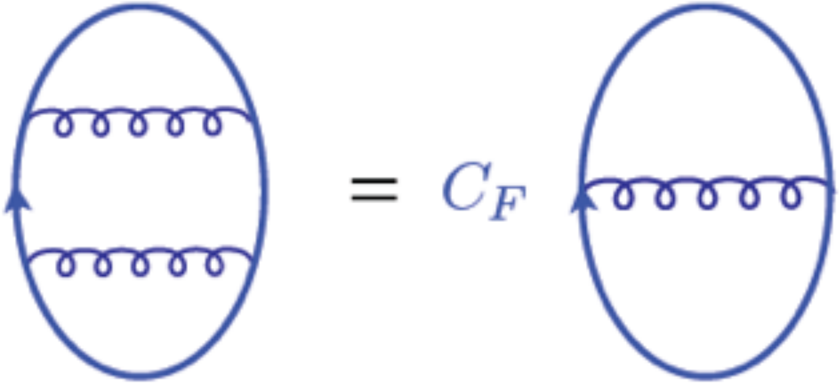


leading color approximation (cont'd)

- need to square amplitudes to get cross section, e.g.:



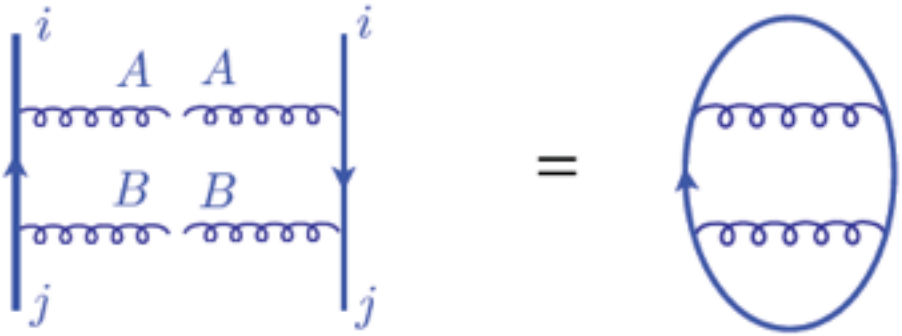
- apply powerful pictorial rules to compute



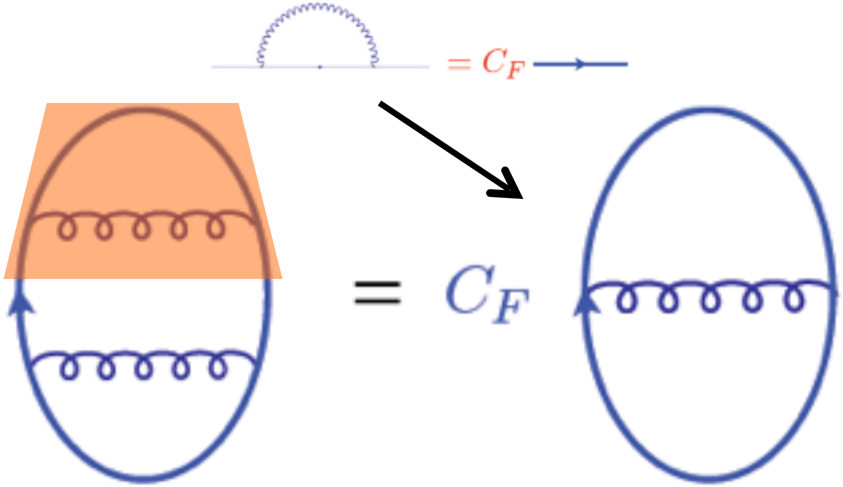
leading color approximation (cont'd)

- need to square amplitudes to get cross section, e.g.:

$|C_1 + C_3|^2 :$



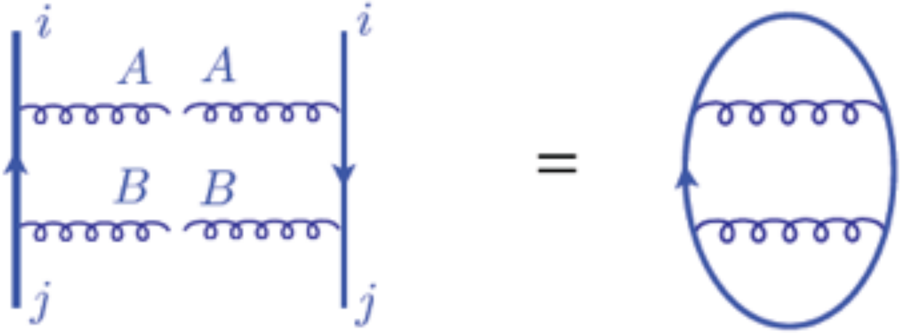
- apply powerful pictorial rules to compute



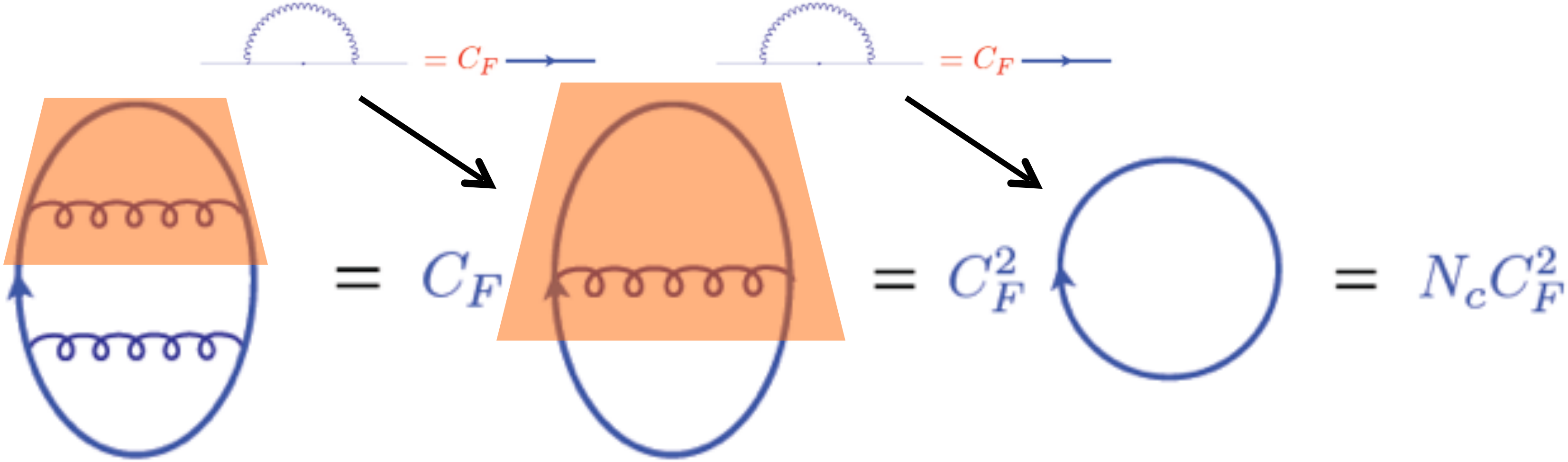
leading color approximation (cont'd)

- need to square amplitudes to get cross section, e.g.:

$|\mathcal{C}_1 + \mathcal{C}_3|^2 :$

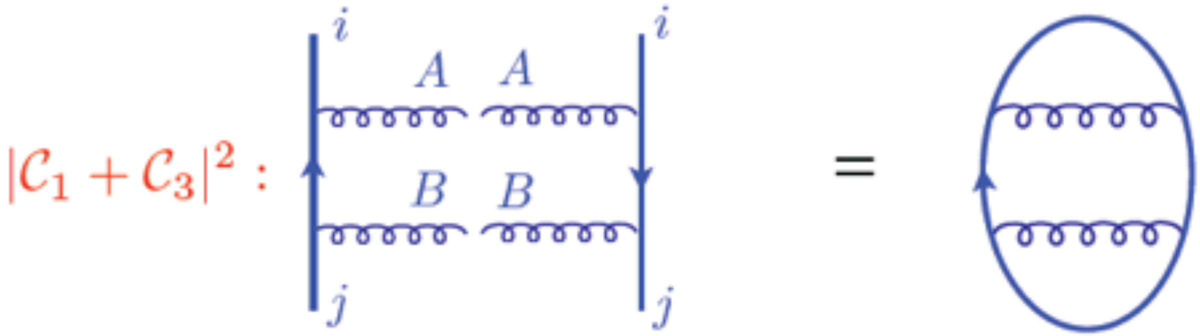


- apply powerful pictorial rules to compute

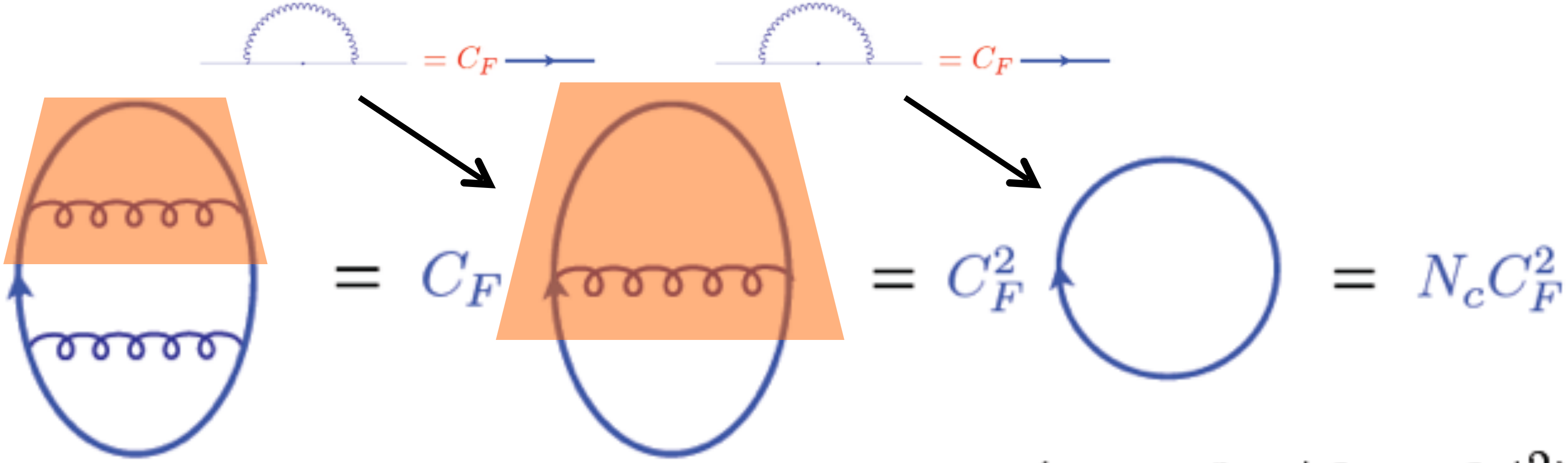


leading color approximation (cont'd)

- need to square amplitudes to get cross section, e.g.:



- apply powerful pictorial rules to compute



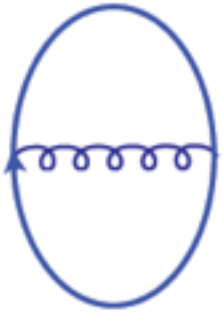
(same for $|\mathcal{C}_2-\mathcal{C}_3|^2$)

leading color approximation (cont'd)

- interference term needs to be massaged (use Fierz identity)

$(\mathcal{C}_1+\mathcal{C}_3)(\mathcal{C}_2-\mathcal{C}_3)^*$:

$= -\frac{1}{2N_c}$

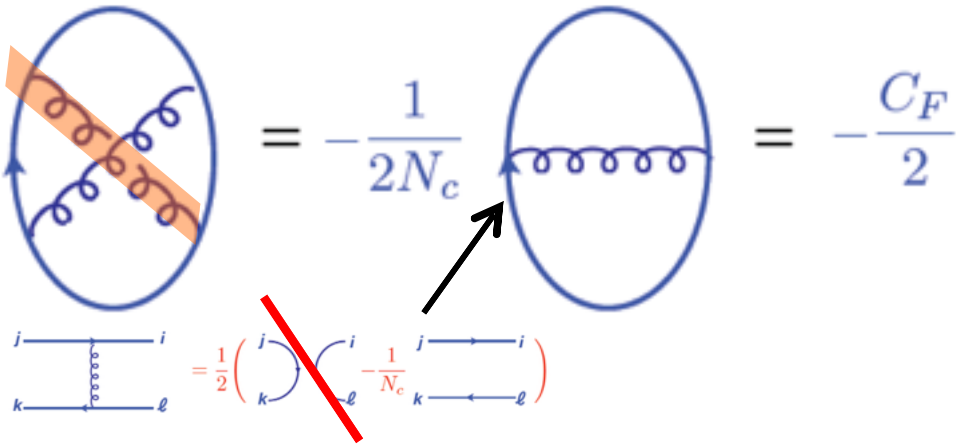


$= -\frac{C_F}{2}$

leading color approximation (cont'd)

- interference term needs to be massaged (use Fierz identity)

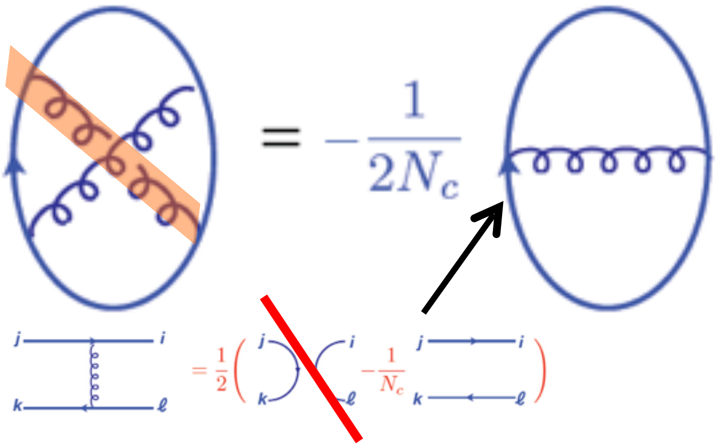
$(\mathcal{C}_1 + \mathcal{C}_3)(\mathcal{C}_2 - \mathcal{C}_3)^*$:



does not contribute: Tr $(t^a) = 0$

leading color approximation (cont'd)

- interference term needs to be massaged (use Fierz identity)



$$(C_1 + C_3)(C_2 - C_3)^* : \qquad = -\frac{1}{2N_c} \qquad = -\frac{C_F}{2}$$

does not contribute: Tr (t^a) = 0

- combine results for [after some reshuffling, use $N_c\, C_F^2 = (N_c^2\, C_F - C_F)/2$]

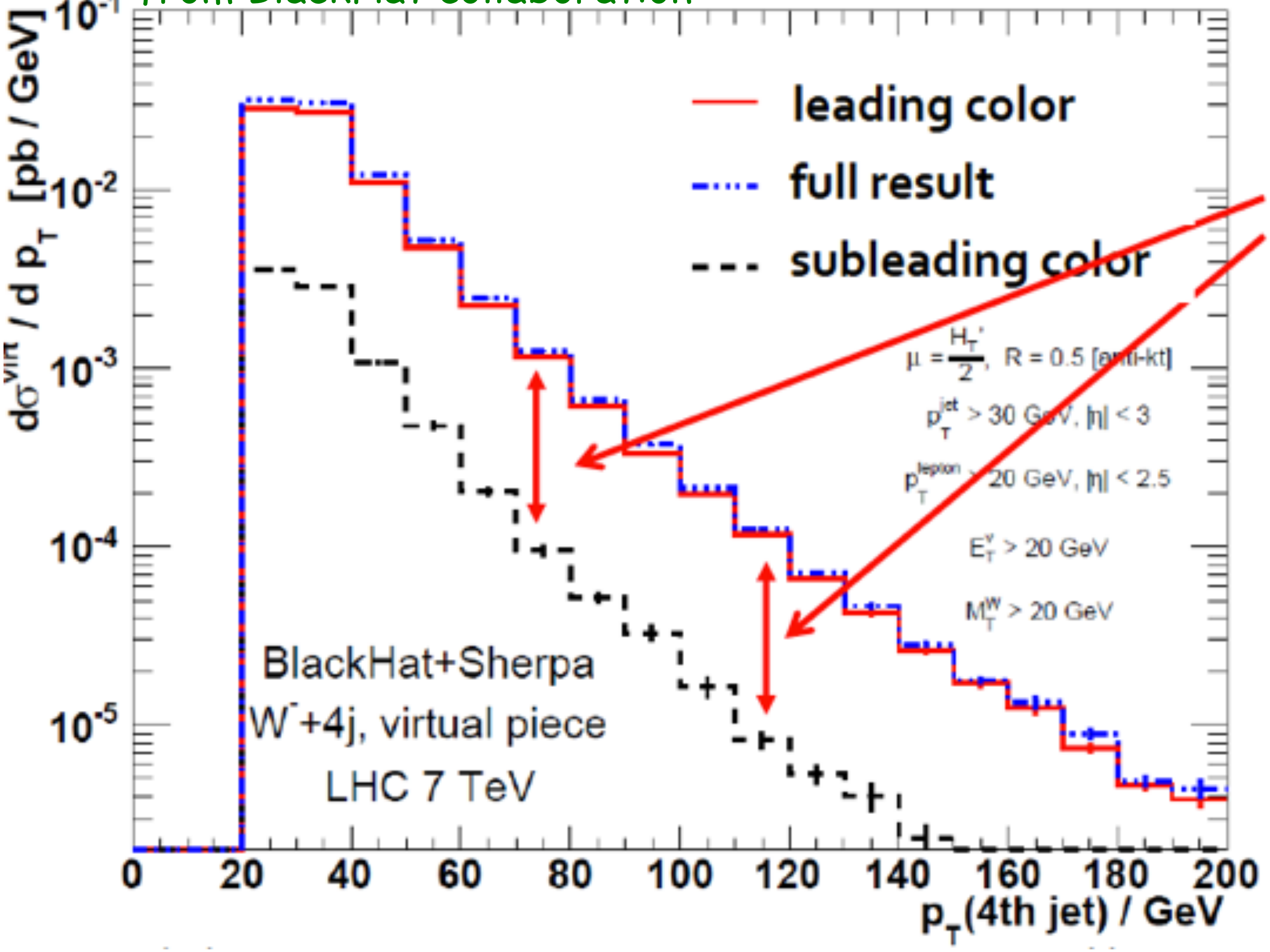
$$\frac{N_c^2 C_F}{2}\left(|C_1 + C_3|^2 + |C_2 - C_3|^2 - \frac{1}{N_c^2}|C_1 + C_2|^2 \right)$$

leading color contribution

$1/N_c^2$ suppressed

this structure only appears for QED-like diagrams w/o the three gluon vertex

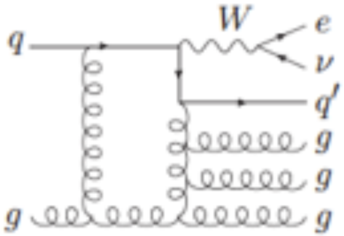
leading color approximation at work



from BlackHat collaboration

works very well

W+4jets @ NLO



experimental support for SU(3)

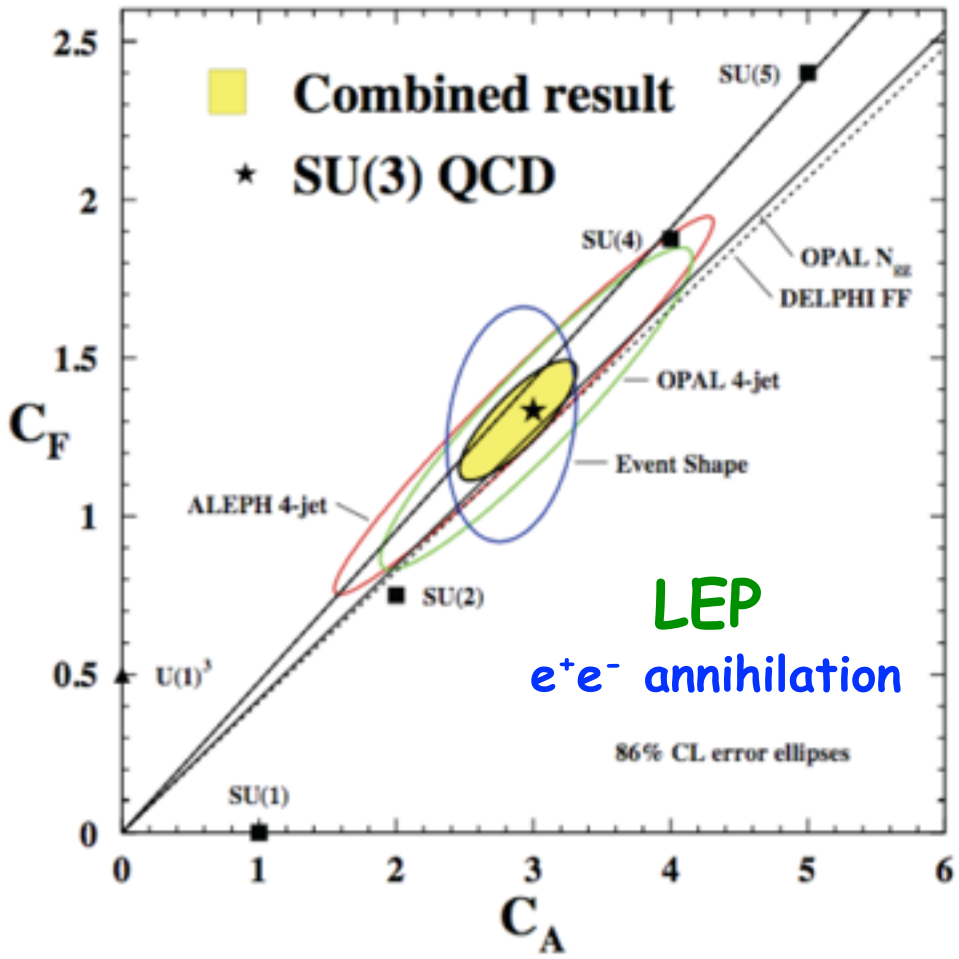
- color factors are not just math

  assumed group structure has impact on theoretical predictions

experimental support for SU(3)

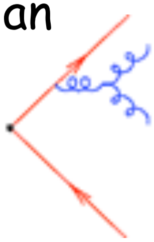
- color factors are not just math

assumed group structure has
impact on theoretical predictions



- angular correlations between four jets depend on C_A/C_F and T_F/C_F
- sensitivity to non-Abelian three-gluon-vertex

LO: Ellis, Ross, Terrano

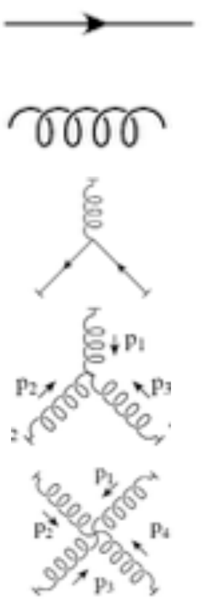


QCD Lagrangian & Feynman rules

L_{QCD} encodes all physics related to strong interactions

for perturbative calculations we simply read off the **Feynman rules**

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{QCD}} &= \bar{\Psi}(i\partial_\mu\gamma^\mu - m)\Psi \\
&- (\partial_\mu A_\nu - \partial_\nu A_\mu)^2 \\
&- g\bar{\Psi}A^a_\mu T_a \gamma^\mu \Psi \\
&- \frac{1}{2}g(\partial_\mu A^a_\nu - \partial_\nu A^a_\mu) f_{abc} A^{\mu b} A^{\nu c} \\
&- \frac{1}{4}g^2 f_{abc} A^b_\mu A^c_\nu f_{ade} A^{\mu d} A^{\nu e}
\end{aligned}
$$



like in QED

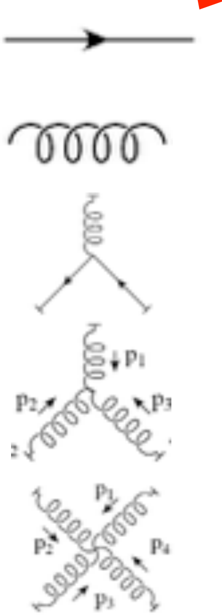
non abelian

QCD Lagrangian & Feynman rules

L_{QCD} encodes all physics related to strong interactions

for perturbative calculations we simply read off the **Feynman rules**

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{L}_{\rm QCD} &= \bar{\Psi}(i\partial_\mu\gamma^\mu - m)\Psi \\
&- (\partial_\mu A_\nu - \partial_\nu A_\mu)^2 \\
&- g\bar{\Psi}A^a_\mu T_a\gamma^\mu\Psi \\
&- \frac{1}{2}g(\partial_\mu A^a_\nu - \partial_\nu A^a_\mu)f_{abc}A^{\mu b}A^{\nu c} \\
&- \frac{1}{4}g^2 f_{abc}A^b_\mu A^c_\nu f_{ade}A^{\mu d}A^{\nu e}
\end{aligned}$$



like in QED

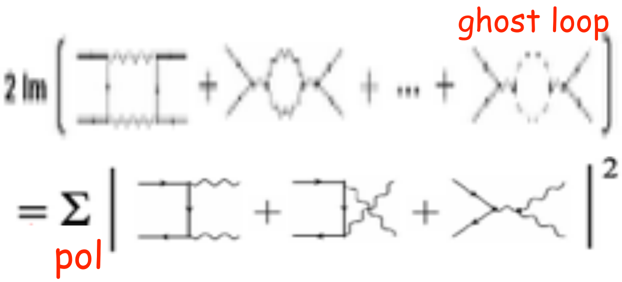
- - - - - -

non abelian

technical complications due to the gauge-fixing & ghost terms:

gauge-fixing: needed to define gluon propagator; breaks gauge-invariance but all physical results are independent of the gauge

ghosts: cancel unphysical degrees of freedom → unitarity



recall: gauge invariance in QED

$$\mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{QED}} = \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{Dirac}} + \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{Maxwell}} + \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{int}}$$

$$= \bar{\mathbf{\Psi}}(\mathbf{i}\not{\partial} \;\; - \mathbf{m})\mathbf{\Psi} - \frac{1}{4}\mathbf{F}_{\mu\nu}\mathbf{F}^{\mu\nu} - \mathbf{q}\bar{\mathbf{\Psi}}\gamma_\mu\mathbf{\Psi}\mathbf{A}^\mu$$

$$= \bar{\mathbf{\Psi}}(\mathbf{i}\not{\mathbf{D}} \;\; - \mathbf{m})\mathbf{\Psi} - \frac{1}{4}\mathbf{F}_{\mu\nu}\mathbf{F}^{\mu\nu}$$

recall: gauge invariance in QED

$$\mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{QED}} = \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{Dirac}} + \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{Maxwell}} + \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{int}}$$

$$= \bar{\Psi}(i\not{\partial} - m)\Psi - \frac{1}{4}F_{\mu\nu}F^{\mu\nu} - q\bar{\Psi}\gamma_\mu\Psi A^\mu$$

$$= \bar{\Psi}(i\not{D} - m)\Psi - \frac{1}{4}F_{\mu\nu}F^{\mu\nu}$$

electromagnetic vector potential A_μ

field strength tensor $F_{\mu\nu} = \partial_\mu A_\nu - \partial_\nu A_\mu$

covariant derivative $D_\mu = \partial_\mu + iq\,A_\mu$

recall: gauge invariance in QED

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{QED}} &= \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{Dirac}} + \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{Maxwell}} + \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{int}} \\ &= \bar{\Psi}(i\partial\!\!\!/ \;- m)\Psi - \frac{1}{4}F_{\mu\nu}F^{\mu\nu} - q\bar{\Psi}\gamma_\mu\Psi A^\mu \\ &= \bar{\Psi}(iD\!\!\!\!/ \;- m)\Psi - \frac{1}{4}F_{\mu\nu}F^{\mu\nu}\end{aligned}$$

electromagnetic vector potential A_μ

field strength tensor $F_{\mu\nu} = \partial_\mu A_\nu - \partial_\nu A_\mu$

covariant derivative $D_\mu = \partial_\mu + iq\,A_\mu$

invariant under **local gauge (phase) transformation**

$$\Psi(x) \to \Psi'(x) = e^{i\alpha(x)}\Psi(x)$$

$$A_\mu(x) \to A'_\mu = A_\mu(x) - \frac{1}{q}\partial_\mu\alpha(x)$$

- dictates interaction term
- photon mass term would violate gauge invariance

$$\sim m_\gamma^2 A_\mu A^\mu$$

recall: gauge invariance in QED

$$\mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{QED}} = \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{Dirac}} + \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{Maxwell}} + \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{int}}$$

$$= \bar{\Psi}(i\partial\!\!\!/ - m)\Psi - \frac{1}{4}F_{\mu\nu}F^{\mu\nu} - q\bar{\Psi}\gamma_\mu\Psi A^\mu$$

$$= \bar{\Psi}(iD\!\!\!\!/ - m)\Psi - \frac{1}{4}F_{\mu\nu}F^{\mu\nu}$$

electromagnetic vector potential A_μ

photon field carries no electric charge

field strength tensor $F_{\mu\nu} = \partial_\mu A_\nu - \partial_\nu A_\mu$

field strength itself gauge invariant

covariant derivative $D_\mu = \partial_\mu + iq\,A_\mu$

"covariant" = $D_\mu\psi$ transforms as ψ

invariant under **local gauge (phase) transformation**

$$\Psi(x) \rightarrow \Psi'(x) = e^{i\alpha(x)}\Psi(x)$$

$$A_\mu(x) \rightarrow A'_\mu = A_\mu(x) - \frac{1}{q}\partial_\mu\alpha(x)$$

- dictates interaction term
- photon mass term would violate gauge invariance

$$\sim m_\gamma^2 A_\mu A^\mu$$

recall: gauge invariance in QED

$$\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{QED}} = \mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{Dirac}} + \mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{Maxwell}} + \mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{int}}$$

$$= \bar{\Psi}(i\not\partial - m)\Psi - \frac{1}{4}F_{\mu\nu}F^{\mu\nu} - q\bar{\Psi}\gamma_\mu\Psi A^\mu$$

$$= \bar{\Psi}(i\not D - m)\Psi - \frac{1}{4}F_{\mu\nu}F^{\mu\nu}$$

electromagnetic vec

field strength tens

covariant derivative $D_\mu = \partial_\mu + iq A_\mu$

more cumbersome to demonstrate for QCD

ength itself
invariant

' =
$D_\mu\psi$ transforms as ψ

invariant under local gauge (phase) transformation

$$\Psi(x) \rightarrow \Psi'(x) = e^{i\alpha(x)}\Psi(x)$$

$$A_\mu(x) \rightarrow A'_\mu = A_\mu(x) - \frac{1}{q}\partial_\mu\alpha(x)$$

- dictates interaction term
- photon mass term would violate gauge invariance

$$\sim m_\gamma^2 A_\mu A^\mu$$

a closer look at the QCD Lagrangian

- Yang and Mills proposed in 1954 that the local "phase rotation" in QED could be generalized to non Abelian groups such as SU(3)

$$\mathcal{L} = -\frac{1}{4} \mathbf{F}^{\mu\nu}_{\mathbf{a}} \mathbf{F}^{\mathbf{a}}_{\mu\nu} + \sum_{\mathbf{f}} \bar{\Psi}^{(\mathbf{f})}_{\mathbf{i}} (\mathbf{i} \not{\mathbf{D}}_{\mathbf{ij}} - \mathbf{m_f}\, \delta_{\mathbf{ij}}) \Psi^{(\mathbf{f})}_{\mathbf{j}}$$

gluon field strength
a = 1,…,8

color index
i = 1,2,3

a closer look at the QCD Lagrangian

- Yang and Mills proposed in 1954 that the local "phase rotation" in QED could be generalized to non Abelian groups such as SU(3)

$$\mathcal{L} = -\frac{1}{4} F^{\mu\nu}_{a} F^{a}_{\mu\nu} + \sum_{f} \bar{\Psi}^{(f)}_{i} (i\not{D}_{ij} \;\; - m_f \, \delta_{ij}) \Psi^{(f)}_{j}$$

gluon field strength
a = 1,…,8

color index
i = 1,2,3

- color plays a crucial role (unlike QED, field strength not gauge invariant)

$$F^{a}_{\mu\nu} = \partial_\mu A^{a}_{\nu} - \partial_\nu A^{a}_{\mu} - g_s f^{abc} A^{b}_{\mu} A^{c}_{\nu}$$

QED like but field
carries color charge

a closer look at the QCD Lagrangian

- Yang and Mills proposed in 1954 that the local "phase rotation" in QED could be generalized to non Abelian groups such as SU(3)

$$\mathcal{L} = -\frac{1}{4}\mathbf{F}^{\mu\nu}_{\mathbf{a}}\mathbf{F}^{\mathbf{a}}_{\mu\nu} + \sum_{\mathbf{f}} \bar{\Psi}^{(\mathbf{f})}_{\mathbf{i}}(\mathbf{i}\not{\mathbf{D}}_{\mathbf{ij}} - \mathbf{m_f}\,\delta_{\mathbf{ij}})\Psi^{(\mathbf{f})}_{\mathbf{j}}$$

gluon field strength
a = 1,…,8

color index
i = 1,2,3

- color plays a crucial role (unlike QED, field strength not gauge invariant)

$$\mathbf{F}^{\mathbf{a}}_{\mu\nu} = \partial_\mu \mathbf{A}^{\mathbf{a}}_\nu - \partial_\nu \mathbf{A}^{\mathbf{a}}_\mu - \mathbf{g_s}\mathbf{f}^{\mathbf{abc}}\mathbf{A}^{\mathbf{b}}_\mu \mathbf{A}^{\mathbf{c}}_\nu$$

QED like but field carries color charge

non Abelian part gives rise to **gluon self interactions**

a closer look at the QCD Lagrangian

- Yang and Mills proposed in 1954 that the local "phase rotation" in QED could be generalized to non Abelian groups such as SU(3)

$$\mathcal{L} = -\frac{1}{4}\mathbf{F}^{\mu\nu}_{\mathbf{a}}\mathbf{F}^{\mathbf{a}}_{\mu\nu} + \sum_{\mathbf{f}} \bar{\mathbf{\Psi}}^{(\mathbf{f})}_{\mathbf{i}}(\mathbf{i}\not{\mathbf{D}}_{\mathbf{ij}} - \mathbf{m}_{\mathbf{f}}\,\delta_{\mathbf{ij}})\mathbf{\Psi}^{(\mathbf{f})}_{\mathbf{j}}$$

gluon field strength
a = 1,…,8

color index
i = 1,2,3

- color plays a crucial role (unlike QED, field strength not gauge invariant)

$$\mathbf{F}^{\mathbf{a}}_{\mu\nu} = \partial_\mu \mathbf{A}^{\mathbf{a}}_\nu - \partial_\nu \mathbf{A}^{\mathbf{a}}_\mu - \mathbf{g}_{\mathbf{s}}\mathbf{f}^{\mathbf{abc}}\mathbf{A}^{\mathbf{b}}_\mu \mathbf{A}^{\mathbf{c}}_\nu$$

QED like but field carries color charge

non Abelian part gives rise to **gluon self interactions**

also in the interaction
"covariant derivative"

$$(\mathbf{D}_\mu)_{\mathbf{ij}} = \partial_\mu\,\delta_{\mathbf{ij}} + \mathbf{i}\mathbf{g}_{\mathbf{s}}\,(\mathbf{t}^{\mathbf{a}})_{\mathbf{ij}}\,\mathbf{A}^{\mathbf{a}}_\mu$$

8 generators

a closer look at the QCD Lagrangian

- Yang and Mills proposed in 1954 that the local "phase rotation" in QED could be generalized to non Abelian groups such as SU(3)

$$\mathcal{L} = -\frac{1}{4} \mathbf{F}^{\mu\nu}_{\mathbf{a}} \mathbf{F}^{\mathbf{a}}_{\mu\nu} + \sum_{\mathbf{f}} \bar{\mathbf{\Psi}}^{(\mathbf{f})}_{\mathbf{i}} (\mathbf{i} \not{\mathbf{D}}_{\mathbf{ij}} - \mathbf{m_f}\, \delta_{\mathbf{ij}}) \mathbf{\Psi}^{(\mathbf{f})}_{\mathbf{j}}$$

gluon field strength
a = 1,…,8

color index
i = 1,2,3

- color plays a crucial role (unlike QED, field strength not gauge invariant)

$$\mathbf{F}^{\mathbf{a}}_{\mu\nu} = \partial_\mu \mathbf{A}^{\mathbf{a}}_\nu - \partial_\nu \mathbf{A}^{\mathbf{a}}_\mu - \mathbf{g_s} \mathbf{f}^{\mathbf{abc}} \mathbf{A}^{\mathbf{b}}_\mu \mathbf{A}^{\mathbf{c}}_\nu$$

QED like but field carries color charge

non Abelian part gives rise to **gluon self interactions**

also in the interaction
"covariant derivative"

$$(\mathbf{D}_\mu)_{\mathbf{ij}} = \partial_\mu \delta_{\mathbf{ij}} + \mathbf{i}\mathbf{g_s} (\mathbf{t^a})_{\mathbf{ij}} \mathbf{A}^{\mathbf{a}}_\mu$$

8 generators

- QCD interaction is flavor blind

- **coupling g_s is the only parameter** (masses have e-w origin)

QCD gauge transformations

- demand that QCD Lagrangian is invariant under local gauge transformations

  i.e., redefining the quark and gluon fields independently at each space-time point has no impact on the physics

QCD gauge transformations

- demand that QCD Lagrangian is invariant under local gauge transformations
  i.e., redefining the quark and gluon fields independently at each space-time point has no impact on the physics

more cumbersome to demonstrate

short-hand
notation

- redefine quark fields: $\Psi(x) \rightarrow \Psi'(x) = e^{i\alpha_a(x)t^a}\Psi(x) \equiv U(x)\,\Psi(x)$

likewise $\bar{\Psi}' = \bar{\Psi}U^\dagger$

QCD gauge transformations

- demand that QCD Lagrangian is invariant under local gauge transformations
  i.e., redefining the quark and gluon fields independently at each space-time point has no impact on the physics

more cumbersome to demonstrate

short-hand notation

- redefine quark fields: $\Psi(x) \rightarrow \Psi'(x) = e^{i\alpha_a(x)t^a}\Psi(x) \equiv \boxed{U(x)}\,\Psi(x)$

  likewise $\bar{\Psi}' = \bar{\Psi}U^\dagger$

- one way is to study explicitly an infinitesimal transformation $U(x) = 1 + i\alpha_a(x)\,t^a$
  see QCD book by T. Muta for details

- covariant derivative must transform "with the quark field"

$$D_\mu\Psi \rightarrow (D'_\mu)_{ik}\Psi'_k = U_{ij}(x)(D_\mu)_{jk}(x)\Psi_k(x)$$

QCD gauge transformations

- demand that QCD Lagrangian is invariant under local gauge transformations
  i.e., redefining the quark and gluon fields independently at each space-time point has no impact on the physics

more cumbersome to demonstrate

short-hand
notation

- redefine quark fields: $\Psi(x) \rightarrow \Psi'(x) = e^{i\alpha_a(x)t^a}\Psi(x) \equiv U(x)\,\Psi(x)$

  likewise $\bar{\Psi}' = \bar{\Psi}U^\dagger$

- one way is to study explicitly an infinitesimal transformation $U(x) = 1 + i\alpha_a(x)\,t^a$

  see QCD book by T. Muta for details

- covariant derivative must transform "with the quark field"

$$D_\mu\Psi \rightarrow (D'_\mu)_{ik}\Psi'_k = U_{ij}(x)(D_\mu)_{jk}(x)\Psi_k(x)$$

- sufficient to demonstrate gauge invariance of quark term

$$\mathcal{L} = -\frac{1}{4}F_a^{\mu\nu}F^a_{\mu\nu} + \sum_f \bar{\Psi}_i^{(f)}(i\not{D}_{ij} - m_f\,\delta_{ij})\Psi_j^{(f)}$$

✔

QCD gauge transformations

- demand that QCD Lagrangian is invariant under local gauge transformations
  i.e., redefining the quark and gluon fields independently at each space-time point has no impact on the physics

more cumbersome to demonstrate

short-hand notation

- redefine quark fields: $\Psi(x) \rightarrow \Psi'(x) = e^{i\alpha_a(x)t^a}\Psi(x) \equiv U(x)\,\Psi(x)$

  likewise $\bar{\Psi}' = \bar{\Psi}U^{\dagger}$

- one way is to study explicitly an infinitesimal transformation $U(x) = 1 + i\alpha_a(x)\,t^a$
  see QCD book by T. Muta for details

- covariant derivative must transform "with the quark field"

$$D_\mu\Psi \rightarrow (D'_\mu)_{ik}\Psi'_k = U_{ij}(x)(D_\mu)_{jk}(x)\Psi_k(x)$$

- sufficient to demonstrate gauge invariance of quark term

$$\mathcal{L} = -\frac{1}{4}F_a^{\mu\nu}F^a_{\mu\nu} + \sum_f \bar{\Psi}_i^{(f)}(i\not{D}_{ij} - m_f\,\delta_{ij})\Psi_j^{(f)}$$ ✓

- aside: gauge field transforms as $t^a A_a \rightarrow t^a A'_a = U\,t^a A_a\,U^{-1} + \frac{i}{g_s}(\partial U)\,U^{-1}$

  non Abelian part

QCD gauge transformations (cont’d)

- invariance of the first term more difficult to show

$$\mathcal{L} = -\frac{1}{4}\mathbf{F}_{a}^{\mu\nu}\mathbf{F}^{a}_{\mu\nu} + \sum_{f} \bar{\Psi}_{i}^{(f)}(i\not{D}_{ij} \;\; - m_f\,\delta_{ij})\Psi_{j}^{(f)}$$

QCD gauge transformations (cont'd)

- invariance of the first term more difficult to show

$$\mathcal{L} = -\frac{1}{4}F^{\mu\nu}_{a}F^{a}_{\mu\nu} + \sum_{f}\bar{\Psi}^{(f)}_{i}(i\not{D}_{ij} \ - m_f\,\delta_{ij})\Psi^{(f)}_{j}$$

- easiest to see by first re-writing field strength tensor as

$$\boxed{t_a F^a_{\mu\nu} = \frac{1}{ig_s}[D_\mu, D_\nu]}$$

to proof: use definition, commutation relation for generators, and consider action on a field

QCD gauge transformations (cont'd)

- invariance of the first term more difficult to show

$$\mathcal{L} = -\frac{1}{4}\mathbf{F}_{\mathbf{a}}^{\mu\nu}\mathbf{F}^{\mathbf{a}}_{\mu\nu} + \sum_{\mathbf{f}} \bar{\mathbf{\Psi}}_{\mathbf{i}}^{(\mathbf{f})}(\mathbf{i}\not{\mathbf{D}}_{\mathbf{ij}} - \mathbf{m}_{\mathbf{f}}\,\delta_{\mathbf{ij}})\mathbf{\Psi}_{\mathbf{j}}^{(\mathbf{f})}$$

- easiest to see by first re-writing field strength tensor as

$$\boxed{\mathbf{t}_{\mathbf{a}}\mathbf{F}^{\mathbf{a}}_{\mu\nu} = \frac{1}{\mathbf{i}\mathbf{g}_{\mathbf{s}}}[\mathbf{D}_\mu, \mathbf{D}_\nu]}$$

to proof: use definition, commutation relation for generators, and consider action on a field

- exploit that the commutator transforms as the covariant derivative itself

$$[\mathbf{D}_\mu, \mathbf{D}_\nu]_{\mathbf{ik}}\mathbf{\Psi}_{\mathbf{k}} \rightarrow \mathbf{U}_{\mathbf{ij}}\,[\mathbf{D}_\mu, \mathbf{D}_\nu]_{\mathbf{jk}}\mathbf{\Psi}_{\mathbf{k}}$$

QCD gauge transformations (cont'd)

- invariance of the first term more difficult to show

$$\mathcal{L} = -\frac{1}{4}F_a^{\mu\nu}F^a_{\mu\nu} + \sum_f \bar{\Psi}_i^{(f)}(i\not{D}_{ij} - m_f\,\delta_{ij})\Psi_j^{(f)}$$

- easiest to see by first re-writing field strength tensor as

$$\boxed{t_a F^a_{\mu\nu} = \frac{1}{ig_s}[D_\mu, D_\nu]}$$

to proof: use definition, commutation relation for generators, and consider action on a field

- exploit that the commutator transforms as the covariant derivative itself

$$[D_\mu, D_\nu]_{ik}\Psi_k \rightarrow U_{ij}\,[D_\mu, D_\nu]_{jk}\Psi_k$$

- find that **field strength is not gauge invariant** (unlike in QED)

$$(t_a\,F^a_{\mu\nu})_{ij} \rightarrow U_{ik}(t_a\,F^a_{\mu\nu})_{kl}U^{-1}_{lj}$$

QCD gauge transformations (cont'd)

- invariance of the first term more difficult to show

$$\mathcal{L} = -\frac{1}{4}F_a^{\mu\nu}F^a_{\mu\nu} + \sum_f \bar{\Psi}_i^{(f)}(i\not{D}_{ij} - m_f\,\delta_{ij})\Psi_j^{(f)}$$

- easiest to see by first re-writing field strength tensor as

$$\boxed{t_a F^a_{\mu\nu} = \frac{1}{ig_s}[D_\mu, D_\nu]}$$

to proof: use definition, commutation relation for generators, and consider action on a field

- exploit that the commutator transforms as the covariant derivative itself

$$[D_\mu, D_\nu]_{ik}\Psi_k \rightarrow U_{ij}\,[D_\mu, D_\nu]_{jk}\Psi_k$$

- find that **field strength is not gauge invariant** (unlike in QED)

$$(t_a\,F^a_{\mu\nu})_{ij} \rightarrow U_{ik}(t_a\,F^a_{\mu\nu})_{kl}U^{-1}_{lj}$$

- however, the combination that appears in the Lagrangian is invariant

$$-\frac{1}{4}F^a_{\mu\nu}F_a^{\mu\nu} = -\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{Tr}(t_a\,F^a_{\mu\nu}\,t^b\,F_b^{\mu\nu})$$

trick: use $\mathrm{Tr}(t_a t_b) = 1/2\ \delta_{ab}$

QCD gauge transformations (cont'd)

- invariance of the first term more difficult to show

$$\mathcal{L} = -\frac{1}{4}\mathbf{F}^{\mu\nu}_{a}\mathbf{F}^{a}_{\mu\nu} + \sum_{f}\bar{\Psi}^{(f)}_{i}(i\not{D}_{ij} - m_f\,\delta_{ij})\Psi^{(f)}_{j}$$

- easiest to see by first re-writing field strength tensor as

$$\boxed{t_a F^a_{\mu\nu} = \frac{1}{ig_s}[D_\mu, D_\nu]}$$

to proof: use definition, commutation relation for generators, and consider action on a field

- exploit that the commutator transforms as the covariant derivative itself

$$[D_\mu, D_\nu]_{ik}\Psi_k \rightarrow U_{ij}\,[D_\mu, D_\nu]_{jk}\Psi_k$$

- find that **field strength is not gauge invariant** (unlike in QED)

$$(t_a\,F^a_{\mu\nu})_{ij} \rightarrow U_{ik}(t_a\,F^a_{\mu\nu})_{kl}U^{-1}_{lj}$$

- however, the combination that appears in the Lagrangian is invariant

$$-\frac{1}{4}F^a_{\mu\nu}F^{\mu\nu}_a = -\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{Tr}(t_a\,F^a_{\mu\nu}\,t^b\,F^{\mu\nu}_b) \rightarrow -\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{Tr}(U\,t_a\,F^a_{\mu\nu}\,U^{-1}U\,t^b\,F^{\mu\nu}_b\,U^{-1})$$

trick: use $\mathrm{Tr}(t_a t_b) = 1/2\ \delta_{ab}$

use cyclicity of trace to remove U's ✔

QCD gauge transformations (cont'd)

- invariance of the first term more difficult to show

$$\mathcal{L} = -\frac{1}{4} \mathbf{F}^{\mu\nu}_{\mathbf{a}} \mathbf{F}^{\mathbf{a}}_{\mu\nu} + \sum_{\mathbf{f}} \bar{\Psi}_{\mathbf{i}}^{(\mathbf{f})} (\mathbf{i}\not{\mathbf{D}}_{\mathbf{ij}} - \mathbf{m_f}\,\delta_{\mathbf{ij}}) \Psi_{\mathbf{j}}^{(\mathbf{f})}$$

- easiest to see by first re-writing field strength tensor as

$$\boxed{\mathbf{t_a F^a_{\mu\nu}} = \frac{1}{\mathbf{ig_s}} [\mathbf{D}_\mu, \mathbf{D}_\nu]}$$

to proof: use definition, commutation relation for generators, and consider action on a field

- exploit that the commutator transforms as the covariant derivative itself

$$[\mathbf{D}_\mu, \mathbf{D}_\nu]_{\mathbf{ik}} \Psi_{\mathbf{k}} \rightarrow \mathbf{U_{ij}}\, [\mathbf{D}_\mu, \mathbf{D}_\nu]_{\mathbf{jk}} \Psi_{\mathbf{k}}$$

- find that **field strength is not gauge invariant** (unlike in QED)

$$(\mathbf{t_a\, F^a_{\mu\nu}})_{\mathbf{ij}} \rightarrow \mathbf{U_{ik}} (\mathbf{t_a\, F^a_{\mu\nu}})_{\mathbf{kl}} \mathbf{U^{-1}_{lj}}$$

- however, the combination that appears in the Lagrangian is invariant

$$-\frac{1}{4} \mathbf{F^a_{\mu\nu} F^{\mu\nu}_a} = -\frac{1}{2} \mathbf{Tr}(\mathbf{t_a\, F^a_{\mu\nu}\, t^b\, F^{\mu\nu}_b}) \rightarrow -\frac{1}{2} \mathbf{Tr}(\mathbf{U\, t_a\, F^a_{\mu\nu}\, U^{-1} U\, t^b\, F^{\mu\nu}_b\, U^{-1}})$$

trick: use $\mathrm{Tr}(t_a t_b) = 1/2\, \delta_{ab}$

use cyclicity of trace to remove U's ✓

- like in QED, a gluon mass term is prohibited by gauge invariance

using the QCD Lagrangian: propagators

- the Lagrangian encodes all the rich physics phenomena of QCD
- in these lectures we are interested in **perturbative QCD**
  -> how to read off **Feynman rules** to compute cross sections?

using the QCD Lagrangian: propagators

- the Lagrangian encodes all the rich physics phenomena of QCD
- in these lectures we are interested in **perturbative QCD**
  -> how to read off **Feynman rules** to compute cross sections?

quark and gluon propagators

simple prescription:

- consider free, non-interacting theory ($g_s = 0$)

$$\mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{free}} = \bar{\mathbf{\Psi}}_{\mathbf{i}}(\mathbf{i}\partial_\mu\gamma^\mu - \mathbf{m})\delta_{\mathbf{ij}}\mathbf{\Psi}_{\mathbf{j}} - \frac{\mathbf{1}}{\mathbf{4}}(\partial_\mu \mathbf{A}^{\mathbf{a}}_\nu - \partial_\nu \mathbf{A}^{\mathbf{a}}_\mu)^{\mathbf{2}}$$

using the QCD Lagrangian: propagators

- the Lagrangian encodes all the rich physics phenomena of QCD
- in these lectures we are interested in **perturbative QCD**
  -> how to read off **Feynman rules** to compute cross sections?

quark and gluon propagators

simple prescription:

- consider free, non-interacting theory ($g_s = 0$)

$$\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{free}} = \bar{\Psi}_{\mathrm{i}}(\mathrm{i}\partial_\mu \gamma^\mu - \mathrm{m})\delta_{\mathrm{ij}}\Psi_{\mathrm{j}} - \frac{1}{4}(\partial_\mu \mathrm{A}^{\mathrm{a}}_\nu - \partial_\nu \mathrm{A}^{\mathrm{a}}_\mu)^2$$

- make replacement (Fourier transf.) $\mathrm{i}\partial_\mu \to \mathrm{p}_\mu$ and take "i x inverse"

using the QCD Lagrangian: propagators

- the Lagrangian encodes all the rich physics phenomena of QCD
- in these lectures we are interested in **perturbative QCD**
  -> how to read off **Feynman rules** to compute cross sections?

quark and gluon propagators

simple prescription:

- consider free, non-interacting theory (g_s = 0)

$$\mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{free}} = \bar{\Psi}_i(i\partial_\mu\gamma^\mu - m)\delta_{ij}\Psi_j - \frac{1}{4}(\partial_\mu A^a_\nu - \partial_\nu A^a_\mu)^2$$

- make replacement (Fourier transf.) $i\partial_\mu \rightarrow p_\mu$ and take "i x inverse"

quark propagator:

$$\bar{\Psi}_i(p_\mu\gamma^\mu - m)\delta_{ij}\Psi_j$$

using the QCD Lagrangian: propagators

- the Lagrangian encodes all the rich physics phenomena of QCD
- in these lectures we are interested in **perturbative QCD**
  -> how to read off **Feynman rules** to compute cross sections?

quark and gluon propagators

simple prescription:

- consider free, non-interacting theory ($g_s = 0$)

$$\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{free}} = \bar{\Psi}_i (i\partial_\mu \gamma^\mu - m)\delta_{ij}\Psi_j - \frac{1}{4}(\partial_\mu A^a_\nu - \partial_\nu A^a_\mu)^2$$

- make replacement (Fourier transf.) $i\partial_\mu \rightarrow p_\mu$ and take "i x inverse"

quark propagator:

$$\bar{\Psi}_i (p_\mu \gamma^\mu - m)\delta_{ij}\Psi_j \quad \rightarrow i\,\frac{\not{p} + m}{p^2 - m^2}\,\delta_{ij}$$

using the QCD Lagrangian: propagators

- the Lagrangian encodes all the rich physics phenomena of QCD
- in these lectures we are interested in **perturbative QCD**
  -> how to read off **Feynman rules** to compute cross sections?

quark and gluon propagators

simple prescription:

- consider free, non-interacting theory (g_s = 0)

$$\mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{free}} = \bar{\Psi}_i(i\partial_\mu\gamma^\mu - m)\delta_{ij}\Psi_j - \frac{1}{4}(\partial_\mu A^a_\nu - \partial_\nu A^a_\mu)^2$$

- make replacement (Fourier transf.) $i\partial_\mu \to p_\mu$ and take "i x inverse"

quark propagator:

$$\bar{\Psi}_i(p_\mu\gamma^\mu - m)\delta_{ij}\Psi_j \quad \to i\,\frac{\not{p} + m}{p^2 - m^2}\,\delta_{ij}$$

gluon propagator:

$$\frac{i}{2}A_\mu(p^2 g^{\mu\nu} - p^\mu p^\nu)A_\nu$$

using the QCD Lagrangian: propagators

- the Lagrangian encodes all the rich physics phenomena of QCD
- in these lectures we are interested in **perturbative QCD**
  -> how to read off **Feynman rules** to compute cross sections?

quark and gluon propagators

simple prescription:

- consider free, non-interacting theory ($g_s = 0$)

$$\mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{free}} = \bar{\Psi}_i(i\partial_\mu\gamma^\mu - m)\delta_{ij}\Psi_j - \frac{1}{4}(\partial_\mu A^a_\nu - \partial_\nu A^a_\mu)^2$$

- make replacement (Fourier transf.) $i\partial_\mu \to p_\mu$ and take "i x inverse"

quark propagator:

$$\bar{\Psi}_i(p_\mu\gamma^\mu - m)\delta_{ij}\Psi_j \quad \to i\,\frac{\not{p} \;+ m}{p^2 - m^2}\,\delta_{ij}$$

gluon propagator:

$$\frac{i}{2}A_\mu(p^2 g^{\mu\nu} - p^\mu p^\nu)A_\nu$$

inverse does not exist

encounter similar problem in QED
problem is freedom of gauge

gauge fixing and the gluon propagator

solution: add a **gauge fixing term** to the Lagrangian, e.g.,

$$\mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{gauge-fixing}} = -\frac{\mathbf{1}}{\mathbf{2}\lambda}(\partial^{\mu}\mathbf{A}^{\mathbf{a}}_{\mu})^{\mathbf{2}}$$

arbitrary
Lagrange multiplier

Lorenz condition $\partial^{\mu}\mathbf{A}^{\mathbf{a}}_{\mu} = \mathbf{0}$

gauge fixing and the gluon propagator

solution: add a **gauge fixing term** to the Lagrangian, e.g.,

$$\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{gauge-fixing}} = -\frac{1}{2\lambda}(\partial^\mu A^a_\mu)^2$$

arbitrary
Lagrange multiplier

Lorenz condition $\partial^\mu A^a_\mu = 0$

- leads to extra term such that an inverse now exists

$$\frac{i}{2\lambda} A^a_\mu p^\mu p^\nu A^a_\nu \qquad \frac{-i}{p^2}\left(g_{\mu\nu} - (1-\lambda)\frac{p^\mu p^\nu}{p^2}\right)\delta^{ab}$$

- particularly simple choice is **Feynman gauge** (λ=1)

gauge fixing and the gluon propagator

solution: add a **gauge fixing term** to the Lagrangian, e.g.,

$$\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{gauge-fixing}} = -\frac{1}{2\lambda}(\partial^\mu A^a_\mu)^2$$

arbitrary
Lagrange multiplier

Lorenz condition $\partial^\mu A^a_\mu = 0$

- leads to extra term such that an inverse now exists

$$\frac{i}{2\lambda} A^a_\mu p^\mu p^\nu A^a_\nu \qquad \frac{-i}{p^2}\left(g_{\mu\nu} - (1-\lambda)\frac{p^\mu p^\nu}{p^2}\right)\delta^{ab}$$

- particularly simple choice is **Feynman gauge** (λ=1)

- gauge fixing breaks explicitly gauge invariance though
  but since λ is arbitrary this leaves us with a powerful check of calculations

any dependence on λ must ultimately cancel in physical observables

another peculiarity: ghosts

- gauge fixing leads to consistent quantization of QED
- more trouble ahead for non Abelian theories:
    - covariant gauges introduce unphysical longitudinal d.o.f. for the gluon
      as for a photon only transverse d.o.f. are physical

another peculiarity: ghosts

- gauge fixing leads to consistent quantization of QED
- more trouble ahead for non Abelian theories:
  - covariant gauges introduce unphysical longitudinal d.o.f. for the gluon
    as for a photon only transverse d.o.f. are physical
  - solution: add another term to cancel unphys. d.o.f $\mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{ghost}} = \partial_\mu \eta^{\mathbf{a}\dagger} \, \mathbf{D}^\mu_{\mathbf{ab}} \, \eta^{\mathbf{b}}$
    - complex scalar field which obeys Fermi statistics
    - new Feynman rules: propagator and gluon-ghost-ghost coupling
    - eats unphysical degrees of freedom in polarization sum

another peculiarity: ghosts

- gauge fixing leads to consistent quantization of QED
- more trouble ahead for non Abelian theories:
  - covariant gauges introduce unphysical longitudinal d.o.f. for the gluon
    as for a photon only transverse d.o.f. are physical
  - solution: add another term to cancel unphys. d.o.f $\mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{ghost}} = \partial_\mu \eta^{\mathbf{a}\dagger} \mathbf{D}^\mu_{\mathbf{ab}}\, \eta^{\mathbf{b}}$
    - complex scalar field which obeys Fermi statistics
    - new Feynman rules: propagator and gluon-ghost-ghost coupling
    - eats unphysical degrees of freedom in polarization sum

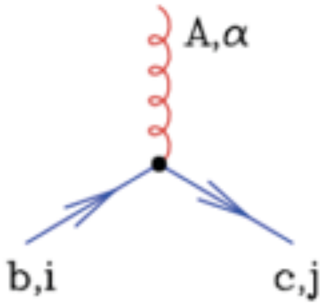
- alternatively one can choose a non-covariant (axial) gauge $\mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{axial}} = -\frac{1}{\xi}(\mathbf{n}^\mu \mathbf{A}^{\mathbf{a}}_\mu)^2$
  - at the expense of a more complicated gluon propagator

arbitrary direction

$$\frac{\mathbf{i}}{\mathbf{p}^2}\left(-\mathbf{g}_{\mu\nu} + \frac{\mathbf{n}_\mu \mathbf{p}_\nu + \mathbf{n}_\nu \mathbf{p}_\mu}{\mathbf{n}\cdot\mathbf{p}} + \frac{(\mathbf{n}^2 + \xi \mathbf{p}^2)\, \mathbf{p}_\mu \mathbf{p}_\nu}{(\mathbf{n}\cdot\mathbf{p})^2}\right)\delta_{\mathbf{ab}}$$

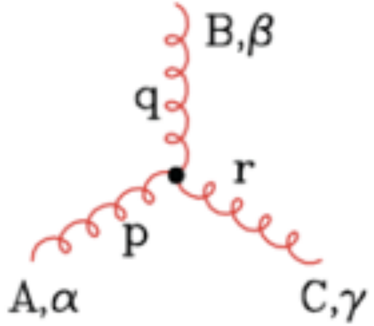
using the QCD Lagrangian: interactions

- interactions between quarks and gluons can be simply read off from the terms in the Lagrangian containing g_s



$$-ig\ \ (t^A)_{cb}\ \ (\gamma^\alpha)_{ji}$$

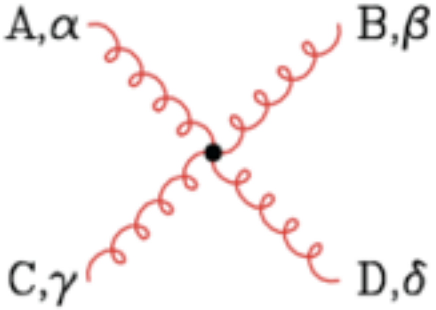
from the covariant derivative
as in QED except for color



$$-g\ \ f^{ABC}[(p-q)^\gamma g^{\alpha\beta}+(q-r)^\alpha g^{\beta\gamma}+(r-p)^\beta g^{\gamma\alpha}]$$

(all momenta incoming)

gluon self interactions



$$-ig^2\ \ f^{XAC}f^{XBD}\ \ [g^{\alpha\beta}g^{\gamma\delta}-g^{\alpha\delta}g^{\beta\gamma}]$$
$$-ig^2\ \ f^{XAD}f^{XBC}\ \ [g^{\alpha\beta}g^{\gamma\delta}-g^{\alpha\gamma}g^{\beta\delta}]$$
$$-ig^2\ \ f^{XAB}f^{XCD}\ \ [g^{\alpha\gamma}g^{\beta\delta}-g^{\alpha\delta}g^{\beta\gamma}]$$

from the g_s term in
the gluon field strength
no QED analogue

take home message for part I

THE FOUNDATIONS

QCD is based on a simple Lagrangian but has a rich phenomenology

QCD is based on the non Abelian gauge group SU(3)

- number of colors and group structure can be tested experimentally
- concept of local gauge invariance dictates interactions
- similarities to QED, yet profound differences (and more to come)
- color leads to self-interactions between "force carrying" gluons
- perturbation theory can be based on a short list of Feynman rules

color algebra decouples and can be performed separately

- color factors can be expressed in terms of two Casimirs: C_A and C_F
- powerful pictorial methods; possibility of "leading color approximation"

Part II

the QCD toolbox

asymptotic freedom, IR safety,
QCD final state, factorization

dichotomy of QCD

the gauge principle is elegant and powerful but any theory must ultimately stand (or fall) by its success (or failure)

QCD is the theory of **strong** interactions

– how can we make use of **perturbative** methods?

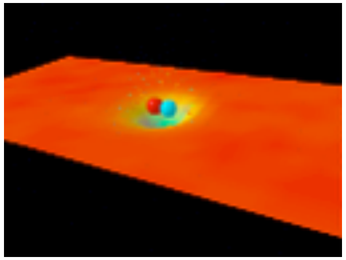
dichotomy of QCD

the gauge principle is elegant and powerful but any theory must ultimately stand (or fall) by its success (or failure)

QCD is the theory of **strong** interactions

– how can we make use of **perturbative** methods?

confinement



D. Leinweber

non-perturbative
structure of hadrons

e.g. through **lattice QCD**

asymptotic freedom

hard scattering
cross sections
and
renormalization group

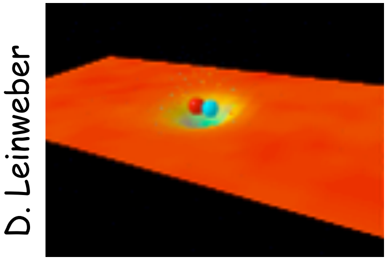
with **perturbative methods**

dichotomy of QCD

the gauge principle is elegant and powerful but any theory must ultimately stand (or fall) by its success (or failure)

QCD is the theory of **strong** interactions
– how can we make use of **perturbative** methods?

confinement



non-perturbative
structure of hadrons

e.g. through **lattice QCD**

asymptotic freedom

hard scattering
cross sections
and
renormalization group

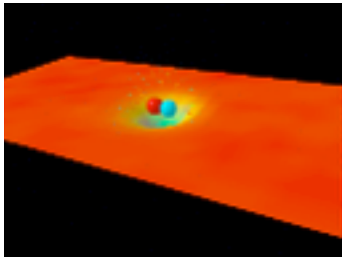
with **perturbative methods**

dichotomy of QCD

the gauge principle is elegant and powerful but any theory must ultimately stand (or fall) by its success (or failure)

QCD is the theory of **strong** interactions
– how can we make use of **perturbative** methods?

confinement



D. Leinweber

non-perturbative
structure of hadrons

e.g. through **lattice QCD**

asymptotic freedom

hard scattering
cross sections
and
renormalization group

with **perturbative methods**

interplay

probing hadronic structure with
weakly interacting quanta of asymptotic freedom

asymptotic freedom

Gross, Wilczek; Politzer ('73/'74)
Nobel prize 2004

value of strong coupling $\alpha_s = g^2/4\pi$ depends on distance r (i.e., on energy Q)

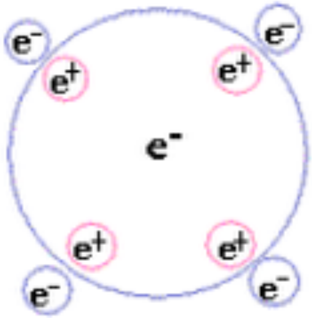
asymptotic freedom

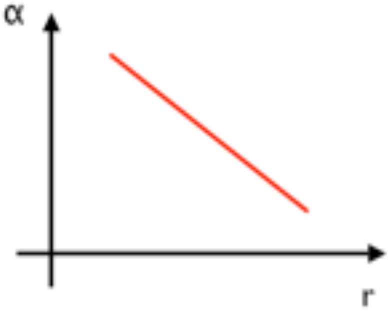
Gross, Wilczek; Politzer ('73/'74)
Nobel prize 2004

value of strong coupling $\alpha_s = g^2/4\pi$ depends on distance r (i.e., on energy Q)

like QED

"screening" of the charge





asymptotic freedom

Gross, Wilczek;
Politzer ('73/'74)
Nobel prize 2004

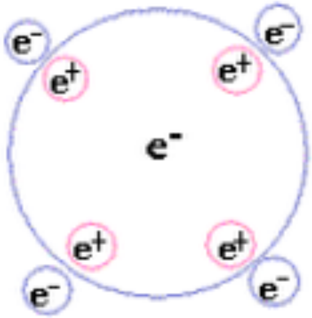
value of strong coupling $\alpha_s = g^2/4\pi$ depends on distance r (i.e., on energy Q)

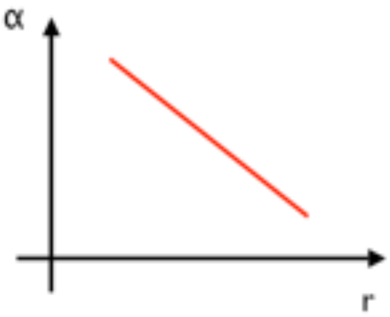
like
QED

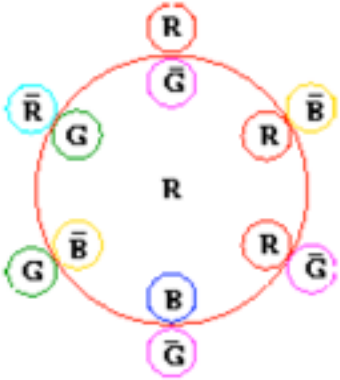
"screening" of the charge

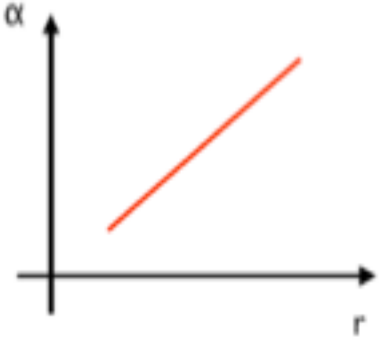
"anti-screening"

non
Abelian









asymptotic freedom

Gross, Wilczek;
Politzer ('73/'74)
Nobel prize 2004

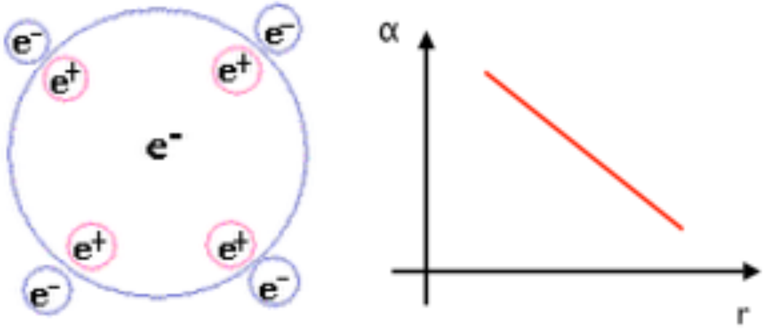
value of strong coupling $\alpha_s = g^2/4\pi$ depends on distance r (i.e., on energy Q)

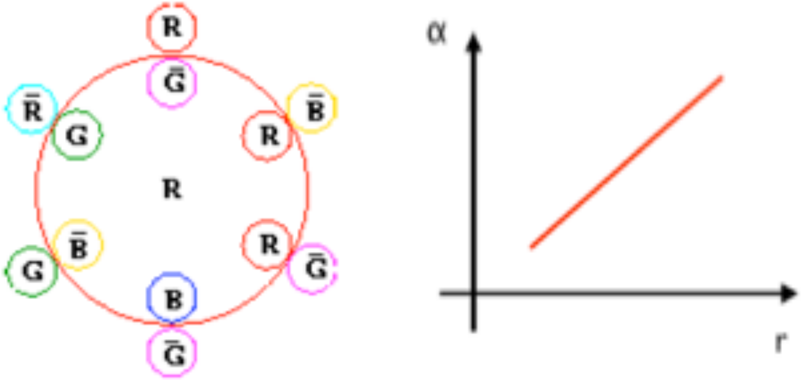
like QED

"screening" of the charge

"anti-screening"

non Abelian





who wins ?

$$\boxed{\alpha_s(Q^2) \approx \frac{4\pi}{(\frac{11}{3}C_A - \frac{4}{3}T_F N_f)\ln(Q^2/\Lambda^2)}}$$

$Q \sim 1/r$

asymptotic freedom

Gross, Wilczek; Politzer ('73/'74)
Nobel prize 2004

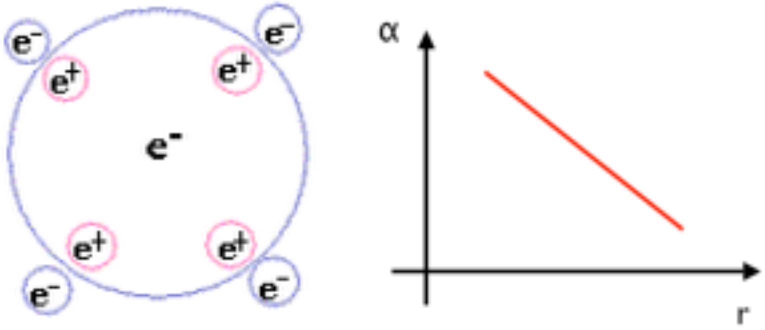
value of strong coupling $\alpha_s = g^2/4\pi$ depends on distance r (i.e., on energy Q)

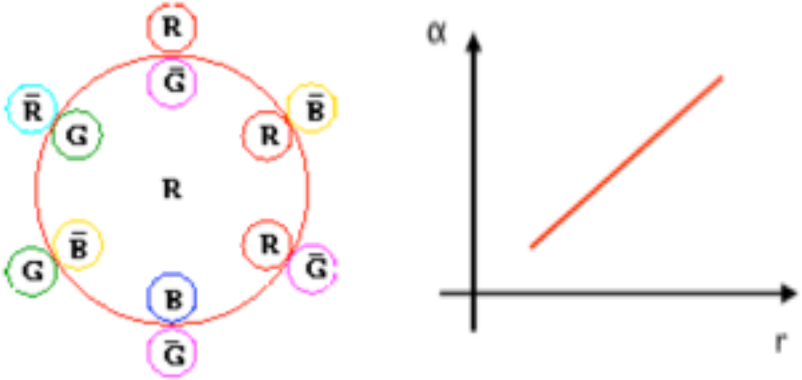
like QED

"screening" of the charge

"anti-screening"

non Abelian





who wins ?

$$\alpha_s(Q^2) \approx \frac{4\pi}{(\frac{11}{3}C_A - \frac{4}{3}T_F N_f)\ln(Q^2/\Lambda^2)}$$

$Q \sim 1/r$

asymptotic freedom

Gross, Wilczek; Politzer ('73/'74)
Nobel prize 2004

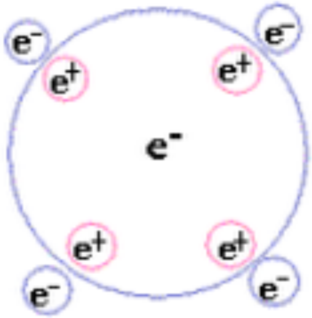
value of strong coupling $\alpha_s = g^2/4\pi$ depends on distance r (i.e., on energy Q)

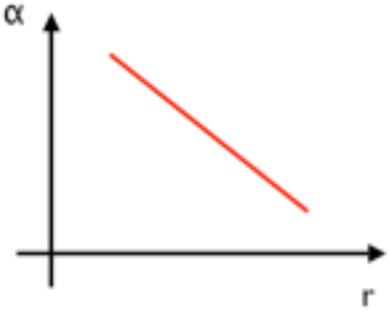
like QED

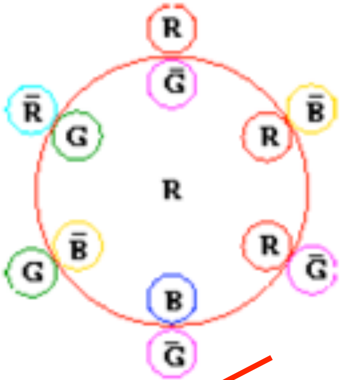
"screening" of the charge

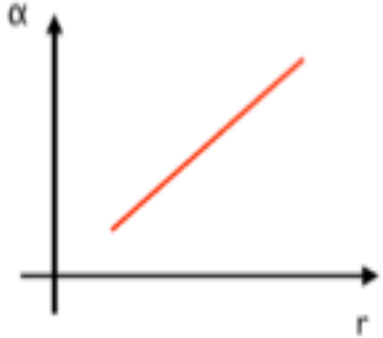
non Abelian

"anti-screening"









who wins ?

$$\alpha_s(Q^2) \approx \frac{4\pi}{(\frac{11}{3}C_A - \frac{4}{3}T_F N_f)\ln(Q^2/\Lambda^2)}$$

$Q \sim 1/r$

asymptotic freedom

Gross, Wilczek; Politzer ('73/'74)
Nobel prize 2004

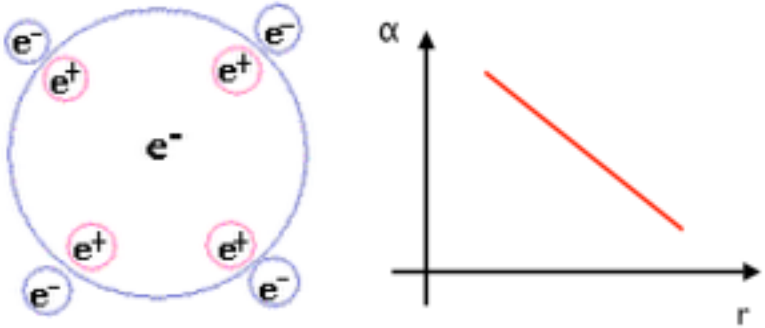
value of strong coupling $\alpha_s = g^2/4\pi$ depends on distance r (i.e., on energy Q)

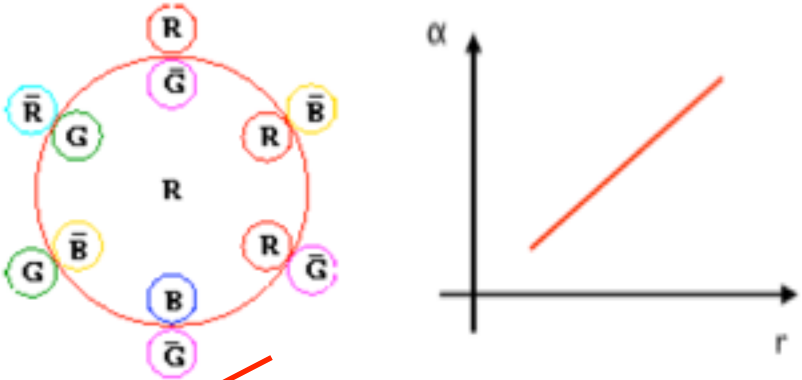
like QED

"screening" of the charge

"anti-screening"

non Abelian





who wins ?

$$\alpha_s(Q^2) \approx \frac{4\pi}{(\frac{11}{3}C_A - \frac{4}{3}T_F N_f)\ \ln(Q^2/\Lambda^2)}$$

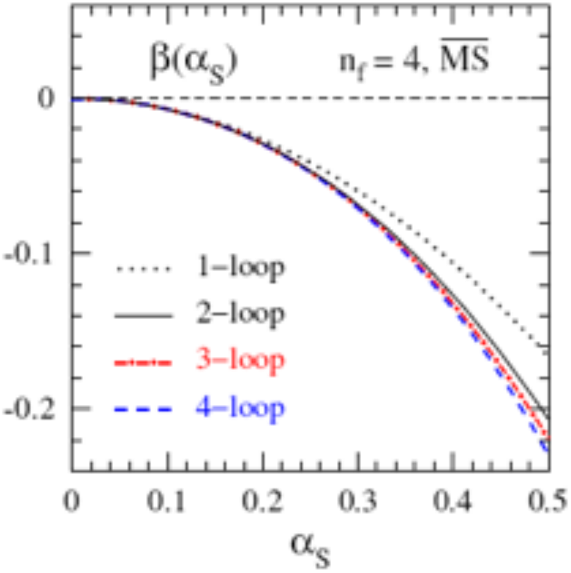
$Q \sim 1/r$

typical hadronic scale O(200 MeV)
Λ depends on N_f, pert. order and scheme

more formally: the QCD beta function

van Ritbergen, Vermaseren, Larin

$$Q^2 \frac{\partial a_s}{\partial Q^2} = \beta(a_s) = \underset{\text{LO}}{\overset{\text{('71), '73}}{-\beta_0 a_s^2}} \underset{\text{NLO}}{\overset{\text{'74}}{- \beta_1 a_s^3}} \underset{\text{NNLO}}{\overset{\text{'80}}{- \beta_2 a_s^4}} \underset{\text{N}^3\text{LO}}{\overset{\text{'97}}{- \beta_3 a_s^5}} + \ldots \qquad a_s \equiv \frac{\alpha_s}{4\pi}$$



$$\begin{aligned}
\beta_0 &= \frac{11}{3}C_A - \frac{4}{3}T_F n_f\,, \quad \beta_1 = \frac{34}{3}C_A^2 - 4C_F T_F n_f - \frac{20}{3}C_A T_F n_f \\
\beta_2 &= \frac{2857}{54}C_A^3 + 2C_F^2 T_F n_f - \frac{205}{9}C_F C_A T_F n_f \\
&\quad - \frac{1415}{27}C_A^2 T_F n_f + \frac{44}{9}C_F T_F^2 n_f^2 + \frac{158}{27}C_A T_F^2 n_f^2 \\
\beta_3 &= C_A^4\left(\frac{150653}{486} - \frac{44}{9}\zeta_3\right) + C_A^3 T_F n_f\left(-\frac{39143}{81} + \frac{136}{3}\zeta_3\right) \\
&\quad + C_A^2 C_F T_F n_f\left(\frac{7073}{243} - \frac{656}{9}\zeta_3\right) + C_A C_F^2 T_F n_f\left(-\frac{4204}{27} + \frac{352}{9}\zeta_3\right) \\
&\quad + 46 C_F^3 T_F n_f + C_A^2 T_F^2 n_f^2\left(\frac{7930}{81} + \frac{224}{9}\zeta_3\right) + C_F^2 T_F^2 n_f^2\left(\frac{1352}{27} - \frac{704}{9}\zeta_3\right) \\
&\quad + C_A C_F T_F^2 n_f^2\left(\frac{17152}{243} + \frac{448}{9}\zeta_3\right) + \frac{424}{243}C_A T_F^3 n_f^3 + \frac{1232}{243}C_F T_F^3 n_f^3 \\
&\quad + \frac{d_A^{abcd} d_A^{abcd}}{N_A}\left(-\frac{80}{9} + \frac{704}{3}\zeta_3\right) + n_f \frac{d_F^{abcd} d_A^{abcd}}{N_A}\left(\frac{512}{9} - \frac{1664}{3}\zeta_3\right) \\
&\quad + n_f^2 \frac{d_F^{abcd} d_F^{abcd}}{N_A}\left(-\frac{704}{9} + \frac{512}{3}\zeta_3\right)
\end{aligned}$$

O(50000) diagrams !

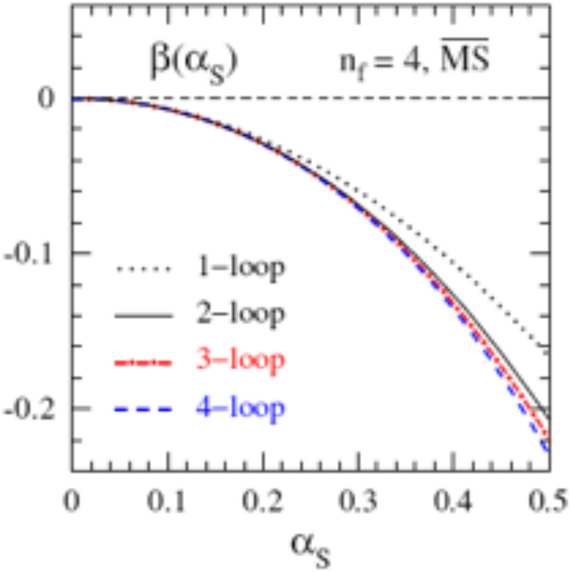
more formally: the QCD beta function

van Ritbergen, Vermaseren, Larin

('71), '73 '74 '80 '97

$$Q^2\frac{\partial a_s}{\partial Q^2}=\beta(a_s)=-\beta_0 a_s^2-\beta_1 a_s^3-\beta_2 a_s^4-\beta_3 a_s^5+\dots \qquad a_s\equiv\frac{\alpha_s}{4\pi}$$

LO NLO NNLO N^{3}LO



$$\beta_0 = \frac{11}{3}C_A-\frac{4}{3}T_F n_f\,, \quad \beta_1 = \frac{34}{3}C_A^2-4C_F T_F n_f-\frac{20}{3}C_A T_F n_f$$

$$\begin{aligned}\beta_2 &= \frac{2857}{54}C_A^3+2C_F^2T_Fn_f-\frac{205}{9}C_FC_AT_Fn_f\\ &\quad -\frac{1415}{27}C_A^2T_Fn_f+\frac{44}{9}C_FT_F^2n_f^2+\frac{158}{27}C_AT_F^2n_f^2\\ \beta_3 &= C_A^4\left(\frac{150653}{486}-\frac{44}{9}\zeta_3\right)+C_A^3T_Fn_f\left(-\frac{39143}{81}+\frac{136}{3}\zeta_3\right)\\ &\quad +C_A^2C_FT_Fn_f\left(\frac{7073}{243}-\frac{656}{9}\zeta_3\right)+C_AC_F^2T_Fn_f\left(-\frac{4204}{27}+\frac{352}{9}\zeta_3\right)\\ &\quad +46C_F^3T_Fn_f+C_A^2T_F^2n_f^2\left(\frac{7930}{81}+\frac{224}{9}\zeta_3\right)+C_F^2T_F^2n_f^2\left(\frac{1352}{27}-\frac{704}{9}\zeta_3\right)\\ &\quad +C_AC_FT_F^2n_f^2\left(\frac{17152}{243}+\frac{448}{9}\zeta_3\right)+\frac{424}{243}C_AT_F^3n_f^3+\frac{1232}{243}C_FT_F^3n_f^3\\ &\quad +\frac{d_A^{abcd}d_A^{abcd}}{N_A}\left(-\frac{80}{9}+\frac{704}{3}\zeta_3\right)+n_f\frac{d_F^{abcd}d_A^{abcd}}{N_A}\left(\frac{512}{9}-\frac{1664}{3}\zeta_3\right)\\ &\quad +n_f^2\frac{d_F^{abcd}d_F^{abcd}}{N_A}\left(-\frac{704}{9}+\frac{512}{3}\zeta_3\right)\end{aligned}$$

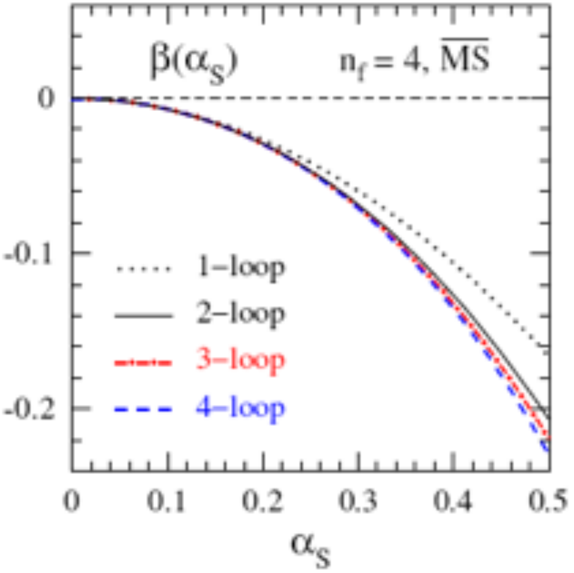
O(50000) diagrams !

solve LO equation: $\displaystyle\int_{\mu_0^2}^{\mu^2}\frac{da_s}{a_s^2}=-\beta_0\int_{\mu_0^2}^{\mu^2}\frac{dQ^2}{Q^2}$

more formally: the QCD beta function

van Ritbergen, Vermaseren, Larin

$$Q^2\frac{\partial a_s}{\partial Q^2} = \beta(a_s) = \overset{\text{('71), '73}}{\underset{\text{LO}}{-\beta_0 a_s^2}} \overset{\text{'74}}{\underset{\text{NLO}}{-\beta_1 a_s^3}} \overset{\text{'80}}{\underset{\text{NNLO}}{-\beta_2 a_s^4}} \overset{\text{'97}}{\underset{\text{N}^3\text{LO}}{-\beta_3 a_s^5}} + \ldots \qquad a_s \equiv \frac{\alpha_s}{4\pi}$$



$$\beta_0 = \frac{11}{3}C_A - \frac{4}{3}T_F n_f\,, \quad \beta_1 = \frac{34}{3}C_A^2 - 4C_F T_F n_f - \frac{20}{3}C_A T_F n_f$$

$$\beta_2 = \frac{2857}{54}C_A^3 + 2C_F^2 T_F n_f - \frac{205}{9}C_F C_A T_F n_f$$
$$-\frac{1415}{27}C_A^2 T_F n_f + \frac{44}{9}C_F T_F^2 n_f^2 + \frac{158}{27}C_A T_F^2 n_f^2$$

$$\beta_3 = C_A^4\left(\frac{150653}{486} - \frac{44}{9}\zeta_3\right) + C_A^3 T_F n_f\left(-\frac{39143}{81} + \frac{136}{3}\zeta_3\right)$$
$$+C_A^2 C_F T_F n_f\left(\frac{7073}{243} - \frac{656}{9}\zeta_3\right) + C_A C_F^2 T_F n_f\left(-\frac{4204}{27} + \frac{352}{9}\zeta_3\right)$$
$$+46 C_F^3 T_F n_f + C_A^2 T_F^2 n_f^2\left(\frac{7930}{81} + \frac{224}{9}\zeta_3\right) + C_F^2 T_F^2 n_f^2\left(\frac{1352}{27} - \frac{704}{9}\zeta_3\right)$$
$$+C_A C_F T_F^2 n_f^2\left(\frac{17152}{243} + \frac{448}{9}\zeta_3\right) + \frac{424}{243}C_A T_F^3 n_f^3 + \frac{1232}{243}C_F T_F^3 n_f^3$$
$$+\frac{d_A^{abcd}d_A^{abcd}}{N_A}\left(-\frac{80}{9} + \frac{704}{3}\zeta_3\right) + n_f\frac{d_F^{abcd}d_A^{abcd}}{N_A}\left(\frac{512}{9} - \frac{1664}{3}\zeta_3\right)$$
$$+n_f^2\frac{d_F^{abcd}d_F^{abcd}}{N_A}\left(-\frac{704}{9} + \frac{512}{3}\zeta_3\right)$$

O(50000) diagrams !

solve LO equation: $\displaystyle\int_{\mu_0^2}^{\mu^2}\frac{da_s}{a_s^2} = -\beta_0\int_{\mu_0^2}^{\mu^2}\frac{dQ^2}{Q^2}$

$$\Leftrightarrow a_s(\mu^2) = \frac{a_s(\mu_0^2)}{1 + a_s(\mu_0^2)\,\beta_0\log(\mu^2/\mu_0^2)}$$

$a_s(\Lambda^2) = \infty$

$$\Leftrightarrow a_s(\mu^2) = \frac{1}{\beta_0\log(\mu^2/\Lambda^2)}$$

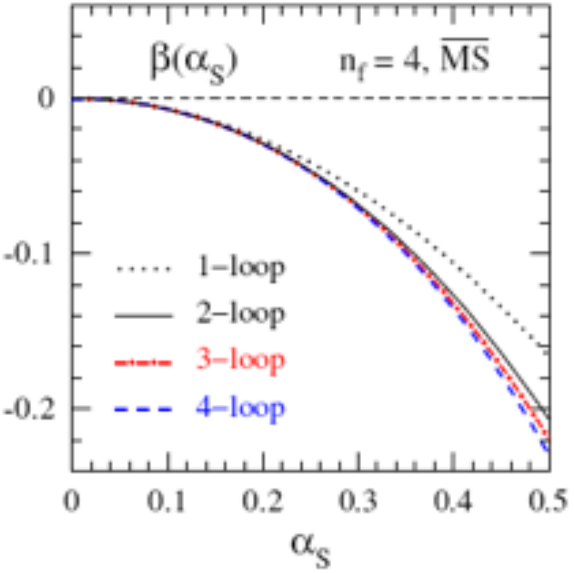
more formally: the QCD beta function

van Ritbergen, Vermaseren, Larin

('71), '73　　'74　　'80　　'97

$$Q^2 \frac{\partial a_s}{\partial Q^2} = \beta(a_s) = -\beta_0 a_s^2 - \beta_1 a_s^3 - \beta_2 a_s^4 - \beta_3 a_s^5 + \ldots \qquad a_s \equiv \frac{\alpha_s}{4\pi}$$

LO　　NLO　　NNLO　　N^{3}LO



$$\beta_0 = \frac{11}{3}C_A - \frac{4}{3}T_F n_f\,, \quad \beta_1 = \frac{34}{3}C_A^2 - 4C_F T_F n_f - \frac{20}{3}C_A T_F n_f$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\beta_2 = {} & \frac{2857}{54}C_A^3 + 2C_F^2 T_F n_f - \frac{205}{9}C_F C_A T_F n_f \\
& -\frac{1415}{27}C_A^2 T_F n_f + \frac{44}{9}C_F T_F^2 n_f^2 + \frac{158}{27}C_A T_F^2 n_f^2 \\
\beta_3 = {} & C_A^4\left(\frac{150653}{486} - \frac{44}{9}\zeta_3\right) + C_A^3 T_F n_f\left(-\frac{39143}{81} + \frac{136}{3}\zeta_3\right) \\
& +C_A^2 C_F T_F n_f\left(\frac{7073}{243} - \frac{656}{9}\zeta_3\right) + C_A C_F^2 T_F n_f\left(-\frac{4204}{27} + \frac{352}{9}\zeta_3\right) \\
& +46 C_F^3 T_F n_f + C_A^2 T_F^2 n_f^2\left(\frac{7930}{81} + \frac{224}{9}\zeta_3\right) + C_F^2 T_F^2 n_f^2\left(\frac{1352}{27} - \frac{704}{9}\zeta_3\right) \\
& +C_A C_F T_F^2 n_f^2\left(\frac{17152}{243} + \frac{448}{9}\zeta_3\right) + \frac{424}{243}C_A T_F^3 n_f^3 + \frac{1232}{243}C_F T_F^3 n_f^3 \\
& +\frac{d_A^{abcd} d_A^{abcd}}{N_A}\left(-\frac{80}{9} + \frac{704}{3}\zeta_3\right) + n_f \frac{d_F^{abcd} d_A^{abcd}}{N_A}\left(\frac{512}{9} - \frac{1664}{3}\zeta_3\right) \\
& +n_f^2 \frac{d_F^{abcd} d_F^{abcd}}{N_A}\left(-\frac{704}{9} + \frac{512}{3}\zeta_3\right)
\end{aligned}$$

O(50000) diagrams !

solve LO equation: $\int_{\mu_0^2}^{\mu^2} \frac{da_s}{a_s^2} = -\beta_0 \int_{\mu_0^2}^{\mu^2} \frac{dQ^2}{Q^2}$

$$\Leftrightarrow a_s(\mu^2) = \frac{a_s(\mu_0^2)}{1 + a_s(\mu_0^2)\,\beta_0 \log(\mu^2/\mu_0^2)}$$

$a_s(\Lambda^2) = \infty$

$$\Leftrightarrow a_s(\mu^2) = \frac{1}{\beta_0 \log(\mu^2/\Lambda^2)}$$

tells us how α_s varies with scale but not its absolute value at μ_0

1st example of a renormalization group equation

some further observations

recap

$$\beta = -\alpha_s^2(\mu)\sum_i b_i \alpha_s^i(\mu)$$

$$b_0 = \frac{11N_c - 4n_f T_R}{12\pi}$$

- negative contribution to b_0 due to

- positive contribution to b_0 due to

- positive contribution larger —> $b_0 > 0$ (—> overall: negative beta function)

some further observations

recap

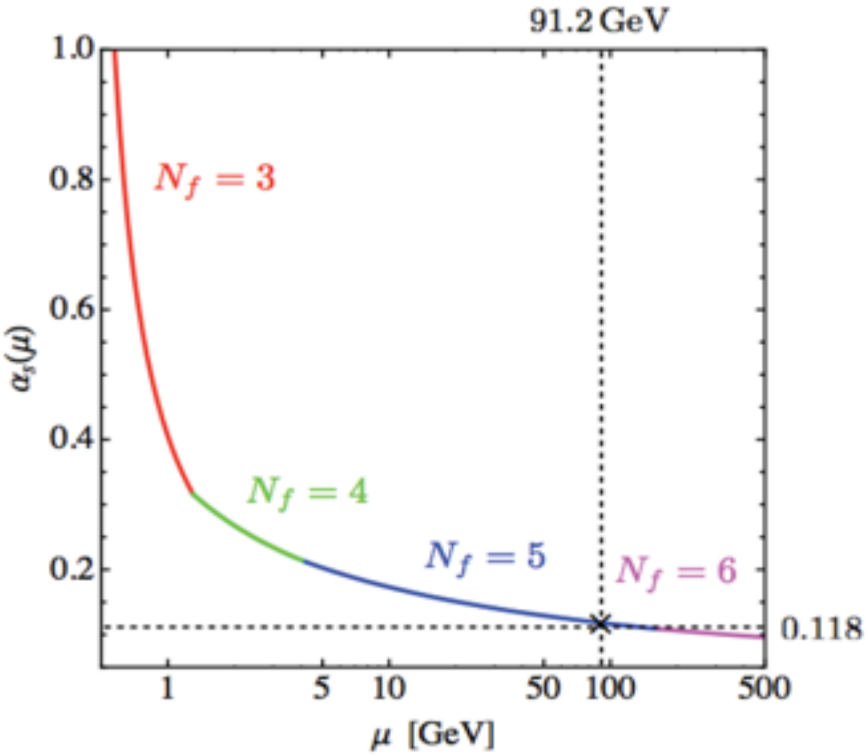
$$\beta = -\alpha_s^2(\mu)\sum_i b_i \alpha_s^i(\mu)$$

$$b_0 = \frac{11N_c - 4n_f T_R}{12\pi}$$

- negative contribution to b_0 due to

- positive contribution to b_0 due to

- positive contribution larger —> $b_0 > 0$
  (—> overall: negative beta function)



- coupling depends on number of active flavors
  (need matching a thresholds)

some further observations

recap

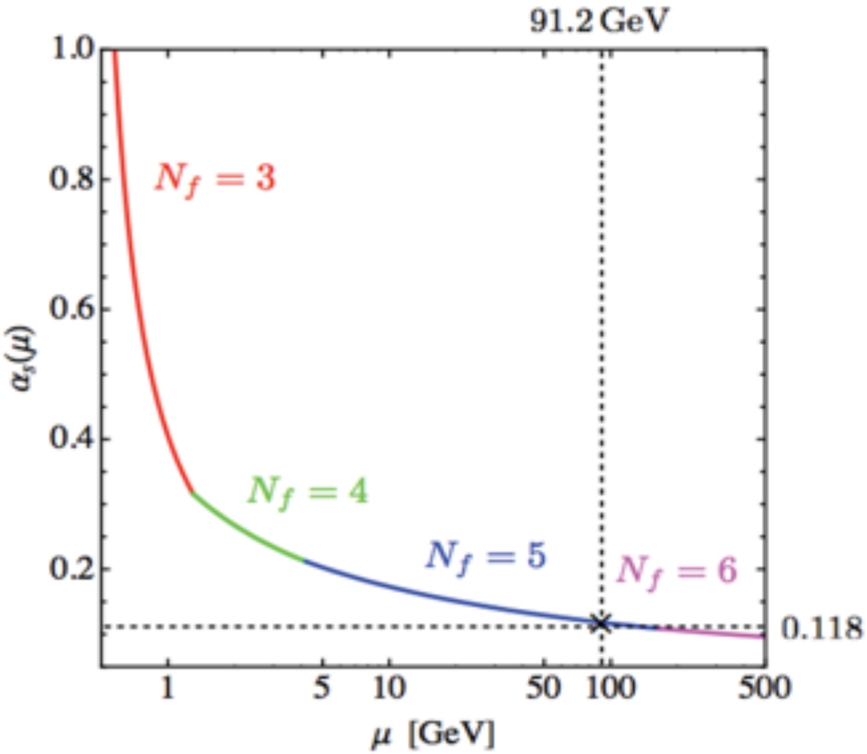
$$\beta = -\alpha_s^2(\mu) \sum_i b_i \alpha_s^i(\mu)$$

$$b_0 = \frac{11N_c - 4n_f T_R}{12\pi}$$

- negative contribution to b_0 due to

- positive contribution to b_0 due to

- positive contribution larger —> $b_0 > 0$
  (—> overall: negative beta function)



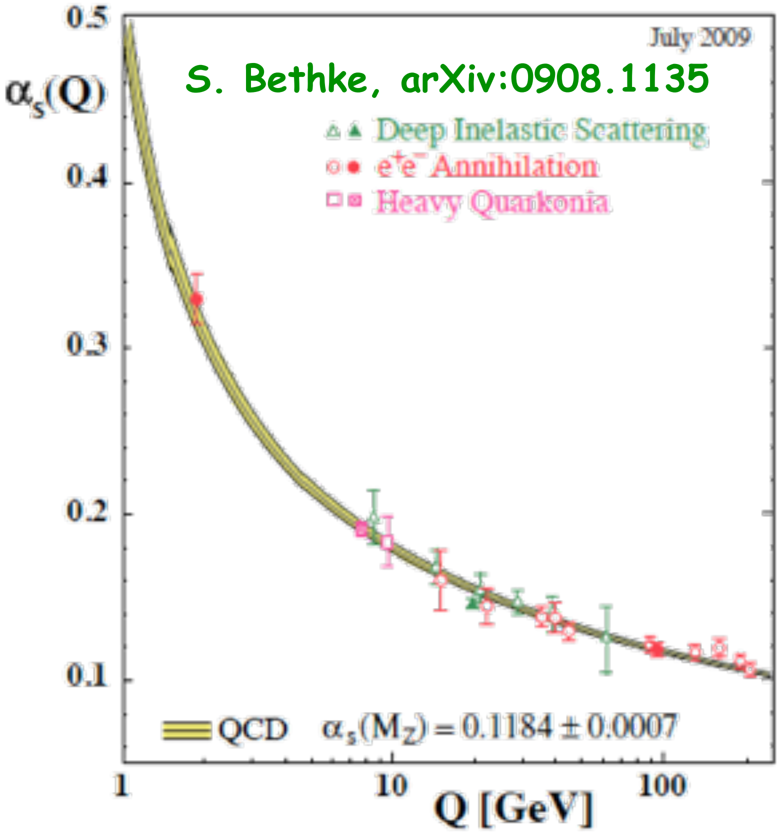
- coupling depends on number of active flavors
  (need matching a thresholds)

- can read off QED beta function (T_R coefficient)
  (only one flavor)

$$\beta_{\text{QED}} = \frac{1}{3\pi}\alpha^2 + \ldots$$

b_0 negative —> overall: positive beta fct.

consistent picture from many observables

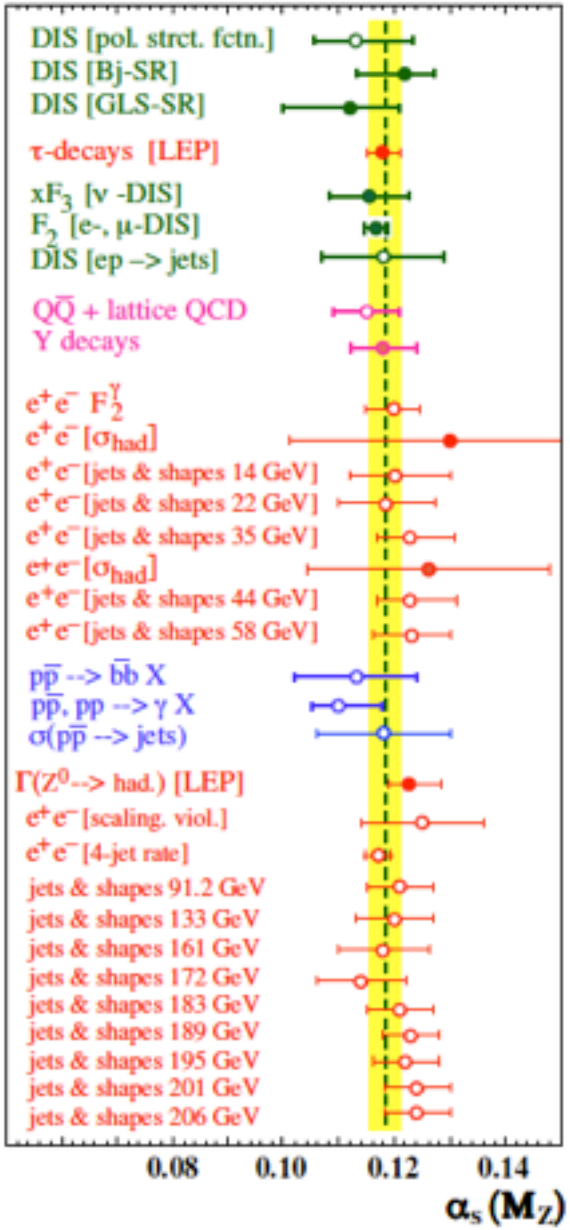


S. Bethke, arXiv:0908.1135

confinement

asymp. freedom

exp. evidence for log(Q^2) fall-off is persuasive



upshot: a strongly interacting theory at long-distance
can become weakly interacting at short-distance

Is this enough to explain the success of the parton model and pQCD?

upshot: a strongly interacting theory at long-distance
can become weakly interacting at short-distance

Is this enough to explain the success of the parton model and pQCD?

NO!

asymptotic freedom "only" enables us to compute interactions of quarks and gluons at short-distance

- detectors are a long-distance away
- experiments only see hadrons not free partons

upshot: a strongly interacting theory at long-distance
can become weakly interacting at short-distance

Is this enough to explain the success of the parton model and pQCD?

NO!

asymptotic freedom "only" enables us to compute interactions of quarks and gluons at short-distance

- detectors are a long-distance away
- experiments only see hadrons not free partons

to establish the crucial connection between theory and experiment we need (at least) two more things:

- **infrared safety**
- **factorization**

upshot: a strongly interacting theory at long-distance
can become weakly interacting at short-distance

Is this enough to explain the success of the parton model and pQCD?

NO!

asymptotic freedom "only" enables us to compute interactions of quarks and gluons at short-distance

- detectors are a long-distance away
- experiments only see hadrons not free partons

to establish the crucial connection between theory and experiment we need (at least) two more things:

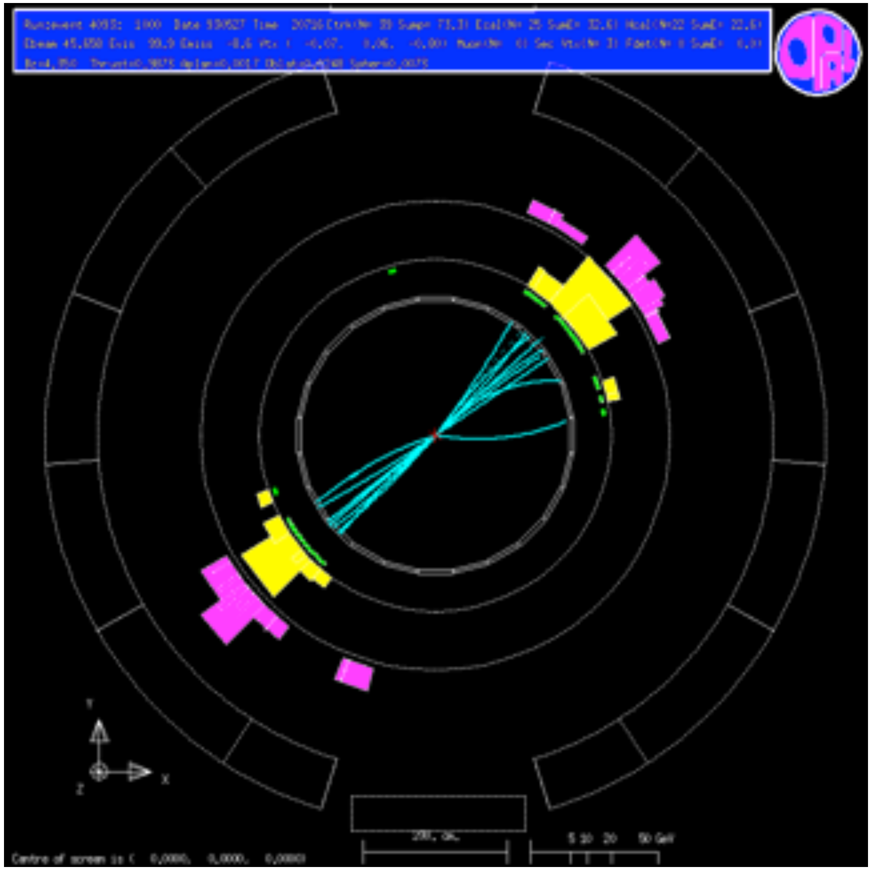
- **infrared safety**
- **factorization**

let's study electron-positron annihilation to see what this is all about ...

e^+e^- annihilation: the QCD guinea pig

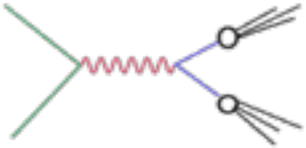
1989-2000

most of the hadronic events at CERN-LEP had **two back-to-back jets**

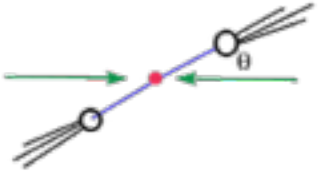


jet: pencil-like collection of hadrons

- jets resemble features of underlying 2->2 hard process $e^+e^- \rightarrow q\bar{q}$



- angular distribution of jet axis w.r.t. beam axis as predicted for **spin-½ quarks**

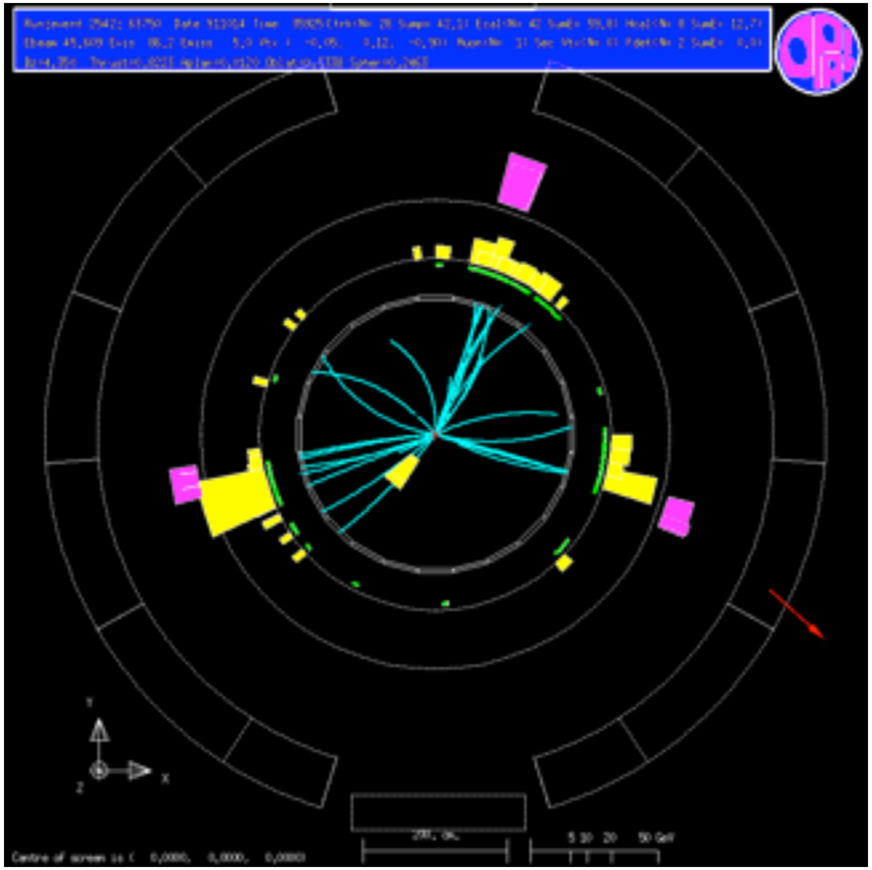


jets play major role in hadron-hadron collisions at TeVatron, RHIC, LHC

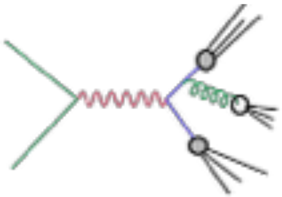
e^+e^- annihilation: three-jet events

about 10% of the events had a **third jet**

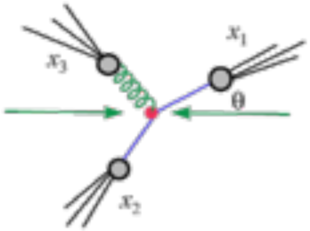
first discovered at
DESY-PETRA in 1979



- jets resemble features of underlying 2->3 hard process $e^+e^- \rightarrow q\bar{q}g$



- 10% rate consistent with $\alpha_s \simeq 0.1$ (**determination of α_s**)
- angular distribution of jets w.r.t. beam axis as expected for **spin-1 gluons**



e^+e^- annihilation: four-jet events

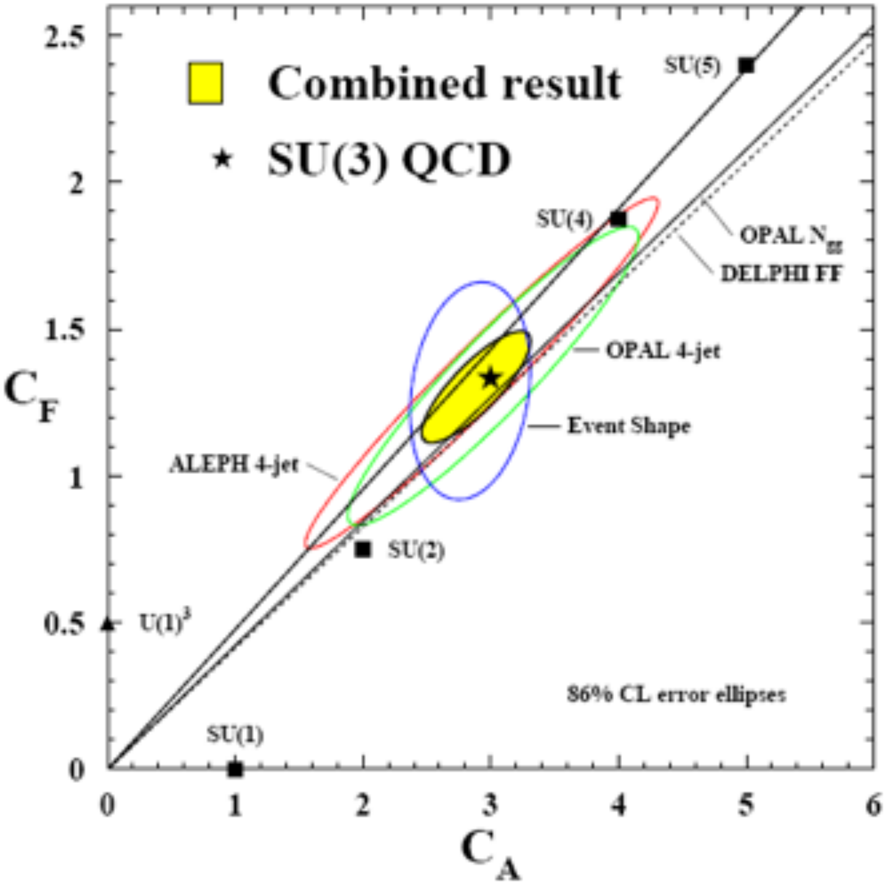
some events even had a **fourth jet**

extensively studied at LEP

- angular correlations between four jets depend on C_A/C_F and T_F/C_F
- sensitivity to non-Abelian **three-gluon-vertex**

  LO: Ellis, Ross, Terrano

- crucial test of QCD when combined with results for event shapes (thrust, etc.)



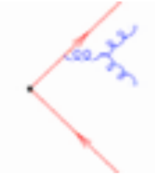
e^+e^- annihilation: four-jet events

some events even had a **fourth jet**

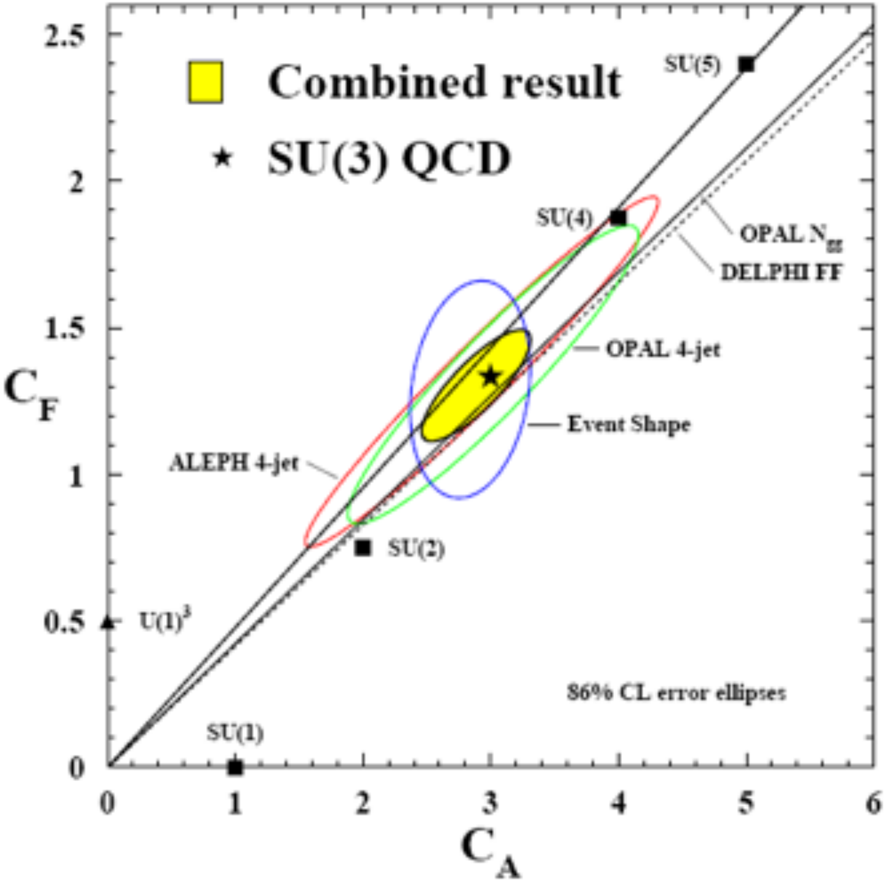
extensively studied at LEP

- angular correlations between four jets depend on C_A/C_F and T_F/C_F
- sensitivity to non-Abelian **three-gluon-vertex**

  LO: Ellis, Ross, Terrano



- crucial test of QCD when combined with results for event shapes (thrust, etc.)



e^+e^- experiments played a vital role in establishing QCD as the correct theory of strong interactions and SU(3) as the underlying gauge group

recipe for quantitative calculations

(1) identify the final-state of interest and draw all relevant Feynman diagrams

(2) use SU(3) algebra to take care of QCD color factors

(3) compute the rest of the diagram using "Diracology"

traces of gamma matrices, spinors, …

(4) to turn squared matrix elements into a cross section we need to

- account for the available phase space (momentum d.o.f. in final-state)
- integrate out not observed d.o.f.
- normalize by incoming flux

recipe for quantitative calculations

(1) identify the final-state of interest and draw all relevant Feynman diagrams

(2) use SU(3) algebra to take care of QCD color factors

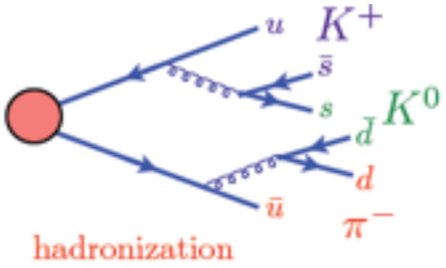
(3) compute the rest of the diagram using "Diracology"

traces of gamma matrices, spinors, …

(4) to turn squared matrix elements into a cross section we need to

- account for the available phase space (momentum d.o.f. in final-state)
- integrate out not observed d.o.f.
- normalize by incoming flux

but wait … experiments do not see free quarks and gluons



recipe for quantitative calculations

(1) identify the final-state of interest and draw all relevant Feynman diagrams

(2) use SU(3) algebra to take care of QCD color factors

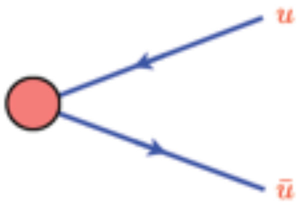
(3) compute the rest of the diagram using "Diracology"

traces of gamma matrices, spinors, …

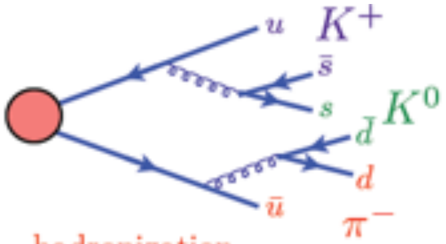
(4) to turn squared matrix elements into a cross section we need to

- account for the available phase space (momentum d.o.f. in final-state)
- integrate out not observed d.o.f.
- normalize by incoming flux

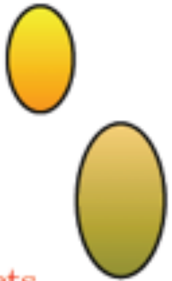
but wait … experiments do not see free quarks and gluons



energetic partons



hadronization



jets

cleanest observables in QCD

will find that most "stuff"
is observed in the directions
of produced quarks & gluons
parton-hadron duality

bunch of automated LO tools

- LO estimates of cross sections are practically a solved problem
- many useful fully automated tools available (limitations for high multiplicities)

ALPGEN	M. L. Mangano et al. http://alpgen.web.cern.ch/alpgen/
AMEGIC++	F. Krauss et al. http://projects.hepforge.org/sherpa/dokuwiki/doku.php
CompHEP	E. Boos et al. http://comphep.sinp.msu.ru/
HELAC	C. Papadopoulos, M. Worek http://helac-phegas.web.cern.ch/helac-phegas/helac-phegas.html
Madgraph	F. Maltoni, T. Stelzer http://madgraph.hep.uiuc.edu/

...

let's have a closer look at the R-ratio already encountered in Part I

$$R \equiv \frac{e^+e^- \to \text{hadrons}}{e^+e^- \to \mu^+\mu^-} \propto N_c \sum_f Q_f^2$$

let's have a closer look at the R-ratio already encountered in Part I

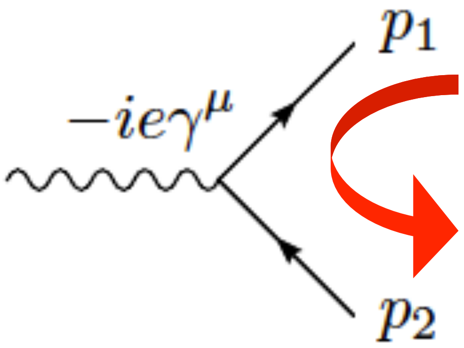
$$R \equiv \frac{e^+e^- \to \text{hadrons}}{e^+e^- \to \mu^+\mu^-} \propto N_c \sum_f Q_f^2$$

at LO described by:

vertex

$$M_0^\mu = \bar{u}(p_1)(-ie\gamma^\mu)v(p_2)$$

spinors for external lines

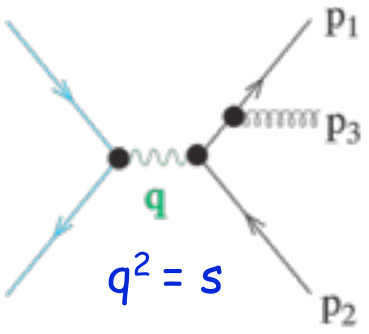


"read against the arrow"

exploring the QCD final-state: $e^+e^- \rightarrow$ 3 partons

simplest process in pQCD: $e^+e^- \rightarrow q\bar{q}g$

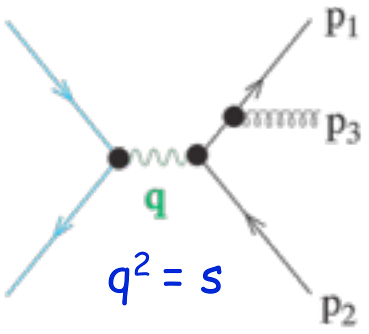
(all partons massless)



exploring the QCD final-state: $e^+e^- \to$ 3 partons

simplest process in pQCD: $e^+e^- \to q\bar{q}g$

(all partons massless)



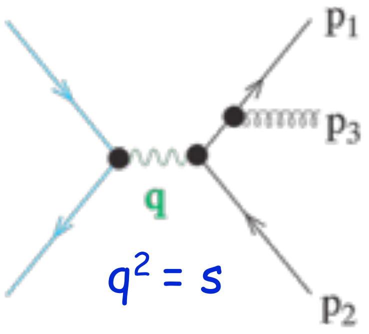
some kinematics first:

- energy fractions & conservation: $x_i \equiv \frac{2p_i \cdot q}{s} = \frac{E_i}{\sqrt{s}/2}$ $\sum x_i = \frac{2(\sum p_i) \cdot q}{s} = 2$

exploring the QCD final-state: $e^+e^- \rightarrow$ 3 partons

simplest process in pQCD: $e^+e^- \rightarrow q\bar{q}g$

(all partons massless)



some kinematics first:

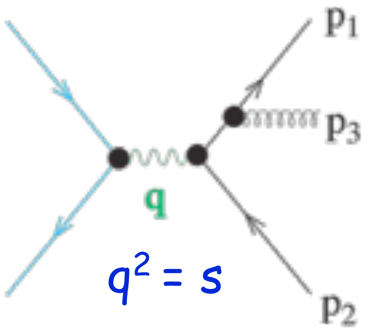
- energy fractions & conservation: $x_i \equiv \frac{2p_i \cdot q}{s} = \frac{E_i}{\sqrt{s}/2}$ $\sum x_i = \frac{2(\sum p_i) \cdot q}{s} = 2$
- angles: $$2p_1 \cdot p_3 = (p_1 + p_3)^2 = (q - p_2)^2 = s - 2q \cdot p_2$$ $$\Leftrightarrow \quad x_1 x_3 (1 - \cos\theta_{13}) = 2(1 - x_2)$$

(other angles by cycl. permutation)

exploring the QCD final-state: $e^+e^- \to$ 3 partons

simplest process in pQCD: $e^+e^- \to q\bar{q}g$

(all partons massless)



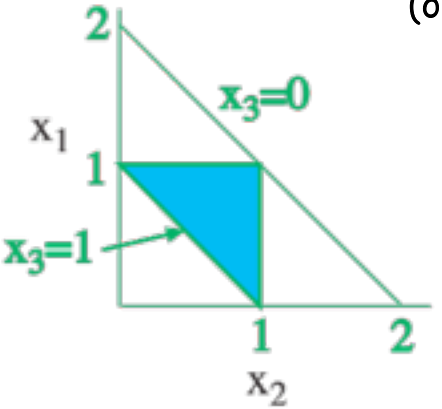
some kinematics first:

- energy fractions & conservation: $x_i \equiv \frac{2p_i \cdot q}{s} = \frac{E_i}{\sqrt{s}/2}$ $\quad \sum x_i = \frac{2(\sum p_i) \cdot q}{s} = 2$
- angles: $$2p_1 \cdot p_3 = (p_1 + p_3)^2 = (q - p_2)^2 = s - 2q \cdot p_2$$ $$\Leftrightarrow \quad x_1 x_3 (1 - \cos\theta_{13}) = 2(1 - x_2)$$

(other angles by cycl. permutation)

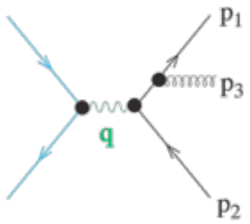
$$\Rightarrow \boxed{0 \leq x_i \leq 1}$$

allowed values for x_i lie within a triangle

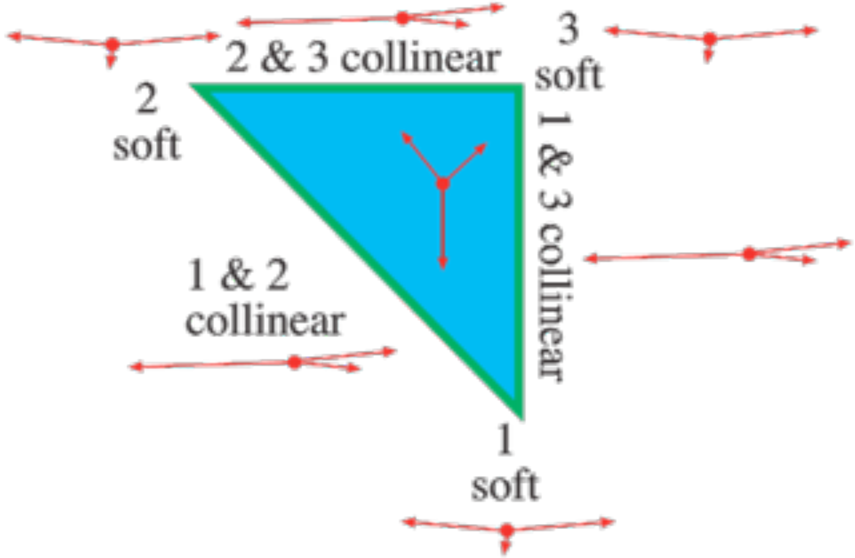


massless "Dalitz plot"

collinear and soft configurations



at the boundaries of phase space we encounter **special kinematic configurations**:



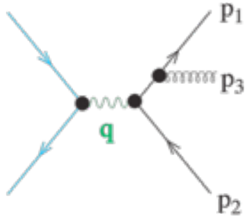
- “edges”: **two partons collinear**

$$\text{e.g. } \theta_{13} \to 0 \Leftrightarrow x_2 \to 1$$

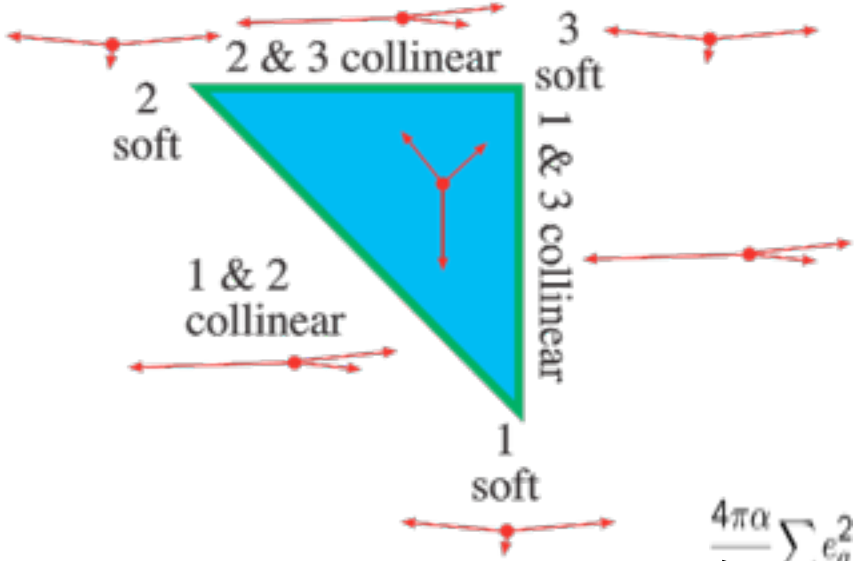
- “corners”: **one parton soft**

$$p_i^\mu \to 0 \Leftrightarrow x_i \to 0$$

collinear and soft configurations



at the boundaries of phase space we encounter
special kinematic configurations:



- "edges": **two partons collinear**

$$\text{e.g. } \theta_{13} \to 0 \Leftrightarrow x_2 \to 1$$

- "corners": **one parton soft**

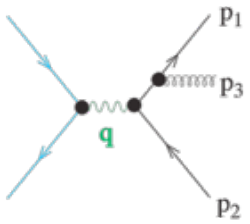
$$p_i^\mu \to 0 \Leftrightarrow x_i \to 0$$

$$\frac{4\pi\alpha}{s}\sum e_q^2$$

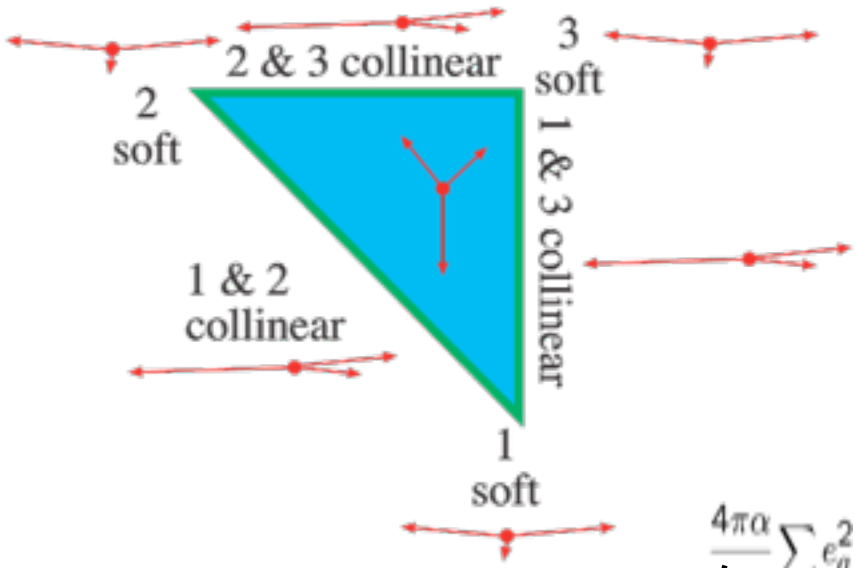
structure reflected
in the **cross section**:

$$\frac{1}{\sigma_0}\frac{d\sigma}{dx_1 dx_2} = \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi} C_F \frac{x_1^2 + x_2^2}{(1-x_1)(1-x_2)}$$

collinear and soft configurations



at the boundaries of phase space we encounter **special kinematic configurations**:



- "edges": **two partons collinear**

$$\boxed{\text{e.g. } \theta_{13} \to 0 \Leftrightarrow x_2 \to 1}$$

- "corners": **one parton soft**

$$\boxed{p_i^\mu \to 0 \Leftrightarrow x_i \to 0}$$

structure reflected in the **cross section**:

$$\frac{4\pi\alpha}{s}\sum e_q^2$$

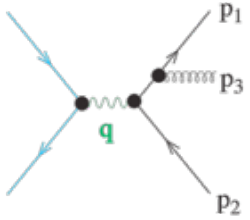
$$\boxed{\frac{1}{\sigma_0}\frac{d\sigma}{dx_1 dx_2} = \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi} C_F \frac{x_1^2 + x_2^2}{(1-x_1)(1-x_2)}}$$

collinear singularities:

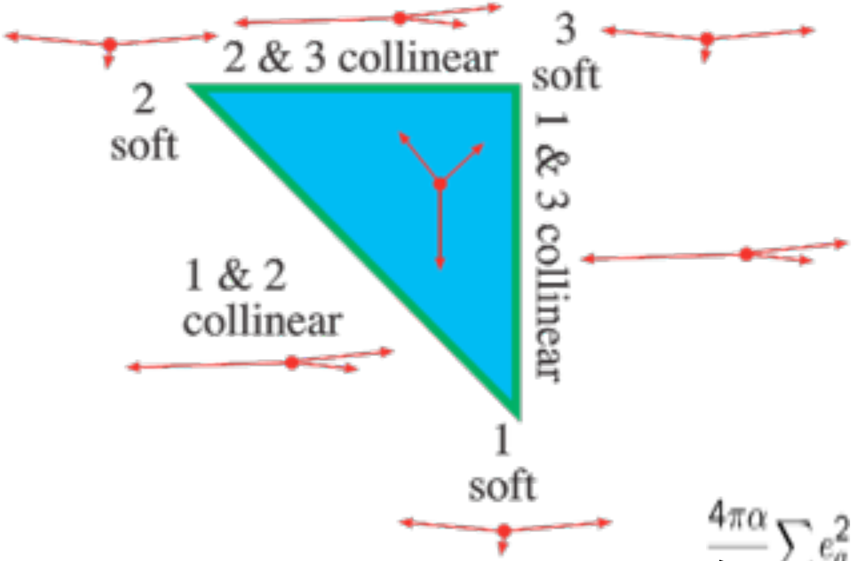
$x_1 \to 1$: gluon ∥ antiquark

$x_2 \to 1$: gluon ∥ quark

collinear and soft configurations



at the boundaries of phase space we encounter
special kinematic configurations:



- "edges": two partons collinear

$$\boxed{\text{e.g. } \theta_{13} \to 0 \Leftrightarrow x_2 \to 1}$$

- "corners": one parton soft

$$\boxed{p_i^\mu \to 0 \Leftrightarrow x_i \to 0}$$

$$\frac{4\pi\alpha}{s}\sum e_q^2$$

structure reflected
in the **cross section**:

$$\boxed{\frac{1}{\sigma_0}\frac{d\sigma}{dx_1 dx_2} = \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi} C_F \frac{x_1^2 + x_2^2}{(1-x_1)(1-x_2)}}$$

soft gluon singularity:

$x_3 \to 0$: $p_3 \to 0$

$\leftrightarrow x_1 \to 1$ & $x_2 \to 1$

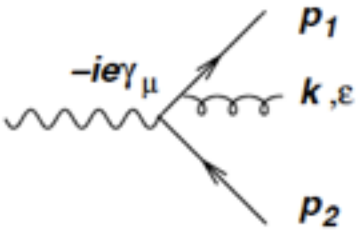
collinear singularities:

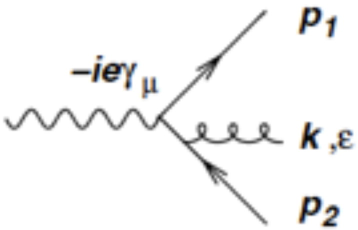
$x_1 \to 1$: gluon $\parallel$ antiquark

$x_2 \to 1$: gluon $\parallel$ quark

aside: some steps of the actual calculation

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{M}_{q\bar{q}g} = & \ \bar{u}(p_1) i g_s \not{\epsilon} t^A \frac{i}{\not{p}_1 + \not{k}} i e_q \gamma_\mu v(p_2) \\
& - \bar{u}(p_1) i e_q \gamma_\mu \frac{i}{\not{p}_2 + \not{k}} i g_s \not{\epsilon} t^A v(p_2)
\end{aligned}
$$





aside: some steps of the actual calculation

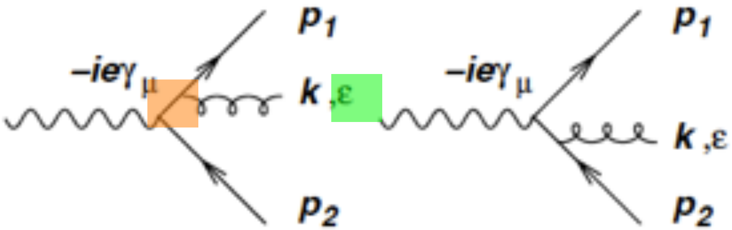
propagator

$$\mathcal{M}_{q\bar{q}g} = \bar{u}(p_1) i g_s \not{\epsilon} t^A \frac{i}{\not{p}_1 + \not{k}} i e_q \gamma_\mu v(p_2)$$

color

$$- \bar{u}(p_1) i e_q \gamma_\mu \frac{i}{\not{p}_2 + \not{k}} i g_s \not{\epsilon} t^A v(p_2)$$

polarization



aside: some steps of the actual calculation

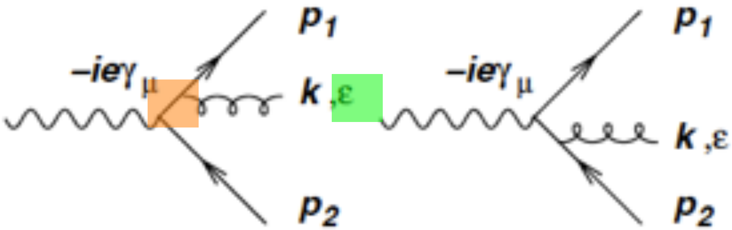
propagator

$$\mathcal{M}_{q\bar{q}g} = \bar{u}(p_1) i g_s \not{\epsilon} t^A \frac{i}{\not{p}_1 + \not{k}} i e_q \gamma_\mu v(p_2)$$

color

$$- \bar{u}(p_1) i e_q \gamma_\mu \frac{i}{\not{p}_2 + \not{k}} i g_s \not{\epsilon} t^A v(p_2)$$

polarization



make gloun soft $k \ll p_{1,2}$ and square the amplitude

$$|M^2_{q\bar{q}g}| \simeq \sum_{A,\mathrm{pol}} \left| \bar{u}(p_1) i e_q \gamma_\mu t^A v(p_2)\, g_s \left(\frac{p_1.\epsilon}{p_1.k} - \frac{p_2.\epsilon}{p_2.k} \right) \right|^2$$

color factor

$$= -|M^2_{q\bar{q}}| C_F g_s^2 \left(\frac{p_1}{p_1.k} - \frac{p_2}{p_2.k} \right)^2 = |M^2_{q\bar{q}}| C_F g_s^2 \frac{2p_1.p_2}{(p_1.k)(p_2.k)}$$

aside: some steps of the actual calculation

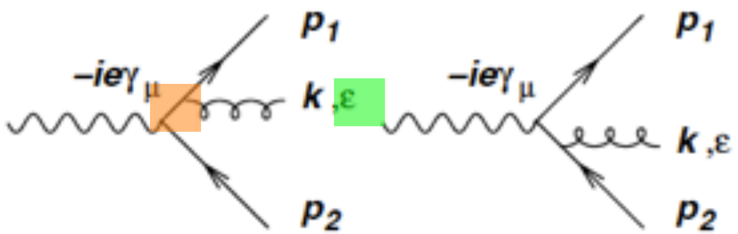
propagator

$$\mathcal{M}_{q\bar{q}g} = \bar{u}(p_1) i g_s \not{\epsilon} t^A \frac{i}{\not{p}_1 + \not{k}} i e_q \gamma_\mu v(p_2)$$

color

$$- \bar{u}(p_1) i e_q \gamma_\mu \frac{i}{\not{p}_2 + \not{k}} i g_s \not{\epsilon} t^A v(p_2)$$

polarization



make gluon soft $k \ll p_{1,2}$ and square the amplitude

$$|M^2_{q\bar{q}g}| \simeq \sum_{A,\mathrm{pol}} \left| \bar{u}(p_1) i e_q \gamma_\mu t^A v(p_2)\, g_s \left(\frac{p_1.\epsilon}{p_1.k} - \frac{p_2.\epsilon}{p_2.k} \right) \right|^2$$

sum over gluon polarizations

$$= -|M^2_{q\bar{q}}| C_F g_s^2 \left(\frac{p_1}{p_1.k} - \frac{p_2}{p_2.k} \right)^2 = |M^2_{q\bar{q}}| C_F g_s^2 \frac{2 p_1.p_2}{(p_1.k)(p_2.k)}$$

Eikonal factor

aside: some steps of the actual calculation

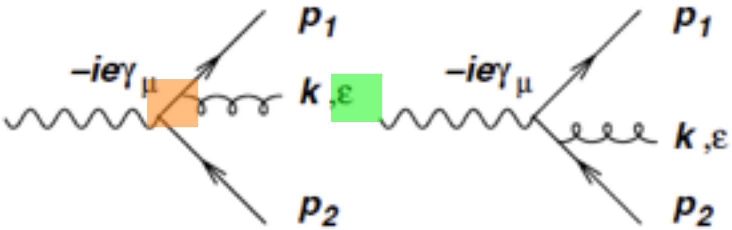
propagator

$$\mathcal{M}_{q\bar{q}g} = \bar{u}(p_1) i g_s \not{\epsilon}\, t^A \frac{i}{\not{p}_1+\not{k}} i e_q \gamma_\mu v(p_2)$$

color

$$- \bar{u}(p_1) i e_q \gamma_\mu \frac{i}{\not{p}_2+\not{k}} i g_s \not{\epsilon}\, t^A v(p_2)$$

polarization



make gluon soft $k \ll p_{1,2}$ and square the amplitude

$$|M^2_{q\bar{q}g}| \simeq \sum_{A,\mathrm{pol}} \left| \bar{u}(p_1) i e_q \gamma_\mu t^A v(p_2)\, g_s \left(\frac{p_1.\epsilon}{p_1.k} - \frac{p_2.\epsilon}{p_2.k} \right) \right|^2$$

sum over gluon polarizations

$$= -|M^2_{q\bar{q}}| C_F g_s^2 \left(\frac{p_1}{p_1.k} - \frac{p_2}{p_2.k} \right)^2 = |M^2_{q\bar{q}}| C_F g_s^2 \frac{2p_1.p_2}{(p_1.k)(p_2.k)}$$

Eikonal factor

include phase space for gluon

$$d\Phi_{q\bar{q}g} |M^2_{q\bar{q}g}| \simeq (d\Phi_{q\bar{q}} |M^2_{q\bar{q}}|) \frac{d^3\vec{k}}{2E(2\pi)^3} C_F g_s^2 \frac{2p_1.p_2}{(p_1.k)(p_2.k)}$$

factorize LO phase space

note: color will in general not factorize in soft limit

aside: some steps of the actual calculation - cont'd

$$d\Phi_{q\bar{q}g}|M^2_{q\bar{q}g}| \simeq (d\Phi_{q\bar{q}}|M^2_{q\bar{q}}|)\,\frac{d^3\vec{k}}{2E(2\pi)^3}C_F g_s^2\frac{2p_1.p_2}{(p_1.k)(p_2.k)}$$

aside: some steps of the actual calculation - cont'd

$$d\Phi_{q\bar{q}g}|M^2_{q\bar{q}g}| \simeq (d\Phi_{q\bar{q}}|M^2_{q\bar{q}}|)\ \frac{d^3\vec{k}}{2E(2\pi)^3} C_F g_s^2 \frac{2p_1.p_2}{(p_1.k)(p_2.k)}$$

soft emission factor dS

$$EdE\, d\cos\theta\, \frac{d\phi}{2\pi} \cdot \frac{2\alpha_s C_F}{\pi} \frac{2p_1.p_2}{(2p_1.k)(2p_2.k)} \quad \begin{matrix} \theta \equiv \theta_{p_1 k} \\ \phi = \text{azimuth} \end{matrix}$$

aside: some steps of the actual calculation - cont'd

$$d\Phi_{q\bar{q}g}|M^2_{q\bar{q}g}| \simeq (d\Phi_{q\bar{q}}|M^2_{q\bar{q}}|)\, \frac{d^3\vec{k}}{2E(2\pi)^3} C_F g_s^2 \frac{2p_1.p_2}{(p_1.k)(p_2.k)}$$

soft emission factor dS

$$E dE\, d\cos\theta\, \frac{d\phi}{2\pi} \cdot \frac{2\alpha_s C_F}{\pi} \frac{2p_1.p_2}{(2p_1.k)(2p_2.k)}$$

$\theta \equiv \theta_{p_1 k}$

$\phi = \text{azimuth}$

express in terms of E,θ

$$= \frac{1}{E^2(1-\cos^2\theta)}$$

aside: some steps of the actual calculation - cont'd

$$d\Phi_{q\bar{q}g}|M^2_{q\bar{q}g}| \simeq (d\Phi_{q\bar{q}}|M^2_{q\bar{q}}|)\,\frac{d^3\vec{k}}{2E(2\pi)^3}C_F g_s^2 \frac{2p_1.p_2}{(p_1.k)(p_2.k)}$$

soft emission factor dS

$$E dE\, d\cos\theta\, \frac{d\phi}{2\pi} \cdot \frac{2\alpha_s C_F}{\pi} \frac{2p_1.p_2}{(2p_1.k)(2p_2.k)} \qquad \begin{aligned} \theta &\equiv \theta_{p_1 k} \\ \phi &= \text{azimuth} \end{aligned}$$

express in terms of E,θ

$$= \frac{1}{E^2(1-\cos^2\theta)}$$

end up with

$$dS = \frac{2\alpha_s C_F}{\pi}\frac{dE}{E}\frac{d\theta}{\sin\theta}\frac{d\phi}{2\pi}$$

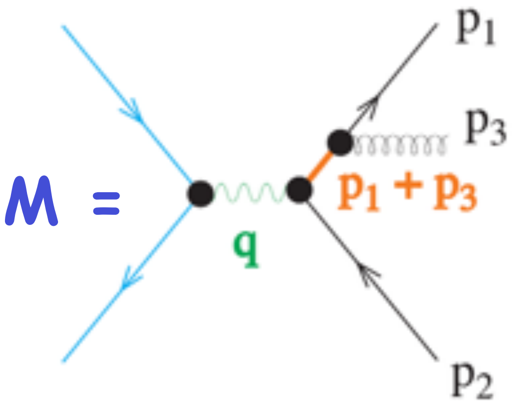
- It *diverges* for $E \to 0$ — *infrared (or soft) divergence*
- It *diverges* for $\theta \to 0$ and $\theta \to \pi$ — *collinear divergence*

general nature of these singularities

soft/collinear limit:

internal propagator goes on-shell

here: $$\frac{1}{(p_1+p_3)^2} = \frac{1}{2E_1E_3(1-\cos\theta_{13})}$$



note: "soft quarks" (here $E_1 \to 0$) never lead to singularities (canceled by numerator)

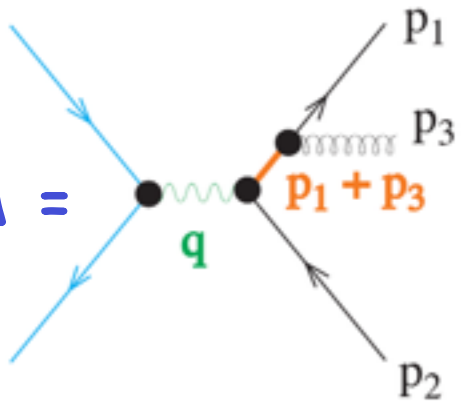
general nature of these singularities

soft/collinear limit:

internal propagator goes on-shell

here: $$\frac{1}{(p_1+p_3)^2} = \frac{1}{2E_1E_3(1-\cos\theta_{13})}$$

M =

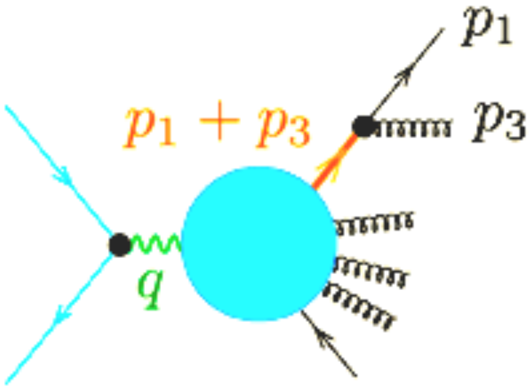


note: "soft quarks" (here $E_1 \to 0$) never lead to singularities (canceled by numerator)

this structure is generic for QCD tree graphs:

$$\mathcal{M}_{n+1} \sim [\mathcal{M}_n]\Big|_{1,3\,\mathrm{on-shell}} \frac{\mathrm{spinors}}{(p1+p3)^2}$$

basis for parton-shower MC codes
like PYTHIA, HERWIG, SHERPA, …



Do we observe a breakdown of pQCD already here?

Do we observe a breakdown of pQCD already here?

NO! Perturbative QCD only tries to tell us that
we are not doing the right thing!
Our cross section is not defined properly,
it is **not infrared safe**!

Do we observe a breakdown of pQCD already here?

NO! Perturbative QCD only tries to tell us that
we are not doing the right thing!
Our cross section is not defined properly,
it is **not infrared safe**!

the lesson is:

whenever the 2->(n+1) kinematics collapses to an effective 2->n parton kinematics due to

- the emission of a soft gluon
- a collinear splitting of a parton into two partons

we have to be much more careful and work a bit harder!

this applies to all pQCD calculations

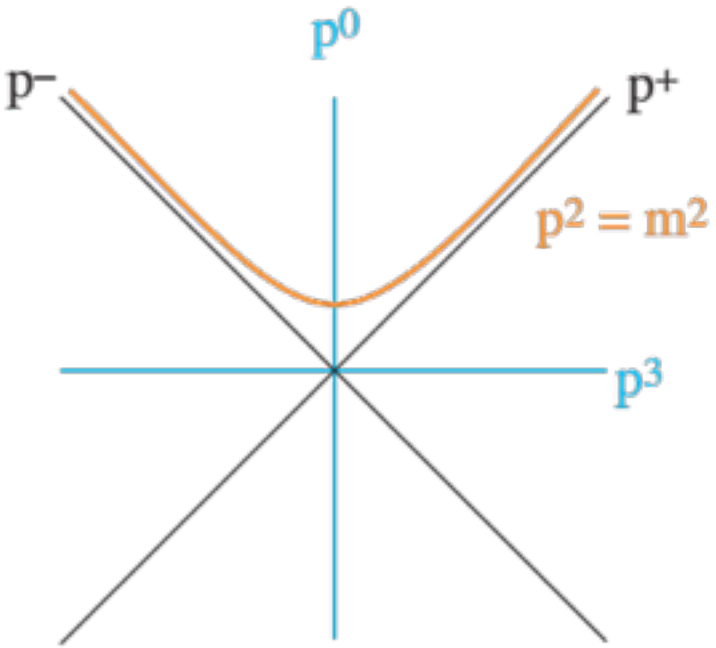
towards a space-time picture of the singularities

interlude: light-cone coordinates

$$p^{\pm} \equiv (p^0 \pm p^3)/\sqrt{2}$$

$$p^2 = 2p^+p^- - \vec{p}_T^{\,2}$$

$$p^- = (p_T^2 + m^2)/2p^+$$



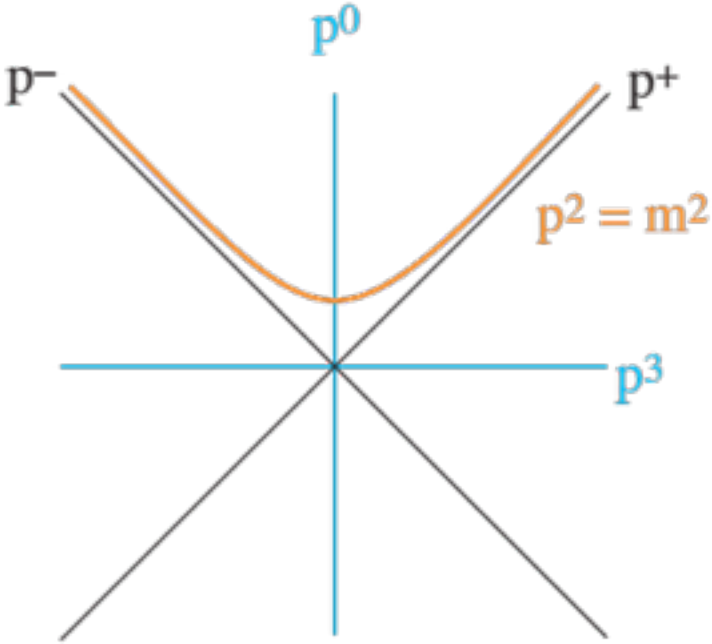
towards a space-time picture of the singularities

interlude: light-cone coordinates

$$p^{\pm} \equiv (p^0 \pm p^3)/\sqrt{2}$$

$$p^2 = 2p^+p^- - \vec{p}_T^{\,2}$$

$$p^- = (p_T^2 + m^2)/2p^+$$

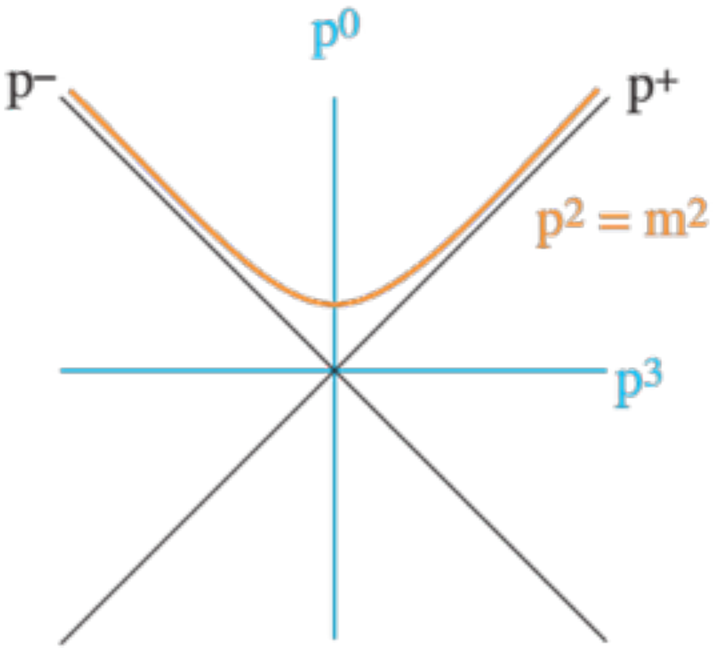


➡ particle with large momentum in $+p^3$ direction has large p^+ and small p^-

towards a space-time picture of the singularities

interlude: light-cone coordinates

$$p^{\pm} \equiv (p^0 \pm p^3)/\sqrt{2}$$
$$p^2 = 2p^+p^- - \vec{p}_T^{\,2}$$
$$p^- = (p_T^2 + m^2)/2p^+$$



➡ particle with large momentum in $+p^3$ direction has large p^+ and small p^-

Fourier transform

momentum space $\longleftrightarrow$ coordinate space

$$e^{ip\cdot x}$$

$$p \cdot x = p^+x^- + p^-x^+ - \vec{p}_T \cdot \vec{x}_T$$

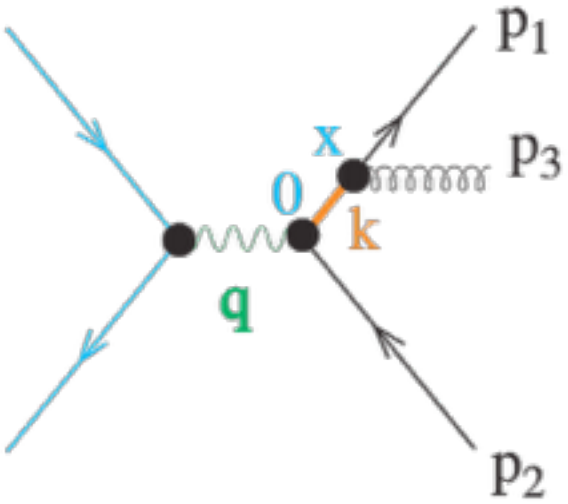
--> x^- is conjugate to p^+ and x^+ is conjugate to p^-

space-time picture of the singularities

What does this imply for our propagator going on-shell?

space-time picture of the singularities

What does this imply for our propagator going on-shell?

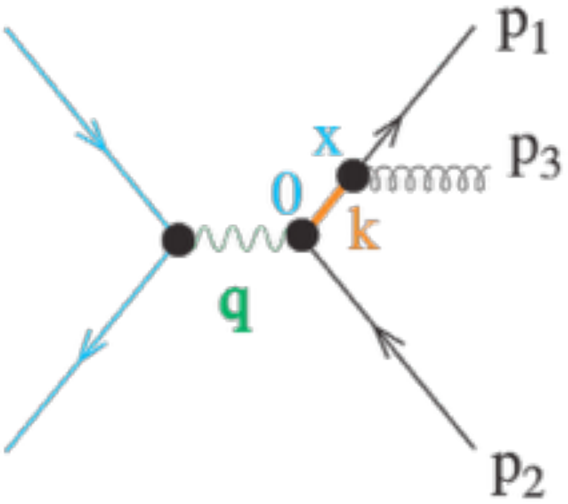


- define $k \equiv p_1 + p_3$
- use coordinates with k^+ large and $k_T = 0$
- $k^2 = 2\ k^+k^- \simeq 0$ corresponds to soft/collinear limit → k^- small

space-time picture of the singularities

What does this imply for our propagator going on-shell?

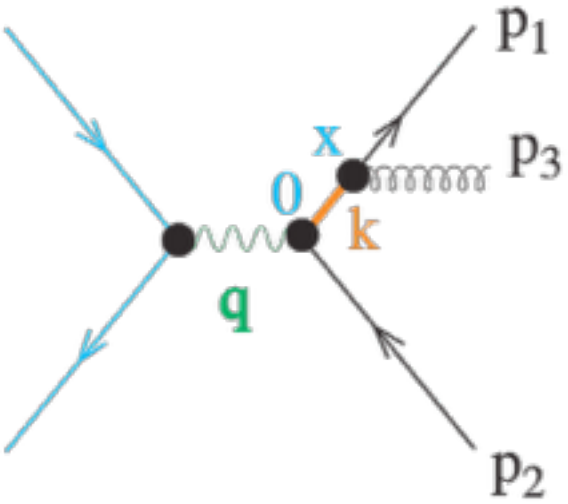
- define $k \equiv p_1 + p_3$
- use coordinates with k^+ large and $k_T = 0$
- $k^2 = 2\ k^+k^- \simeq 0$ corresponds to soft/collinear limit → k^- small



How far does the internal on-shell parton travel in space-time?

space-time picture of the singularities

What does this imply for our propagator going on-shell?



- define $k \equiv p_1 + p_3$
- use coordinates with k^+ large and $k_T = 0$
- $k^2 = 2\ k^+k^- \simeq 0$ corresponds to soft/collinear limit → k^- small

How far does the internal on-shell parton travel in space-time?

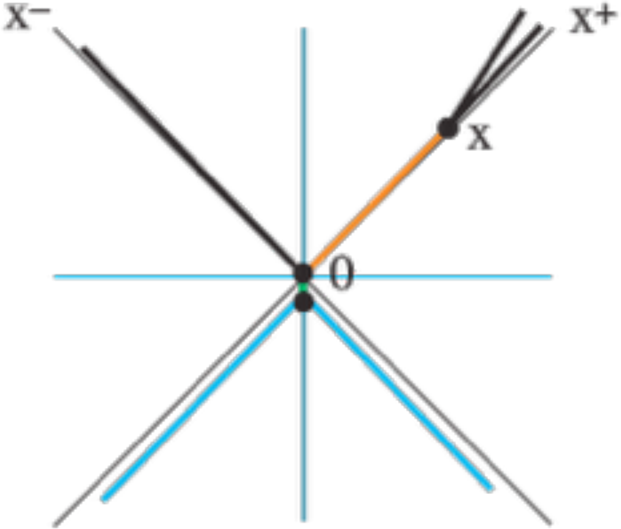
$$k^+ \simeq \sqrt{s}/2$$ large

$$k^- \simeq (\vec{k}_T^2 + k^2)/\sqrt{s}$$ small

$\downarrow$ Fourier

$$x^+ \simeq 1/k^-$$ large

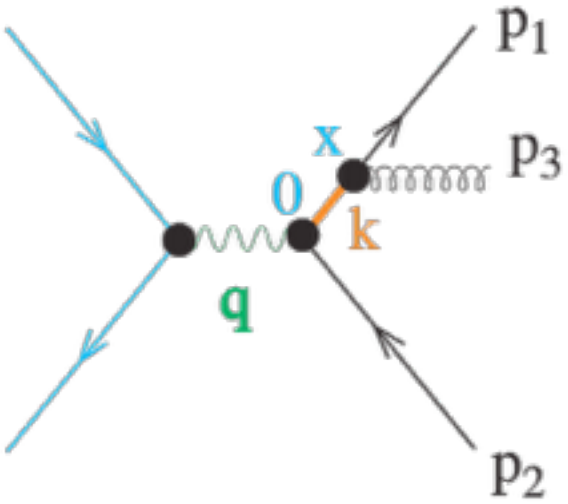
$$x^- \simeq 1/k^+$$ small



space-time picture of the singularities

What does this imply for our propagator going on-shell?

- define $k \equiv p_1 + p_3$
- use coordinates with k^+ large and $k_T = 0$
- $k^2 = 2\, k^+ k^- \simeq 0$ corresponds to soft/collinear limit → k^- small



How far does the internal on-shell parton travel in space-time?

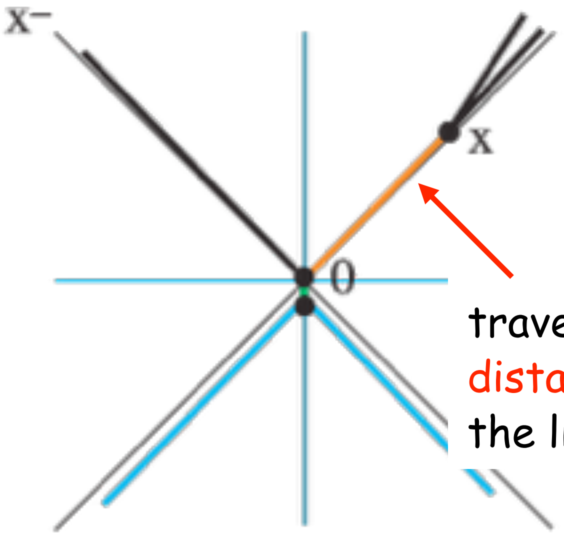
$$k^+ \simeq \sqrt{s}/2 \qquad \text{large}$$

$$k^- \simeq (\vec{k}_T^2 + k^2)/\sqrt{s} \qquad \text{small}$$

$$\Big\downarrow \ \text{Fourier}$$

$$x^+ \simeq 1/k^- \qquad \text{large}$$

$$x^- \simeq 1/k^+ \qquad \text{small}$$



travels a long distance along the light-cone

upshot: soft/collinear singularities arise from interactions that happen a long time after the creation of the quark/antiquark pair

upshot: soft/collinear singularities arise from interactions that happen a long time after the creation of the quark/antiquark pair

pQCD is not applicable at long-distance

upshot: soft/collinear singularities arise from interactions that happen a long time after the creation of the quark/antiquark pair

pQCD is not applicable at long-distance

SO ...... What to do with the long-distance physics associated with these soft/collinear singularities? Is there any hope that we can predict some reliable numbers to compare with experiment?

upshot: soft/collinear singularities arise from interactions that happen a long time after the creation of the quark/antiquark pair

pQCD is not applicable at long-distance

so ...... What to do with the long-distance physics associated with these soft/collinear singularities? Is there any hope that we can predict some reliable numbers to compare with experiment?

to answer this, we have to formulate the

concept of infrared safety

infrared-safe observables

formal definition of infrared safety:

Kunszt, Soper; ...

study inclusive observables which do not distinguish between (n+1) partons and n partons in the soft/collinear (=degenerate) limit, i.e., are insensitive to what happens at long-distance

infrared-safe observables

formal definition of infrared safety:

Kunszt, Soper; …

study inclusive observables which do not distinguish between (n+1) partons and n partons in the soft/collinear (=degenerate) limit, i.e., are insensitive to what happens at long-distance

$$\mathcal{I} = \frac{1}{2!}\int d\Omega_2 \frac{d\sigma[2]}{d\Omega_2} \mathcal{S}_2(p_1, p_2) + \frac{1}{3!}\int d\omega_2 dE_3 d\Omega_3 \frac{d\sigma[3]}{d\Omega_2 dE_3 d\Omega_3} \mathcal{S}_3(p_1, p_2, p_3) + \ldots$$

measurement fcts.
(define your observable)

infrared-safe observables

formal definition of infrared safety:

Kunszt, Soper; ...

study inclusive observables which do not distinguish between (n+1) partons and n partons in the soft/collinear (=degenerate) limit, i.e., are insensitive to what happens at long-distance

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{I} &= \frac{1}{2!}\int d\Omega_2 \frac{d\sigma[2]}{d\Omega_2} \mathcal{S}_2(p_1,p_2) \\ &+ \frac{1}{3!}\int d\omega_2 dE_3 d\Omega_3 \frac{d\sigma[3]}{d\Omega_2 dE_3 d\Omega_3} \mathcal{S}_3(p_1,p_2,p_3) \\ &+ \ldots \end{aligned}$$

measurement fcts.
(define your observable)

infrared safe **iff** [for $\lambda=0$ (soft) and $0 < \lambda < 1$ (collinear)]

$$\mathcal{S}_{n+1}(p_1,\ldots,(1-\lambda)p_n,\lambda p_n) = \mathcal{S}_n(p_1,\ldots,p_n)$$

physics behind formal IR safety requirement

cannot resolve soft and collinear partons experimentally

→ intuitively reasonable that a theoretical calculation can be infrared safe as long as it is insensitive to long-distance physics (not a priori guaranteed though)

physics behind formal IR safety requirement

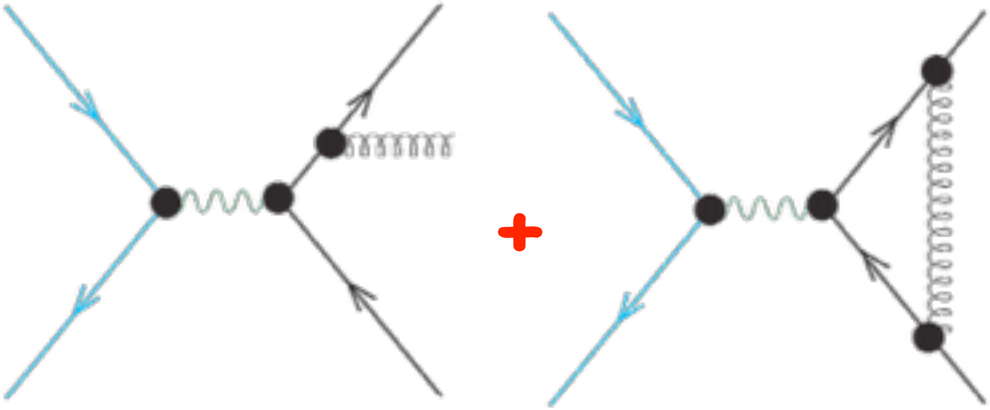
cannot resolve soft and collinear partons experimentally

→ intuitively reasonable that a theoretical calculation can be infrared safe as long as it is insensitive to long-distance physics (not a priori guaranteed though)

at a level of a pQCD calculation (e.g. e^+e^- at $O(\alpha_s)$, i.e., n=2)

$$S_{n+1}(p_1,\ldots,(1-\lambda)p_n,\lambda p_n)=S_n(p_1,\ldots,p_n)$$

→ singularities of real gluon emission and virtual corrections cancel in the sum



extension of famous theorems by Kinoshita-Lee-Nauenberg and Bloch-Nordsieck

example I: total cross section $e^+e^- \to$ hadrons

simplest case:

$$\boxed{S_n(p_1, \ldots, p_n) = 1}$$

fully inclusive quantity ⟷ we don't care what happens at long-distance

- the produced partons will all hadronize with probability one
- we do not observe a specific type of hadron
  (i.e. sum over a complete set of states)
- we sum over all degenerate kinematic regions

example I: total cross section $e^+e^- \rightarrow$ hadrons

simplest case:

$$\boxed{S_n(p_1, \ldots, p_n) = 1}$$

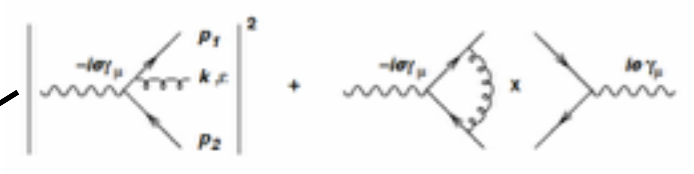
fully inclusive quantity ⟷ we don't care what happens at long-distance

- the produced partons will all hadronize with probability one
- we do not observe a specific type of hadron
  (i.e. sum over a complete set of states)
- we sum over all degenerate kinematic regions

infrared safe by definition

R ratio:

$$R = \frac{\sigma(e^+e^- \rightarrow \text{hadrons})}{\sigma(e^+e^- \rightarrow \mu^+\mu^-)} = N_c \sum e_q^2 \, (1 + \Delta_{\text{QCD}})$$



need to add up real and
virtual corrections
at a given $O(\alpha_s)$

example I: total cross section $e^+e^- \rightarrow$ hadrons

simplest case: $\boxed{S_n(p_1,\ldots,p_n) = 1}$

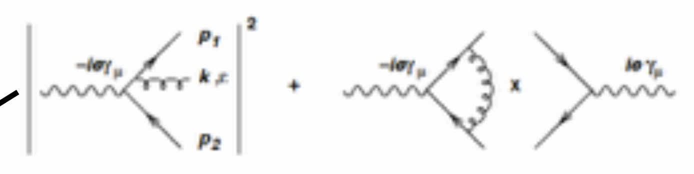
fully inclusive quantity ⟷ we don't care what happens at long-distance

- the produced partons will all hadronize with probability one
- we do not observe a specific type of hadron
  (i.e. sum over a complete set of states)
- we sum over all degenerate kinematic regions

infrared safe by definition

R ratio:

$$R = \frac{\sigma(e^+e^- \rightarrow \text{hadrons})}{\sigma(e^+e^- \rightarrow \mu^+\mu^-)} = N_c \sum e_q^2 \, (1+\Delta_{\text{QCD}})$$



need to add up real and
virtual corrections
at a given $O(\alpha_s)$

not IR safe:

- energy of hardest gluon in event
- multiplicity of gluons or 1-gluon cross section

example II: thrust distribution

somewhat less trivial: $d\sigma/dT$ (measure of the "event shape")

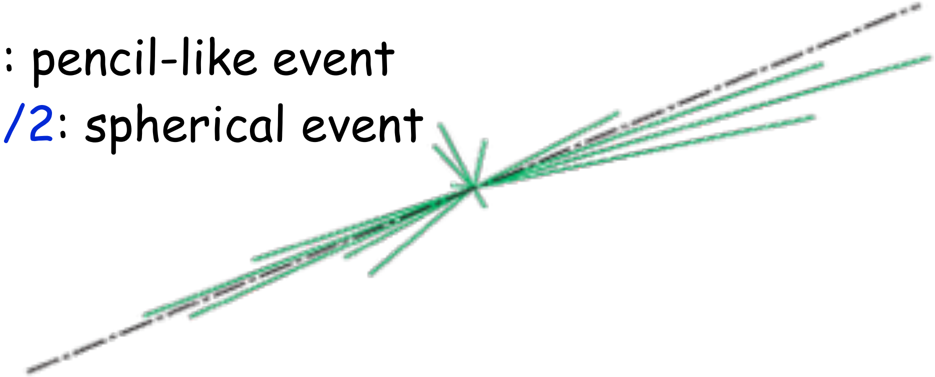
$$S_n(p_1,\ldots,p_n) \;=\; \delta(T - T_n(p_1,\ldots,p_n))$$
$$T_n(p_1,\ldots,p_n) \;\equiv\; \max|_{\vec{n}} \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} |\vec{p}_i \cdot \vec{n}|}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} |\vec{p}_i|}$$

<u>procedure</u>:

vary unit vector n to maximize the sum of the projections of p_i on n

T=1: pencil-like event

T=1/2: spherical event



example II: thrust distribution

somewhat less trivial: $d\sigma/dT$ (measure of the "event shape")

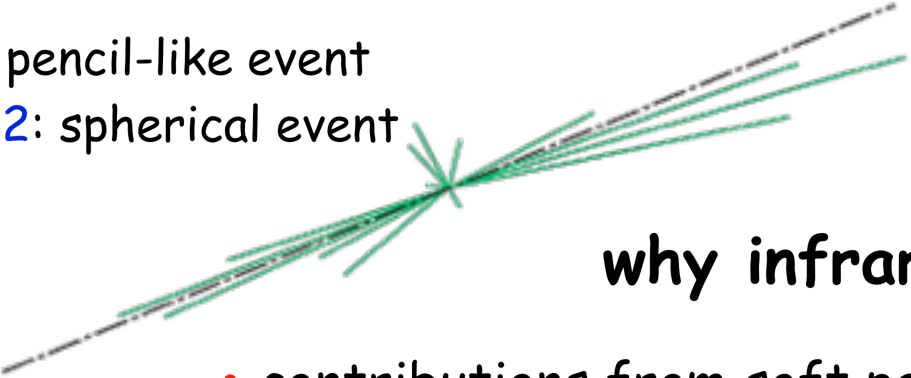
$$S_n(p_1,\ldots,p_n) = \delta(T - T_n(p_1,\ldots,p_n))$$
$$T_n(p_1,\ldots,p_n) \equiv \max|_{\vec{n}} \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n |\vec{p}_i \cdot \vec{n}|}{\sum_{i=1}^n |\vec{p}_i|}$$

procedure:

vary unit vector n to maximize the sum of the projections of p_i on n

T=1: pencil-like event

T=1/2: spherical event



why infrared safe?

- contributions from soft particles with $\vec{p}_i \to 0$ drop out
- a collinear splitting does not change the thrust:

$$|(1-\lambda)\vec{p}_i \cdot \vec{n}| \;+\; |\lambda\vec{p}_i \cdot \vec{n}| = |\vec{p}_i \cdot \vec{n}|$$
$$|(1-\lambda)\vec{p}_i| \;+\; |\lambda\vec{p}_i| = |\vec{p}_i|$$

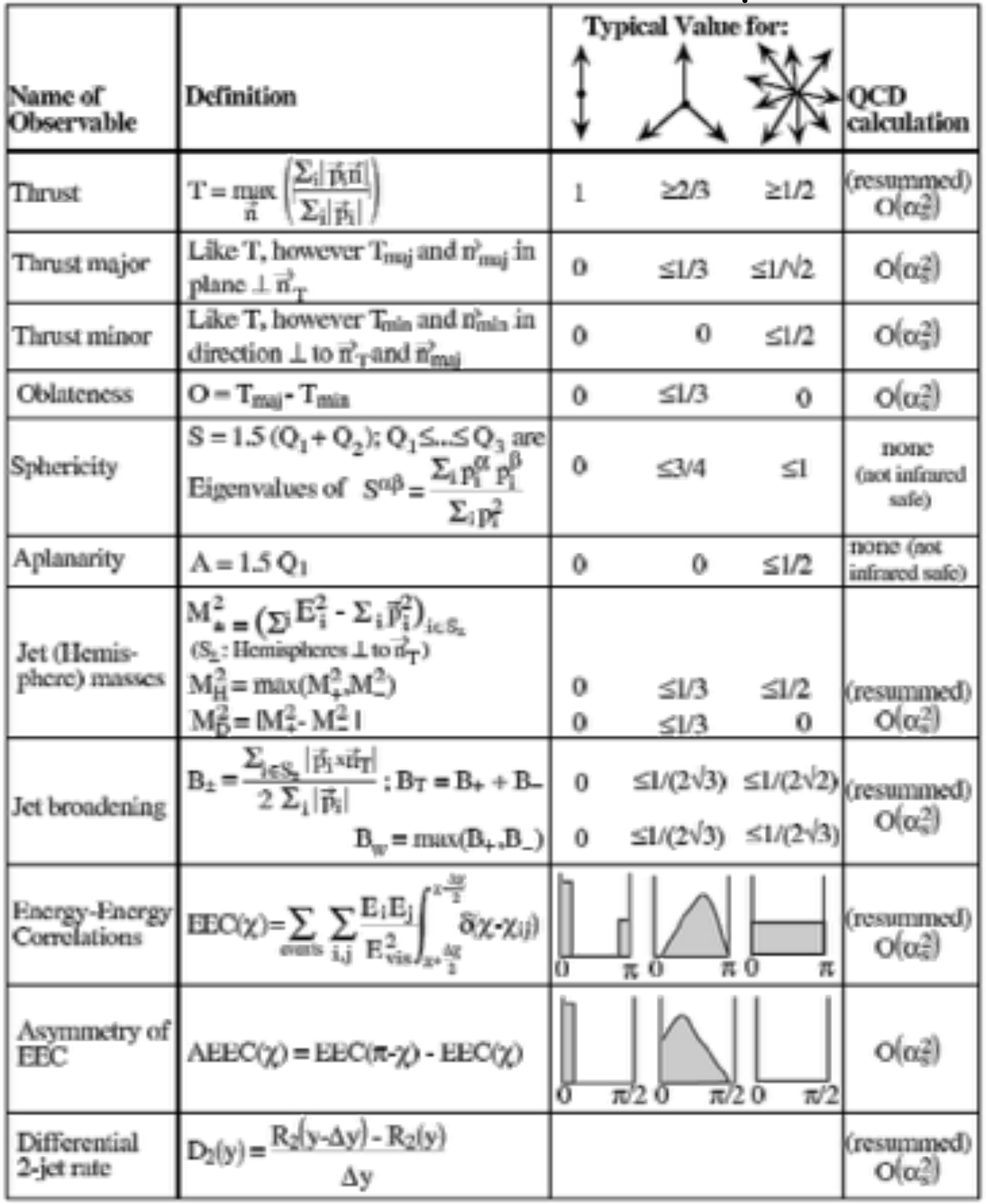
example III: event shape variables

there is a long list of similar infrared safe observables:

event-shapes: fertile ground for comparison between theory and experiment

- validity of pQCD calculations
- many ways to test SU(3) (color factors)
- spin of quarks and gluons
- measurements of α_s

taken from S. Bethke, hep-ex/0001023

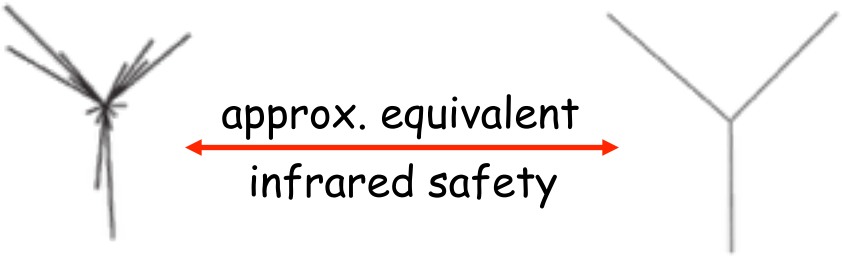


Name of Observable	Definition	Typical Value for:			QCD calculation
Thrust	$T = \max_{\vec{n}} \left(\frac{\Sigma_i \lvert \vec{p}_i \vec{n} \rvert}{\Sigma_i \lvert \vec{p}_i \rvert} \right)$	1	$\geq 2/3$	$\geq 1/2$	(resummed) $O(\alpha_s^2)$
Thrust major	Like T, however T_{maj} and $\vec{n}_{maj}$ in plane $\perp \vec{n}_T$	0	$\leq 1/3$	$\leq 1/\sqrt{2}$	$O(\alpha_s^2)$
Thrust minor	Like T, however T_{min} and $\vec{n}_{min}$ in direction $\perp$ to $\vec{n}_T$ and $\vec{n}_{maj}$	0	0	$\leq 1/2$	$O(\alpha_s^2)$
Oblateness	$O = T_{maj} - T_{min}$	0	$\leq 1/3$	0	$O(\alpha_s^2)$
Sphericity	$S = 1.5\,(Q_1 + Q_2)$; $Q_1 \leq \ldots \leq Q_3$ are Eigenvalues of $S^{\alpha\beta} = \frac{\Sigma_i p_i^\alpha p_i^\beta}{\Sigma_i p_i^2}$	0	$\leq 3/4$	≤ 1	none (not infrared safe)
Aplanarity	$A = 1.5\,Q_1$	0	0	$\leq 1/2$	none (not infrared safe)
Jet (Hemisphere) masses	$M_\pm^2 = (\Sigma_i E_i^2 - \Sigma_i \vec{p}_i^{\,2})_{i \in S_\pm}$ $(S_\pm$: Hemispheres $\perp$ to $\vec{n}_T)$ $M_H^2 = \max(M_+^2, M_-^2)$ $M_D^2 = \lvert M_+^2 - M_-^2 \rvert$	0 0	$\leq 1/3$ $\leq 1/3$	$\leq 1/2$ 0	(resummed) $O(\alpha_s^2)$
Jet broadening	$B_\pm = \frac{\Sigma_{i \in S_\pm} \lvert \vec{p}_i \times \vec{n}_T \rvert}{2\, \Sigma_i \lvert \vec{p}_i \rvert}$; $B_T = B_+ + B_-$ $B_W = \max(B_+, B_-)$	0 0	$\leq 1/(2\sqrt{3})$ $\leq 1/(2\sqrt{3})$	$\leq 1/(2\sqrt{2})$ $\leq 1/(2\sqrt{3})$	(resummed) $O(\alpha_s^2)$
Energy-Energy Correlations	$EEC(\chi) = \sum_{events} \sum_{i,j} \frac{E_i E_j}{E_{vis}^2} \int_{\chi + \frac{\Delta\chi}{2}}^{\chi - \frac{\Delta\chi}{2}} \delta(\chi - \chi_{ij})$	0 π	0 π	0 π	(resummed) $O(\alpha_s^2)$
Asymmetry of EEC	$AEEC(\chi) = EEC(\pi - \chi) - EEC(\chi)$	0 π/2	0 π/2	0 π/2	$O(\alpha_s^2)$
Differential 2-jet rate	$D_2(y) = \frac{R_2(y - \Delta y) - R_2(y)}{\Delta y}$				(resummed) $O(\alpha_s^2)$

most important example : n-jet cross section

experiment

QCD theory



approx. equivalent

infrared safety

real physical event
with 3 hadron-jets

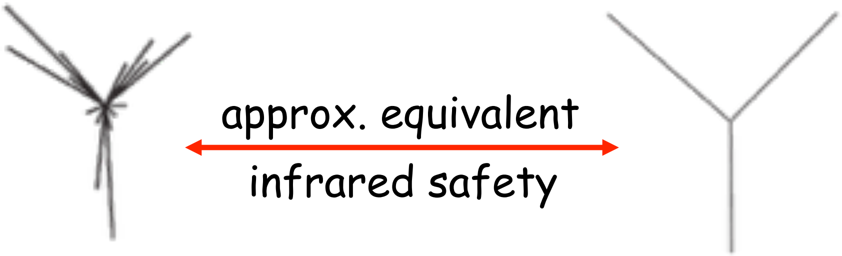
theor. jet event
with 3 parton-jets

jets are the central link between theory and experiment

most important example : n-jet cross section

experiment

QCD theory



approx. equivalent

infrared safety

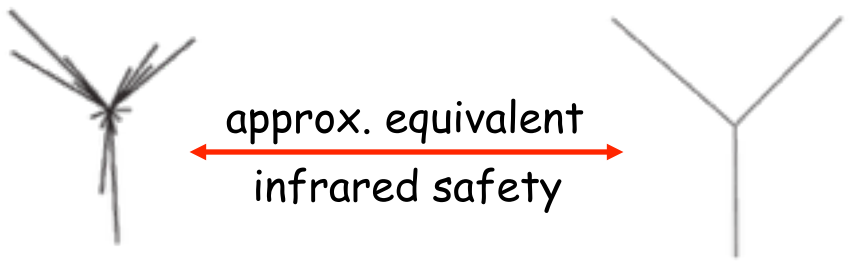
real physical event
with 3 hadron-jets

theor. jet event
with 3 parton-jets

jets are the central link between theory and experiment

But what is a jet exactly?

most important example : n-jet cross section



experiment

QCD theory

approx. equivalent

infrared safety

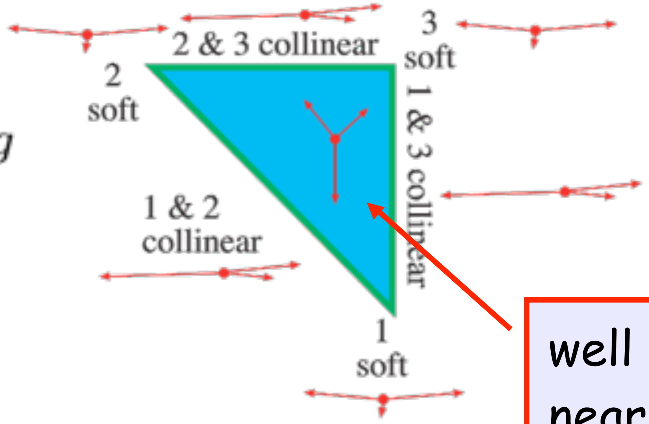
real physical event
with 3 hadron-jets

theor. jet event
with 3 parton-jets

jets are the central link between theory and experiment

But what is a jet exactly?

recall:
$e^+e^- \to q\bar{q}g$

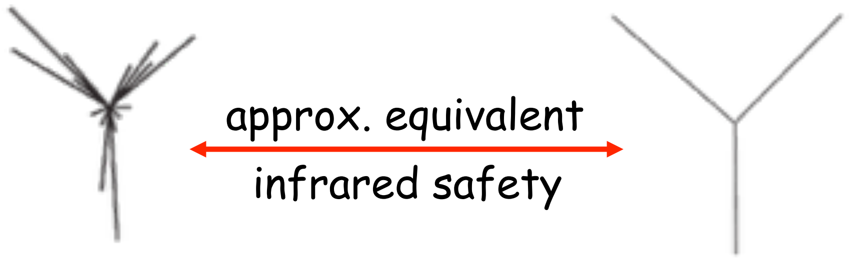


well inside: 3-jets
near edges: 2-jets

jet "measure"/"algorithm":
classify the final-state of hadrons (exp.) or partons (th.) according to the number of jets

most important example : n-jet cross section

experiment **QCD theory**



approx. equivalent

infrared safety

real physical event
with 3 hadron-jets

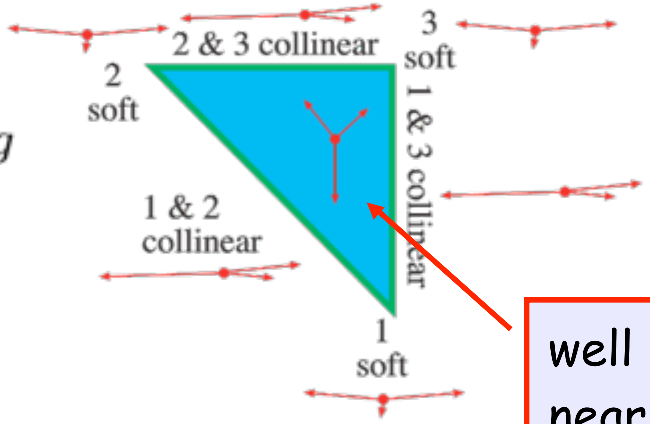
theor. jet event
with 3 parton-jets

jets are the central link between theory and experiment

But what is a jet exactly?

recall:

$e^+e^- \to q\bar{q}g$



jet "measure"/"algorithm":
classify the final-state of
hadrons (exp.) or partons (th.)
according to the number of jets

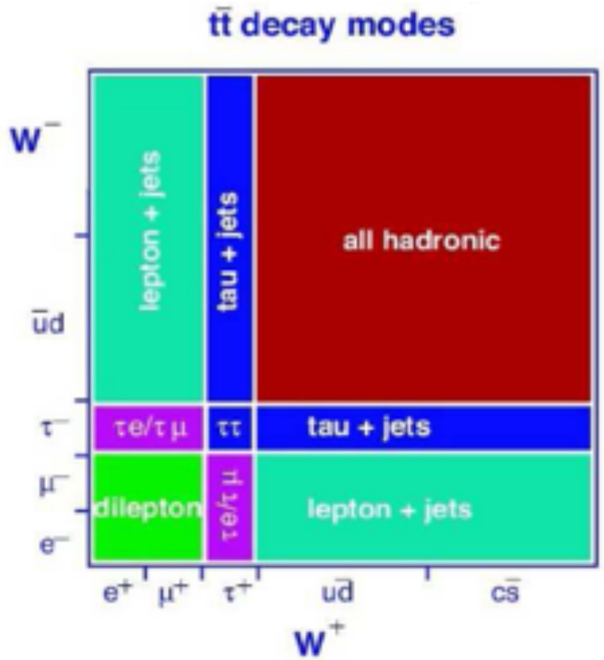
well inside: 3-jets
near edges: 2-jets

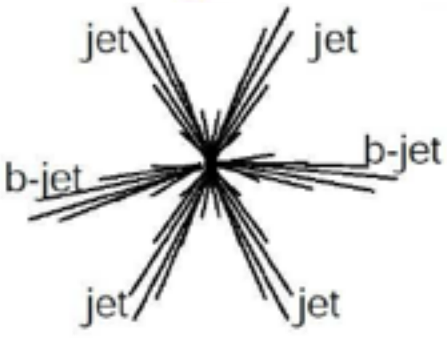
"2 or 3" depends on algorithm

jets – the central link between theory and experiment

input to almost all analyses at the LHC:

BSM & Higgs searches, top physics, PDF analyses, MC validation, …





All-hadronic
(BR~46%, huge bckg)

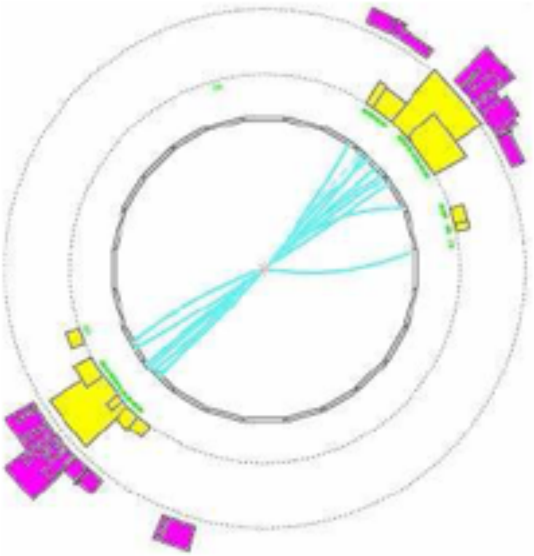
heavy objects have multi-jet final-states

- 10^7 top-antitop pairs for 10 fb^{-1} !
- vast number of QCD multi-jets:

# jets	# events for 10 fb^{-1}
3	$9 \cdot 10^8$
4	$7 \cdot 10^7$
5	$6 \cdot 10^6$
6	$3 \cdot 10^5$
7	$2 \cdot 10^4$
8	$2 \cdot 10^3$

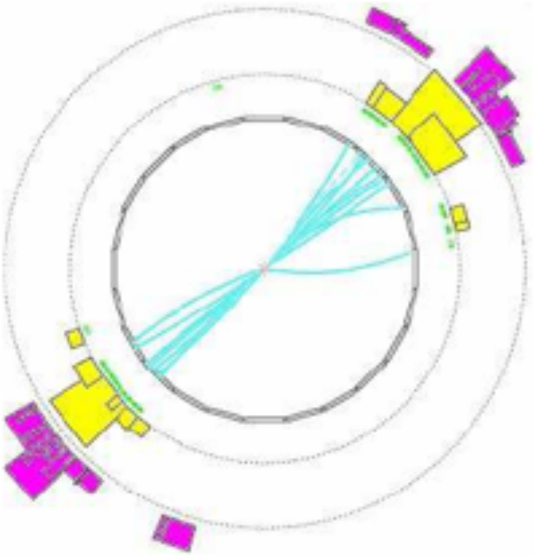
tree level estimates:
Draggiotis, Kleiss, Papadopoulos
p_T(jet) > 60 GeV, θ_{ij} > 30deg., $|y_{ij}|$ < 3

seeing vs. defining jets

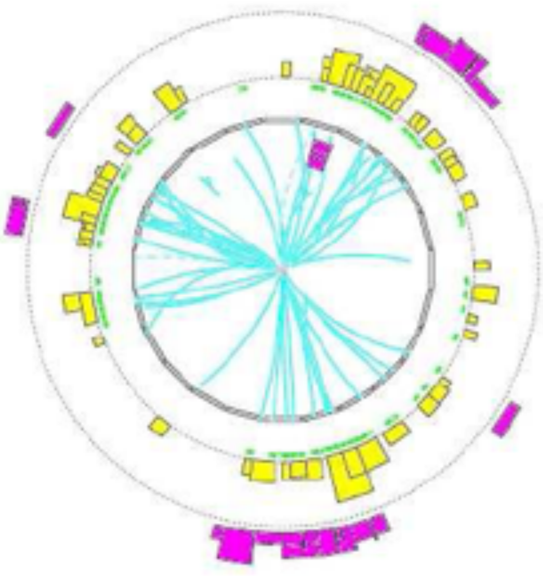


clearly (?) a 2-jet event

seeing vs. defining jets

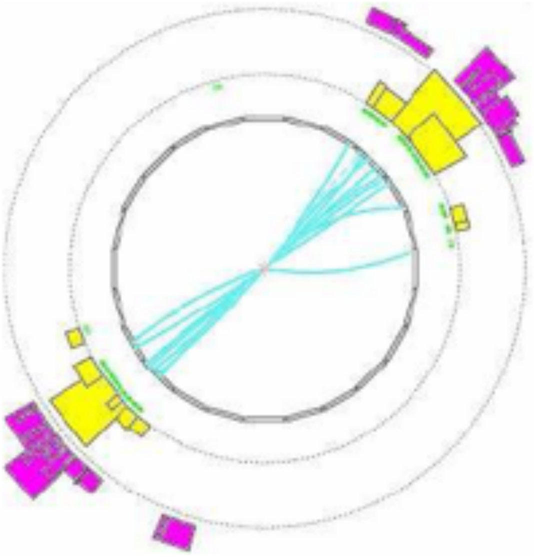


clearly (?) a 2-jet event

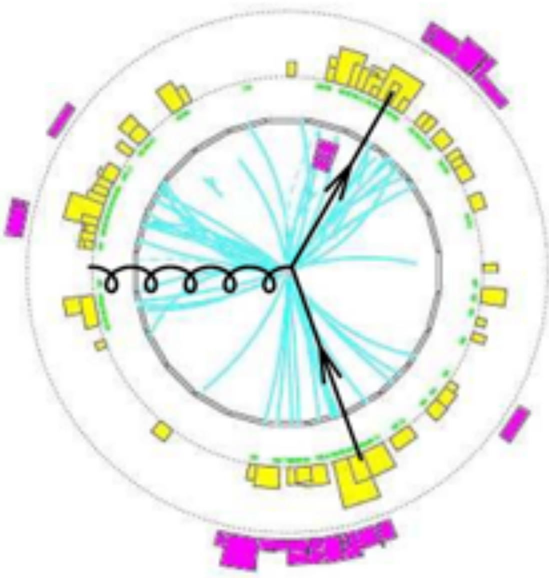


how many jets do you count?

seeing vs. defining jets

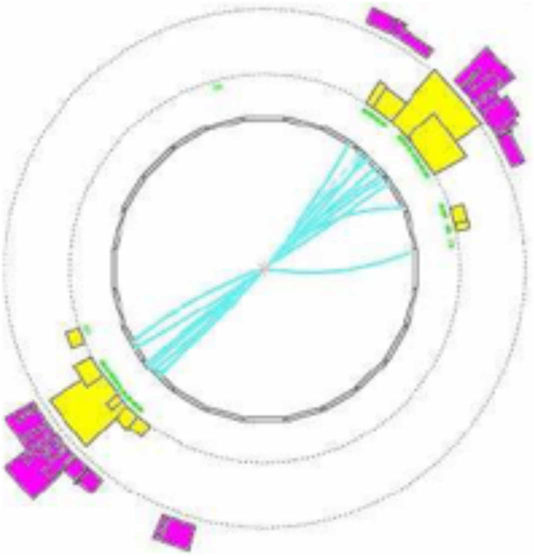


clearly (?) a 2-jet event

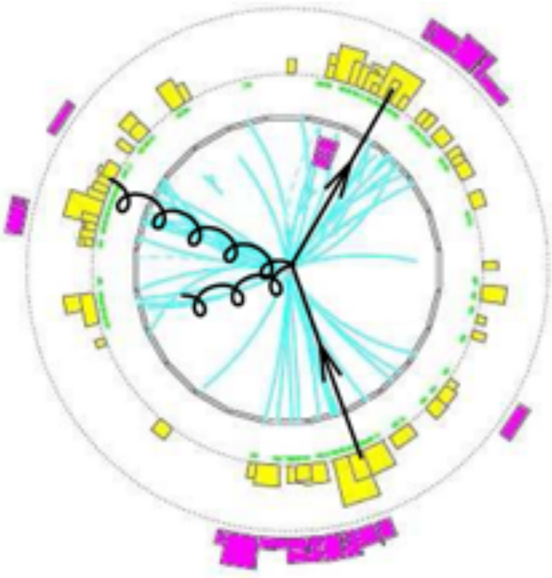


how many jets do you count?

seeing vs. defining jets

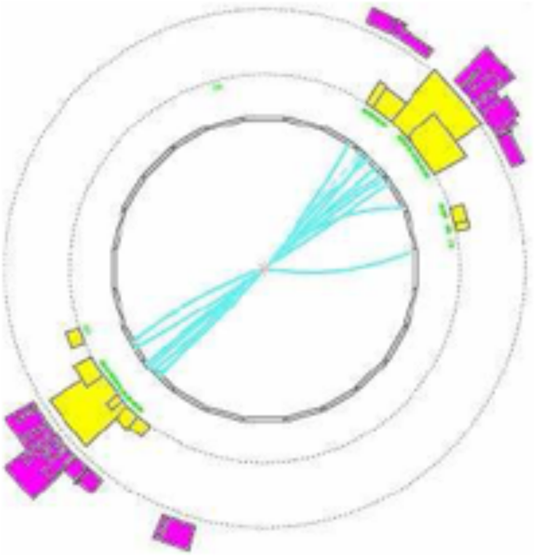


clearly (?) a 2-jet event

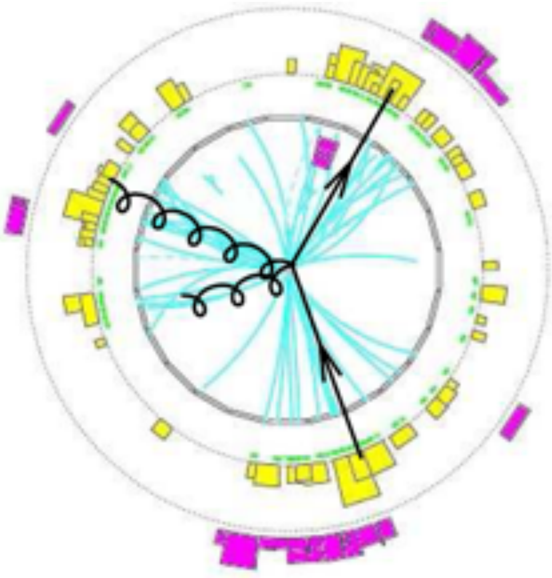


how many jets do you count?

seeing vs. defining jets



clearly (?) a 2-jet event



how many jets do you count?

the "best" jet definition does not exist – construction is unavoidably ambiguous

basically two issues:

- which particles/partons get put together in a jet → **jet algorithm**
- how to combine their momenta → **recombination scheme**

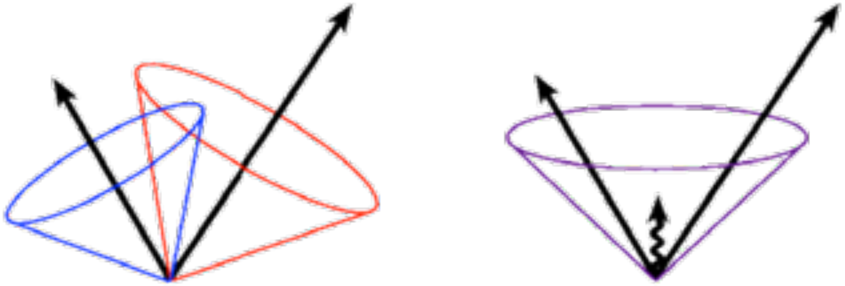
basic requirements for a jet definition

projection to jets should be resilient to QCD & detector effects

basic requirements for a jet definition

projection to jets should be resilient to QCD & detector effects

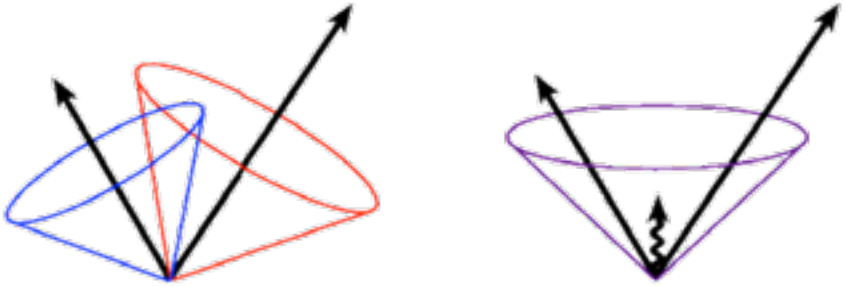
- adding an infinit. soft parton should not change the number of jets



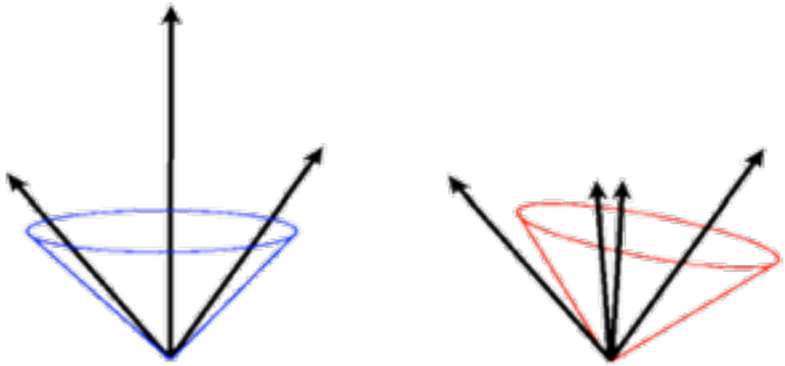
basic requirements for a jet definition

projection to jets should be resilient to QCD & detector effects

- adding an infinit. soft parton should not change the number of jets



- replacing a parton by a collinear pair of partons should not change the number of jets

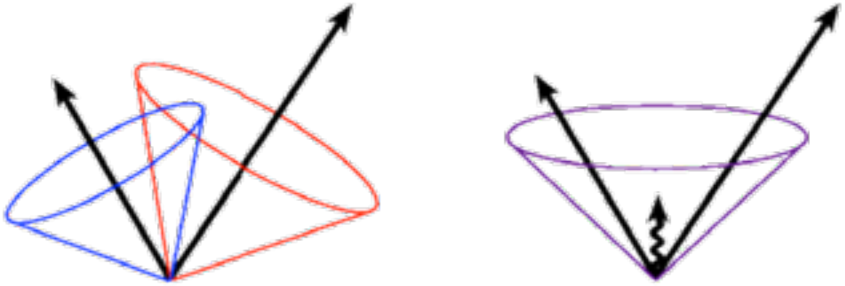


basic requirements for a jet definition

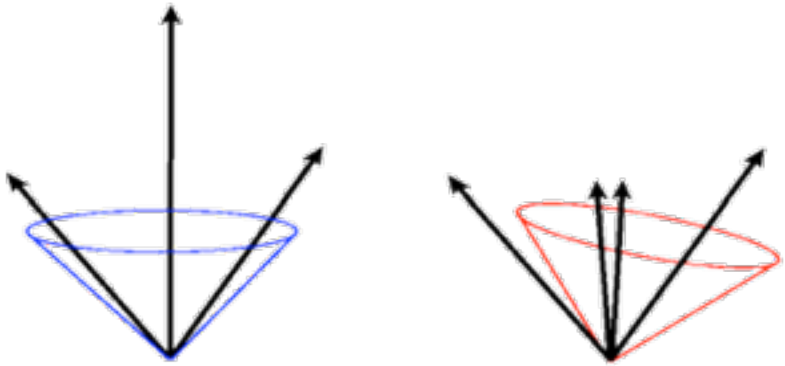
projection to jets should be resilient to QCD & detector effects

IR safety again!

- adding an infinit. soft parton should not change the number of jets



- replacing a parton by a collinear pair of partons should not change the number of jets

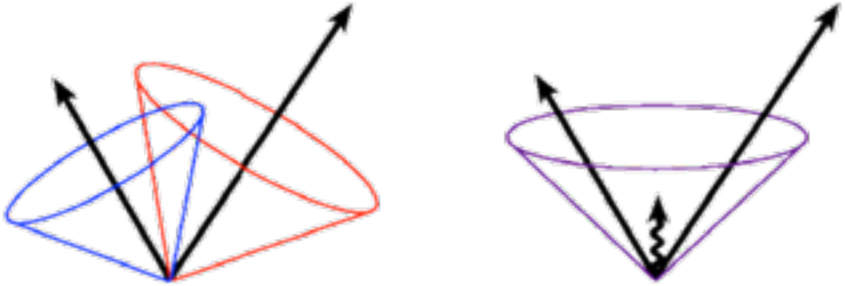


basic requirements for a jet definition

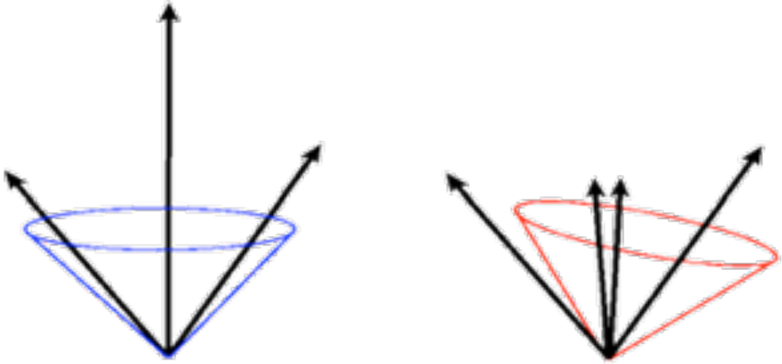
projection to jets should be resilient to QCD & detector effects

IR safety again!

- adding an infinit. soft parton should not change the number of jets



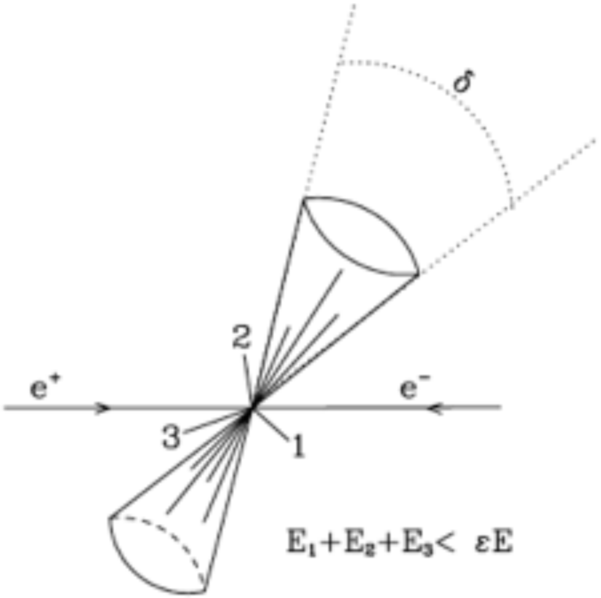
- replacing a parton by a collinear pair of partons should not change the number of jets



(anti-) k_T algorithms are the method of choice these days

Cacciari, Salam, Soyez (FastJet tool)

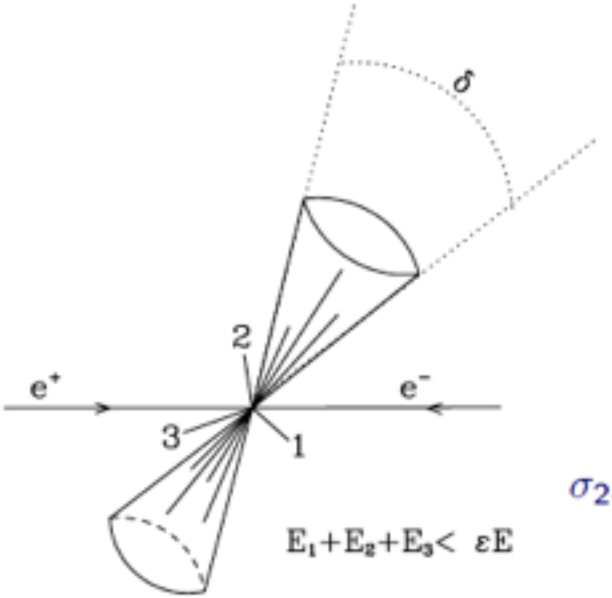
1st jet definition: Sterman and Weinberg



definition:

event has 2 jets if at least a fraction (1-ε) of the event energy in contained in two cones of opening angle δ

1st jet definition: Sterman and Weinberg



definition:

event has 2 jets if at least a fraction (1-ε) of the event energy in contained in two cones of opening angle δ

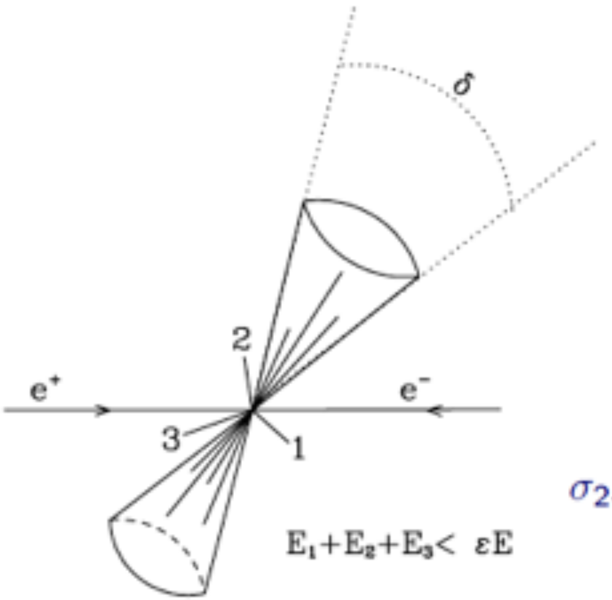
real emission

$$\sigma_{2-jet} = \sigma_{q\bar{q}} \left(1 + \frac{2\alpha_s C_F}{\pi} \int \frac{dE}{E} \frac{d\theta}{\sin\theta} \left(R\left(\frac{E}{Q},\theta\right) \times \right.\right.$$
$$\left.\left. \times \left(1 - \Theta\left(\frac{E}{Q} - \epsilon\right)\Theta(\theta - \delta)\right) - V\left(\frac{E}{Q},\theta\right)\right)\right)$$

virtual

like the total cross section but emission with large E and θ is cut out

1st jet definition: Sterman and Weinberg



definition:

event has 2 jets if at least a fraction (1-ε) of the event energy in contained in two cones of opening angle δ

real emission

$$\sigma_{2-jet} = \sigma_{q\bar{q}}\left(1+\frac{2\alpha_s C_F}{\pi}\int\frac{dE}{E}\frac{d\theta}{\sin\theta}\left(R\left(\frac{E}{Q},\theta\right)\times \left(1-\Theta\left(\frac{E}{Q}-\epsilon\right)\Theta(\theta-\delta)\right)-V\left(\frac{E}{Q},\theta\right)\right)\right)$$

virtual

like the total cross section but emission with large E and θ is cut out

find:

$$\sigma = \sigma_0\left(1+\frac{2\alpha_s C_F}{\pi}\ln\epsilon\ln\delta^2\right)$$

- if ε and/or δ become too small the results makes no sense (spoils KLN cancellation)

classes of jet algorithms

there are many algorithms to choose from!

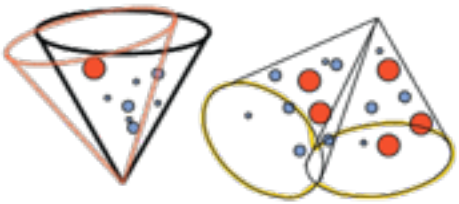
basically two classes: "k_T-type" or "cone"

classes of jet algorithms

there are many algorithms to choose from!

basically two classes: "k_T-type" or "cone"

cone type



long. boost invariant cone size

$$R = \sqrt{\Delta\eta^2 + \Delta\phi^2}$$

top-down approach

cluster particles according to their distance in coordinate space

put cones along dominant direction of energy flow

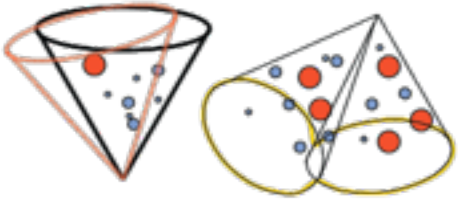
potential problems with IR safety

classes of jet algorithms

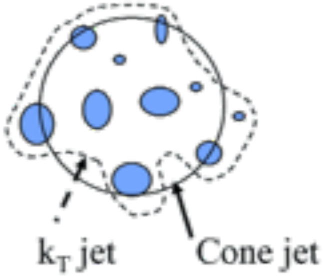
there are many algorithms to choose from!

basically two classes: "k_T-type" or "cone"

cone type



k_T type



long. boost invariant cone size

$$R = \sqrt{\Delta\eta^2 + \Delta\phi^2}$$

top-down approach

bottom-up approach

cluster particles according to their distance in coordinate space

put cones along dominant direction of energy flow

potential problems with IR safety

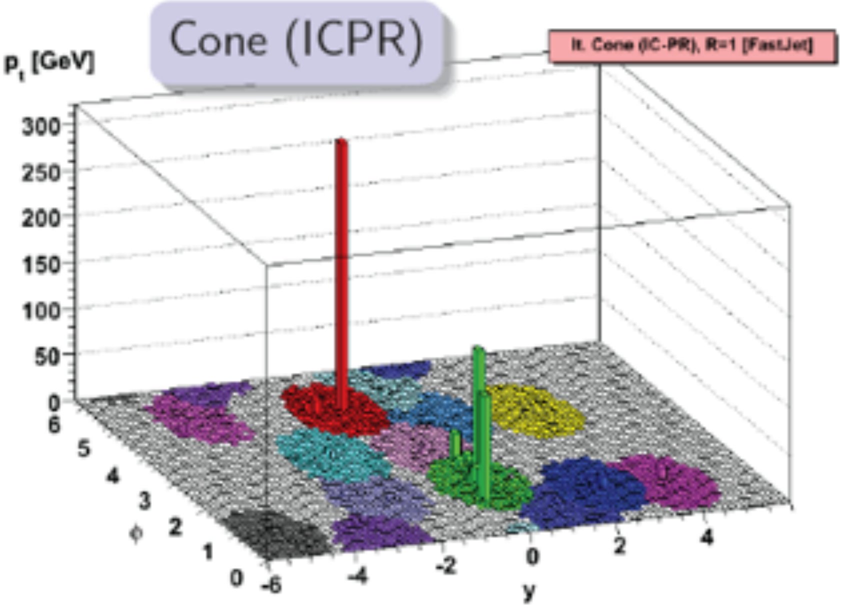
cluster particles according to their distance in momentum space

undo branchings occured in the perturbative QCD evolution:

e.g., pair particles with the smallest relative k_T

geometrical characteristics of jets

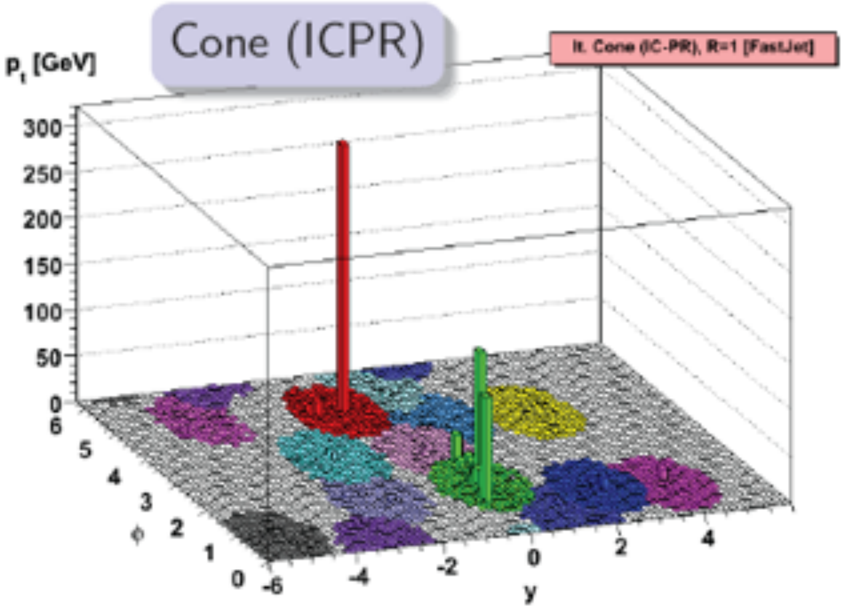
taken from
G. Salam



most cone algorithms produce
circular jets in y-Φ plane
loved by experimentalists

geometrical characteristics of jets

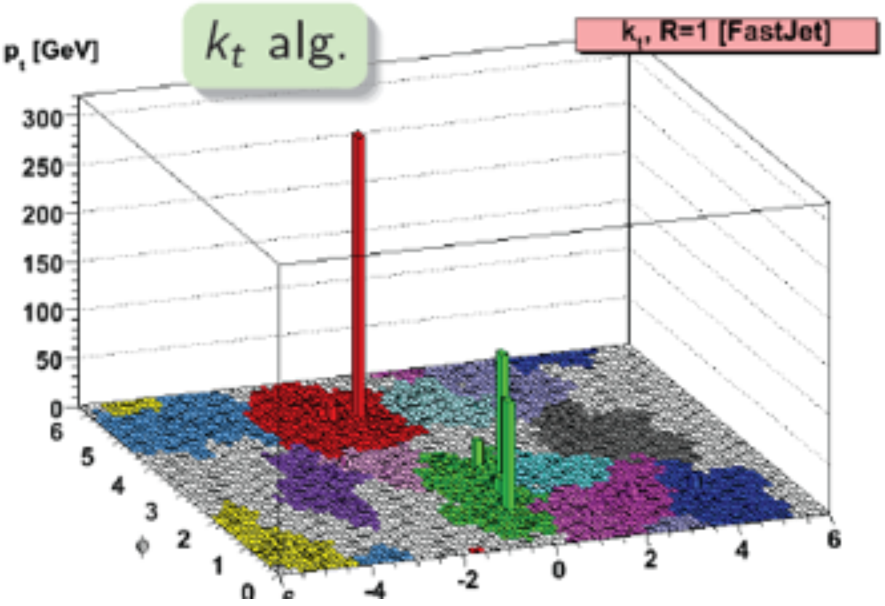
taken from
G. Salam



most cone algorithms produce
circular jets in y-Φ plane
loved by experimentalists

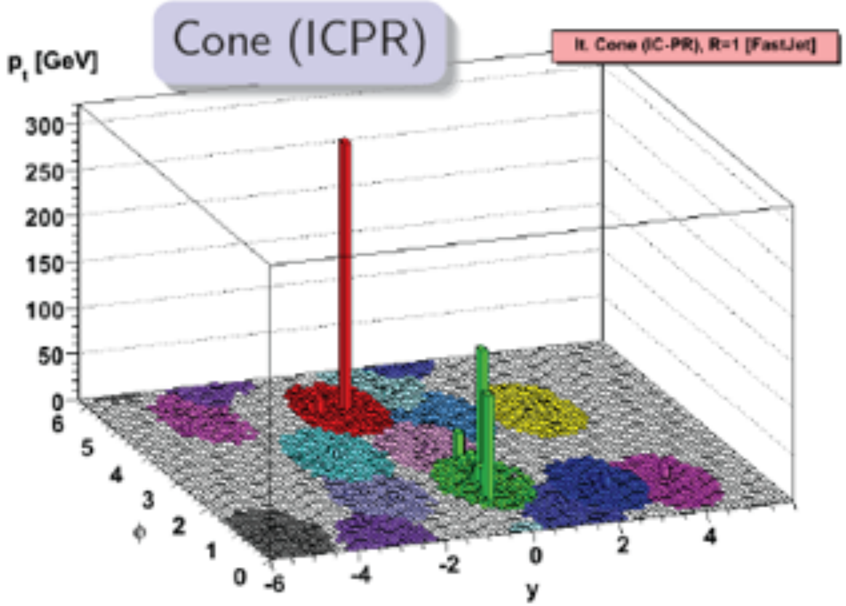
k_T jets have irregular shape
because soft junk clusters first

$$d_{ij} = \min(k_{Ti}^2, k_{Tj}^2)\Delta R_{ij}^2$$



geometrical characteristics of jets

taken from
G. Salam



most cone algorithms produce circular jets in y-Φ plane

loved by experimentalists

k_T jets have irregular shape

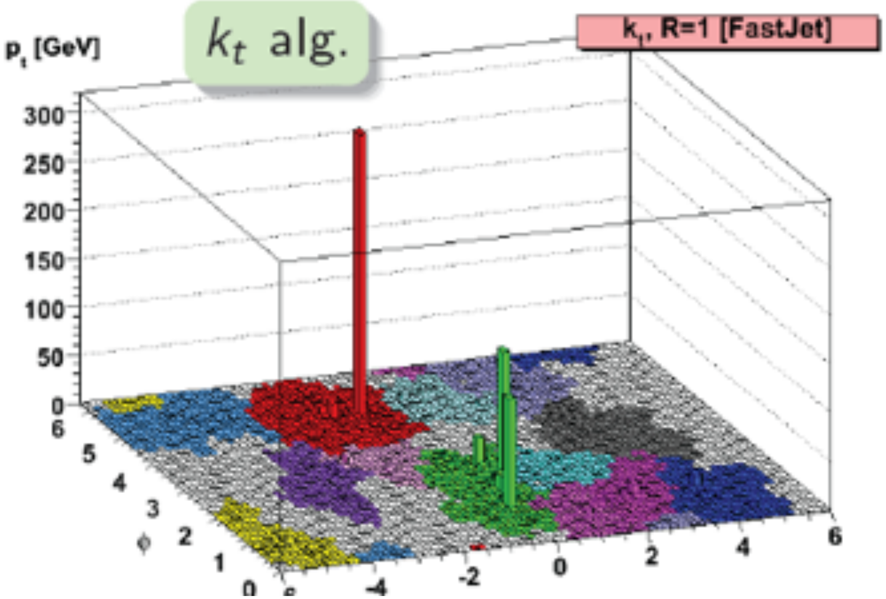
because soft junk clusters first

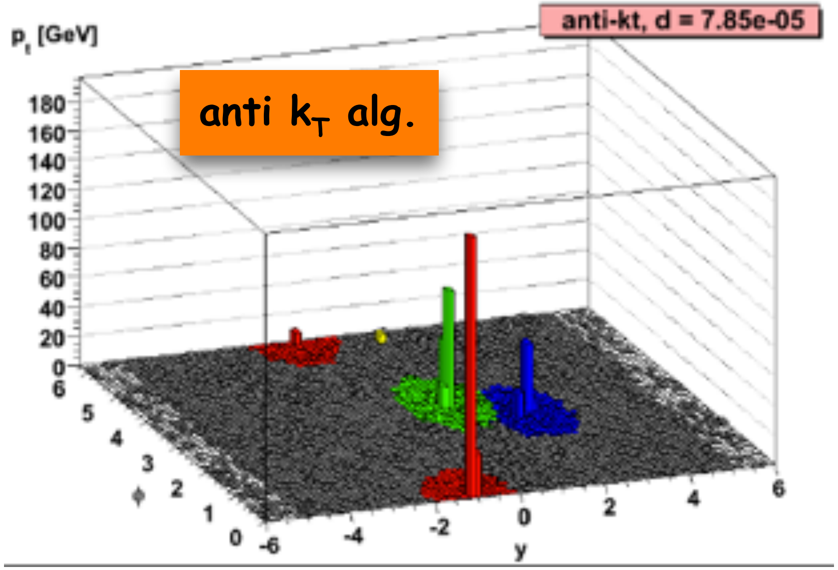
$$d_{ij} = \min(k_{Ti}^2, k_{Tj}^2)\Delta R_{ij}^2$$

anti-k_T has circular jets

hard stuff clusters with neighbors

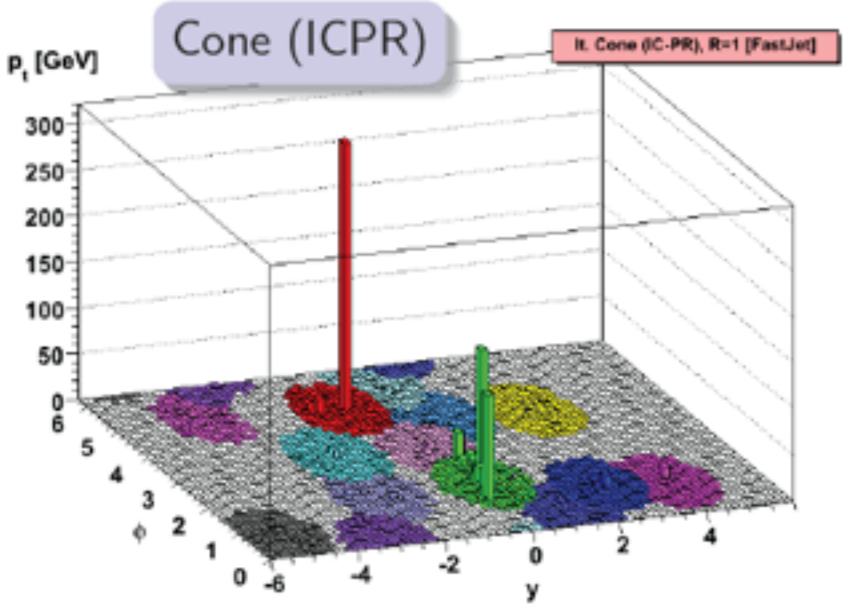
$$d_{ij} = \frac{\Delta R_{ij}^2}{\max(k_{Ti}^2, k_{Tj}^2)}$$





geometrical characteristics of jets

taken from
G. Salam



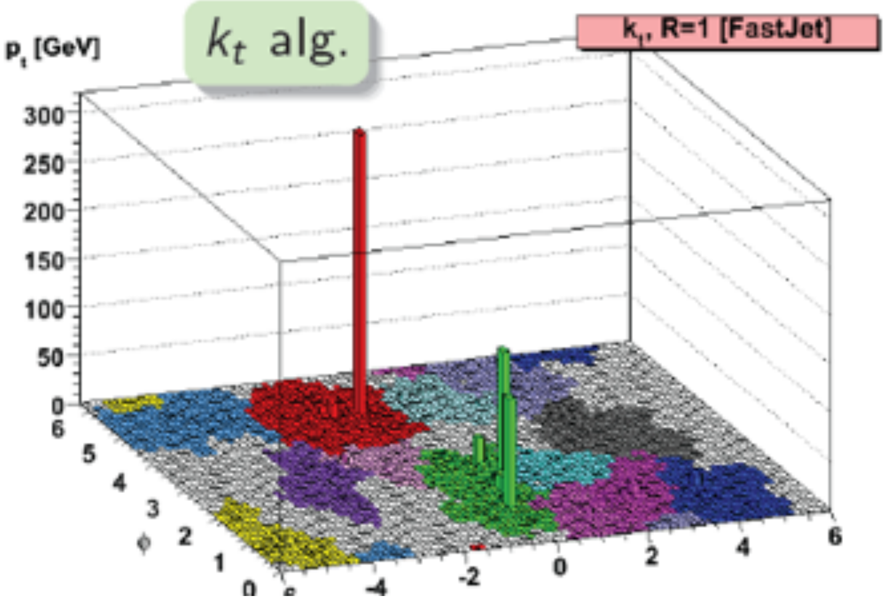
most cone algorithms produce circular jets in y-Φ plane
loved by experimentalists

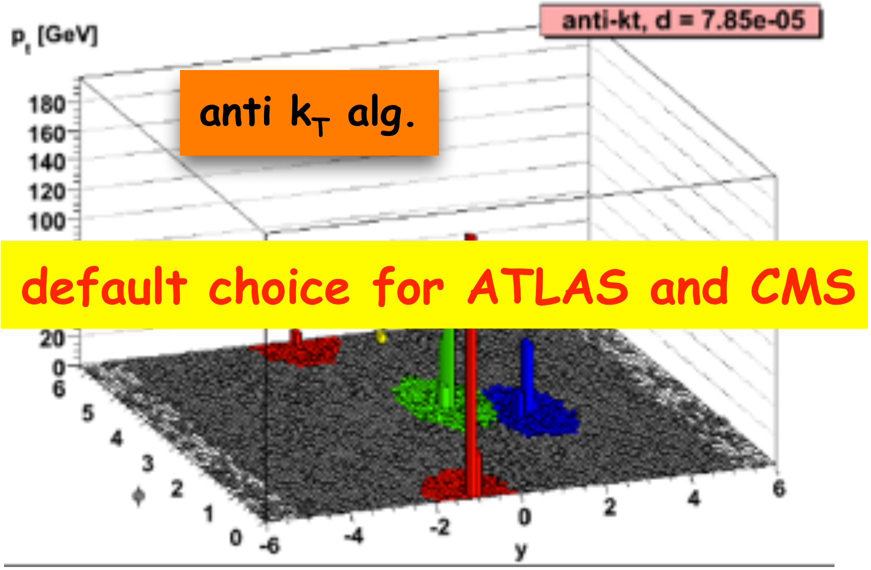
k_T jets have irregular shape
because soft junk clusters first

$$d_{ij} = \min(k_{Ti}^2, k_{Tj}^2)\Delta R_{ij}^2$$

anti-k_T has circular jets
hard stuff clusters with neighbors

$$d_{ij} = \frac{\Delta R_{ij}^2}{\max(k_{Ti}^2, k_{Tj}^2)}$$





default choice for ATLAS and CMS

jets – final remarks

- n-jet vs. (n+1)-jet rate depends on algorithm
  → have to choose the same jet definition in exp. and theory

- have to be careful when comparing between different experiments or experiment and theory (often different jet algorithms!)

- many widely used jet definitions are **NOT IR safe!**
  extensive study by Salam, Soyez, JHEP 0705:086,2007

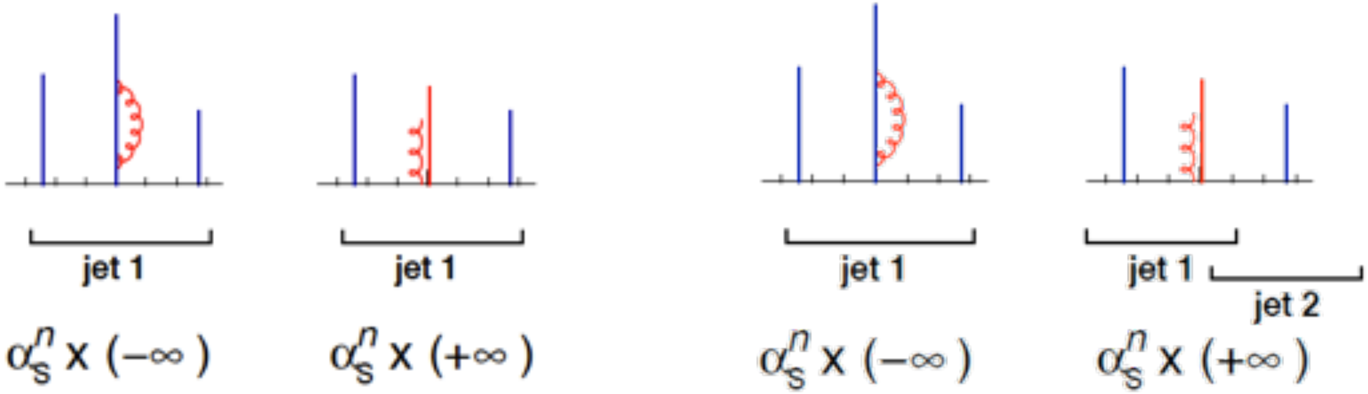
jets – final remarks

- n-jet vs. (n+1)-jet rate depends on algorithm
  → have to choose the same jet definition in exp. and theory

- have to be careful when comparing between different experiments or experiment and theory (often different jet algorithms!)

- many widely used jet definitions are **NOT IR safe!**
  extensive study by Salam, Soyez, JHEP 0705:086,2007

- use of non IR safe definition invalidates pQCD approach



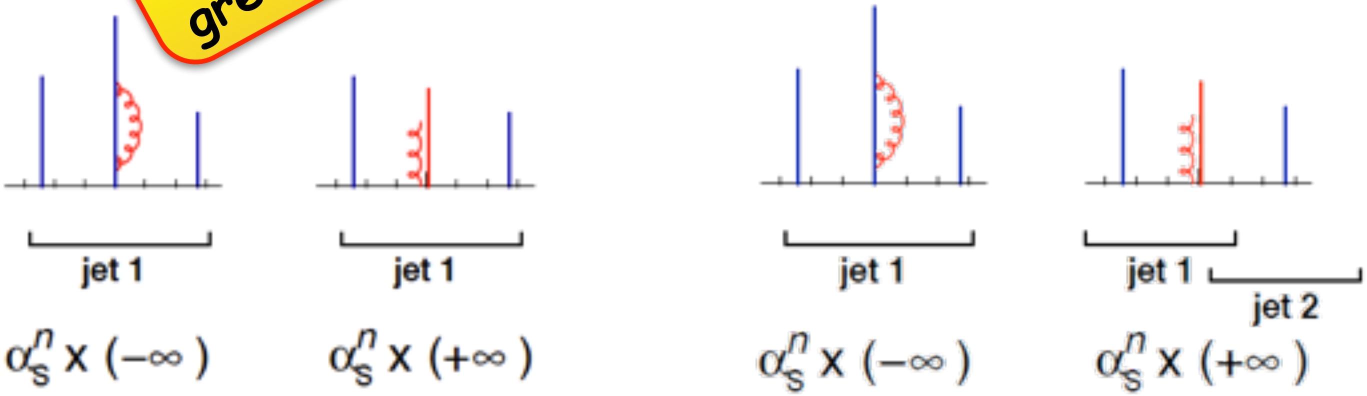
infrared safe
divergencies cancel

not infrared safe
divergencies do not cancel

jets – final remarks

- n-jet vs. (n+1)-jet rate depends on algorithm
  → have to choose the same jet definition in exp theory
- have to be careful when comparing be ent experiments or experiment and theory (often d ithms!)
- many widely used jet d e **NOT IR safe!**
  ve study by Salam, Soyez, JHEP 0705:086,2007
- use of non nition invalidates pQCD approach

want to read more about jets?
great overview article: G. Salam, 0906.1833



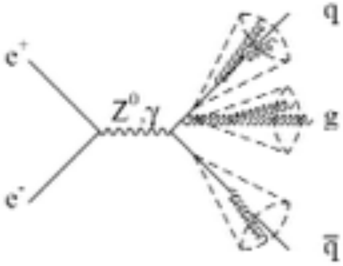
infrared safe
divergencies cancel

not infrared safe
divergencies do not cancel

latest achievement: $e^+e^- \rightarrow$ 3 jets at NNLO

Gehrmann-De Ridder, Gehrmann, Glover, Heinrich; Weinzierl

up to 7 jets in NLO !!
leading color approx
Becker et al., 1111.1733

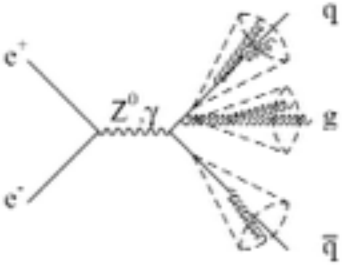


- requires calculation of 3 classes of processes
- numerous IR singularities to identify and cancel

latest achievement: $e^+e^- \to$ 3 jets at NNLO

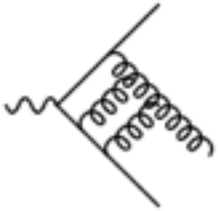
Gehrmann-De Ridder, Gehrmann, Glover, Heinrich; Weinzierl

up to **7** jets in NLO !!
leading color approx
Becker et al., 1111.1733



- requires calculation of 3 classes of processes
- numerous IR singularities to identify and cancel

- 2-loop matrix elements (3 partons)

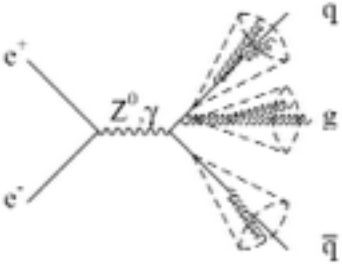


explicit IR poles from loop integrals

latest achievement: $e^+e^- \to$ 3 jets at NNLO

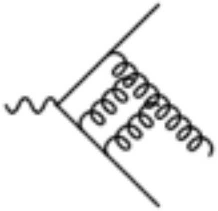
Gehrmann-De Ridder, Gehrmann, Glover, Heinrich; Weinzierl

up to **7** jets in NLO !!
leading color approx
Becker et al., 1111.1733



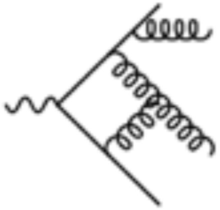
- requires calculation of 3 classes of processes
- numerous IR singularities to identify and cancel

- 2-loop matrix elements (3 partons)



explicit IR poles from loop integrals

- 1-loop matrix elements (4 partons)



explicit IR poles from loop integrals

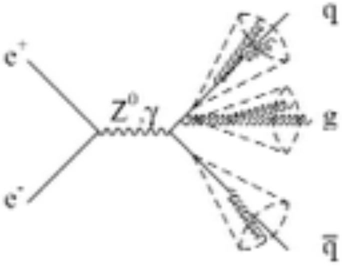
implicit IR poles from 1-unresolved radiation

soft, collinear

latest achievement: $e^+e^- \to$ 3 jets at NNLO

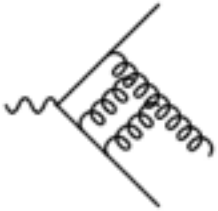
Gehrmann-De Ridder, Gehrmann, Glover, Heinrich; Weinzierl

up to **7** jets in NLO !!
leading color approx
Becker et al., 1111.1733



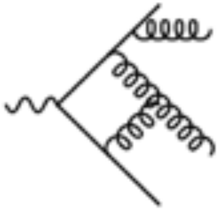
- requires calculation of 3 classes of processes
- numerous IR singularities to identify and cancel

- 2-loop matrix elements (3 partons)



explicit IR poles from loop integrals

- 1-loop matrix elements (4 partons)

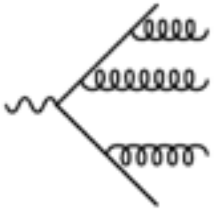


explicit IR poles from loop integrals

implicit IR poles from 1-unresolved radiation

soft, collinear

- tree level matrix elements (5 partons)



implicit IR poles from 2-unresolved radiation

double soft, soft/collinear,
double single collinear, triple collinear

structure of NNLO cross section

- complicated phase space (dΦ) integrations done with numerical (MC) methods
- different strategies for IR cancellations, most common: **subtraction method**

tricky issue: find NNLO subtraction functions which

- approximate cross section in all singular limits
- are sufficiently simple to be integrated analytically

$$\begin{aligned} d\sigma^{\text{n}-jets}_{\text{NNLO}} = & \int_{d\Phi_{n+2}} (d\sigma^R - d\sigma^S) \\ & + \int_{d\Phi_{n+1}} (d\sigma^{V,1} - d\sigma^{VS,1}) \\ & + \int_{d\Phi_n} d\sigma^{V,2} + \int_{d\Phi_{n+2}} d\sigma^S + \int_{d\Phi_{n+1}} d\sigma^{VS,1} \end{aligned}$$

analytically analytically

each line above is free of IR poles and numerically finite; implemented in EERAD3 code

1402.4140

structure of NNLO cross section

- complicated phase space (dΦ) integrations done with numerical (MC) methods
- different strategies for IR cancellations, most common: **subtraction method**

tricky issue: find NNLO subtraction functions which

- approximate cross section in all singular limits
- are sufficiently simple to be integrated analytically

$$\begin{aligned} d\sigma^{\mathrm{n}-jets}_{\mathrm{NNLO}} &= \int_{d\Phi_{n+2}} (d\sigma^R - d\sigma^S) \\ &+ \int_{d\Phi_{n+1}} (d\sigma^{V,1} - d\sigma^{VS,1}) \\ &+ \int_{d\Phi_n} d\sigma^{V,2} + \underbrace{\int_{d\Phi_{n+2}} d\sigma^S}_{\text{analytically}} + \underbrace{\int_{d\Phi_{n+1}} d\sigma^{VS,1}}_{\text{analytically}} \end{aligned}$$

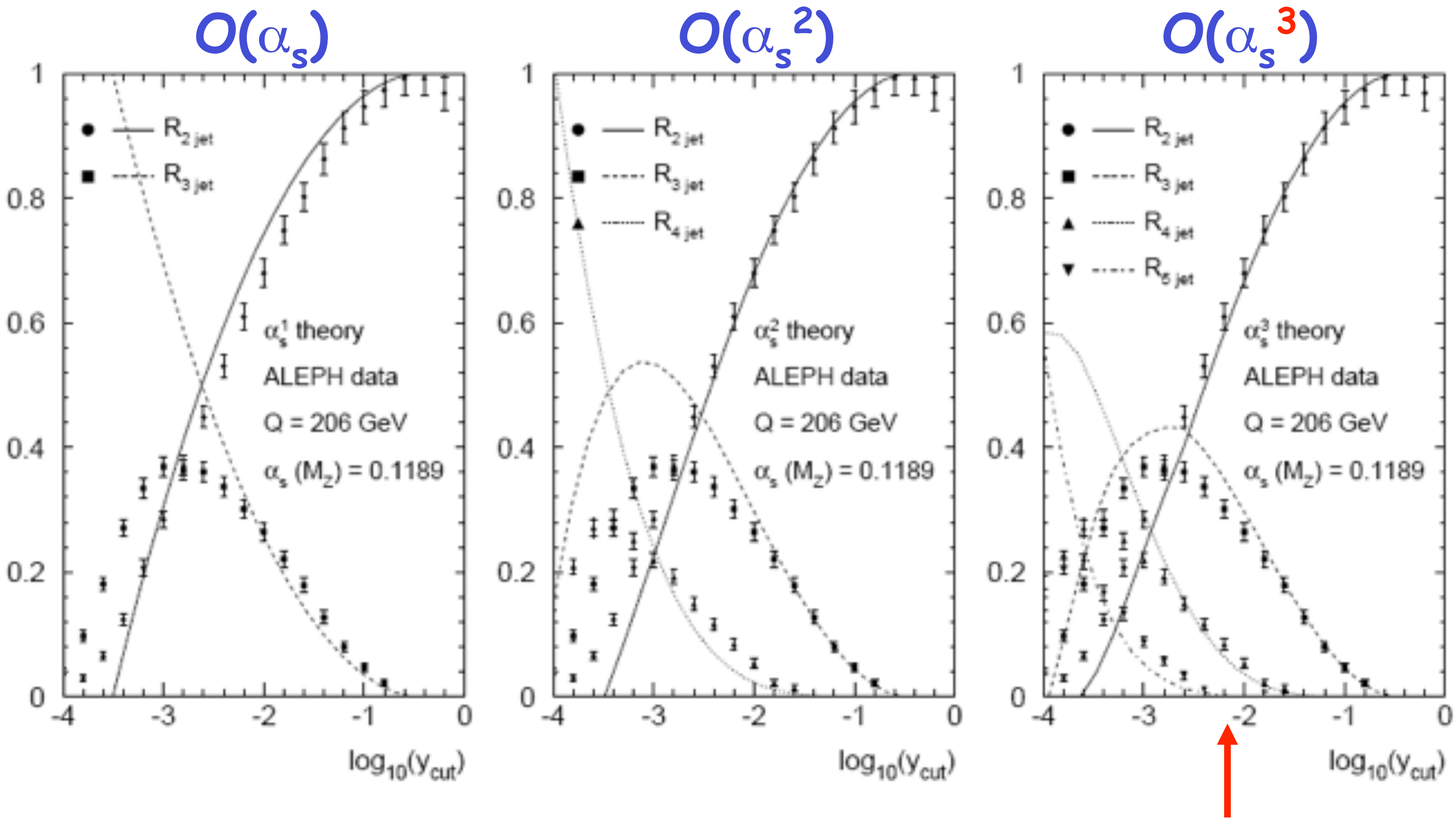
each line above is free of IR poles and numerically finite; implemented in EERAD3 code

1402.4140

crucial step towards full NNLO corrections for 2 → 2 QCD processes

impact on e^+e^- jet rates

Gehrmann-De Ridder, Gehrmann, Glover, Heinrich; Weinzierl



$R_{n\ jet}$ normalized to σ_{tot} at given order

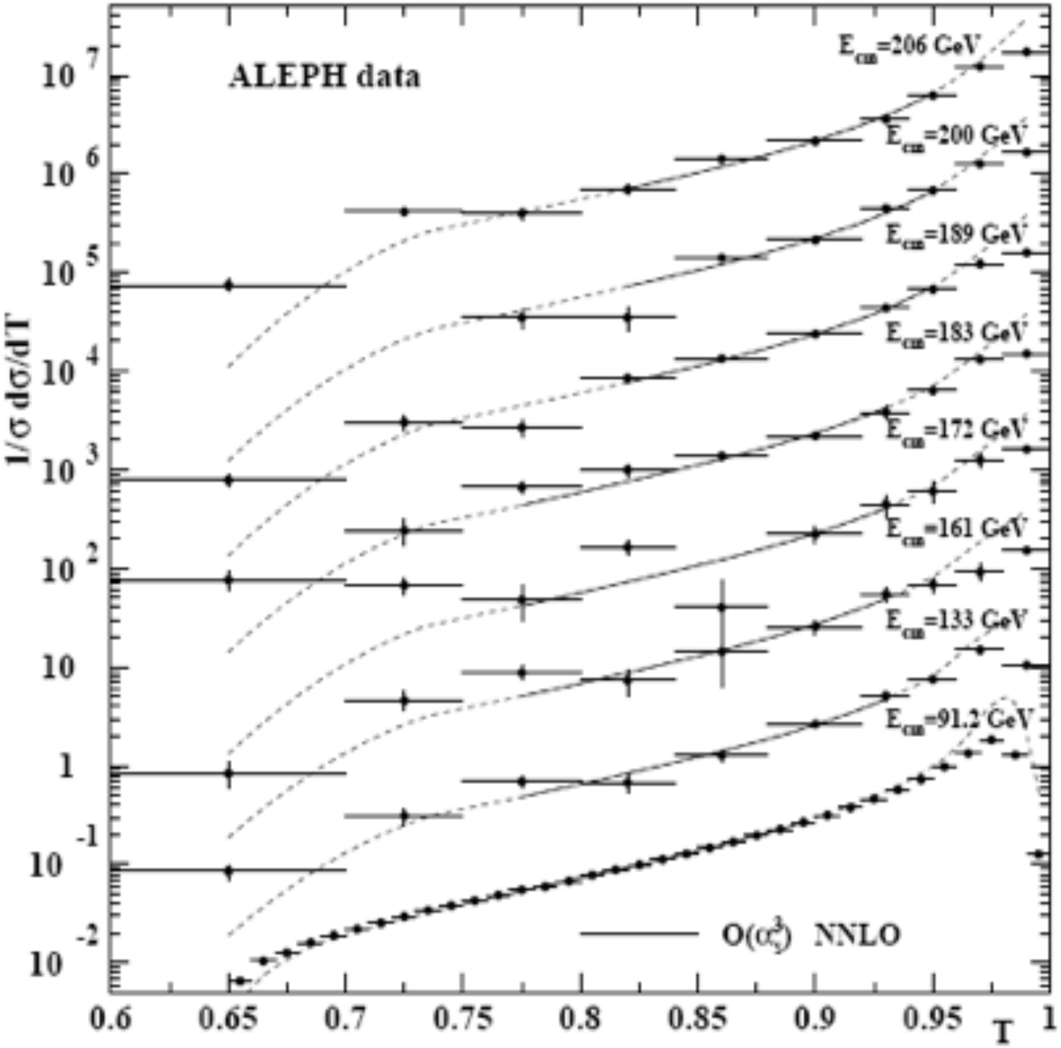
y_{cut}: jet resolution parameter
of Durham jet algorithm

$R_{2\ jet}$ at N^3LO
$R_{3\ jet}$ at NNLO
$R_{4\ jet}$ at NLO
$R_{5\ jet}$ at LO

inhibited radiation: all-order resummations

recall **thrust** variable: $T \equiv \max|_{\vec{n}} \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} |\vec{p}_i \cdot \vec{n}|}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} |\vec{p}_i|}$

T=1 : pencil-like event
T=1/2: spherical event

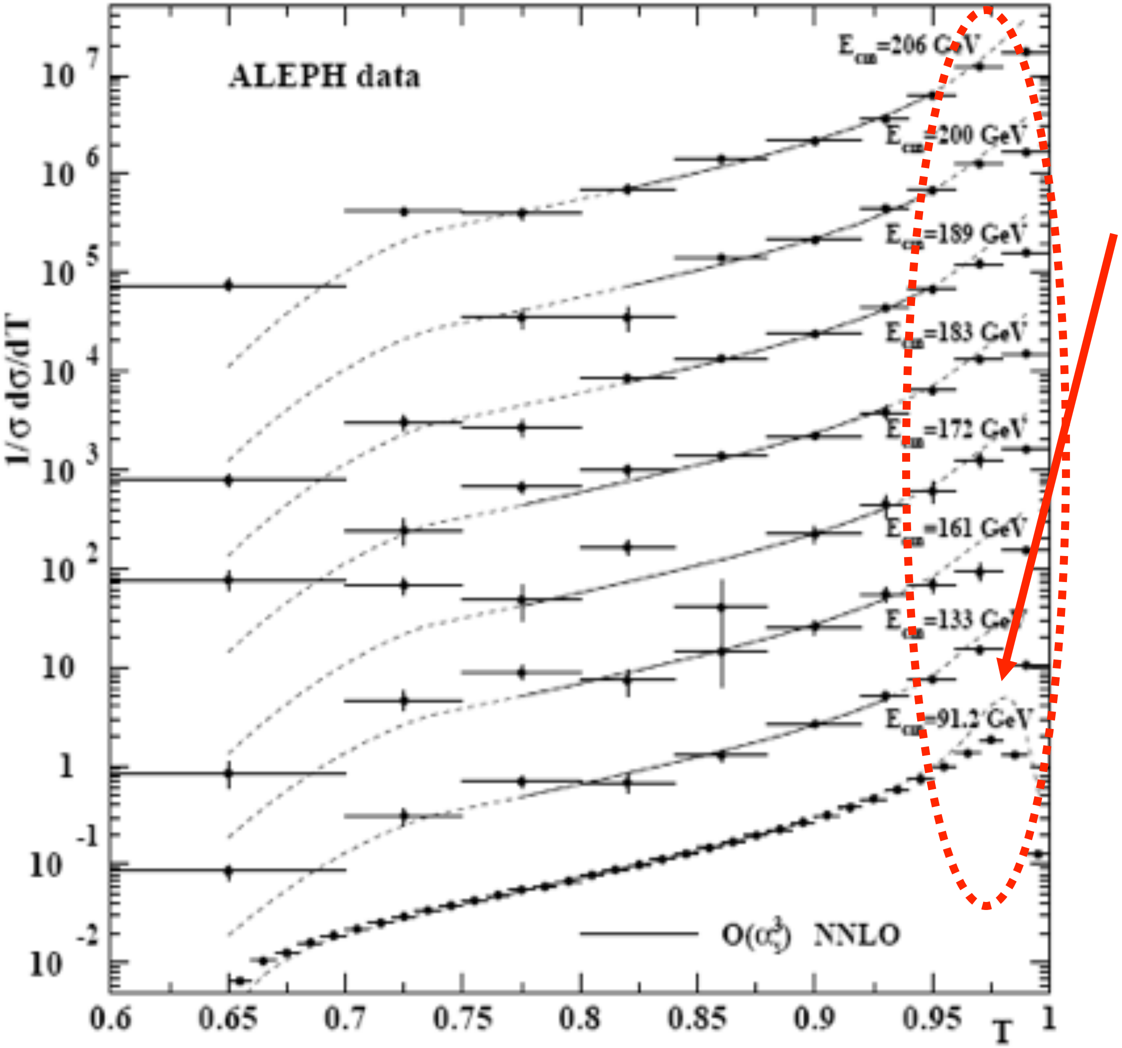


find: near perfect agreement with NNLO theory

inhibited radiation: all-order resummations

recall **thrust** variable: $T \equiv \max|_{\vec{n}} \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} |\vec{p}_i \cdot \vec{n}|}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} |\vec{p}_i|}$

T=1 : pencil-like event
T=1/2: spherical event



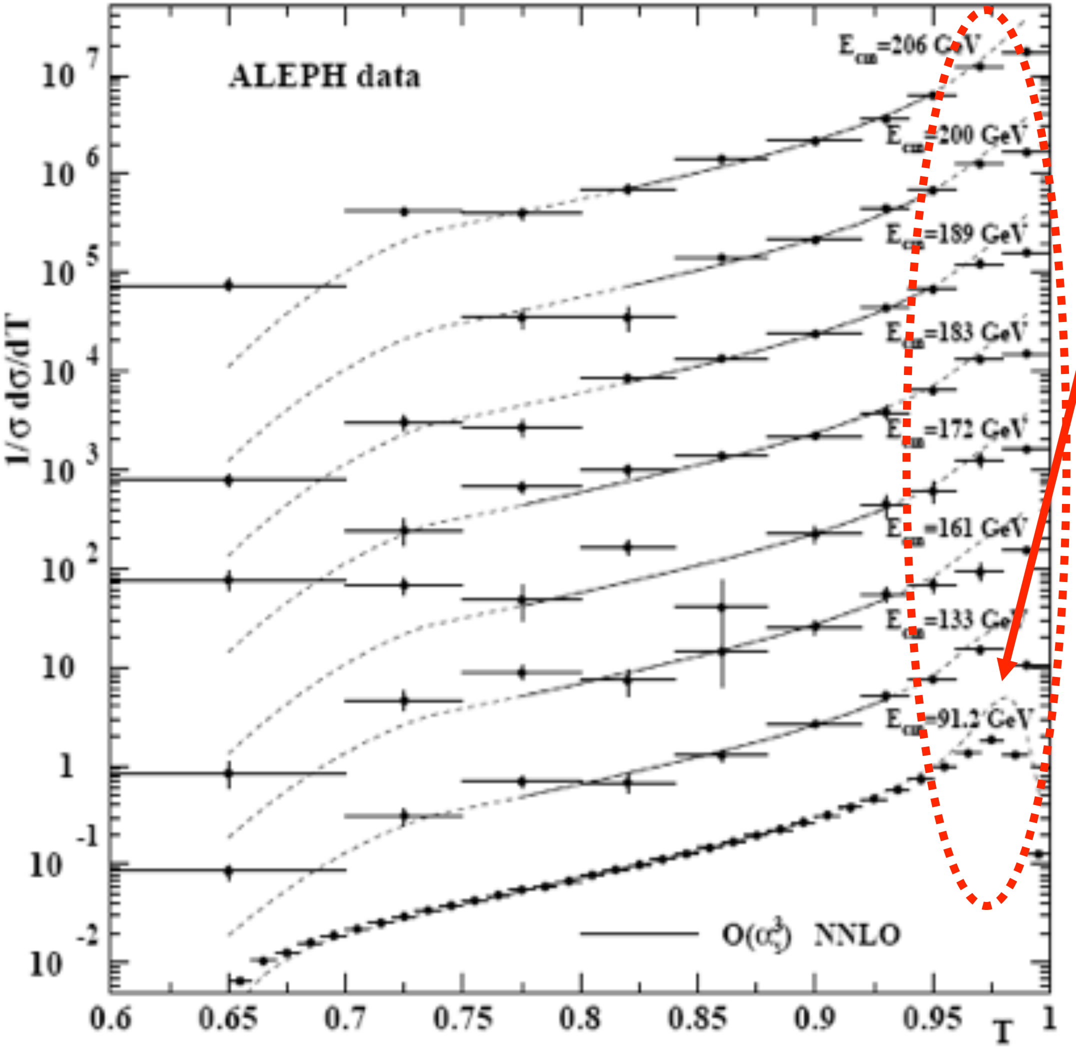
find: near perfect agreement with NNLO theory

closer look: trouble for T → 1

inhibited radiation: all-order resummations

recall **thrust** variable: $T \equiv \max|_{\vec{n}} \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} |\vec{p}_i \cdot \vec{n}|}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} |\vec{p}_i|}$

T=1 : pencil-like event
T=1/2: spherical event



find: near perfect agreement with NNLO theory

closer look: trouble for T → 1

this is a general phenomenon for gauge theories !!

related to inhibited radiation near partonic threshold/excl. boundary

inhibited radiation: all-order resummations

What goes wrong for thrust?

- $T=1$ corresponds to 2-parton final state (just two back-to-back jets)
- if $T \to 1$ only soft/collinear gluons can be emitted (“**inhibited radiation**”) in events with an extra gluon
- IR singularities cancel between real emissions and loop corrections but leave **large logarithms** behind in each order of α_s
  here: $(\alpha_s \ln^2 [1-T])^n$ → spoil convergence of pQCD series even if a_s<<1

Can this be cured?

inhibited radiation: all-order resummations

What goes wrong for thrust?

- $T=1$ corresponds to 2-parton final state (just two back-to-back jets)
- if $T\rightarrow 1$ only soft/collinear gluons can be emitted (“**inhibited radiation**”) in events with an extra gluon
- IR singularities cancel between real emissions and loop corrections but leave **large logarithms** behind in each order of α_s

  here: $(\alpha_s \ln^2 [1-T])^n$ → spoil convergence of pQCD series even if $\alpha_s \ll 1$

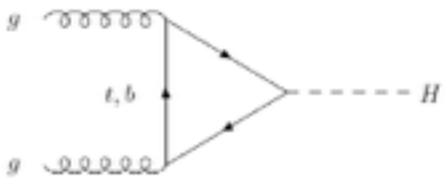
Can this be cured?

Yes! re-organize pQCD series to **resum large logs to all orders**

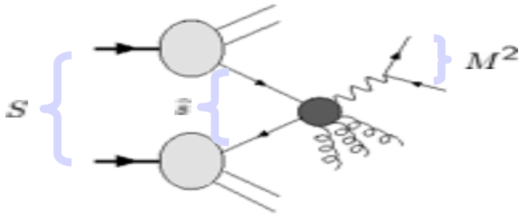
Sterman; Catani, Trentadue; Laenen, Oderda, Sterman; Catani et al.; Sterman, Vogelsang; Kidonakis, Owens; ...

of great phenomenological relevance in hadronic processes

examples:



high mass particles at the LHC

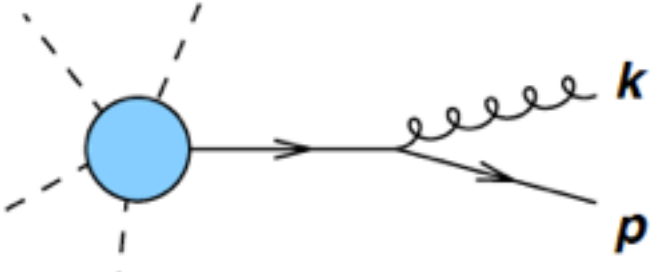


Drell-Yan pairs at fixed target exp.

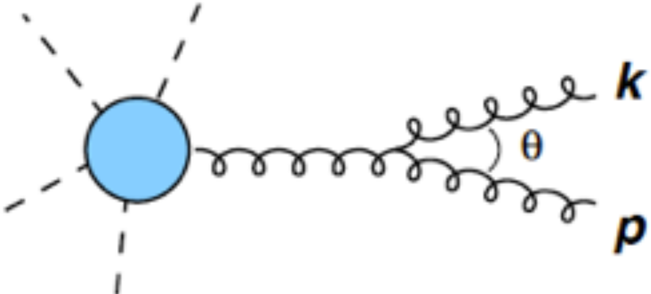
→ **more in Part IV**

recap: idea behind parton shower MC programs

- we have seen that emission of soft/collinear partons is favored
- we know exactly how and when it occurs (process-independent)



$$\frac{2\alpha_s C_F}{\pi}\frac{dE}{E}\frac{d\theta}{\theta}$$



$$\frac{2\alpha_s C_A}{\pi}\frac{dE}{E}\frac{d\theta}{\theta}$$

valid in
soft-collinear limit

this will provide the basis for a "parton shower"

- **main idea:** seek for an approx. result such that soft/collinear
  enhanced terms are included to all orders
  emissions are probabilistic (as needed to set up an event generator)

role of the Sudakov exponent

- the possible way to proceed is to ask

  “what is the probability of NOT radiating a gluon above a certain scale k_T?”

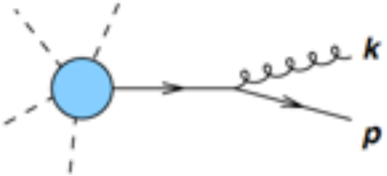
$$P(\text{no emission above } k_t) \sim 1 - \frac{2\alpha_s C_F}{\pi} \int \frac{dE}{E} \int \frac{d\theta}{\theta} \Theta(E\theta - k_t)$$

role of the Sudakov exponent

- the possible way to proceed is to ask

  "what is the probability of NOT radiating a gluon above a certain scale k_T?"

$$P(\text{no emission above } k_t) \sim 1 - \frac{2\alpha_s C_F}{\pi}\int\frac{dE}{E}\int\frac{d\theta}{\theta}\Theta(E\theta - k_t)$$

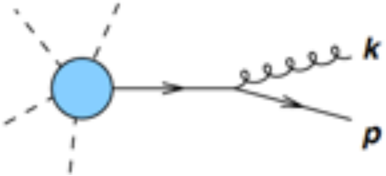


role of the Sudakov exponent

- the possible way to proceed is to ask

  "what is the probability of NOT radiating a gluon above a certain scale k_T?"

$$P(\text{no emission above } k_t) \sim 1 - \frac{2\alpha_s C_F}{\pi}\int\frac{dE}{E}\int\frac{d\theta}{\theta}\Theta(E\theta - k_t)$$



- generalized to all orders by exponentiation (**Sudakov exponent**)

$$\Delta(k_t, Q) \simeq \exp\left[-\frac{2\alpha_s C_F}{\pi}\int^{Q}\frac{dE}{E}\int^{\pi/2}\frac{d\theta}{\theta}\Theta(E\theta - k_t)\right]$$

bounded between 0 and 1 (probability)

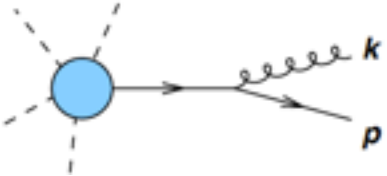
(here: some simplifying assumptions !!)

- probability distribution for gluon emission given by $\frac{dP}{dk_{t1}} = \frac{d\Delta(k_{t1}, Q)}{dk_{t1}}$

role of the Sudakov exponent

- the possible way to proceed is to ask
  “what is the probability of NOT radiating a gluon above a certain scale k_T?”

$$P(\text{no emission above } k_t) \sim 1 - \frac{2\alpha_s C_F}{\pi} \int \frac{dE}{E} \int \frac{d\theta}{\theta} \Theta(E\theta - k_t)$$



- generalized to all orders by exponentiation (**Sudakov exponent**)

$$\Delta(k_t, Q) \simeq \exp\left[-\frac{2\alpha_s C_F}{\pi} \int^{Q} \frac{dE}{E} \int^{\pi/2} \frac{d\theta}{\theta} \Theta(E\theta - k_t)\right]$$

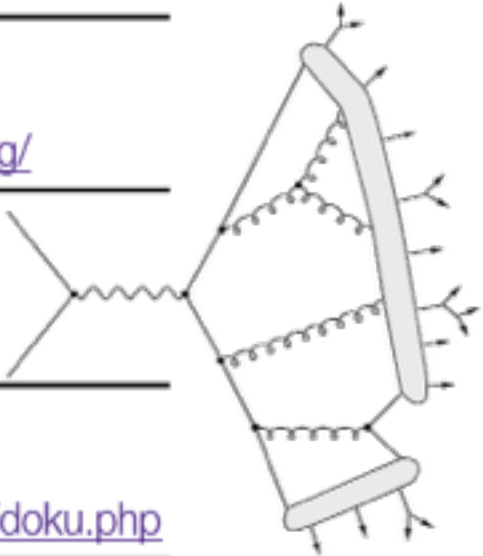
bounded between 0 and 1 (probability)

(here: some simplifying assumptions !!)

- probability distribution for gluon emission given by $\frac{dP}{dk_{t1}} = \frac{d\Delta(k_{t1}, Q)}{dk_{t1}}$
- used in MC to generate subsequent ordered branchings, e.g., $k_{T1} > k_{T2} > \ldots$
- stop at some small cut-off scale and then use some model to produce hadrons

some popular parton shower programs

PYTHIA	T. Sjöstrand et al. http://home.thep.lu.se/~torbjorn/Pythia.html
HERWIG	G. Corcella et al. http://hepwww.rl.ac.uk/theory/seymour/herwig/
HERWIG++	S. Gieseke et al. http://projects.hepforge.org/herwig/
SHERPA	F. Krauss et al. http://projects.hepforge.org/sherpa/dokuwiki/doku.php
ISAJET	H. Baer et al. http://www.nhn.ou.edu/~isajet/



- can fail in high-multiplicity events or when large-angle emissions are relevant
- do better than fixed order calculations at lowish scales
- matching with NLO matrix elements well advanced: MC@NLO, POWHEG, …

summary so far

pQCD cannot give all the answers
but it does cover a lot of ground
despite the “long-distance problem”

summary so far

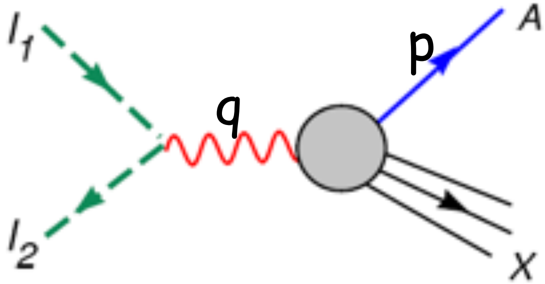
pQCD cannot give all the answers
but it does cover a lot of ground
despite the "long-distance problem"

the **concept of factorization** will allow us to compute cross sections for a much wider class of processes than considered so far (involving hadrons in the initial and/or final state)

LHC, RHIC, COMPASS, ..., EIC, ...

identified hadrons: a new “long distance problem”

consider the one-particle inclusive cross section:



identified hadron

e.g. ($A = \pi$)

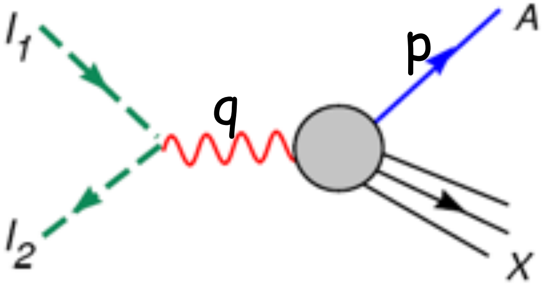
not measured

$$\boxed{\frac{d\sigma(e^+e^- \to \pi + X)}{dE_\pi}}$$

not infrared safe by itself!

identified hadrons: a new “long distance problem”

consider the one-particle inclusive cross section:



identified hadron
e.g. ($A = \pi$)

not measured

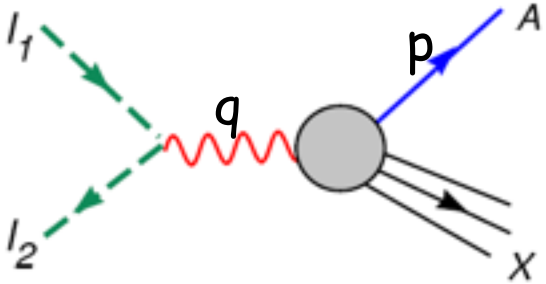
$$\boxed{\frac{d\sigma(e^+e^- \to \pi + X)}{dE_\pi}}$$

not infrared safe by itself!

problem: sensitivity to **long-distance physics** related to particle emission along with **identified/observed hadrons**
(leads to uncanceled singularities -> meaningless)

identified hadrons: a new “long distance problem”

consider the one-particle inclusive cross section:



identified hadron
e.g. (A = π)

not measured

$$\boxed{\frac{d\sigma(e^+e^- \to \pi + X)}{dE_\pi}}$$

not infrared safe by itself!

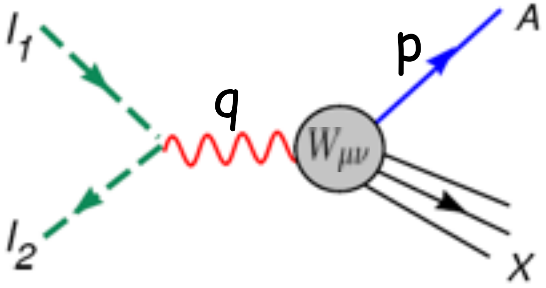
problem: sensitivity to long-distance physics related to particle emission along with identified/observed hadrons
(leads to uncanceled singularities -> meaningless)

general feature of QCD processes with observed (=identified) hadrons in the initial and/or final state

factorization

strategy: try to factorize the physical observable into a calculable infrared safe and a non-calculable but universal piece

how does it work?



leptonic tensor

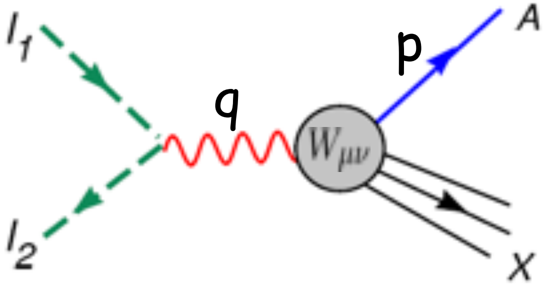
$$d\sigma = \frac{4\alpha^2}{sQ^2}\frac{d^3\vec{p}}{2|\vec{p}|}L^{\mu\nu}W_{\mu\nu}$$

hadronic tensor

factorization

strategy: try to factorize the physical observable into a calculable infrared safe and a non-calculable but universal piece

how does it work?

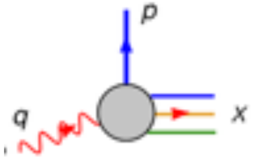


$$d\sigma = \frac{4\alpha^2}{sQ^2}\frac{d^3\vec{p}}{2|\vec{p}|}L^{\mu\nu}W_{\mu\nu}$$

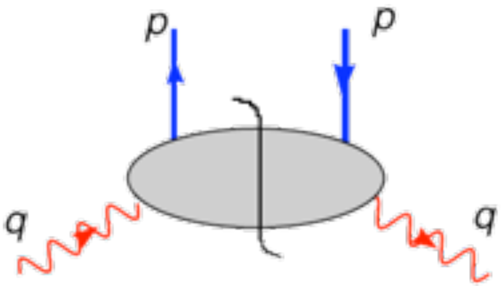
leptonic tensor

hadronic tensor

hadronic tensor $W_{\mu\nu}$:



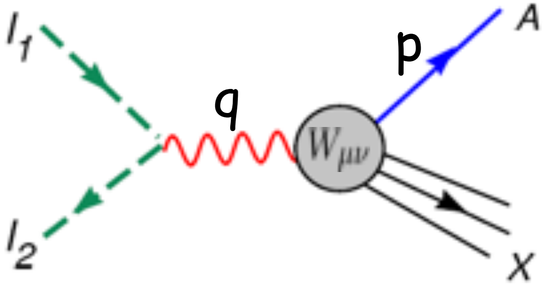
square of the hadronic scattering amplitude summed over all final-states X except A(p)



factorization

strategy: try to factorize the physical observable into a calculable infrared safe and a non-calculable but universal piece

how does it work?

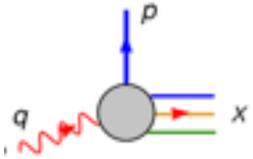


leptonic tensor

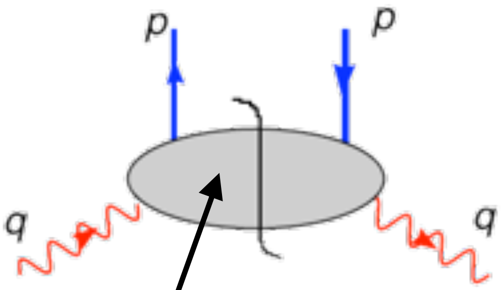
$$d\sigma = \frac{4\alpha^2}{sQ^2}\frac{d^3\vec{p}}{2|\vec{p}|}L^{\mu\nu}W_{\mu\nu}$$

hadronic tensor

hadronic tensor $W_{\mu\nu}$:



square of the hadronic scattering amplitude summed over all final-states X except A(p)



needed to factorize long-distance physics

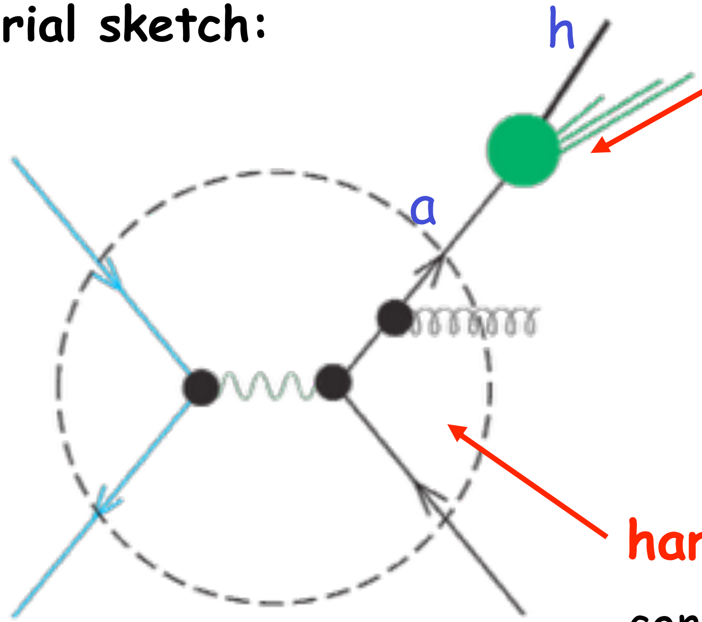
concept of factorization - pictorial sketch

factorization = isolating and absorbing infrared singularities accompanying observed hadrons

concept of factorization - pictorial sketch

factorization = isolating and absorbing infrared singularities accompanying observed hadrons

pictorial sketch:



fragmentation functions D_a^h

contains all **long-distance** interactions
hence not calculable but universal

physical interpretation:

probability to find a hadron carrying
a certain momentum of parent parton

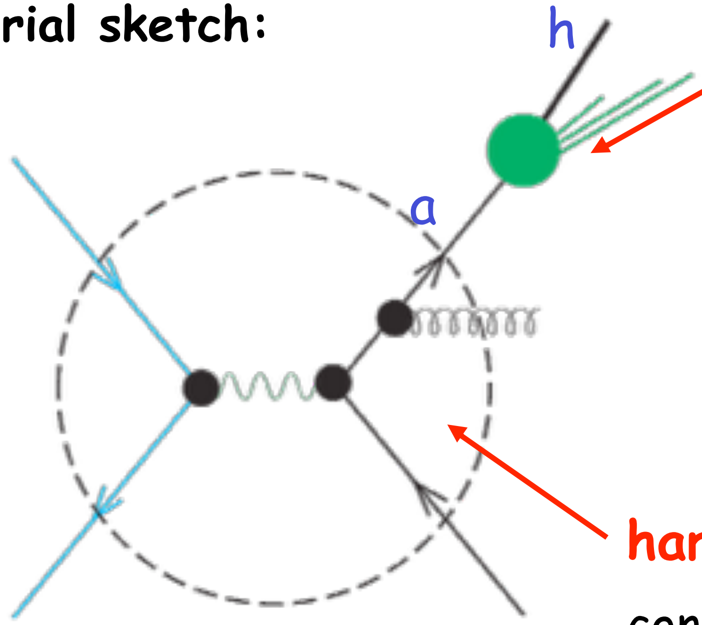
hard scattering $\widehat{F}_a$

contains only **short-distance** physics
amenable to pQCD calculations

concept of factorization - pictorial sketch

factorization = isolating and absorbing infrared singularities accompanying observed hadrons

pictorial sketch:



fragmentation functions D_a^h

contains all **long-distance** interactions
hence not calculable but universal

physical interpretation:

probability to find a hadron carrying
a certain momentum of parent parton

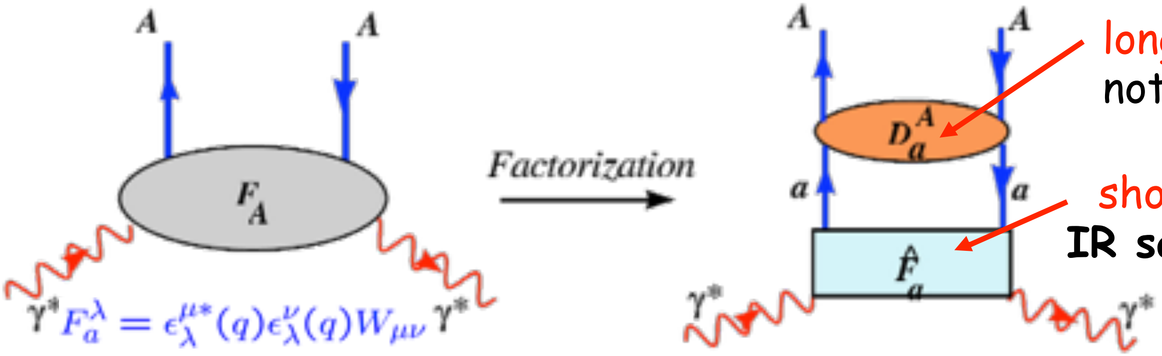
hard scattering $\hat{F}_{ab}$

contains only **short-distance** physics
amenable to pQCD calculations

aside: fragmentation fcts. play an important role in learning about nucleon (spin) structure from semi-inclusive DIS data by COMPASS & HERMES or from hadron production at RHIC

factorization - detailed picture

more explicitly



long-distance
not calculable

short distance
IR safe, calculable

$\gamma^* F_a^\lambda = \epsilon_\lambda^{\mu*}(q)\epsilon_\lambda^{\nu}(q)W_{\mu\nu}\,\gamma^*$

λ=L,T (pol. of γ^*)

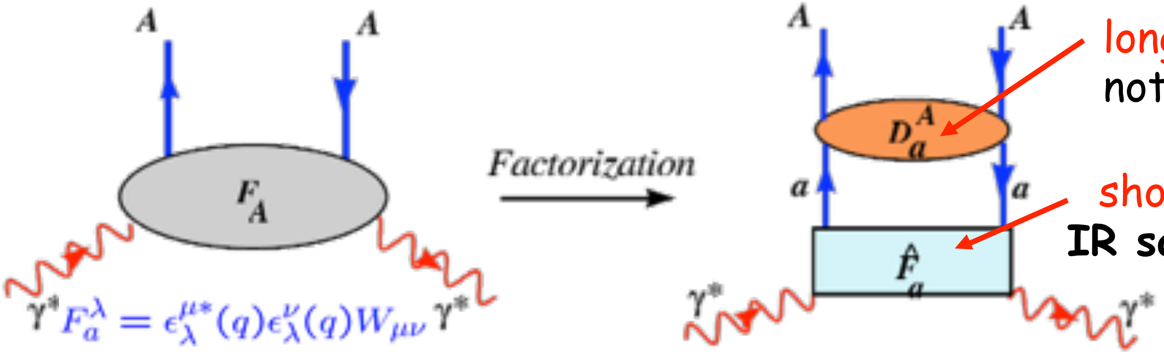
$$\frac{d\sigma}{dz\,d\cos\theta} = \frac{\pi\alpha^2}{2s}\left[F_A^T(z,Q)(1+\cos^2\theta) + F_A^L(z,Q)\sin^2\theta\right]$$

where

$$\boxed{F_A^{T,L}(z,Q) = \sum_a \hat{F}_a^{T,L}(z,\frac{Q}{\mu_f}) \otimes D_a^h(z,\mu_f)}$$

factorization - detailed picture

more explicitly



long-distance
not calculable

short distance
IR safe, calculable

$\gamma^* F_a^\lambda = \epsilon_\lambda^{\mu *}(q)\epsilon_\lambda^{\nu}(q) W_{\mu\nu}\, \gamma^*$

λ=L,T (pol. of γ^*)

$$\frac{d\sigma}{dz\, d\cos\theta} = \frac{\pi\alpha^2}{2s}\left[F_A^T(z,Q)(1+\cos^2\theta) + F_A^L(z,Q)\sin^2\theta\right]$$

where

$$\boxed{F_A^{T,L}(z,Q) = \sum_a \hat{F}_a^{T,L}\left(z, \frac{Q}{\mu_f}\right) \otimes D_a^h(z, \mu_f)}$$

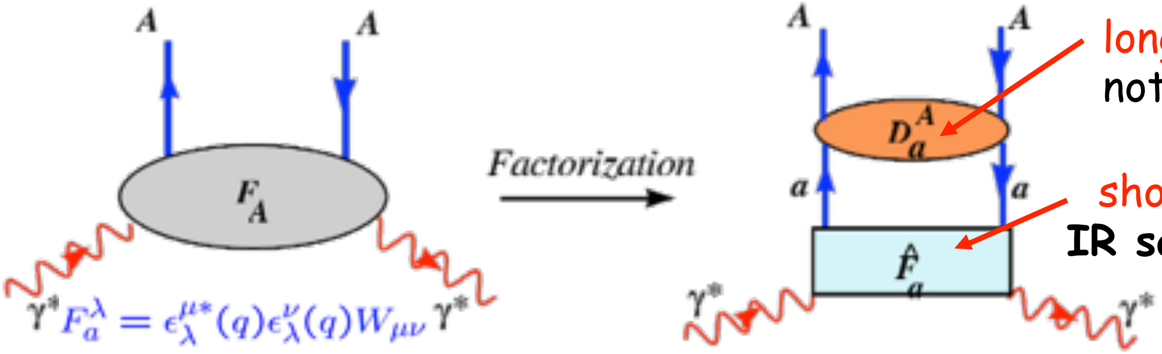
factorization scale (arbitrary!)

characterizes the boundary between
short and long-distance physics

physics indep. of μ_f → renormalization group

factorization - detailed picture

more explicitly



$F_a^\lambda = \epsilon_\lambda^{\mu *}(q)\epsilon_\lambda^{\nu}(q)W_{\mu\nu}$

λ=L,T (pol. of γ^*)

long-distance
not calculable

short distance
IR safe, calculable

$$\frac{d\sigma}{dz\,d\cos\theta} = \frac{\pi\alpha^2}{2s}\left[F_A^T(z,Q)(1+\cos^2\theta)+F_A^L(z,Q)\sin^2\theta\right]$$

where

$$\boxed{F_A^{T,L}(z,Q)=\sum_a \hat{F}_a^{T,L}\left(z,\frac{Q}{\mu_f}\right)\otimes D_a^h(z,\mu_f)}$$

"convolution"

$$f(x)\otimes g(x)\equiv\int_x^1\frac{dy}{y}f\left(\frac{x}{y}\right)g(y)$$

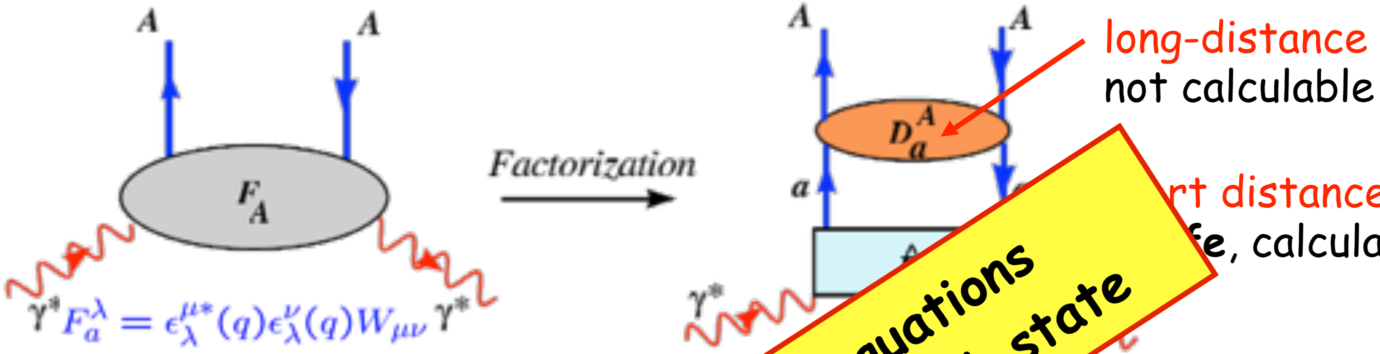
factorization scale (arbitrary!)

characterizes the boundary between
short and long-distance physics

physics indep. of μ_f → renormalization group

factorization - detailed picture

more explicitly



long-distance
not calculable

rt distance
fe, calculable

$\gamma^* F_a^\lambda = \epsilon_\lambda^{\mu *}(q)\epsilon_\lambda^\nu(q) W_{\mu\nu}\, \gamma^*$

λ=L,T (pol. of γ^*)

$$\frac{d\sigma}{dz\,d\cos\theta} = \frac{\pi\alpha^2}{2s}\left[F_A^T(\quad \theta) + F_A^L(z,Q)\sin^2\theta\right]$$

before studying renormalization group equations
let's first introduce hadrons also in the initial-state

where

$$F_A^{T,L}(\quad \sum_a F_a^{T,L}\left(z,\frac{Q}{\mu_f}\right) \otimes D_a^h(z,\mu_f)$$

"conv

$$f(x)\otimes g(x) \equiv \int_x \frac{dy}{y} f\left(\frac{x}{y}\right) g(y)$$

factorization scale (arbitrary!)

characterizes the boundary between
short and long-distance physics

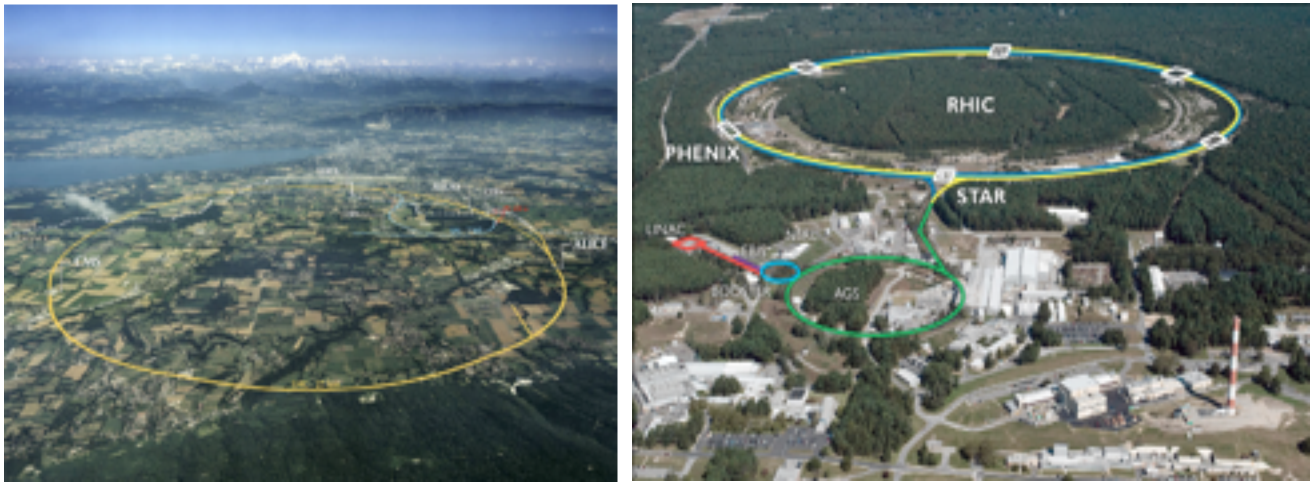
physics indep. of μ_f → renormalization group

take home message for part II

THE QCD TOOLBOX

- QCD is a non-Abelian gauge theory: gluons are self-interacting —> asymptotic freedom (large Q), confinement (small Q)
- QCD calculations are singular when any two partons become collinear or a gluon becomes soft; basis for parton shower MCs
- choose infrared/collinear safe observables for comparison between experiment and perturbative QCD
- jets (= cluster of partons): best link between theory and exp.; needs a proper IR safe jet definition in theory and experiment
- infrared cancellation leaves large logarithms behind which become important in certain regions of phase-space —> all-order resummations
- factorization allows to deal with hadronic processes introduces arbitrary scale —> leads to RGEs

early microscopes



the World's most powerful microscopes

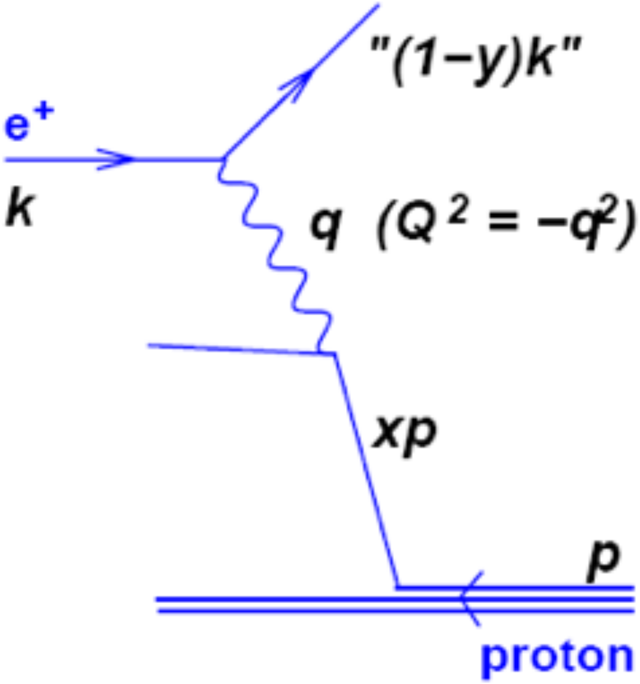
Part III

inward bound: "femto-spectroscopy"

QCD initial state, partons, DIS, factorization, renormalization group, hadron-hadron collisions

partons in the initial state: the DIS process

start with the simplest process: **deep-inelastic scattering**



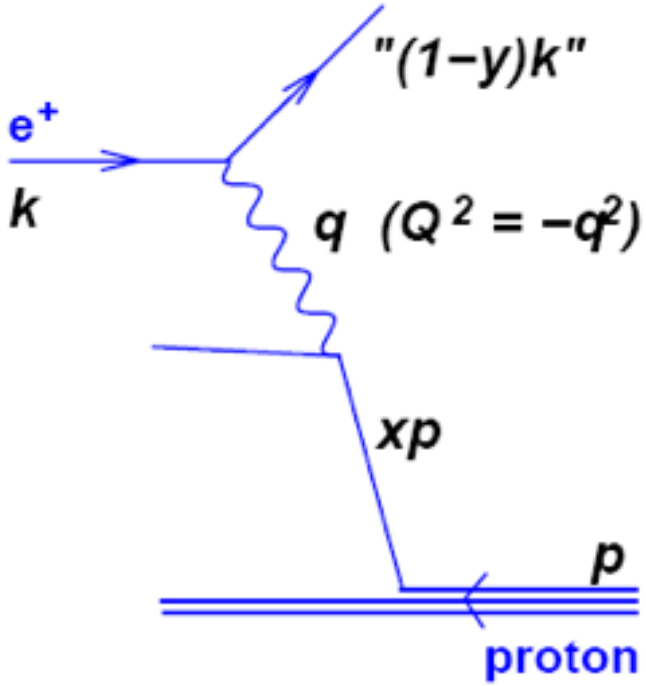
relevant kinematics:

$$x = \frac{Q^2}{2p \cdot q} \qquad y = \frac{p \cdot q}{p \cdot k} \qquad Q^2 = xys$$

- Q^2: photon virtuality ↔ resolution r~1/Q at which the proton is probed
- x: long. momentum fraction of struck parton in the proton
- y: momentum fraction lost by electron in the proton rest frame

partons in the initial state: the DIS process

start with the simplest process: **deep-inelastic scattering**



relevant kinematics:

$$x = \frac{Q^2}{2p \cdot q} \qquad y = \frac{p \cdot q}{p \cdot k} \qquad Q^2 = xys$$

- Q^2: photon virtuality ↔ resolution $r \sim 1/Q$ at which the proton is probed
- x: long. momentum fraction of struck parton in the proton
- y: momentum fraction lost by electron in the proton rest frame

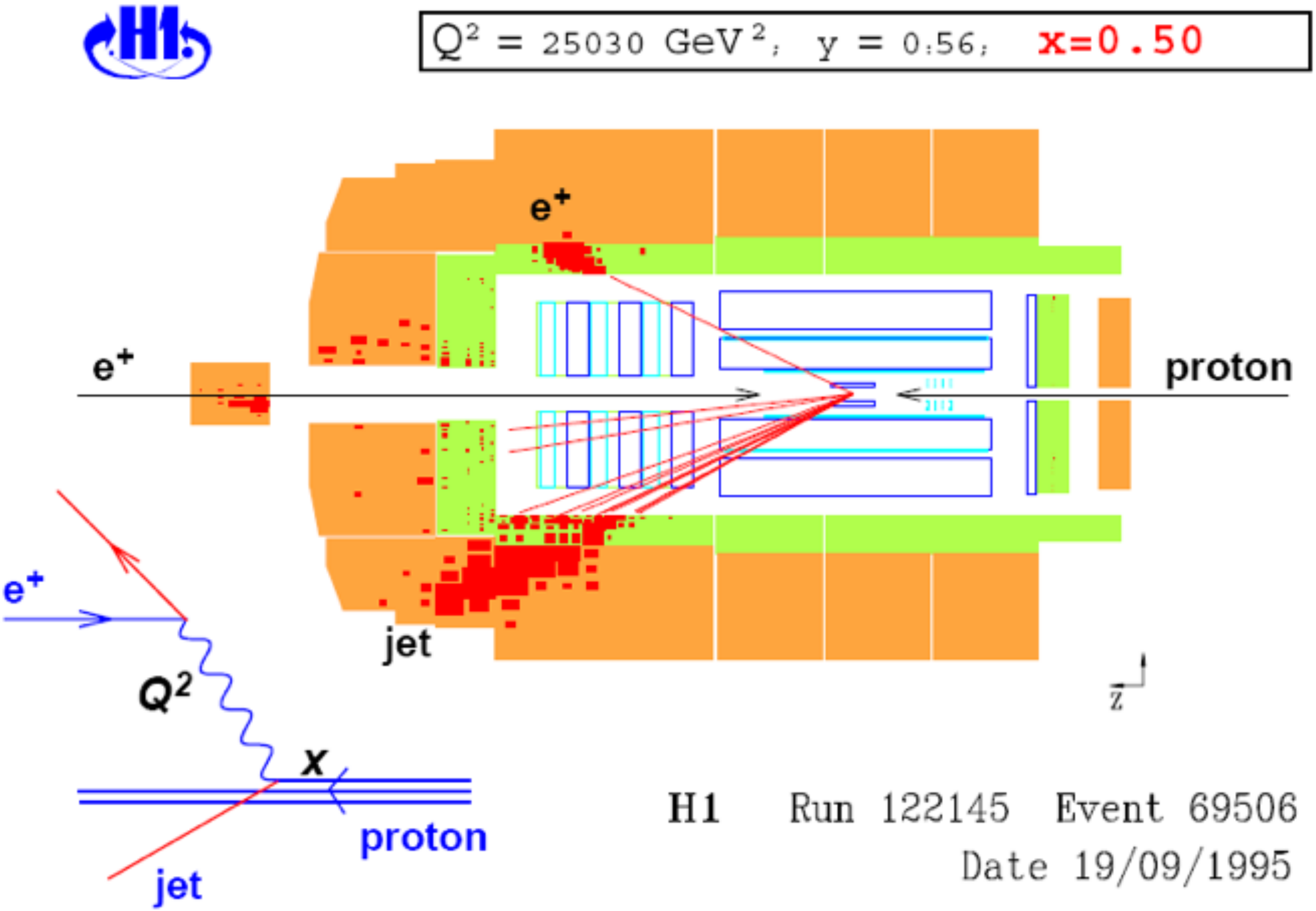
"deep-inelastic": $Q^2 \gg 1$ GeV^2

"scaling limit": $Q^2 \to \infty$, x fixed

resolution: $\frac{\hbar}{Q} \approx \frac{2 \times 10^{-16}\mathrm{m}}{Q[\mathrm{GeV}]}$

$r \sim 1/Q$

a typical DIS event

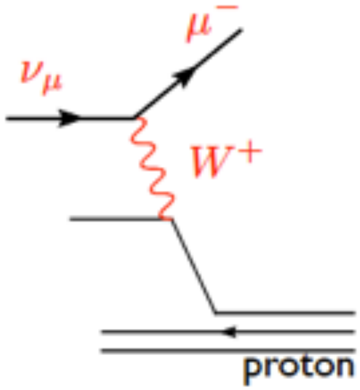


Q^2 = 25030 GeV^2; y = 0.56; x=0.50

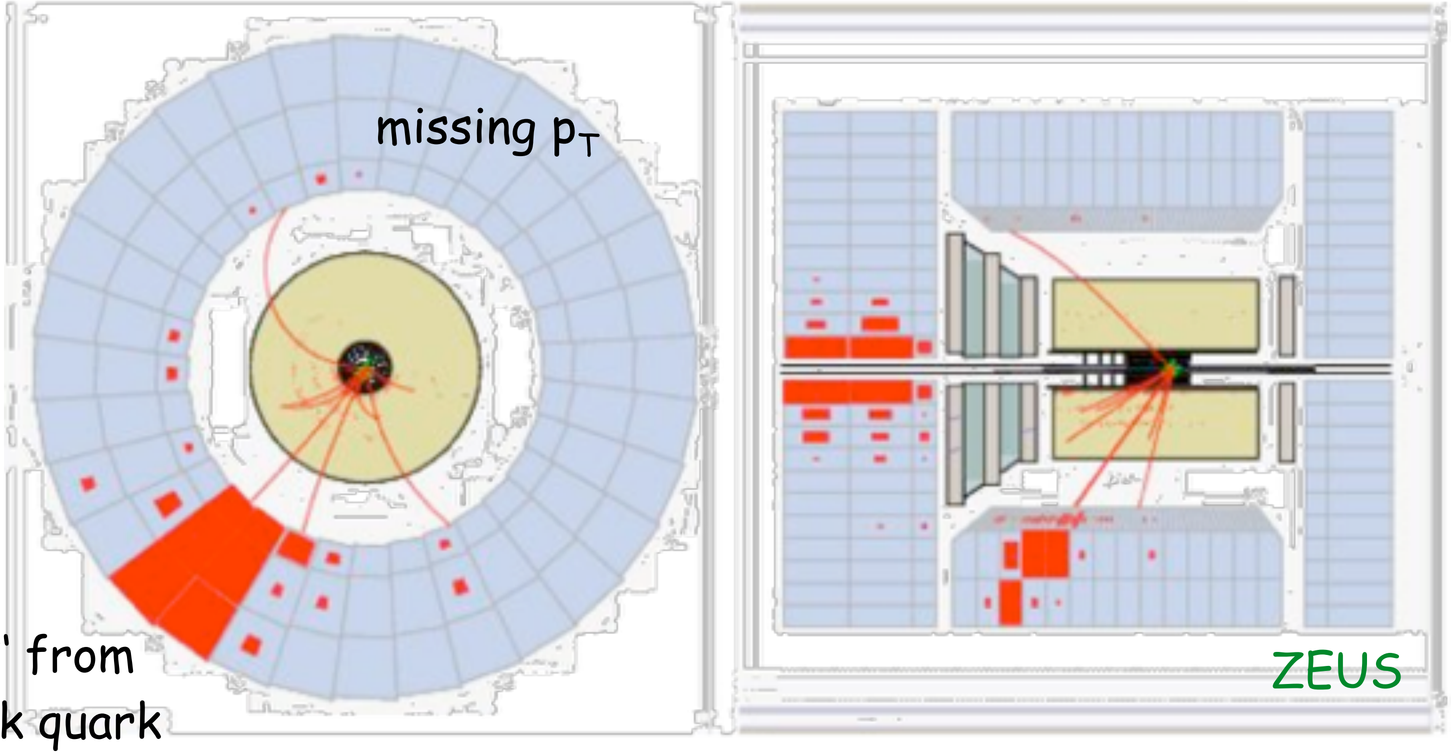
H1 Run 122145 Event 69506

Date 19/09/1995

a charged current DIS event



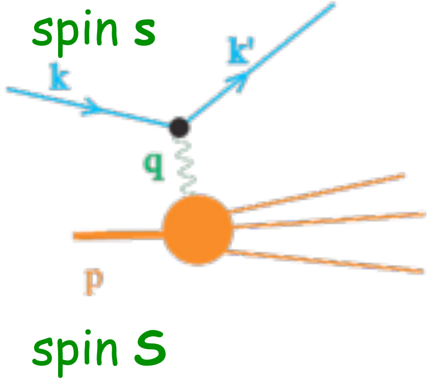
a charged current event with W-boson-exchange
(the electron turns into a neutrino which is "invisible")



for simplicity we will restrict ourselves to photon exchange though

analysis of DIS: 1st steps

electroweak theory tells us how the virtual vector boson (here γ^*) couples:



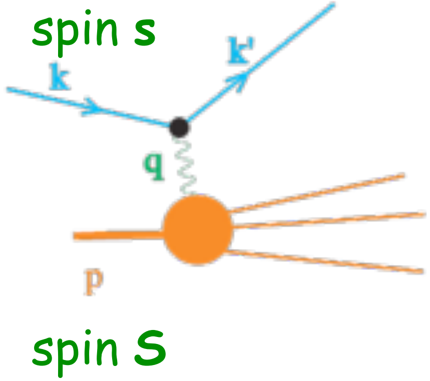
$$d\sigma = \frac{4\alpha^2}{s}\frac{d^3\vec{k}'}{2|\vec{k}'|}\frac{1}{Q^4}L^{\mu\nu}(k,q,s)\boxed{W_{\mu\nu}(p,q,S)}$$

leptonic
tensor
from QED

hadronic tensor
contains information
about hadronic structure

analysis of DIS: 1st steps

electroweak theory tells us how the virtual vector boson (here γ^*) couples:



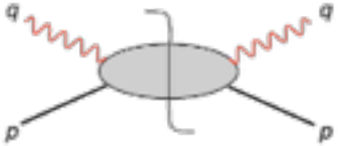
$$d\sigma = \frac{4\alpha^2}{s}\frac{d^3\vec{k}'}{2|\vec{k}'|}\frac{1}{Q^4}L^{\mu\nu}(k,q,s)\boxed{W_{\mu\nu}(p,q,S)}$$

leptonic tensor from QED

hadronic tensor contains information about hadronic structure

parity & Lorentz inv., hermiticity $W^{\nu\mu}=W^{\mu\nu*}$, current conservation $q_\mu W^{\mu\nu}=0$ **dictate**:

$$W^{\mu\nu}(P,q,S) = \frac{1}{4\pi}\int d^4z\, e^{iq\cdot z}\,\langle P,S|\,J_\mu(z)\,J_\nu(0)\,|P,S\rangle$$

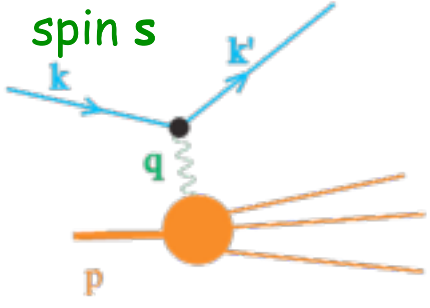


$$= \left(-g^{\mu\nu}+\frac{q^\mu q^\nu}{q^2}\right)F_1(x,Q^2) + \left(P^\mu - \frac{P\cdot q}{q^2}q^\mu\right)\left(P^\nu - \frac{P\cdot q}{q^2}q^\nu\right)F_2(x,Q^2)$$

$$+\,i\,M\,\varepsilon^{\mu\nu\rho\sigma}q_\rho\left[\frac{S_\sigma}{P\cdot q}\,g_1(x,Q^2) + \frac{S_\sigma(P\cdot q)-P_\sigma(S\cdot q)}{(P\cdot q)^2}\,g_2(x,Q^2)\right]$$

analysis of DIS: 1st steps

electroweak theory tells us how the virtual vector boson (here γ^*) couples:



spin s

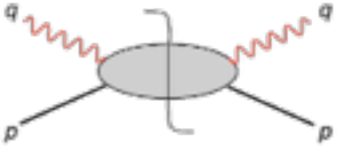
spin S

$$d\sigma = \frac{4\alpha^2}{s}\frac{d^3\vec{k}'}{2|\vec{k}'|}\frac{1}{Q^4}L^{\mu\nu}(k,q,s)\boxed{W_{\mu\nu}(p,q,S)}$$

leptonic tensor from QED

hadronic tensor contains information about hadronic structure

parity & Lorentz inv., hermiticity $W^{\nu\mu}=W^{\mu\nu*}$, current conservation $q_\mu W^{\mu\nu}=0$ **dictate**:



$$W^{\mu\nu}(P,q,S) = \frac{1}{4\pi}\int d^4z\, e^{iq\cdot z}\,\langle P,S|\,J_\mu(z)\,J_\nu(0)\,|P,S\rangle$$

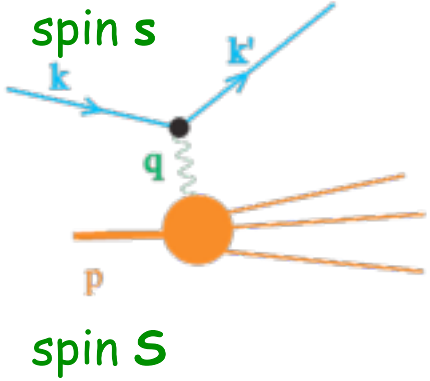
$$= \left(-g^{\mu\nu}+\frac{q^\mu q^\nu}{q^2}\right)F_1(x,Q^2) + \left(P^\mu - \frac{P\cdot q}{q^2}q^\mu\right)\left(P^\nu - \frac{P\cdot q}{q^2}q^\nu\right)F_2(x,Q^2)$$

unpol.structure fcts.$F_{1,2}$

$$+\,i\,M\,\varepsilon^{\mu\nu\rho\sigma}q_\rho\left[\frac{S_\sigma}{P\cdot q}\,g_1(x,Q^2)+\frac{S_\sigma(P\cdot q)-P_\sigma(S\cdot q)}{(P\cdot q)^2}\,g_2(x,Q^2)\right]$$

analysis of DIS: 1st steps

electroweak theory tells us how the virtual vector boson (here γ^*) couples:

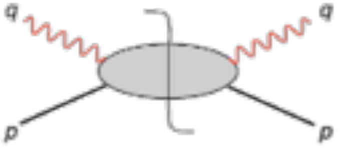


$$d\sigma = \frac{4\alpha^2}{s}\frac{d^3\vec{k}'}{2|\vec{k}'|}\frac{1}{Q^4} L^{\mu\nu}(k,q,s) \boxed{W_{\mu\nu}(p,q,S)}$$

leptonic tensor from QED

hadronic tensor contains information about hadronic structure

parity & Lorentz inv., hermiticity $W^{\nu\mu}=W^{\mu\nu *}$, current conservation $q_\mu W^{\mu\nu}=0$ **dictate**:



$$W^{\mu\nu}(P,q,S) = \frac{1}{4\pi}\int d^4z\, e^{iq\cdot z}\,\langle P,S|\, J_\mu(z)\, J_\nu(0)\, |P,S\rangle$$

$$= \left(-g^{\mu\nu} + \frac{q^\mu q^\nu}{q^2}\right) F_1(x,Q^2) + \left(P^\mu - \frac{P\cdot q}{q^2}q^\mu\right)\left(P^\nu - \frac{P\cdot q}{q^2}q^\nu\right) F_2(x,Q^2)$$

unpol.structure fcts.$F_{1,2}$

$$+\, i\, M\, \varepsilon^{\mu\nu\rho\sigma} q_\rho \left[\frac{S_\sigma}{P\cdot q} g_1(x,Q^2) + \frac{S_\sigma(P\cdot q) - P_\sigma(S\cdot q)}{(P\cdot q)^2} g_2(x,Q^2)\right]$$

pol. structure fcts. $g_{1,2}$ **– measure** $W(P,q,S)$ – $W(P,q,-S)$ **!**

SLAC-MIT experiment of 1969

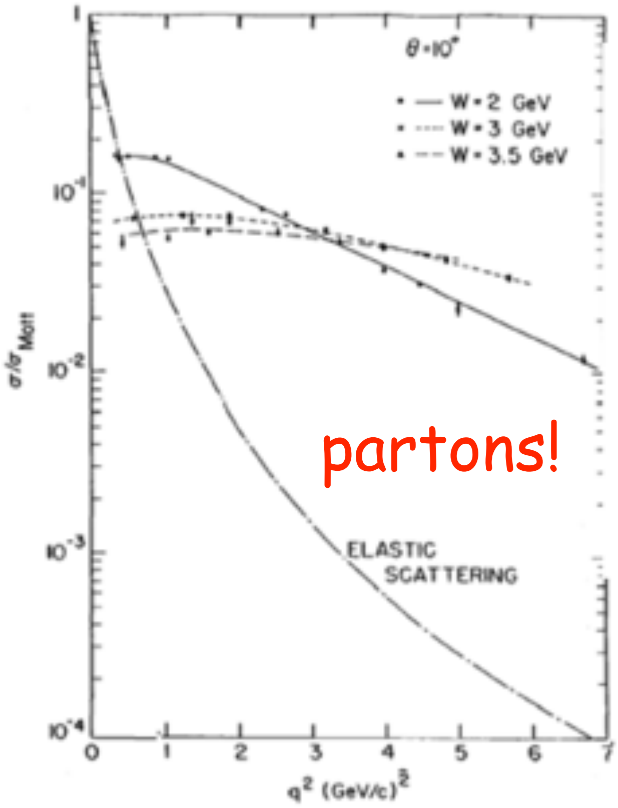
1990

two unexpected results:

SLAC-MIT experiment of 1969

1990

two unexpected results:

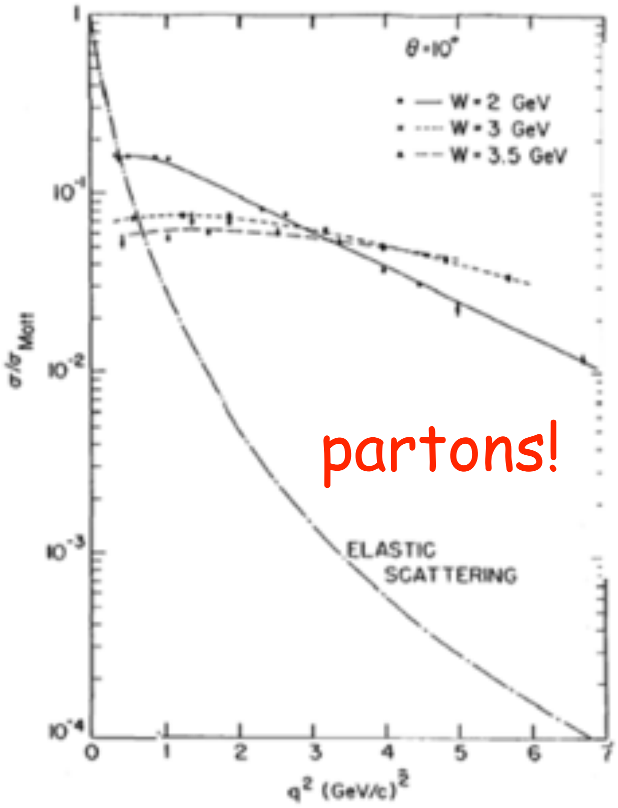


partons!

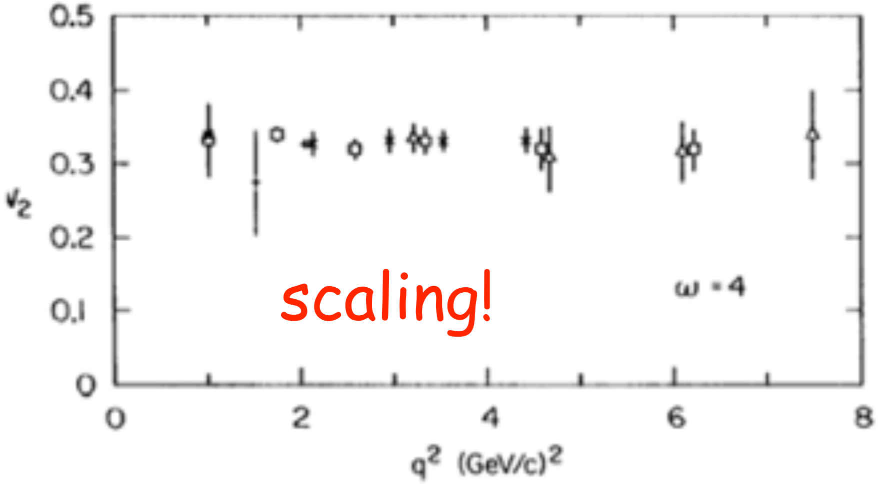
SLAC-MIT experiment of 1969

1990

two unexpected results:



partons!

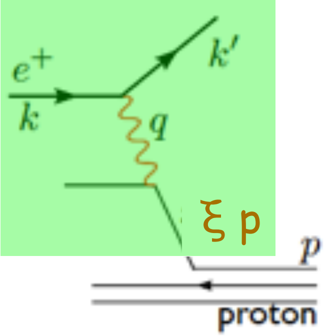


scaling!

birth of the pre-QCD parton model

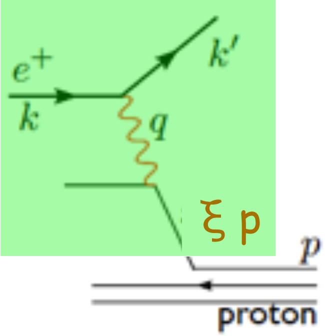
DIS in the naïve parton model

let's do a quick calculation: consider **electron-quark scattering**



DIS in the naïve parton model

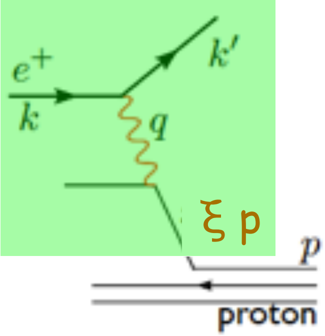
let's do a quick calculation: consider **electron-quark scattering**



find $\overline{\sum}|\mathcal{M}|^2 = 2e_q^2e^4\,\frac{\hat{s}^2+\hat{u}^2}{\hat{t}^2}$

DIS in the naïve parton model

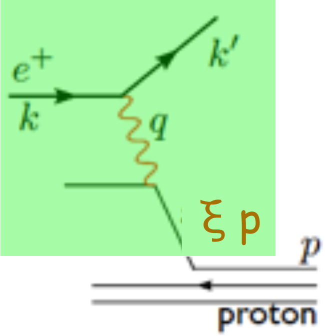
let's do a quick calculation: consider **electron-quark scattering**



find $$\overline{\sum}|\mathcal{M}|^2 = 2e_q^2 e^4 \frac{\hat{s}^2 + \hat{u}^2}{\hat{t}^2}$$ with the usual Mandelstam's

$$\hat{s} = (k + p_q)^2$$
$$\hat{t} = (k - k')^2$$
$$\hat{u} = (p_q - k')^2$$

DIS in the naïve parton model



let's do a quick calculation: consider **electron-quark scattering**

find $\overline{\sum}|\mathcal{M}|^2 = 2\mathbf{e_q^2 e^4}\frac{\mathbf{\hat{s}^2+\hat{u}^2}}{\mathbf{\hat{t}^2}}$ with the usual Mandelstam's

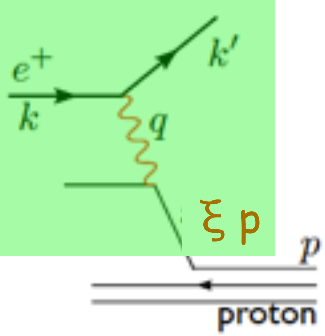
$$\mathbf{\hat{s} = (k+p_q)^2}$$
$$\mathbf{\hat{t} = (k-k')^2}$$
$$\mathbf{\hat{u} = (p_q-k')^2}$$

next: express by usual DIS variables

$$x = \frac{Q^2}{2p\cdot q} \qquad y = \frac{p\cdot q}{p\cdot k} \qquad Q^2 = xys$$

DIS in the naïve parton model

let's do a quick calculation: consider **electron-quark scattering**



find $\overline{\sum}|\mathcal{M}|^2 = 2e_q^2e^4\frac{\hat{s}^2+\hat{u}^2}{\hat{t}^2}$ with the usual Mandelstam's

$$\hat{s} = (k + p_q)^2$$
$$\hat{t} = (k - k')^2$$
$$\hat{u} = (p_q - k')^2$$

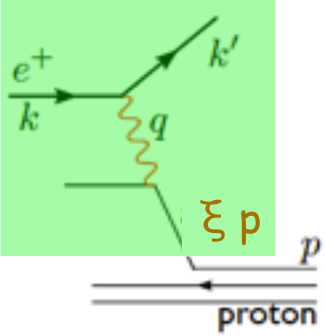
next: express by usual DIS variables

$$x = \frac{Q^2}{2p \cdot q} \qquad y = \frac{p \cdot q}{p \cdot k} \qquad Q^2 = xys$$

find

$$\hat{s} = \xi Q^2/(xy) = \xi\, s$$
$$\hat{t} = q^2 = -Q^2$$
$$\hat{u} = \hat{s}\,(y - 1)$$

DIS in the naïve parton model



let's do a quick calculation: consider **electron-quark scattering**

find $\overline{\sum}|\mathcal{M}|^2 = 2e_q^2 e^4 \frac{\hat{s}^2+\hat{u}^2}{\hat{t}^2}$ with the usual Mandelstam's

$$\hat{s} = (k + p_q)^2$$
$$\hat{t} = (k - k')^2$$
$$\hat{u} = (p_q - k')^2$$

next: express by usual DIS variables

$$x = \frac{Q^2}{2p\cdot q} \quad y = \frac{p\cdot q}{p\cdot k} \quad Q^2 = xys$$

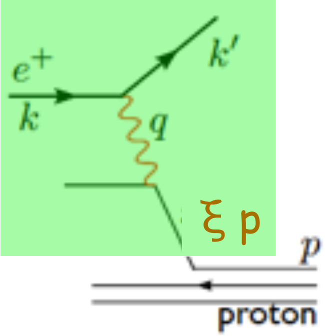
find

$$\hat{s} = \xi Q^2/(xy) = \xi\, s$$
$$\hat{t} = q^2 = -Q^2$$
$$\hat{u} = \hat{s}\,(y-1)$$

and use the massless 2->2 cross section

$$\frac{d\sigma}{dt} = \frac{1}{16\pi\hat{s}^2}\overline{\sum}|\mathcal{M}|^2$$

DIS in the naïve parton model



let's do a quick calculation: consider electron-quark scattering

find $\overline{\sum}|\mathcal{M}|^2 = 2e_q^2 e^4 \frac{\hat{s}^2+\hat{u}^2}{\hat{t}^2}$ with the usual Mandelstam's

$$\hat{s} = (k+p_q)^2$$
$$\hat{t} = (k-k')^2$$
$$\hat{u} = (p_q-k')^2$$

next: express by usual DIS variables

$$x = \frac{Q^2}{2p\cdot q} \qquad y = \frac{p\cdot q}{p\cdot k} \qquad Q^2 = xys$$

find

$$\hat{s} = \xi Q^2/(xy) = \xi\, s$$
$$\hat{t} = q^2 = -Q^2$$
$$\hat{u} = \hat{s}\,(y-1)$$

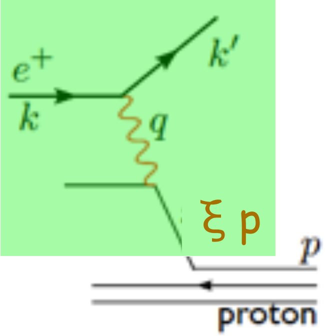
and use the massless 2->2 cross section

$$\frac{d\sigma}{dt} = \frac{1}{16\pi\hat{s}^2}\overline{\sum}|\mathcal{M}|^2$$

to obtain

$$\frac{d\sigma}{dQ^2} = \frac{2\pi\alpha^2 e_q^2}{Q^4}[1+(1-y)^2]$$

DIS in the naïve parton model



let's do a quick calculation: consider **electron-quark scattering**

find $\overline{\sum}|\mathcal{M}|^2 = 2e_q^2 e^4 \frac{\hat{s}^2+\hat{u}^2}{\hat{t}^2}$ with the usual Mandelstam's

$$\hat{s} = (k+p_q)^2$$
$$\hat{t} = (k-k')^2$$
$$\hat{u} = (p_q-k')^2$$

next: express by usual DIS variables

$$x = \frac{Q^2}{2p\cdot q} \qquad y = \frac{p\cdot q}{p\cdot k} \qquad Q^2 = xys$$

find

$$\hat{s} = \xi Q^2/(xy) = \xi\, s$$
$$\hat{t} = q^2 = -Q^2$$
$$\hat{u} = \hat{s}\,(y-1)$$

and use the massless 2->2 cross section

$$\frac{d\sigma}{dt} = \frac{1}{16\pi\hat{s}^2}\overline{\sum}|\mathcal{M}|^2$$

to obtain

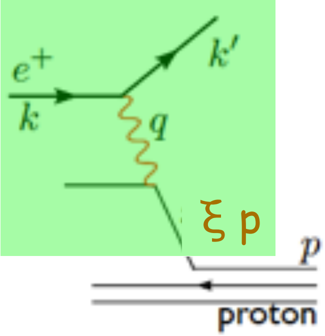
$$\frac{d\sigma}{dQ^2} = \frac{2\pi\alpha^2 e_q^2}{Q^4}[1+(1-y)^2]$$

next: use on-mass shell constraint

$$p_q'^2 = (p_q+q)^2 = q^2 + 2p_q\cdot q \qquad = -2p\cdot q\,(x-\xi) = 0$$

this implies that ξ is equal to Bjorken x

DIS in the naïve parton model



let's do a quick calculation: consider **electron-quark scattering**

find $\overline{\sum}|\mathcal{M}|^2 = 2e_q^2 e^4 \frac{\hat{s}^2 + \hat{u}^2}{\hat{t}^2}$ with the usual Mandelstam's

$$\hat{s} = (k + p_q)^2$$
$$\hat{t} = (k - k')^2$$
$$\hat{u} = (p_q - k')^2$$

next: express by usual DIS variables

$$x = \frac{Q^2}{2p \cdot q} \qquad y = \frac{p \cdot q}{p \cdot k} \qquad Q^2 = xys$$

find

$$\hat{s} = \xi Q^2/(xy) = \xi\, s$$
$$\hat{t} = q^2 = -Q^2$$
$$\hat{u} = \hat{s}\,(y - 1)$$

and use the massless 2->2 cross section

$$\frac{d\sigma}{dt} = \frac{1}{16\pi\hat{s}^2} \overline{\sum}|\mathcal{M}|^2$$

to obtain

$$\frac{d\sigma}{dQ^2} = \frac{2\pi\alpha^2 e_q^2}{Q^4}[1 + (1 - y)^2]$$

next: use on-mass shell constraint

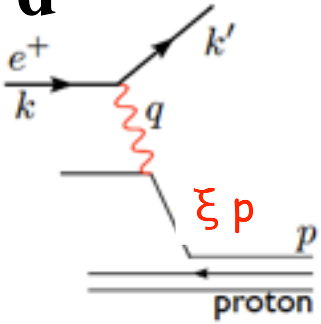
$$p_q'^2 = (p_q + q)^2 = q^2 + 2p_q \cdot q \qquad = -2p \cdot q\,(x - \xi) = 0$$

this implies that ξ is equal to Bjorken x

to obtain

$$\frac{d\sigma}{dx dQ^2} = \frac{4\pi\alpha^2}{Q^4}[1 + (1 - y)^2]\frac{1}{2}e_q^2\delta(x - \xi)$$

DIS in the naïve parton model cont'd



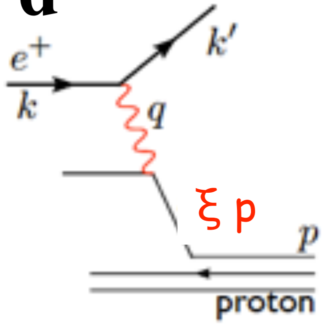
compare our result

$$\frac{\mathbf{d\sigma}}{\mathbf{dxdQ^2}} = \frac{\mathbf{4\pi\alpha^2}}{\mathbf{Q^4}}[\mathbf{1+(1-y)^2}]\frac{\mathbf{1}}{\mathbf{2}}\mathbf{e_q^2}\delta(\mathbf{x}-\xi)$$

to what one obtains with the hadronic tensor (on the quark level)

$$\frac{\mathbf{d^2\sigma}}{\mathbf{dxdQ^2}} = \frac{\mathbf{4\pi\alpha^2}}{\mathbf{Q^4}}\left[[\mathbf{1+(1-y)^2}]\mathbf{F_1(x)} + \frac{\mathbf{(1-y)}}{\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{F_2(x) - 2xF_1(x)})\right]$$

DIS in the naïve parton model cont'd



compare our result

$$\frac{d\sigma}{dxdQ^2} = \frac{4\pi\alpha^2}{Q^4}[1+(1-y)^2]\frac{1}{2}e_q^2\delta(x-\xi)$$

to what one obtains with the hadronic tensor (on the quark level)

$$\frac{d^2\sigma}{dxdQ^2} = \frac{4\pi\alpha^2}{Q^4}\left[[1+(1-y)^2]F_1(x) + \frac{(1-y)}{x}(F_2(x) - 2xF_1(x))\right]$$

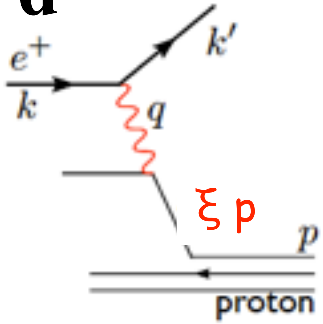
and read off

$$\boxed{F_2 = 2xF_1 = xe_q^2\,\delta(x-\xi)}$$

Callan Gross relation

reflects spin 1/2 nature of quarks

DIS in the naïve parton model cont’d



compare our result

$$\frac{\mathbf{d\sigma}}{\mathbf{dxdQ^2}} = \frac{\mathbf{4\pi\alpha^2}}{\mathbf{Q^4}}[1+(1-y)^2]\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{e_q^2}\delta(\mathbf{x}-\xi)$$

to what one obtains with the hadronic tensor (on the quark level)

$$\frac{\mathbf{d^2\sigma}}{\mathbf{dxdQ^2}} = \frac{\mathbf{4\pi\alpha^2}}{\mathbf{Q^4}}\left[[1+(1-y)^2]\mathbf{F_1(x)} + \frac{(1-y)}{x}(\mathbf{F_2(x)} - \mathbf{2xF_1(x)})\right]$$

and read off

$$\boxed{\mathbf{F_2} = \mathbf{2xF_1} = \mathbf{xe_q^2}\,\delta(\mathbf{x}-\xi)}$$

Callan Gross relation

reflects spin 1/2 nature of quarks

proton structure functions then obtained by weighting the quark str. fct. with the **parton distribution functions** (probability to find a quark with momentum ξ)

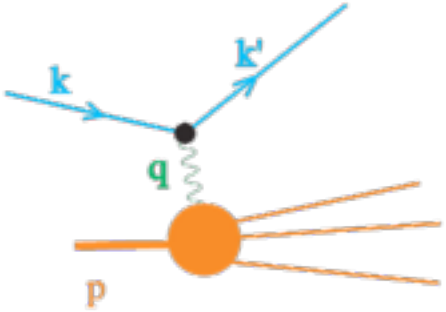
$$\mathbf{F_2} = \mathbf{2xF_1} = \sum_{q,q'}\int_0^1 d\xi\,\mathbf{q}(\xi)\,\mathbf{xe_q^2}\,\delta(\mathbf{x}-\xi)$$

$$= \sum_{q,q'} \mathbf{e_q^2}\,\mathbf{x}\,\mathbf{q(x)}$$

DIS measures the charged-weighted sum of quarks and antiquarks

“scaling” - no dependence on scale Q

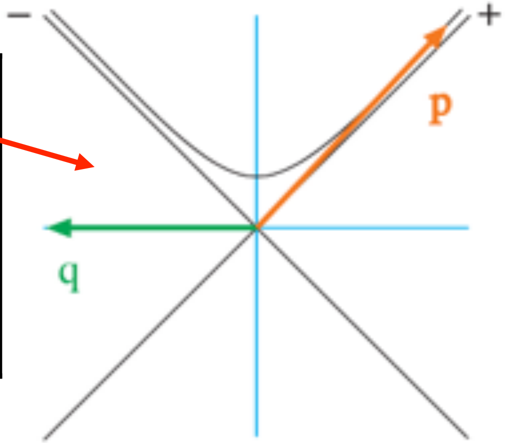
space-time picture of DIS



this can be best understood in a reference frame where the proton moves very fast and Q>>m_h is big

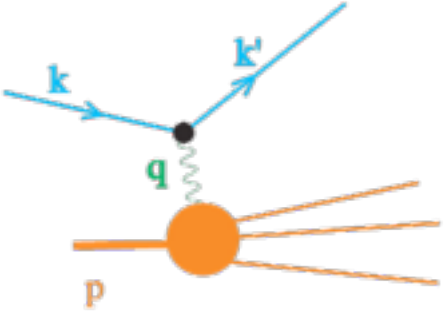
(recall light-cone kinematics from part II)

4-vector	hadron rest frame	Breit frame
$(p^+, p^-, \vec{p}_T)$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(m_h, m_h, \vec{0})$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\frac{Q}{x}, \frac{x m_h^2}{Q}, \vec{0})$
$(q^+, q^-, \vec{q}_T)$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(-m_h x, \frac{Q^2}{m_h x}, \vec{0})$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(-Q, Q, \vec{0})$



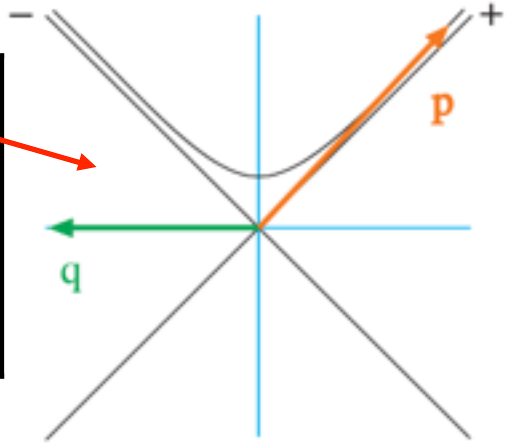
space-time picture of DIS

this can be best understood in a reference frame where the proton moves very fast and Q>>m_h is big



(recall light-cone kinematics from part II)

4-vector	hadron rest frame	Breit frame
$(p^+, p^-, \vec{p}_T)$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(m_h, m_h, \vec{0})$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\frac{Q}{x}, \frac{x m_h^2}{Q}, \vec{0})$
$(q^+, q^-, \vec{q}_T)$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(-m_h x, \frac{Q^2}{m_h x}, \vec{0})$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(-Q, Q, \vec{0})$



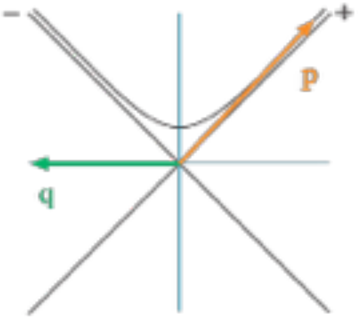
Lorentz boost

in general $(a^+, a^-, \vec{a}_T) \rightarrow (e^{\omega} a^+, e^{-\omega} a^-, \vec{a}_T) = (a'^+, a'^-, \vec{a}')$

here: $e^{\omega} = Q/(x m_h)$

space-time picture of DIS – cont’d

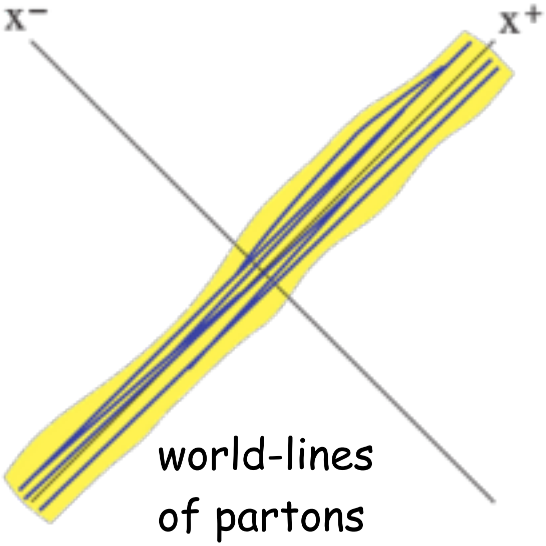
simple estimate for typical time-scale of interactions among the partons inside a fast-moving hadron:



rest frame: $\Delta x^{+} \sim \Delta x^{-} \sim \frac{1}{m}$

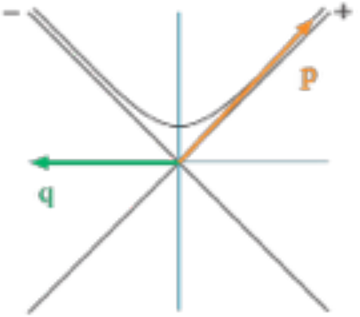
Breit frame: $\Delta x^{+} \sim \frac{1}{m}\frac{Q}{m} = \frac{Q}{m^2}$ large

$\Delta x^{-} \sim \frac{1}{m}\frac{m}{Q} = \frac{1}{Q}$ small



space-time picture of DIS – cont'd

simple estimate for typical time-scale of interactions among the partons inside a fast-moving hadron:

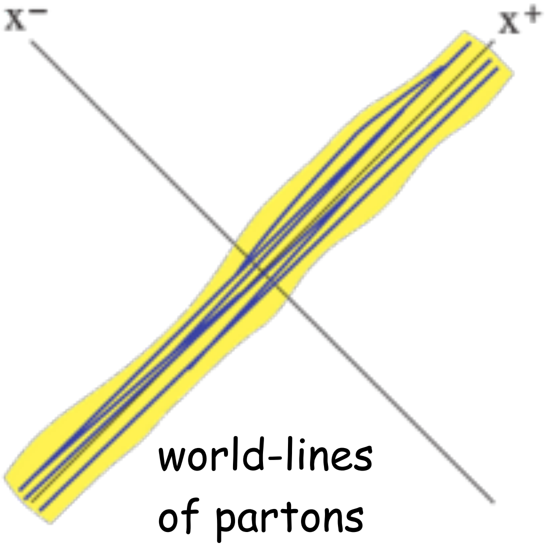


rest frame: $\Delta x^+ \sim \Delta x^- \sim \frac{1}{m}$

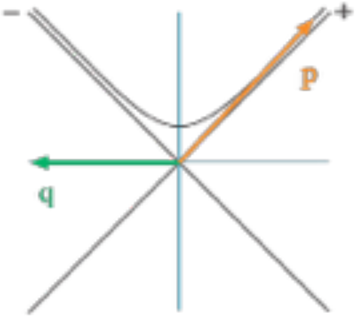
Breit frame: $\Delta x^+ \sim \frac{1}{m}\frac{Q}{m} = \frac{Q}{m^2}$ large

$\Delta x^- \sim \frac{1}{m}\frac{m}{Q} = \frac{1}{Q}$ small

interactions between partons are spread out inside a fast moving hadron



space-time picture of DIS – cont'd

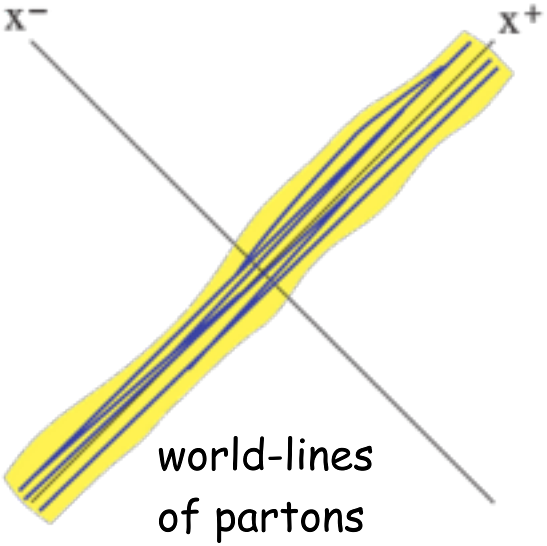


simple estimate for typical time-scale of interactions among the partons inside a fast-moving hadron:

rest frame: $\Delta x^+ \sim \Delta x^- \sim \frac{1}{m}$

Breit frame: $\Delta x^+ \sim \frac{1}{m}\frac{Q}{m} = \frac{Q}{m^2}$ large

$\Delta x^- \sim \frac{1}{m}\frac{m}{Q} = \frac{1}{Q}$ small



world-lines of partons

interactions between partons are spread out inside a fast moving hadron

How does this compare with the time-scale of the hard scattering?

foundation of naïve Parton Model

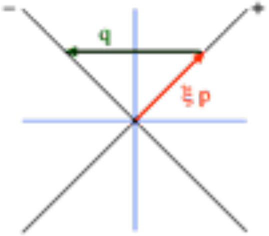
Feynman;
Bjorken, Paschos

Breit frame:

proton moves very fast and $Q \gg m_h$ is big

$$(p^+, p^-, \vec{p}_T) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\frac{Q}{x}, \frac{x m_h^2}{Q}, \vec{0}\right) \quad (q^+, q^-, \vec{q}_T) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(-Q, Q, \vec{0})$$

struck quark
on-shell



$\xi p^+ + q^+ = 0 \leftrightarrow \xi = x$

foundation of naïve Parton Model

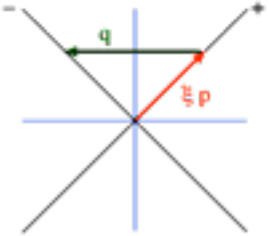
Feynman;
Bjorken, Paschos

Breit frame:

proton moves very fast and $Q \gg m_h$ is big

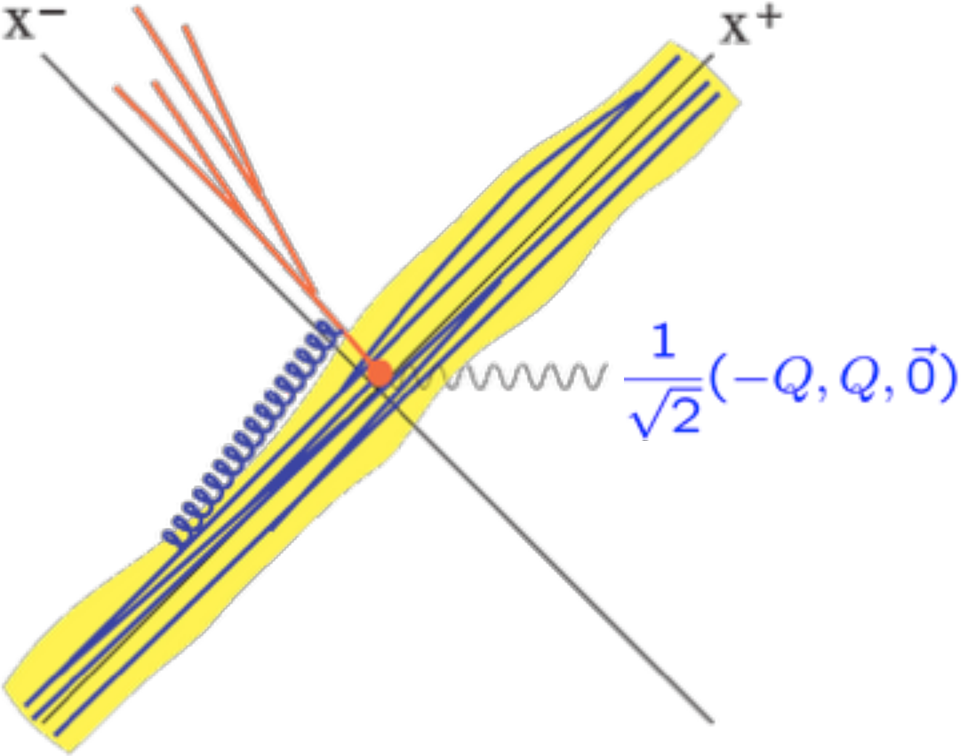
$$(p^+, p^-, \vec{p}_T) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\frac{Q}{x}, \frac{x m_h^2}{Q}, \vec{0}\right) \quad (q^+, q^-, \vec{q}_T) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(-Q, Q, \vec{0})$$

struck quark
on-shell



$\xi p^+ + q^+ = 0 \leftrightarrow \xi = x$

space-time picture:



foundation of naïve Parton Model

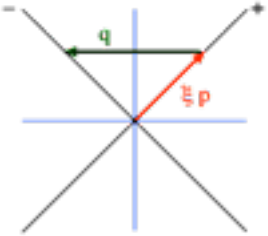
Feynman;
Bjorken, Paschos

Breit frame:

proton moves very fast and $Q \gg m_h$ is big

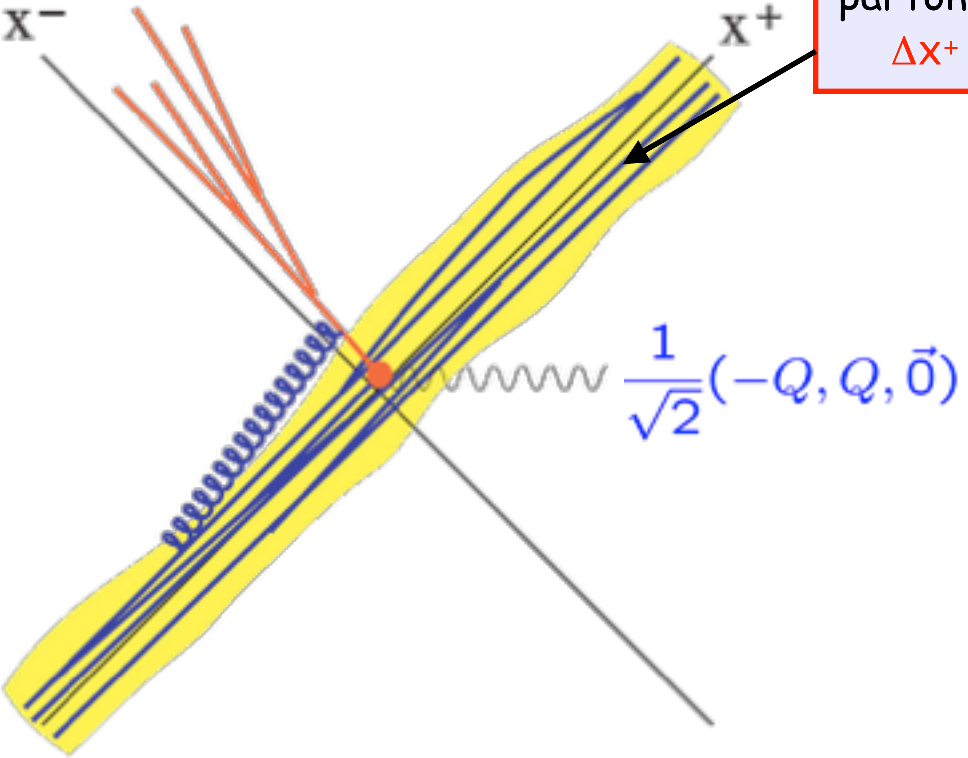
$$(p^+, p^-, \vec{p}_T) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\frac{Q}{x}, \frac{x m_h^2}{Q}, \vec{0}\right) \quad (q^+, q^-, \vec{q}_T) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(-Q, Q, \vec{0})$$

struck quark on-shell



$\xi p^+ + q^+ = 0 \leftrightarrow \xi = x$

space-time picture:



interactions of partons dilated
$\Delta x^+ \approx Q/m^2$

foundation of naïve Parton Model

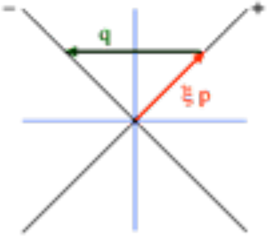
Feynman; Bjorken, Paschos

Breit frame:

proton moves very fast and $Q \gg m_h$ is big

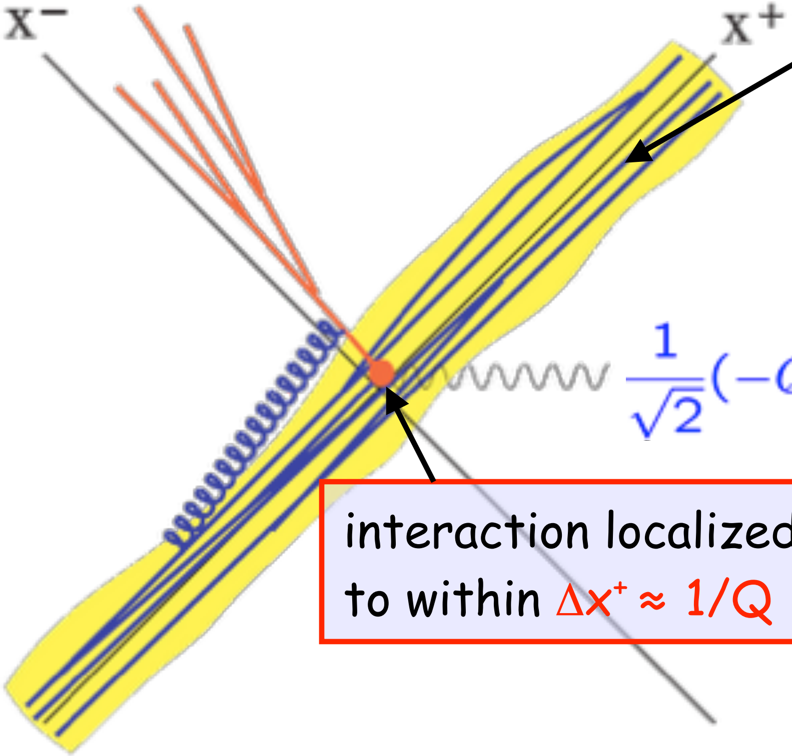
$$(p^+, p^-, \vec{p}_T) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\frac{Q}{x}, \frac{x m_h^2}{Q}, \vec{0}\right) \quad (q^+, q^-, \vec{q}_T) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(-Q, Q, \vec{0})$$

struck quark on-shell



$\xi p^+ + q^+ = 0 \leftrightarrow \xi = x$

space-time picture:



$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(-Q, Q, \vec{0})$$

interactions of partons dilated $\Delta x^+ \approx Q/m^2$

interaction localized to within $\Delta x^+ \approx 1/Q$

foundation of naïve Parton Model

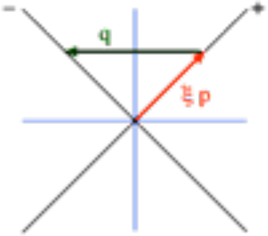
Feynman;
Bjorken, Paschos

Breit frame:

proton moves very fast and $Q \gg m_h$ is big

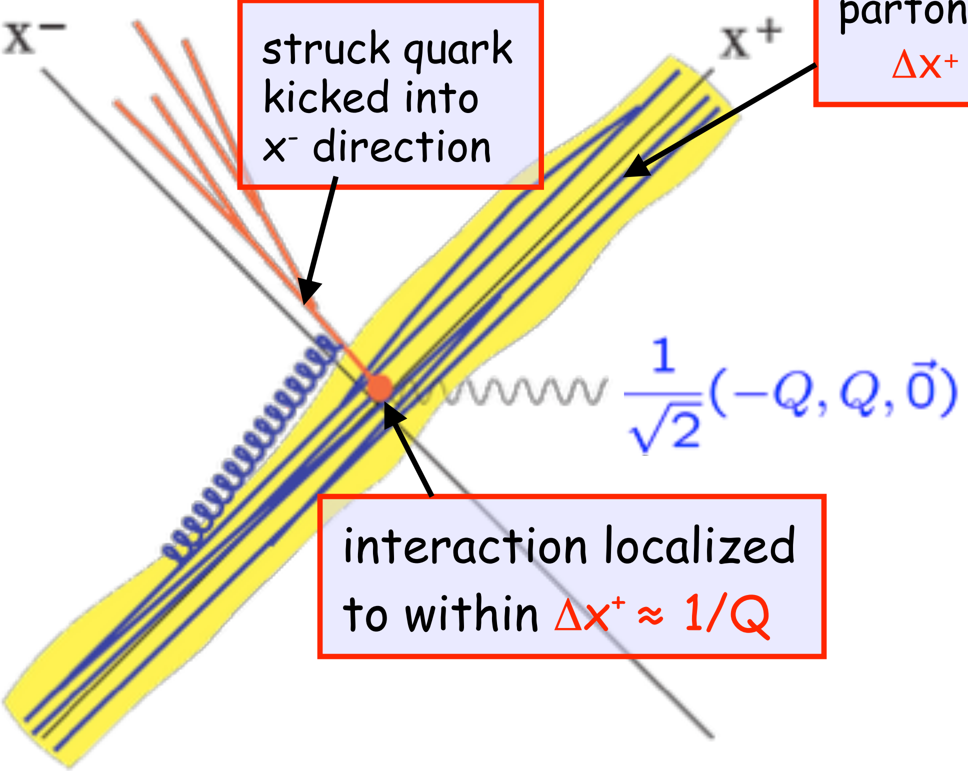
$$(p^+,p^-,\vec{p}_T) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\frac{Q}{x},\frac{x m_h^2}{Q},\vec{0}\right) \quad (q^+,q^-,\vec{q}_T) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(-Q,Q,\vec{0})$$

struck quark
on-shell



$\xi p^+ + q^+ = 0 \leftrightarrow \xi = x$

space-time picture:



$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(-Q,Q,\vec{0})$$

struck quark kicked into x^- direction

interactions of partons dilated $\Delta x^+ \approx Q/m^2$

interaction localized to within $\Delta x^+ \approx 1/Q$

foundation of naïve Parton Model

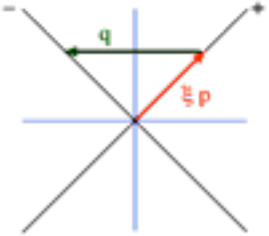
Feynman;
Bjorken, Paschos

Breit frame:

proton moves very fast and $Q \gg m_h$ is big

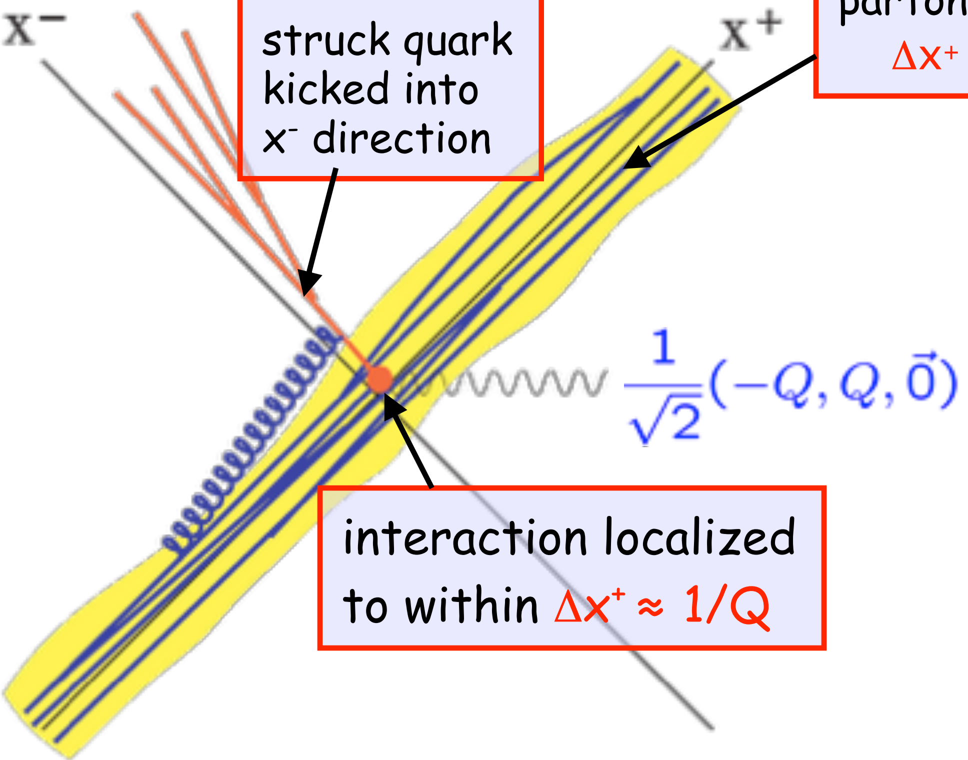
$$(p^+, p^-, \vec{p}_T) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\frac{Q}{x}, \frac{x m_h^2}{Q}, \vec{0}\right) \quad (q^+, q^-, \vec{q}_T) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(-Q, Q, \vec{0})$$

struck quark
on-shell



$\xi p^+ + q^+ = 0 \leftrightarrow \xi = x$

space-time picture:



struck quark kicked into x^- direction

interactions of partons dilated $\Delta x^+ \approx Q/m^2$

interaction localized to within $\Delta x^+ \approx 1/Q$

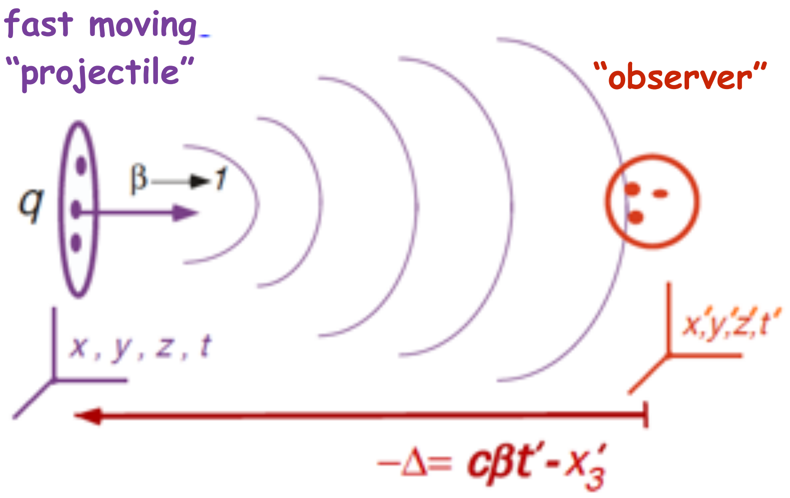
upshot:

- partons are free during the hard interaction
- lepton scatters off free partons incoherently
- convenient to introduce momentum fractions

$0 < \xi_i \equiv p_i^+/p^+ < 1$

a “classical” view of factorization

adapted from G. Sterman’s lectures



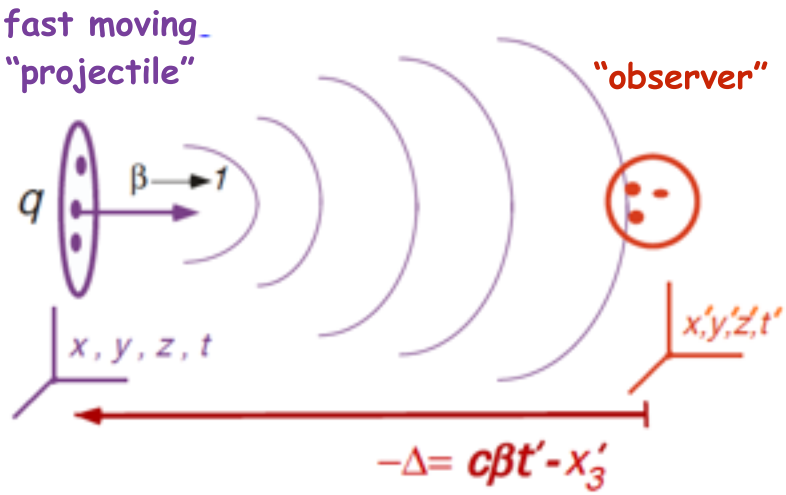
accelerated charges produce classical radiation

QFT assembles field from infinite # of soft quanta

Lorentz transformation $\mathbf{x_3} = \gamma(\beta \mathbf{ct}' - \mathbf{x}'_3) \equiv -\gamma\boldsymbol{\Delta}$

a “classical” view of factorization

adapted from G. Sterman’s lectures



accelerated charges produce classical radiation

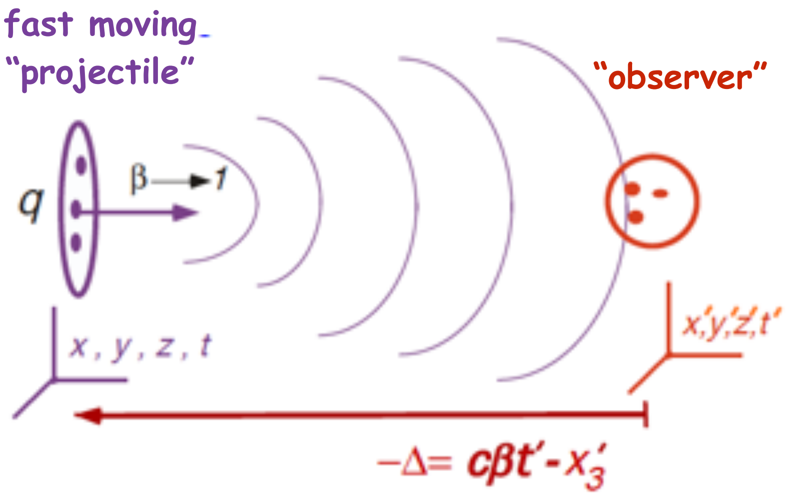
QFT assembles field from infinite # of soft quanta

Lorentz transformation $\mathbf{x_3 = \gamma(\beta ct' - x'_3) \equiv -\gamma\Delta}$

field	x-frame	x′ frame	Lorentz factor
scalar field $\phi(\mathbf{x})$	$\frac{\mathbf{q}}{\mathbf{|\tilde{x}|}}$	$\frac{\mathbf{q}}{\mathbf{(x_T^2 + \gamma^2\Delta^2)^{1/2}}}$	$\mathbf{1/\gamma}$

a “classical” view of factorization

adapted from G. Sterman’s lectures



accelerated charges produce classical radiation

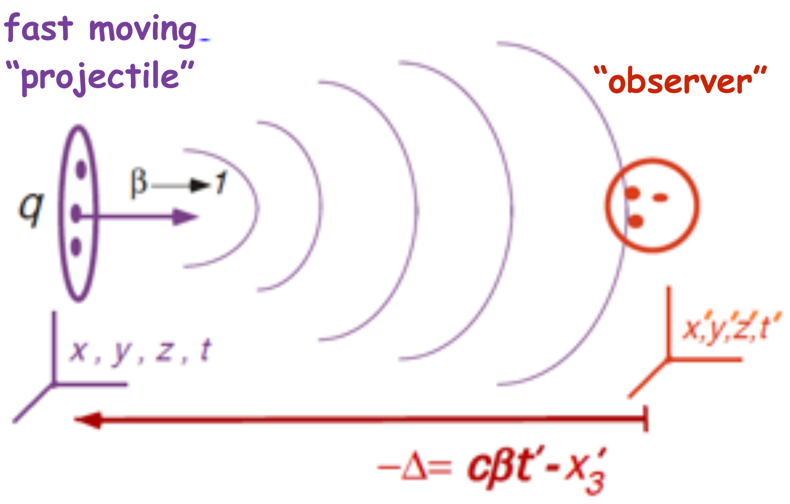
QFT assembles field from infinite # of soft quanta

Lorentz transformation $\mathbf{x_3 = \gamma(\beta c t' - x_3') \equiv -\gamma\Delta}$

field	x-frame	x′ frame	Lorentz factor
scalar field $\phi(\mathbf{x})$	$\frac{\mathbf{q}}{\lvert\tilde{\mathbf{x}}\rvert}$	$\frac{\mathbf{q}}{(\mathbf{x_T^2} + \gamma^2\mathbf{\Delta}^2)^{1/2}}$	$\mathbf{1}/\gamma$
gauge field $\mathbf{A_0(x)}$	$\frac{\mathbf{q}}{\lvert\tilde{\mathbf{x}}\rvert}$	$\frac{-\mathbf{q}\gamma}{(\mathbf{x_T^2} + \gamma^2\mathbf{\Delta}^2)^{1/2}}$	$\gamma^{\mathbf{0}}$

a “classical” view of factorization

adapted from G. Sterman’s lectures



accelerated charges produce classical radiation

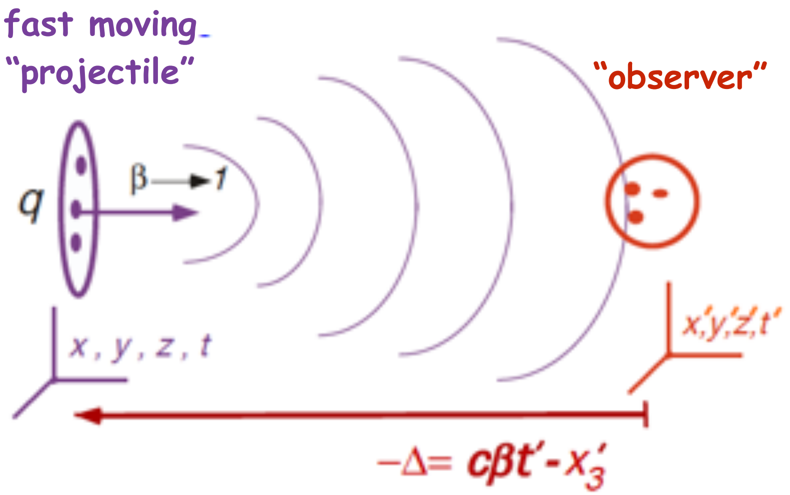
QFT assembles field from infinite # of soft quanta

Lorentz transformation $\mathbf{x_3 = \gamma(\beta ct' - x'_3) \equiv -\gamma\Delta}$

field	x-frame	x′ frame	Lorentz factor
scalar field $\phi(\mathbf{x})$	$\frac{\mathbf{q}}{\lvert\tilde{\mathbf{x}}\rvert}$	$\frac{\mathbf{q}}{(\mathbf{x_T^2} + \gamma^2\mathbf{\Delta}^2)^{1/2}}$	$1/\gamma$
gauge field $\mathbf{A_0(x)}$	$\frac{\mathbf{q}}{\lvert\tilde{\mathbf{x}}\rvert}$	$\frac{-\mathbf{q}\gamma}{(\mathbf{x_T^2} + \gamma^2\mathbf{\Delta}^2)^{1/2}}$	γ^0
“field strength” $\mathbf{E_3(x)}$	$\frac{\mathbf{q}}{\lvert\tilde{\mathbf{x}}\rvert^2}$	$\frac{-\mathbf{q}\gamma\mathbf{\Delta}}{(\mathbf{x_T^2} + \gamma^2\mathbf{\Delta}^2)^{3/2}}$	$1/\gamma^2$

a "classical" view of factorization

adapted from G. Sterman's lectures



accelerated charges produce classical radiation

QFT assembles field from infinite # of soft quanta

Lorentz transformation $\mathbf{x_3} = \gamma(\beta \mathbf{c} \mathbf{t}' - \mathbf{x}_3') \equiv -\gamma\boldsymbol{\Delta}$

upshot

☑ physical fields are Lorentz contracted

fast moving "projectile" sees much shorter distance x_3 than "observer"

☑ physical field does not overlap with observer until moment of "scattering"

☑ corrections (= "advanced effects") power suppressed $\propto (\mathbf{1} - \beta)$

☑ much the same reasoning for final-state

sum rules and isospin

for the quark distributions in a proton there are several sum rules to obey

$$\int_0^1 dx \sum_i x f_i^{(p)}(x) = 1$$

momentum sum rule

quarks share proton momentum

$$\int_0^1 dx \left(f_u^{(p)}(x) - f_{\bar{u}}^{(p)}(x) \right) = 2$$

$$\int_0^1 dx \left(f_d^{(p)}(x) - f_{\bar{d}}^{(p)}(x) \right) = 1$$

$$\int_0^1 dx \left(f_s^{(p)}(x) - f_{\bar{s}}^{(p)}(x) \right) = 0$$

flavor sum rules

conservation of quantum numbers

sum rules and isospin

for the quark distributions in a proton there are several sum rules to obey

$$\int_0^1 dx \sum_i x f_i^{(p)}(x) = 1$$

momentum sum rule

quarks share proton momentum

$$\int_0^1 dx \left(f_u^{(p)}(x) - f_{\bar{u}}^{(p)}(x) \right) = 2$$

$$\int_0^1 dx \left(f_d^{(p)}(x) - f_{\bar{d}}^{(p)}(x) \right) = 1$$

$$\int_0^1 dx \left(f_s^{(p)}(x) - f_{\bar{s}}^{(p)}(x) \right) = 0$$

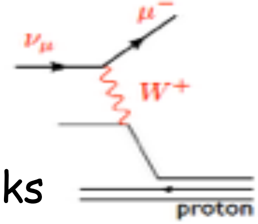
flavor sum rules

conservation of quantum numbers

isospin symmetry relates a neutron to a proton (just u and d interchanged)

$$F_2^n(x) = x\left(\frac{1}{9}d_n(x) + \frac{4}{9}u_n(x)\right) = x\left(\frac{4}{9}d_p(x) + \frac{1}{9}u_p(x)\right)$$

- measuring both allows to determine u^p and d^p separately
- note: CC DIS couples to weak charges and separates quarks and antiquarks

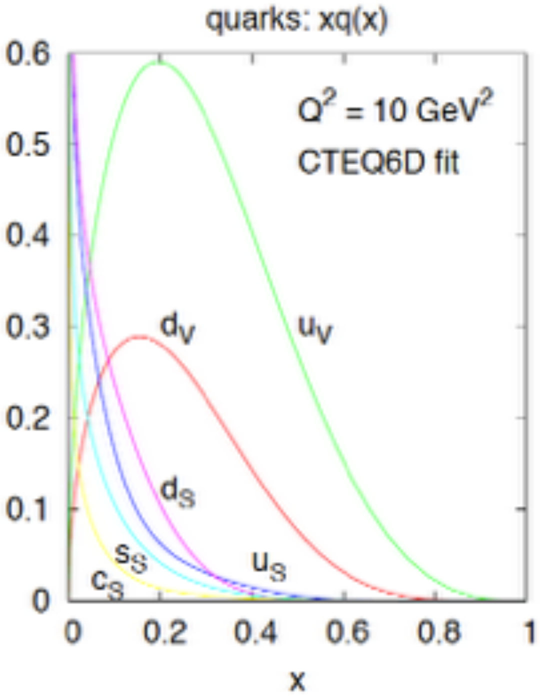


momentum sum rule in the naïve parton model

$$\int_0^1 dx \sum_i x f_i^{(p)}(x) = 1$$

u_v	0.267
d_v	0.111
u_s	0.066
d_s	0.053
s_s	0.033
c_c	0.016
total	0.546

half of the momentum is missing



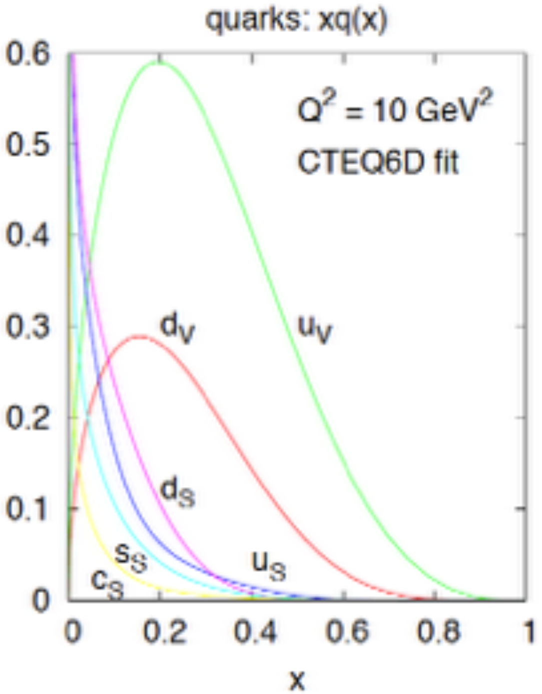
momentum sum rule in the naïve parton model

$$\int_0^1 dx \sum_i x f_i^{(p)}(x) = 1$$

u_v	0.267
d_v	0.111
u_s	0.066
d_s	0.053
s_s	0.033
c_c	0.016
total	0.546

half of the momentum is missing

gluons !



momentum sum rule in the naïve parton model

$$\int_0^1 dx \sum_i x f_i^{(p)}(x) = 1$$

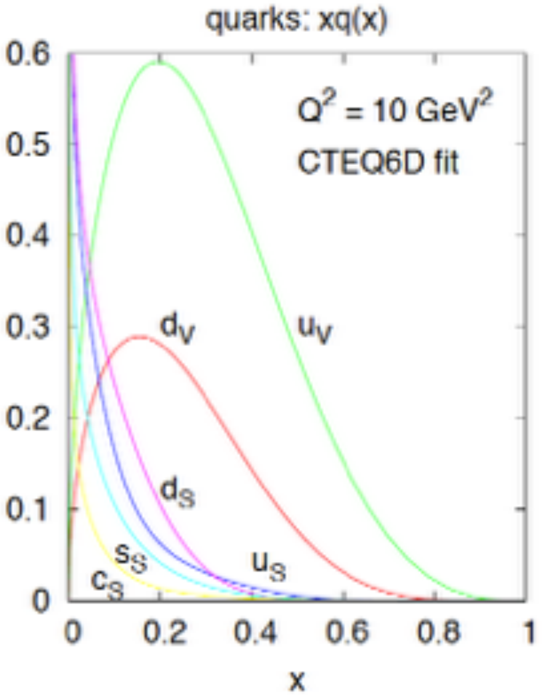
u_v	0.267
d_v	0.111
u_s	0.066
d_s	0.053
s_s	0.033
c_c	0.016
total	0.546

half of the momentum is missing

gluons !

but they don't carry electric/weak charge

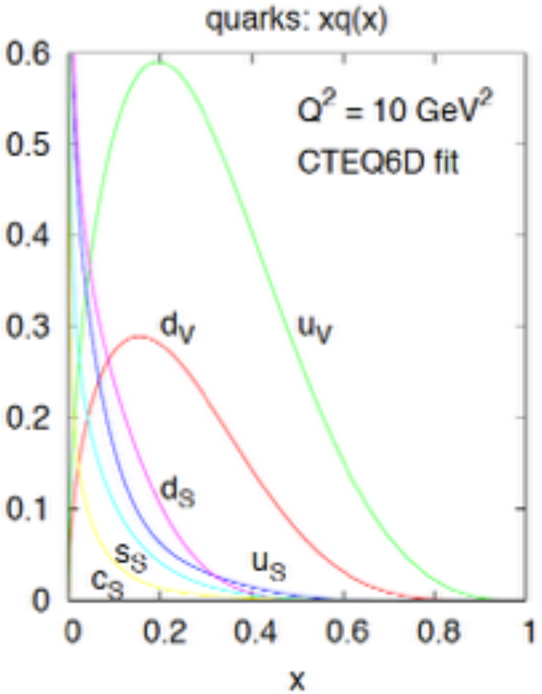
how can they couple?



momentum sum rule in the naïve parton model

$$\int_0^1 dx \sum_i x f_i^{(p)}(x) = 1$$

u_v	0.267
d_v	0.111
u_s	0.066
d_s	0.053
s_s	0.033
c_c	0.016
total	0.546



half of the momentum is missing

gluons !

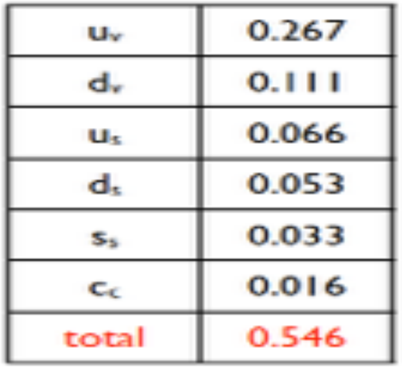
but they don't carry electric/weak charge

how can they couple?

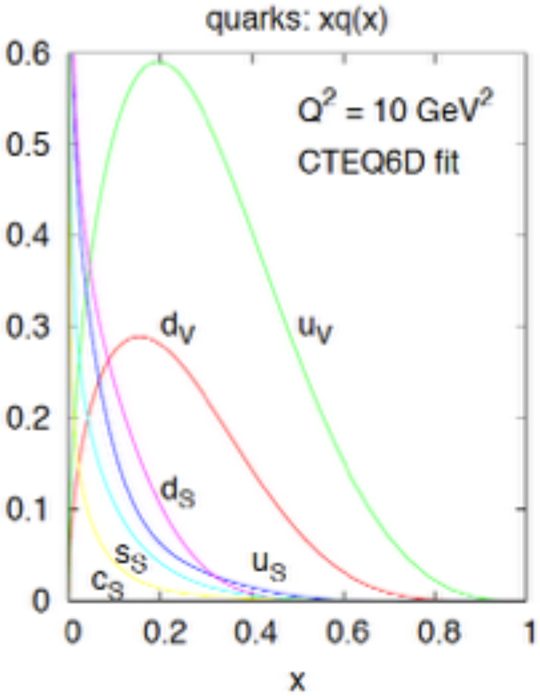
-> we need to discuss QCD radiative corrections to the naïve picture

momentum sum rule in the naïve parton model

$$\int_0^1 dx \sum_i x f_i^{(p)}(x) = 1$$



u_v	0.267
d_v	0.111
u_s	0.066
d_s	0.053
s_s	0.033
c_c	0.016
total	0.546



half of the momentum is missing

gluons !

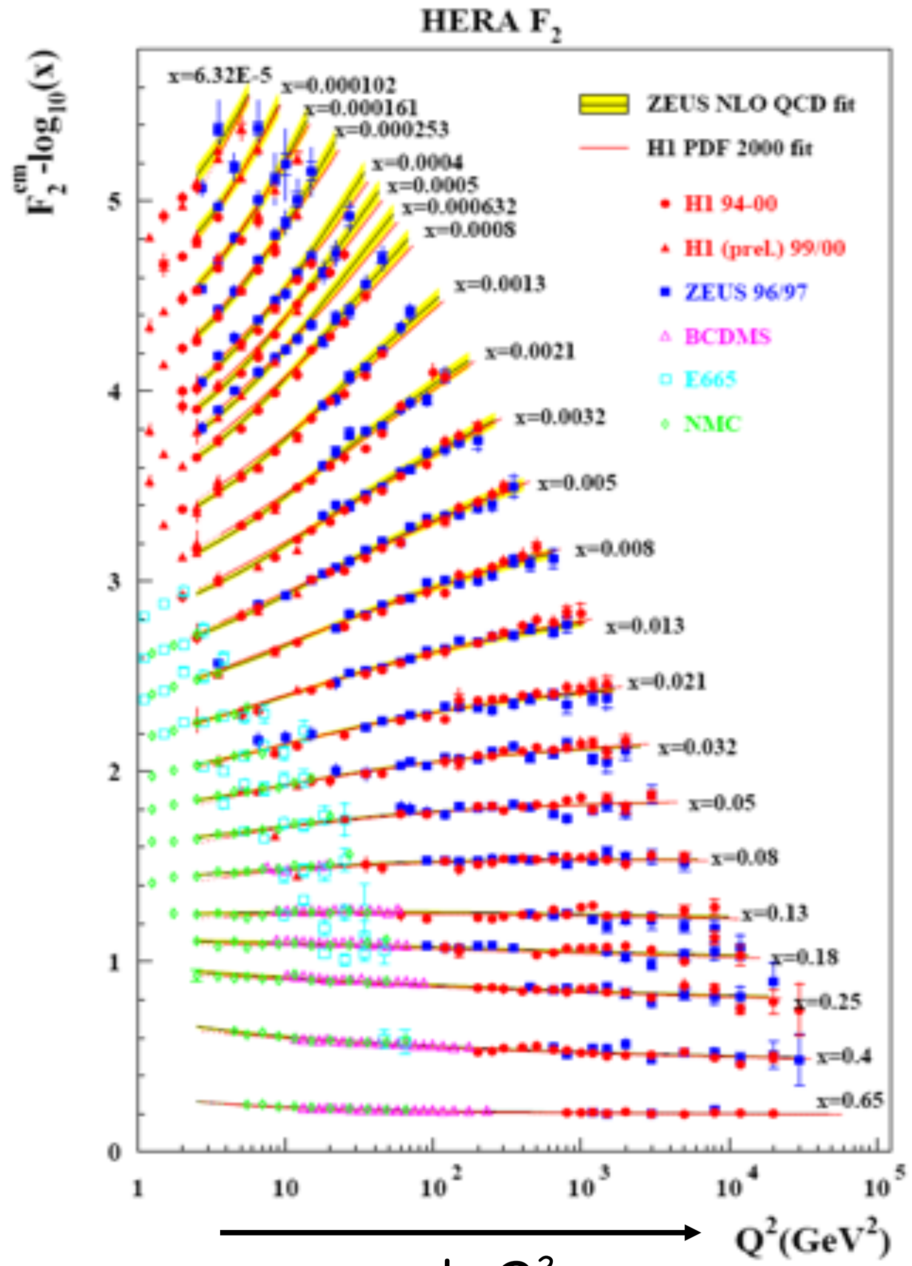
but they don't carry electric/weak charge

how can they couple?

-> we need to discuss QCD radiative corrections to the naïve picture

gluons will enter the game and everything will become scale dependent

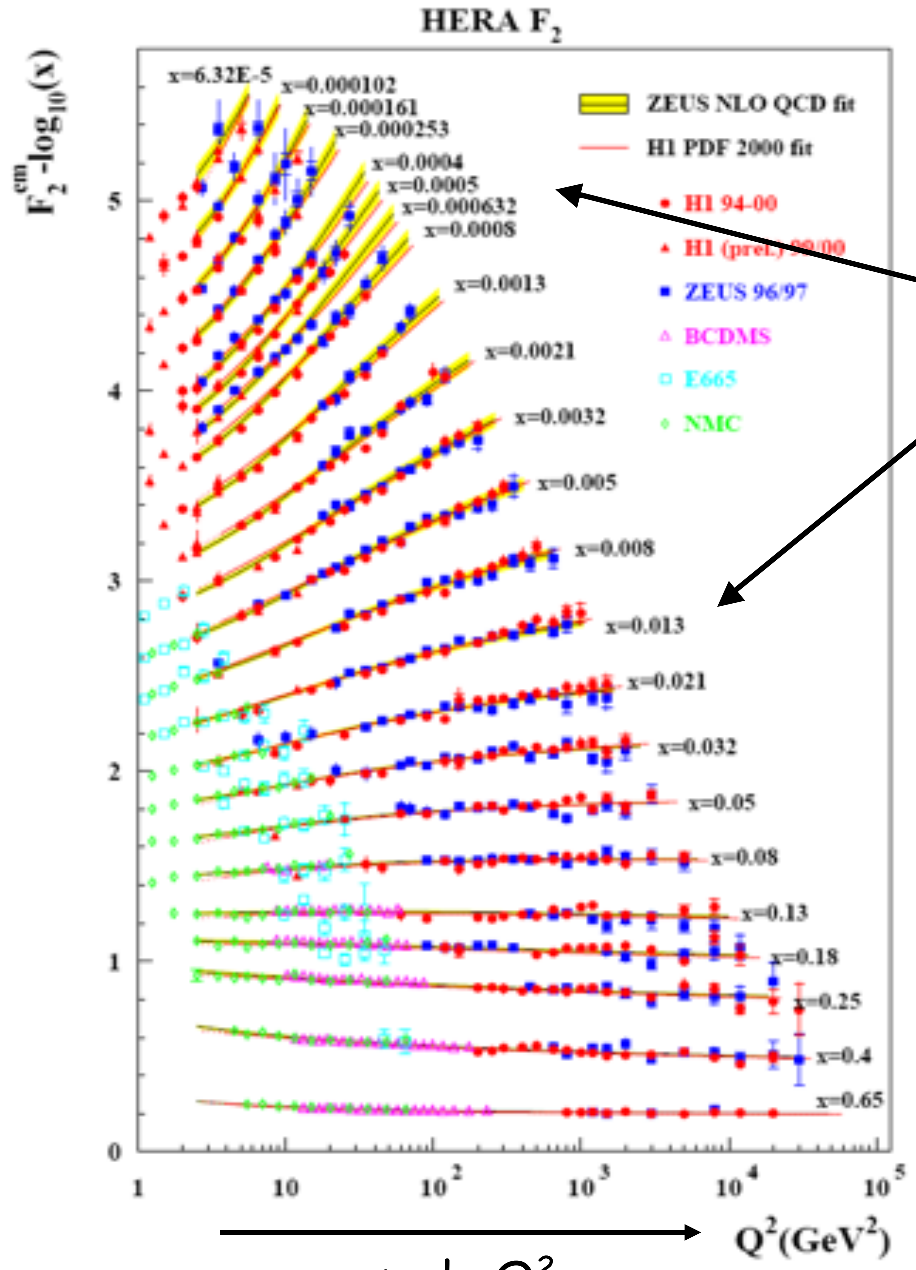
Naïve parton model vs. experiment



scale Q^2

find strong scaling violations

Naïve parton model vs. experiment

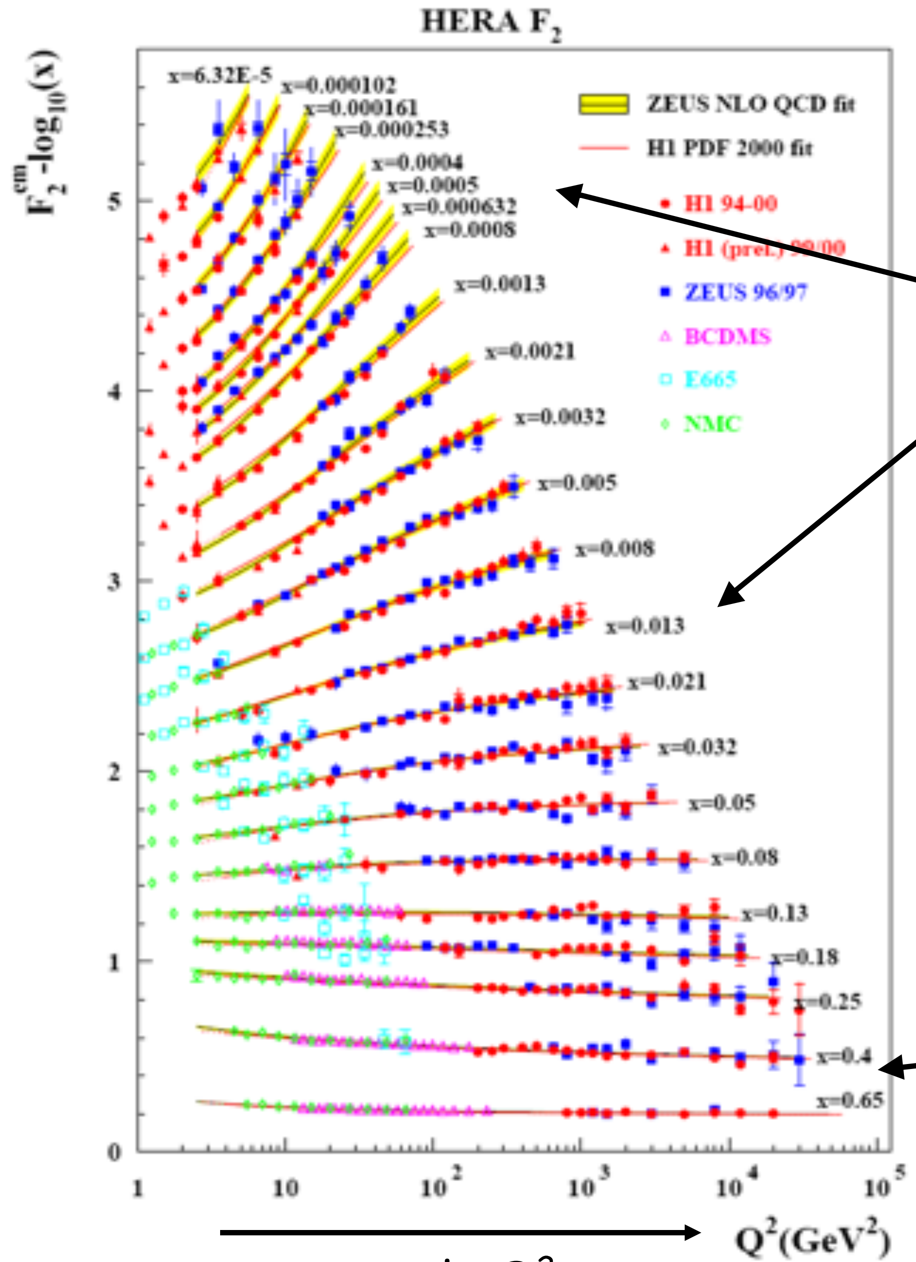


find **strong scaling violations**

significant rise at small x

scale Q^2

Naïve parton model vs. experiment



scale Q^2

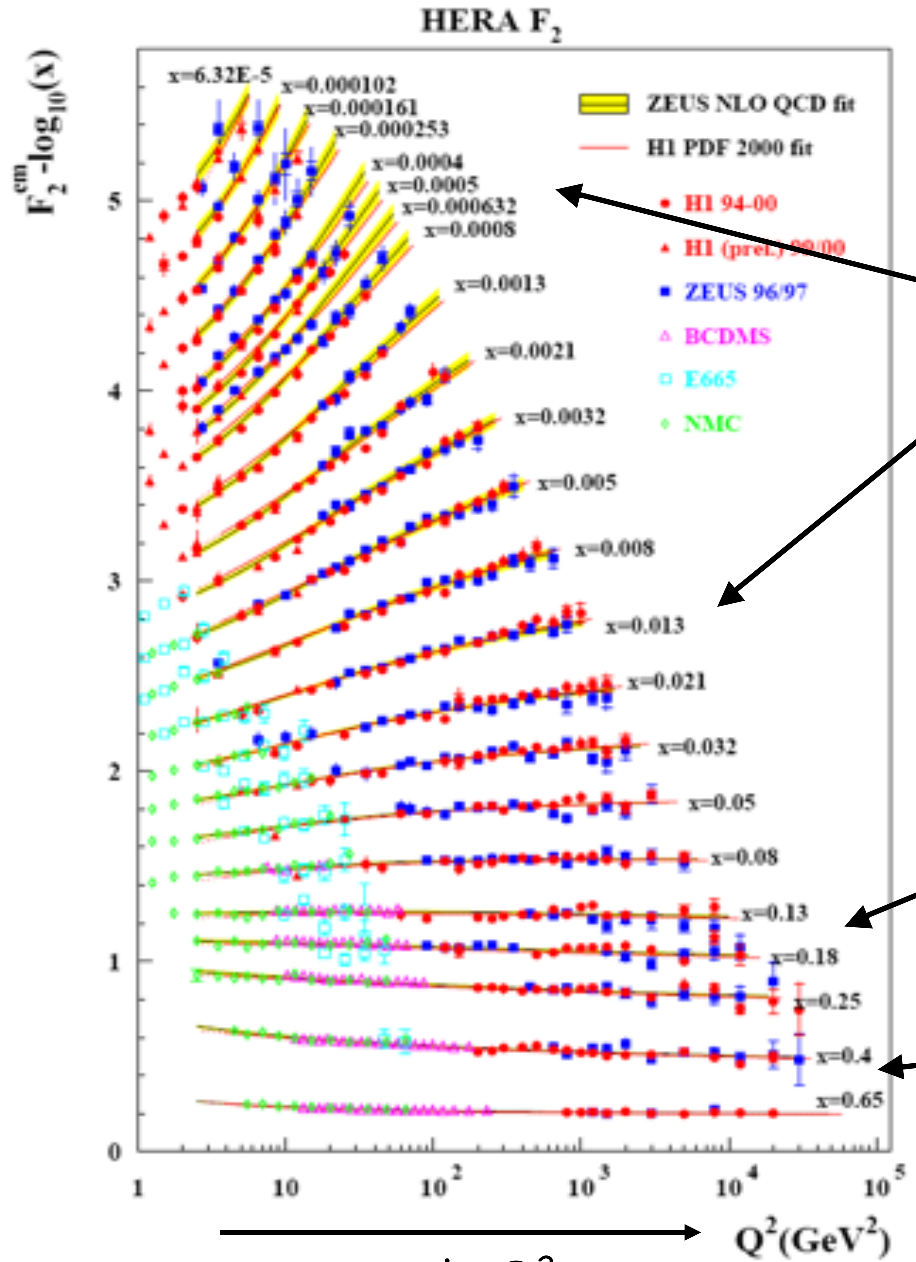
find strong scaling violations

significant rise at small x

decrease at high x

Naïve parton model vs. experiment

find strong scaling violations



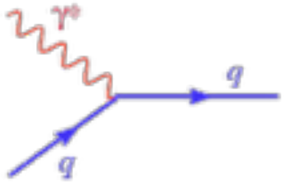
significant rise at small x

approximate scaling only
around x ≃ 0.15

decrease at high x

scale Q^2

DIS in the QCD improved parton model



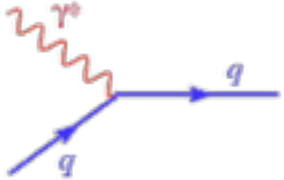
we got a long way (parton model) without invoking QCD

now we have to study **QCD dynamics in DIS**

- this leads to similar problems already encountered in e^+e^-

DIS in the QCD improved parton model

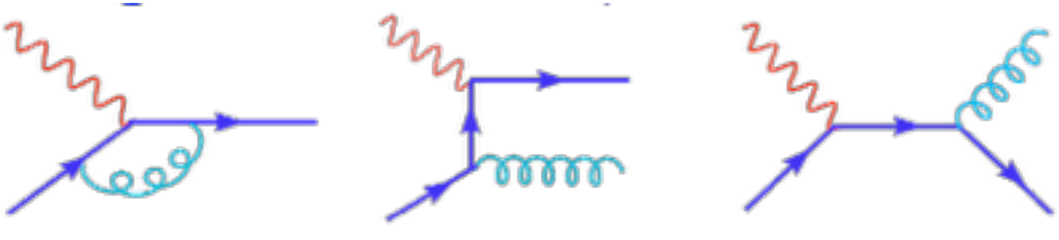
we got a long way (parton model) without invoking QCD



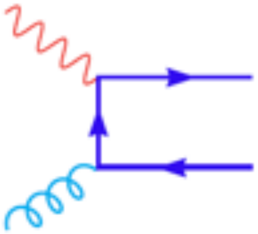
now we have to study **QCD dynamics in DIS**

– this leads to similar problems already encountered in e^+e^-

let's try to compute the **$O(\alpha_s)$ QCD corrections** to the naive picture

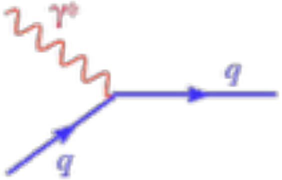


α_S corrections to the LO process



photon-gluon fusion

DIS in the QCD improved parton model

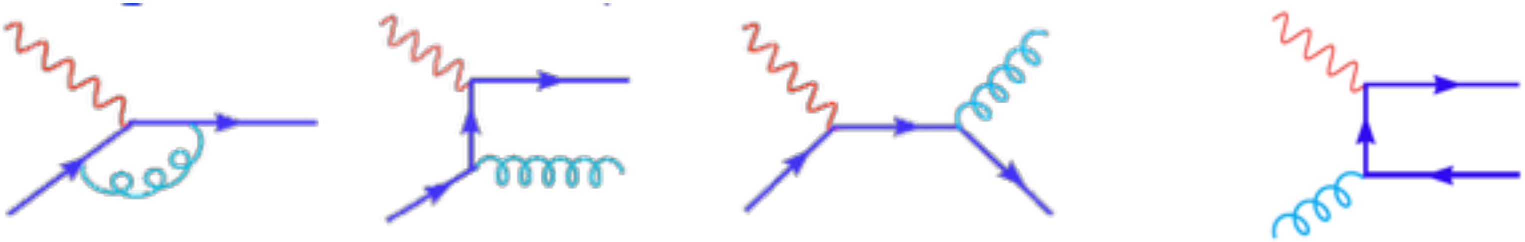


we got a long way (parton model) without invoking QCD

now we have to study **QCD dynamics in DIS**

- this leads to similar problems already encountered in e^+e^-

let's try to compute the **O(α_s) QCD corrections** to the naive picture



α_S corrections to the LO process photon-gluon fusion

caveat: have to expect divergencies (recall 2nd part)
related to soft/collinear emission or from loops

we cannot calculate with infinities → introduce a "**regulator**"
and remove it in the end

regularization methods

regulating divergencies is the 1st step in higher order calculations

standard regulators in QCD calculations:

- **dimensional regularization**

  change dimension of space-time to 4-2ε

  → calculations (integrals) rather involved;

  works in general, i.e., to all orders

  issues: γ_5 (spin, e.-w. couplings), SUSY, helicity violation

regularization methods

regulating divergencies is the 1st step in higher order calculations

standard regulators in QCD calculations:

- **dimensional regularization**

  change dimension of space-time to $4-2\varepsilon$

  $\rightarrow$ calculations (integrals) rather involved;

  works in general, i.e., to all orders

  issues: γ_5 (spin, e.-w. couplings), SUSY, helicity violation

- **small quark/gluon mass**

  intuitive and transparent; stick to four dimensions

  issues: does not work beyond NLO

regularization methods

regulating divergencies is the 1st step in higher order calculations

standard regulators in QCD calculations:

- **dimensional regularization**

  change dimension of space-time to 4-2ε

  $\rightarrow$ calculations (integrals) rather involved;

  works in general, i.e., to all orders

  issues: γ_5 (spin, e.-w. couplings), SUSY, helicity violation

- **small quark/gluon mass**

  intuitive and transparent; stick to four dimensions

  issues: does not work beyond NLO

let's choose this one

regularization methods

regulating divergencies is the 1st step in higher order calculations

standard regulators in QCD calculations:

- **dimensional regularization**

  change dimension of space-time to 4-2ε

  → calculations (integrals) rather involved;

  works in general, i.e., to all orders

  issues: γ_5 (spin, e.-w. couplings), SUSY, helicity violation

- **small quark/gluon mass**

  intuitive and transparent; stick to four dimensions

  issues: does not work beyond NLO

let's choose this one

depending on the choice, singularities will be "hidden" as large logarithms $\log^n(m^2/Q^2)$ or as $1/\varepsilon^n$

regularization methods

regulating divergencies is the 1st step in higher order calculations

standard regulators in QCD calculations:

- **dimensional regularization**

  change dimension of space-time to 4-2ε

  $\rightarrow$ calculations (integrals) rather involved;

  works in general, i.e., to all orders

  issues: γ_5 (spin, e.-w. couplings), SUSY, helicity violation

- **small quark/gluon mass**

  intuitive and transparent; stick to four dimensions

  issues: does not work beyond NLO

let's choose this one

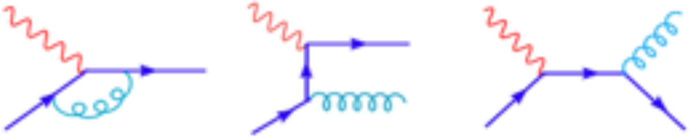
depending on the choice, singularities will be "hidden" as large logarithms $\log^n(m^2/Q^2)$ or as $1/\varepsilon^n$

only if we have done everything consistently, including factorization, we can safely remove the regulator and can compare to experiment

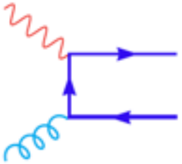
general structure of the O(α_s) corrections

using small (artificial) quark/gluon masses as regulator we obtain:

$$\left.\frac{d^2\hat{\sigma}}{dx\,dQ^2}\right|_{F_2} \equiv \hat{F}_2^q = e_q^2 x \left[\delta(1-x) + \frac{\alpha_s(\mu_r)}{4\pi}\left[P_{qq}(x)\ln\frac{Q^2}{m_g^2} + C_2^q(x)\right]\right]$$

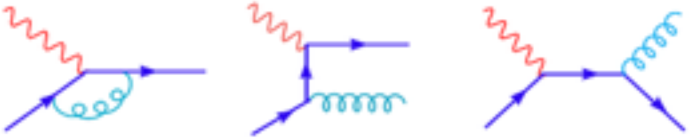


$$\left.\frac{d^2\hat{\sigma}}{dx\,dQ^2}\right|_{F_2} \equiv \hat{F}_2^g = \sum_q e_q^2 x \left[0 + \frac{\alpha_s(\mu_r)}{4\pi}\left[P_{qg}(x)\ln\frac{Q^2}{m_q^2} + C_2^g(x)\right]\right]$$



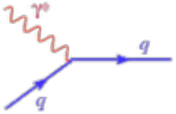
general structure of the O(α_s) corrections

using small (artificial) quark/gluon masses as regulator we obtain:



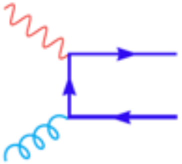
$$\left.\frac{d^2\hat{\sigma}}{dx\,dQ^2}\right|_{F_2} \equiv \hat{F}_2^q$$

$$= e_q^2 x\left[\overset{\text{LO}}{\delta(1-x)} + \frac{\alpha_s(\mu_r)}{4\pi}\left[P_{qq}(x)\ln\frac{Q^2}{m_g^2} + C_2^q(x)\right]\right]$$



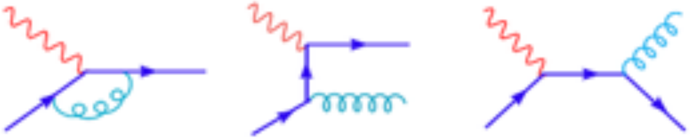
$$\left.\frac{d^2\hat{\sigma}}{dx\,dQ^2}\right|_{F_2} \equiv \hat{F}_2^g$$

$$= \sum_q e_q^2 x\left[0 + \frac{\alpha_s(\mu_r)}{4\pi}\left[P_{qg}(x)\ln\frac{Q^2}{m_q^2} + C_2^g(x)\right]\right]$$



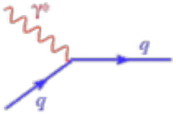
general structure of the O(α_s) corrections

using small (artificial) quark/gluon masses as regulator we obtain:



$$\left.\frac{d^2\hat{\sigma}}{dx\,dQ^2}\right|_{F_2} \equiv \hat{F}_2^q$$

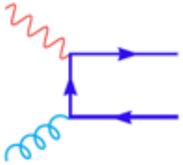
$$= e_q^2 x\left[\overset{\text{LO}}{\delta(1-x)}+\frac{\alpha_s(\mu_r)}{4\pi}\left[P_{qq}(x)\ln\frac{Q^2}{m_g^2}+C_2^q(x)\right]\right]$$



large logarithms
(collinear emission)

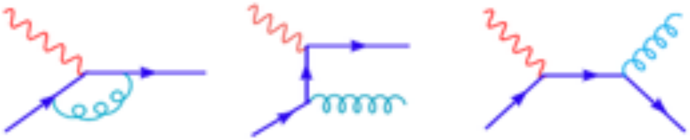
$$\left.\frac{d^2\hat{\sigma}}{dx\,dQ^2}\right|_{F_2} \equiv \hat{F}_2^g$$

$$= \sum_q e_q^2 x\left[0+\frac{\alpha_s(\mu_r)}{4\pi}\left[P_{qg}(x)\ln\frac{Q^2}{m_q^2}+C_2^g(x)\right]\right]$$



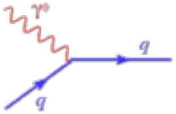
general structure of the O(α_s) corrections

using small (artificial) quark/gluon masses as regulator we obtain:



$$\frac{d^2\hat{\sigma}}{dx\,dQ^2}\bigg|_{F_2} \equiv \hat{F}_2^q$$

$$= e_q^2 x \left[\overset{\text{LO}}{\delta(1-x)} + \frac{\alpha_s(\mu_r)}{4\pi}\left[P_{qq}(x)\boxed{\ln\frac{Q^2}{m_g^2}} + \boxed{C_2^q(x)}\right]\right]$$

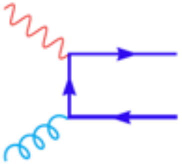


large logarithms
(collinear emission)

finite
coefficients

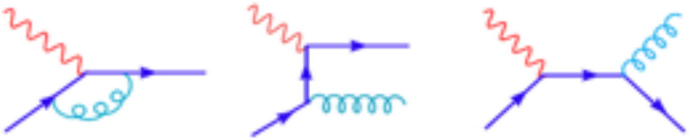
$$\frac{d^2\hat{\sigma}}{dx\,dQ^2}\bigg|_{F_2} \equiv \hat{F}_2^g$$

$$= \sum_q e_q^2 x \left[0 + \frac{\alpha_s(\mu_r)}{4\pi}\left[P_{qg}(x)\boxed{\ln\frac{Q^2}{m_q^2}} + \boxed{C_2^g(x)}\right]\right]$$

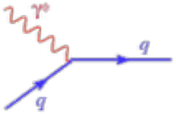


general structure of the O(α_s) corrections

using small (artificial) quark/gluon masses as regulator we obtain:



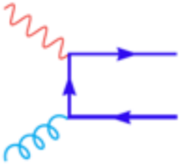
$$\left.\frac{d^2\hat{\sigma}}{dx\,dQ^2}\right|_{F_2} \equiv \hat{F}_2^q = e_q^2 x\left[\overset{\text{LO}}{\delta(1-x)} + \frac{\alpha_s(\mu_r)}{4\pi}\left[P_{qq}(x)\ln\frac{Q^2}{m_g^2} + C_2^q(x)\right]\right]$$



large logarithms (collinear emission)

finite coefficients

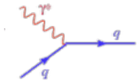
$$\left.\frac{d^2\hat{\sigma}}{dx\,dQ^2}\right|_{F_2} \equiv \hat{F}_2^g = \sum_q e_q^2 x\left[0 + \frac{\alpha_s(\mu_r)}{4\pi}\left[P_{qg}(x)\ln\frac{Q^2}{m_q^2} + C_2^g(x)\right]\right]$$



to see what happens to the logs we have to convolute our results with the PDFs

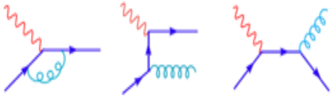
factorization of collinear singularities

for the quark part we obtain:



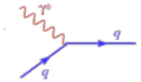
$$F_2(x,Q^2) \;=\; x \sum_{a=q,\bar{q}} e_q^2 \Big[f_{a,0}(x) + \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi} \int_x^1 \frac{d\xi}{\xi} \, f_{a,0}(x) \Big[P_{qq}\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right) \ln \frac{Q^2}{m_q^2} + C_2^q\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right) \Big] \Big]$$

similarly for the gluonic part

from 

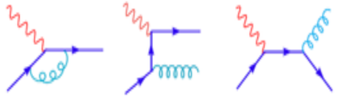
factorization of collinear singularities

for the quark part we obtain:



$$F_2(x,Q^2) = x \sum_{a=q,\bar{q}} e_q^2 \Big[f_{a,0}(x) + \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi} \int_x^1 \frac{d\xi}{\xi} f_{a,0}(x) \Big[P_{qq}\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right) \ln \frac{Q^2}{m_g^2} + C_2^q\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right) \Big] \Big]$$

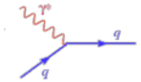
similarly for the gluonic part

from 

$f_{a,0}(x)$: unmeasurable “bare” (= infinite) parton densities; need to be re-defined (= renormalized) to make them physical

factorization of collinear singularities

for the quark part we obtain:

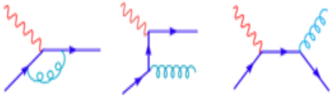


$$F_2(x,Q^2) \;=\; x \sum_{a=q,\bar{q}} e_q^2\Big[f_{a,0}(x) + \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\int_x^1 \frac{d\xi}{\xi}$$

$$f_{a,0}(x)\Big[P_{qq}\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right) \ln\frac{Q^2}{m_g^2} + C_2^q\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right)\Big]\Big]$$

similarly for the gluonic part

from



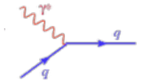
$f_{a,0}(x)$: unmeasurable "bare" (= infinite) parton densities; need to be re-defined (= renormalized) to make them physical

at order α_s: (can be generalized to all orders)

$$f_a(x,\mu_f^2) \equiv f_{a,0}(x) + \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\int_x^1 \frac{d\xi}{\xi} f_{a,0}(\xi) P_{qq}\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right) \ln\left(\frac{\mu_f^2}{m_g^2}\right) + z_{qq}$$

factorization of collinear singularities

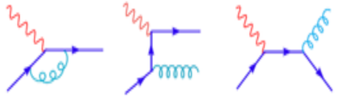
for the quark part we obtain:



$$F_2(x,Q^2) \;=\; x \sum_{a=q,\bar{q}} e_q^2 \Big[f_{a,0}(x) + \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\int_x^1 \frac{d\xi}{\xi}$$
$$f_{a,0}(x)\Big[P_{qq}\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right) \ln\frac{Q^2}{m_g^2} + C_2^q\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right)\Big]\Big]$$

similarly for the gluonic part

from



$f_{a,0}(x)$: unmeasurable "bare" (= infinite) parton densities; need to be re-defined (= renormalized) to make them physical

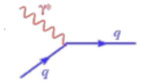
at order α_s: (can be generalized to all orders)

$$f_a(x,\mu_f^2) \equiv f_{a,0}(x) + \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\int_x^1 \frac{d\xi}{\xi} f_{a,0}(\xi) P_{qq}\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right) \ln\left(\frac{\mu_f^2}{m_g^2}\right) + z_{qq}$$

absorbs all long-distance singularities at a **factorization scale** μ_f into $f_{a,0}$

factorization of collinear singularities

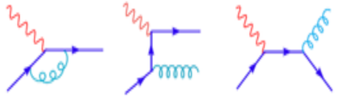
for the quark part we obtain:



$$F_2(x,Q^2) = x\sum_{a=q,\bar{q}} e_q^2\Big[f_{a,0}(x) + \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\int_x^1 \frac{d\xi}{\xi}\, f_{a,0}(x)\Big[P_{qq}\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right)\ln\frac{Q^2}{m_g^2} + C_2^q\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right)\Big]\Big]$$

similarly for
the gluonic part

from



$f_{a,0}(x)$: unmeasurable “bare” (= infinite) parton densities;
need to be re-defined (= renormalized) to make them physical

at order α_s: (can be generalized to all orders)

$$f_a(x,\mu_f^2) \equiv f_{a,0}(x) + \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\int_x^1 \frac{d\xi}{\xi} f_{a,0}(\xi) P_{qq}\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right)\ln\left(\frac{\mu_f^2}{m_g^2}\right) + z_{qq}$$

absorbs all long-distance singularities
at a **factorization scale** μ_f into $f_{a,0}$

physical/renormalized densities: not calculable in pQCD but **universal**

general structure of a factorized cross section

putting everything together, keeping only terms up to α_s:

$$
\begin{aligned}
F_2(x,Q^2) \;&=\; x \sum_{a=q,\bar{q}} e_q^2 \int_x^1 \frac{d\xi}{\xi} f_a(\xi,\mu_f^2) \\
&\left[\delta(1-\frac{x}{\xi}) + \frac{\alpha_s(\mu_r)}{2\pi} \underbrace{\left[P_{qq}\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right) \ln\frac{Q^2}{\mu_f^2} + (C_2^q - z_{qq})\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right)\right]}_{\text{short-distance "Wilson coefficient"}}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

general structure of a factorized cross section

putting everything together, keeping only terms up to α_s:

both, pdf's and the short-dist. coefficient depend on μ_f

(choice of μ_f: shifting terms between long- and short-distance parts)

$$F_2(x,Q^2) \;=\; x \sum_{a=q,\bar{q}} e_q^2 \int_x^1 \frac{d\xi}{\xi} f_a(\xi\enclose{circle}{,\mu_f^2)}$$

$$\left[\delta(1-\frac{x}{\xi}) + \frac{\alpha_s(\mu_r)}{2\pi} \underbrace{\left[P_{qq}\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right) \ln\frac{Q^2}{\enclose{circle}{\mu_f^2}} + (C_2^q - z_{qq})\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right)\right]\right]}_{\text{short-distance "Wilson coefficient"}}$$

general structure of a factorized cross section

putting everything together, keeping only terms up to α_s:

the physical structure fct. is independent of μ_f
(this will lead to the concept of renormalization group eqs.)

both, pdf's and the short-dist. coefficient depend on μ_f
(choice of μ_f: shifting terms between long- and short-distance parts)

$$F_2(x,Q^2) = x \sum_{a=q,\bar{q}} e_q^2 \int_x^1 \frac{d\xi}{\xi} f_a(\xi,\mu_f^2)$$

$$\left[\delta(1-\frac{x}{\xi}) + \frac{\alpha_s(\mu_r)}{2\pi} \underbrace{\left[P_{qq}\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right) \ln\frac{Q^2}{\mu_f^2} + (C_2^q - z_{qq})\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right)\right]\right]}_{\text{short-distance "Wilson coefficient"}}$$

general structure of a factorized cross section

putting everything together, keeping only terms up to α_s:

the physical structure fct. is independent of μ_f
(this will lead to the concept of renormalization group eqs.)

both, pdf's and the short-dist. coefficient depend on μ_f
(choice of μ_f: shifting terms between long- and short-distance parts)

$$F_2(x,Q^2) = x \sum_{a=q,\bar{q}} e_q^2 \int_x^1 \frac{d\xi}{\xi} f_a(\xi,\mu_f^2) \left[\delta(1-\frac{x}{\xi}) + \frac{\alpha_s(\mu_r)}{2\pi} \underbrace{\left[P_{qq}\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right) \ln\frac{Q^2}{\mu_f^2} + (C_2^q - z_{qq})\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right)\right]\right]}$$

short-distance "Wilson coefficient"

choice of the factorization scheme

general structure of a factorized cross section

putting everything together, keeping only terms up to α_s:

the physical structure fct. is independent of μ_f
(this will lead to the concept of renormalization group eqs.)

both, pdf's and the short-dist. coefficient depend on μ_f
(choice of μ_f: shifting terms between long- and short-distance parts)

$$F_2(x,Q^2) = x \sum_{a=q,\bar{q}} e_q^2 \int_x^1 \frac{d\xi}{\xi} f_a(\xi,\mu_f^2)$$
$$\left[\delta(1-\frac{x}{\xi}) + \frac{\alpha_s(\mu_r)}{2\pi} \underbrace{\left[P_{qq}\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right) \ln\frac{Q^2}{\mu_f^2} + (C_2^q - z_{qq})\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right)\right]\Bigg]}_{\text{short-distance "Wilson coefficient"}}$$

yet another scale: μ_r

due to the renormalization
of ultraviolet divergencies

choice of the factorization scheme

general structure of a factorized cross section

putting everything together, keeping only terms up to α_s:

the physical structure fct. is independent of μ_f
(this will lead to the concept of renormalization group eqs.)

both, pdf's and the short-dist. coefficient depend on μ_f
(choice of μ_f: shifting terms between long- and short-distance parts)

$$F_2(x,Q^2) = x \sum_{a=q,\bar{q}} e_q^2 \int_x^1 \frac{d\xi}{\xi} f_a(\xi,\mu_f^2) \left[\delta(1-\frac{x}{\xi}) + \frac{\alpha_s(\mu_r)}{2\pi} \underbrace{\left[P_{qq}\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right) \ln\frac{Q^2}{\mu_f^2} + (C_2^q - z_{qq})\left(\frac{x}{\xi}\right)\right]}_{\text{short-distance "Wilson coefficient"}}\right]$$

yet another scale: μ_r

due to the renormalization
of ultraviolet divergencies

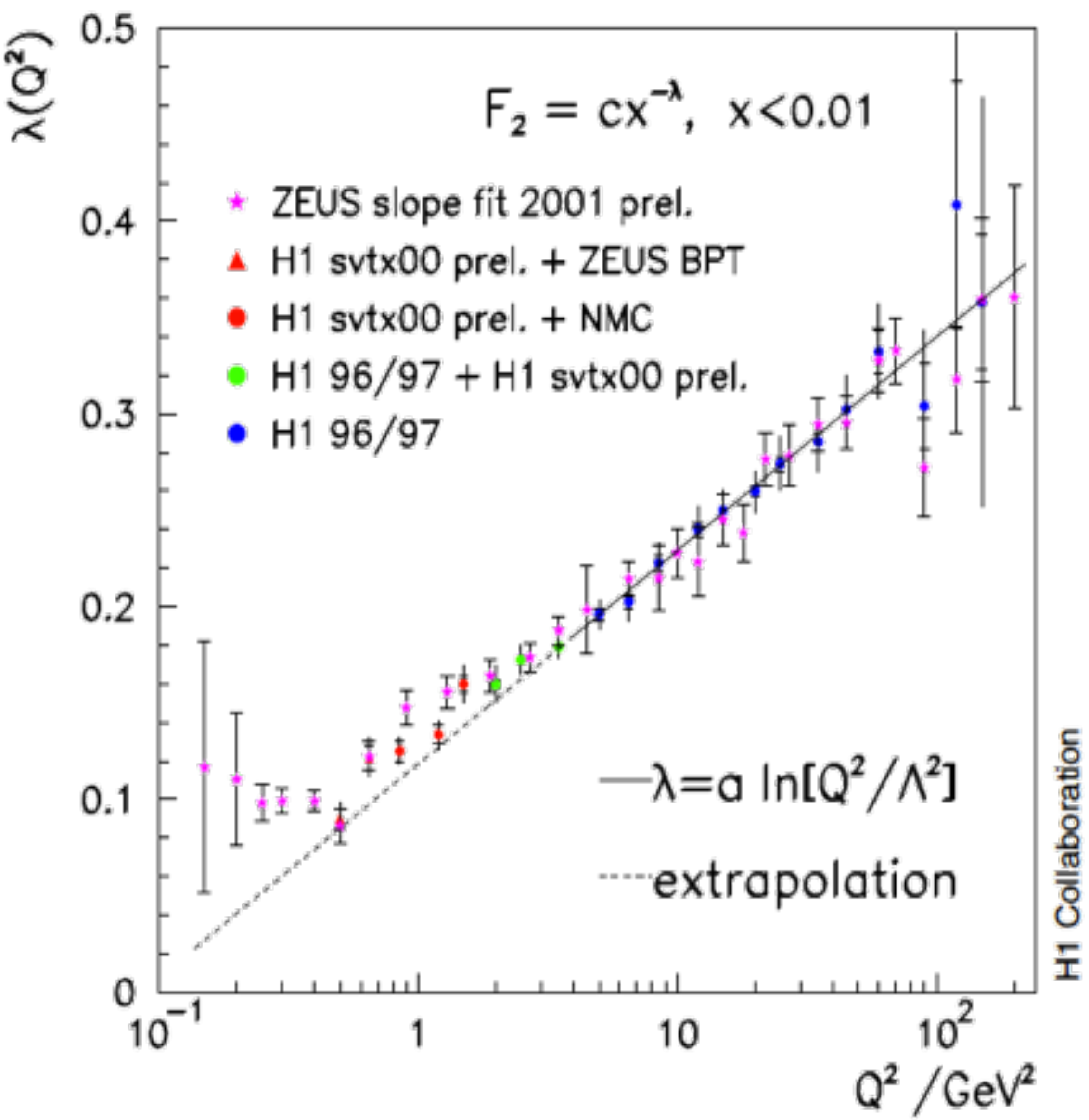
choice of the factorization scheme

this result is readily extended to hadron-hadron collisions

lesson: theorists are not afraid of infinities

ALRIGHT RUTH, I ABOUT GOT THIS ONE RENORMALIZED.

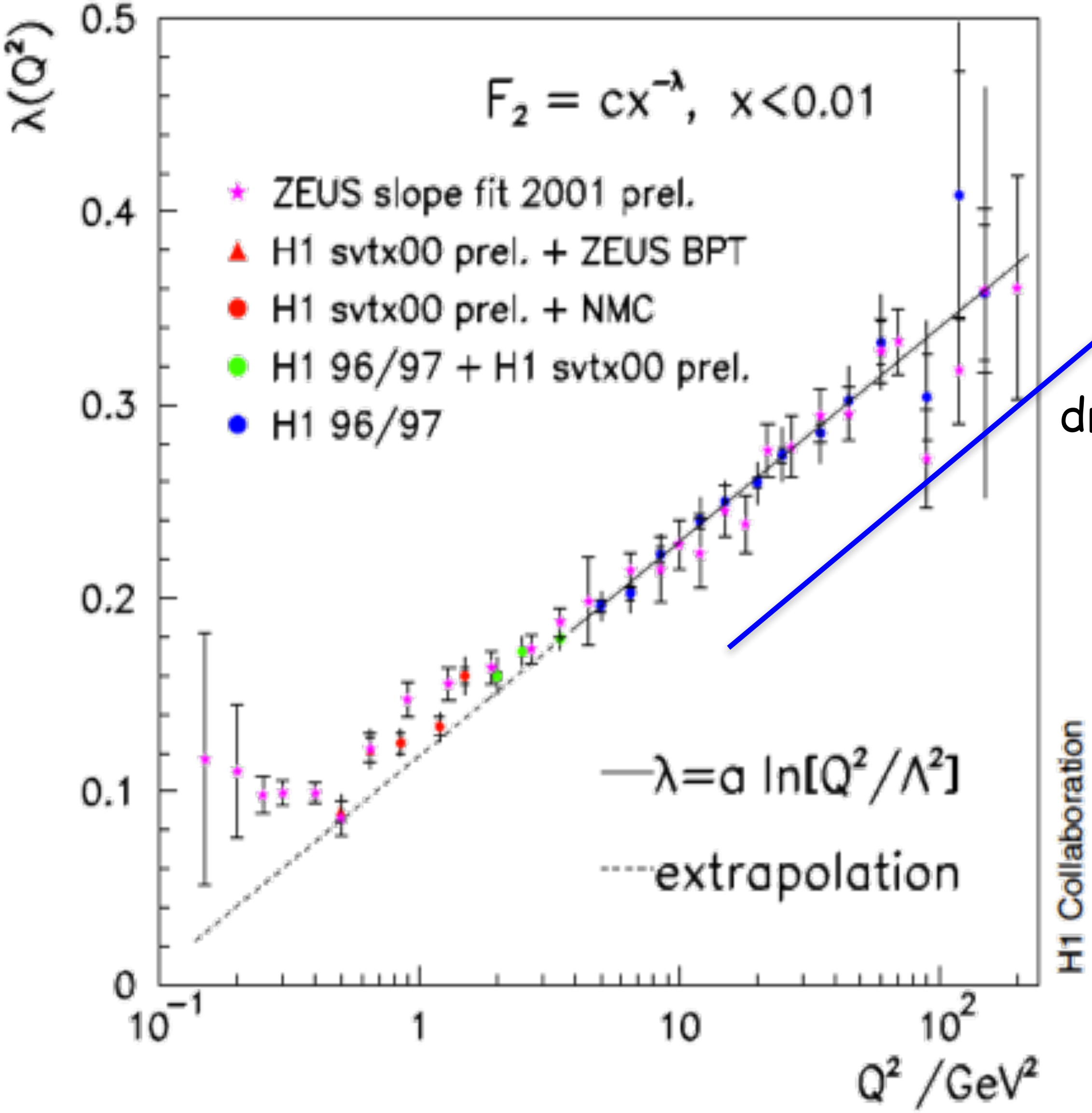
HERA's legacy: rise of F_2 vs Q^2



rise of F_2 can be expressed as

$$F_2 = cx^{-\lambda(Q^2)},\ x < 0.01$$

HERA's legacy: rise of F_2 vs Q^2

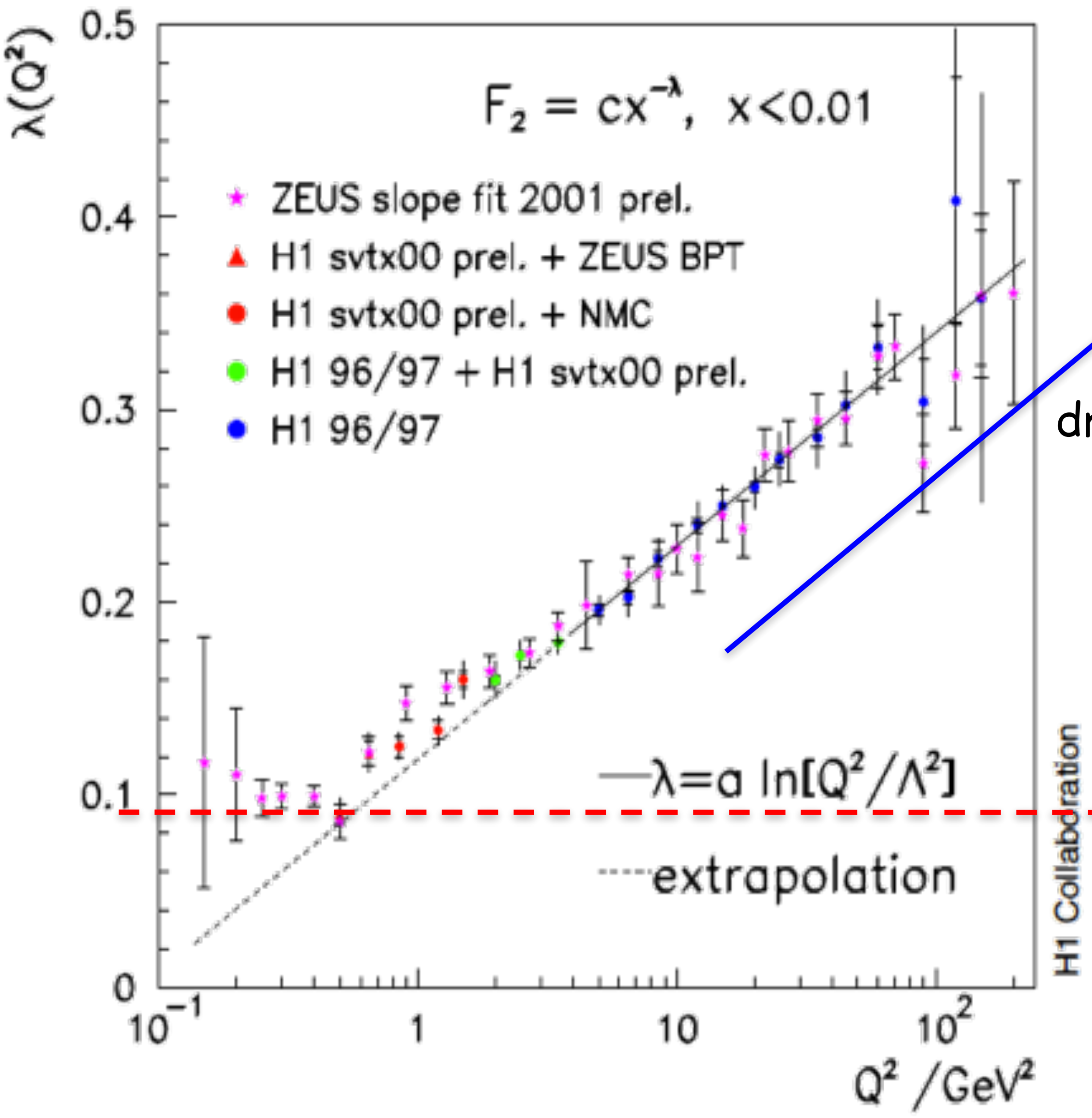


rise of F_2 can be expressed as

$$F_2 = cx^{-\lambda(Q^2)},\ x < 0.01$$

driven by evolution of
gluon distribution

HERA's legacy: rise of F_2 vs Q^2



rise of F_2 can be expressed as

$$F_2 = cx^{-\lambda(Q^2)},\ x < 0.01$$

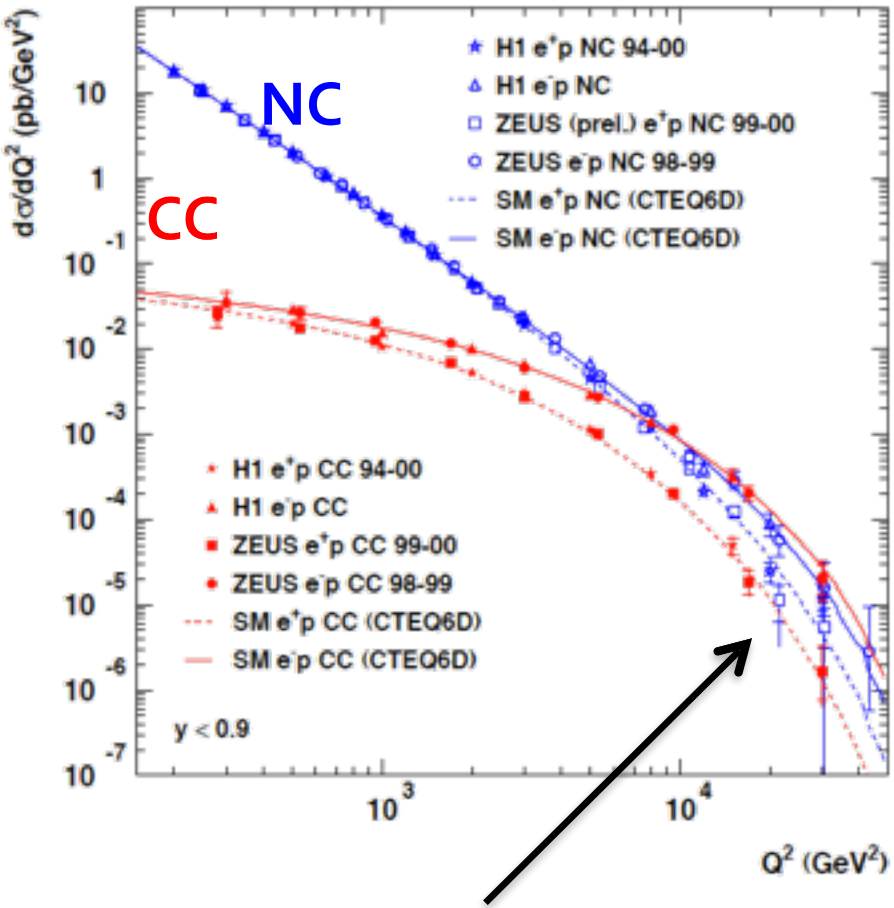
driven by evolution of gluon distribution

F_2 flattens around $Q^2 = 1\ \mathrm{GeV}^2$

change from partonic to hadronic behavior

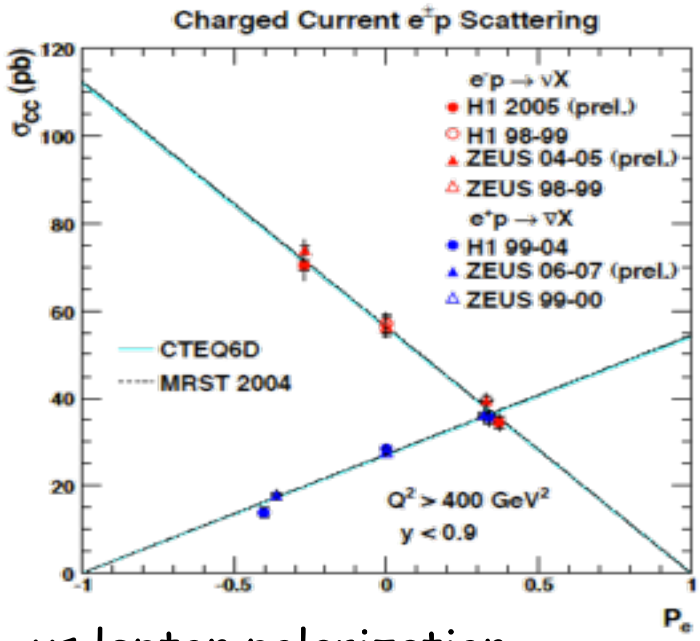
transition can be described in the **"color dipole model"**

NC & CC DIS: test of e-w theory !

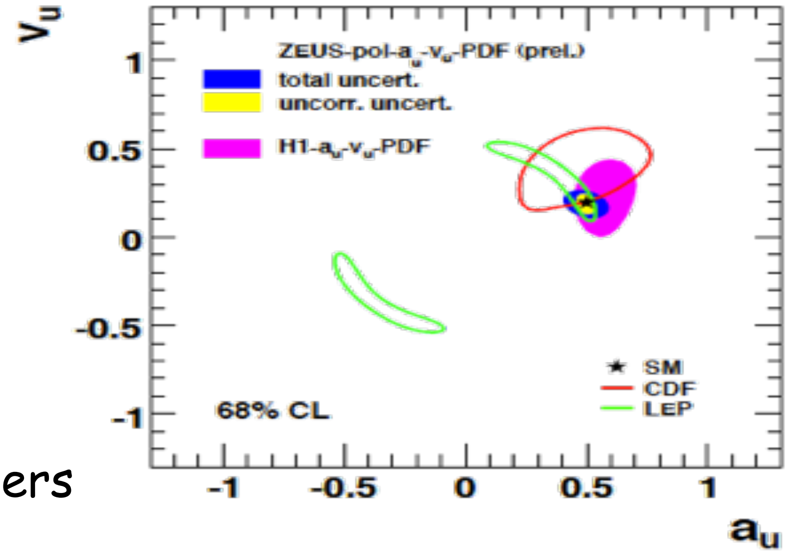


✓ e-w unification at high Q^2

✓ $\sigma(e^-p) \simeq u > \sigma(e^+p) \simeq d$



✓ σ_{CC} vs lepton polarization



✓ extraction of e-w parameters

universal PDFs → key to predictive power of pQCD

once PDFs are extracted from one set of experiments, e.g. DIS, we can use them to **predict cross sections** in, say, hadron-hadron collisions

parton densities are **universal**

→ there must be a process-independent **precise definition**

universal PDFs → key to predictive power of pQCD

once PDFs are extracted from one set of experiments, e.g. DIS, we can use them to **predict cross sections** in, say, hadron-hadron collisions

parton densities are **universal**

→ there must be a process-independent **precise definition**

---

small print: we need to specify a common factorization scheme for short- and long-distance physics (= choice of z_{ij} in our result for F_2)

standard choice: **modified minimal subtraction ($\overline{\text{MS}}$) scheme**
(closely linked to dim. regularization; used in all PDF fits)

less often used: **DIS scheme** = "maximal" subtraction where all $O(\alpha_s)$ corrections in DIS are absorbed into PDFs
(nice for DIS but a bit awkward for other processes)

universal PDFs → key to predictive power of pQCD

once PDFs are extracted from one set of experiments, e.g. DIS, we can use them to **predict cross sections** in, say, hadron-hadron collisions

parton densities are **universal**

→ there must be a process-independent **precise definition**

---

small print: we need to specify a common factorization scheme for short- and long-distance physics (= choice of z_{ij} in our result for F_2)

standard choice: **modified minimal subtraction ($\overline{\text{MS}}$) scheme**
(closely linked to dim. regularization; used in all PDF fits)

less often used: **DIS scheme** = "maximal" subtraction where all $O(\alpha_s)$ corrections in DIS are absorbed into PDFs
(nice for DIS but a bit awkward for other processes)

---

classic (but old-fashioned) definition of PDFs through their Mellin moments in Wilson-Zimmermann's operator product expansion (OPE)

Bardeen, Buras, Duke, Muta

PDFs as bi-local operators

Curci, Furmanski, Petronzio; Collins, Soper
see, e.g., D. Soper, hep-lat/9609018

more physical formulation in Bjorken-x space:
matrix elements of bi-local operators on the light-cone

for quarks: (similar for gluons; easy to include spin $\gamma^+ \rightarrow \gamma^+\gamma_5$)

$$f_a(\xi, \mu_f) = \frac{1}{2}\int \frac{dy^-}{2\pi} e^{-i\xi p^+ y^-} \langle p|\overline{\Psi}_a(0, y^-, \vec{0})\gamma^+ \mathcal{F}\Psi_a(0)|p\rangle_{\overline{\text{MS}}}$$

PDFs as bi-local operators

Curci, Furmanski, Petronzio; Collins, Soper
see, e.g., D. Soper, hep-lat/9609018

more physical formulation in Bjorken-x space:
matrix elements of bi-local operators on the light-cone

for quarks: (similar for gluons; easy to include spin $\gamma^+ \rightarrow \gamma^+\gamma_5$)

$$\boxed{f_a(\xi,\mu_f) = \frac{1}{2}\int \frac{dy^-}{2\pi} e^{-i\xi p^+ y^-} \langle p|\overline{\Psi}_a(0,y^-,\vec{0})\gamma^+ \mathcal{F} \underset{\uparrow}{\Psi_a}(0)|p\rangle_{\overline{\mathrm{MS}}}}$$

annihilates
quark at $x^\mu=0$

PDFs as bi-local operators

Curci, Furmanski, Petronzio; Collins, Soper
see, e.g., D. Soper, hep-lat/9609018

more physical formulation in Bjorken-x space:
matrix elements of bi-local operators on the light-cone

for quarks: (similar for gluons; easy to include spin $\gamma^+ \rightarrow \gamma^+\gamma_5$)

$$f_a(\xi,\mu_f) = \frac{1}{2}\int \frac{dy^-}{2\pi} e^{-i\xi p^+ y^-} \langle p|\overline{\Psi}_a(0,y^-,\vec{0})\gamma^+ \mathcal{F}\Psi_a(0)|p\rangle_{\overline{\mathsf{MS}}}$$

recreates quark at $x^+=0$ and $x^-=y^-$

annihilates quark at $x^\mu=0$

PDFs as bi-local operators

Curci, Furmanski,
Petronzio; Collins, Soper
see, e.g., D. Soper,
hep-lat/9609018

more physical formulation in Bjorken-x space:
matrix elements of bi-local operators on the light-cone

for quarks: (similar for gluons; easy to include spin $\gamma^+ \to \gamma^+\gamma_5$)

$$\boxed{f_a(\xi,\mu_f) = \frac{1}{2}\int \frac{dy^-}{2\pi} e^{-i\xi p^+ y^-} \langle p|\overline{\Psi}_a(0,y^-,\vec{0})\gamma^+ \mathcal{F}\Psi_a(0)|p\rangle_{\overline{\mathrm{MS}}}}$$

Fourier transform
→ momentum ξ p^+

recreates quark
at $x^+=0$ and $x^-=y^-$

annihilates
quark at $x^\mu=0$

PDFs as bi-local operators

Curci, Furmanski,
Petronzio; Collins, Soper
see, e.g., D. Soper,
hep-lat/9609018

more physical formulation in Bjorken-x space:
matrix elements of bi-local operators on the light-cone

for quarks: (similar for gluons; easy to include spin $\gamma^+ \to \gamma^+\gamma_5$)

$$\boxed{f_a(\xi,\mu_f) = \frac{1}{2}\int\frac{dy^-}{2\pi}e^{-i\xi p^+ y^-}\langle p|\overline{\Psi}_a(0,y^-,\vec{0})\gamma^+\mathcal{F}\Psi_a(0)|p\rangle_{\overline{\text{MS}}}}$$

Fourier transform
→ momentum ξ p^+

recreates quark
at $x^+=0$ and $x^-=y^-$

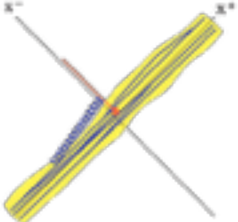
annihilates
quark at $x^\mu=0$

- in general we need a "**gauge link**" for a gauge invariant definition:

Foundations of
Perturbative QCD

JOHN COLLINS

$$\mathcal{F} = \mathcal{P}\exp\left(-ig\int_0^{y^-} dz^- A_c^+(0,z^-,\vec{0})T_c\right)$$



crucial role for a special class of "**transverse-momentum dep. PDFs**"
describing phenomena with transverse polarization **("Sivers function",** …)

PDFs as bi-local operators

Curci, Furmanski, Petronzio; Collins, Soper
see, e.g., D. Soper, hep-lat/9609018

more physical formulation in Bjorken-x space:
matrix elements of bi-local operators on the light-cone

for quarks: (similar for gluons; easy to include spin $\gamma^+ \to \gamma^+\gamma_5$)

$$f_a(\xi,\mu_f) = \frac{1}{2}\int \frac{dy^-}{2\pi} e^{-i\xi p^+ y^-} \langle p|\overline{\Psi}_a(0,y^-,\vec{0})\gamma^+ \mathcal{F}\Psi_a(0)|p\rangle_{\overline{\text{MS}}}$$

Fourier transform → momentum $\xi\, p^+$

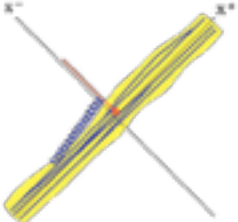
recreates quark at $x^+=0$ and $x^-=y^-$

annihilates quark at $x^\mu=0$

- in general we need a "**gauge link**" for a gauge invariant definition:


Foundations of Perturbative QCD

$$\mathcal{F} = \mathcal{P}\exp\left(-ig\int_0^{y^-} dz^- A_c^+(0,z^-,\vec{0})T_c\right)$$



crucial role for a special class of "**transverse-momentum dep. PDFs**" describing phenomena with transverse polarization (**"Sivers function"**, …)

- interpretation as "number operator" only in "**$A^+ = 0$ gauge**"

PDFs as bi-local operators

Curci, Furmanski, Petronzio; Collins, Soper
see, e.g., D. Soper,
hep-lat/9609018

more physical formulation in Bjorken-x space:
matrix elements of bi-local operators on the light-cone

for quarks: (similar for gluons; easy to include spin $\gamma^+ \to \gamma^+\gamma_5$)

$$f_a(\xi,\mu_f) = \frac{1}{2}\int \frac{dy^-}{2\pi} e^{-i\xi p^+ y^-} \langle p|\overline{\Psi}_a(0,y^-,\vec{0})\gamma^+\mathcal{F}\Psi_a(0)|p\rangle_{\overline{\mathrm{MS}}}$$

Fourier transform
→ momentum $\xi\, p^+$

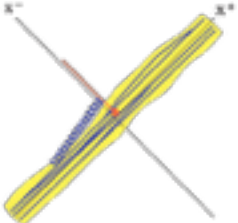
recreates quark
at $x^+=0$ and $x^-=y^-$

annihilates
quark at $x^\mu=0$

- in general we need a "**gauge link**" for a gauge invariant definition:

Foundations of Perturbative QCD

$$\mathcal{F} = \mathcal{P}\exp\left(-ig\int_0^{y^-} dz^- A_c^+(0,z^-,\vec{0})T_c\right)$$

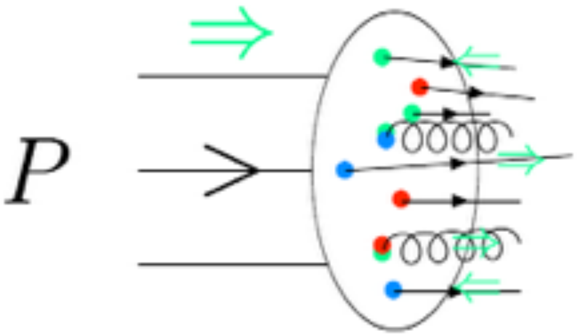


crucial role for a special class of "**transverse-momentum dep. PDFs**"
describing phenomena with transverse polarization (**"Sivers function"**, …)

- interpretation as "number operator" only in "**$A^+ = 0$ gauge**"
- turn into local operators (→ lattice QCD) if taking moments $\int_0^1 d\xi\, \xi^n$

pictorial representation of PDFs

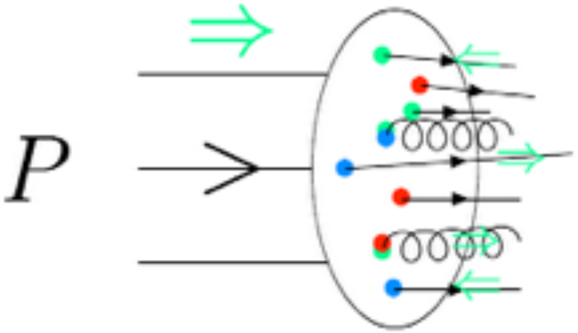
suppose we could take a snapshot of a nucleon with positive helicity



question: how many constituents (quark, anti-quarks, gluons) have momenta between xP and (x+dx)P and how many have the same/opposite helicity?

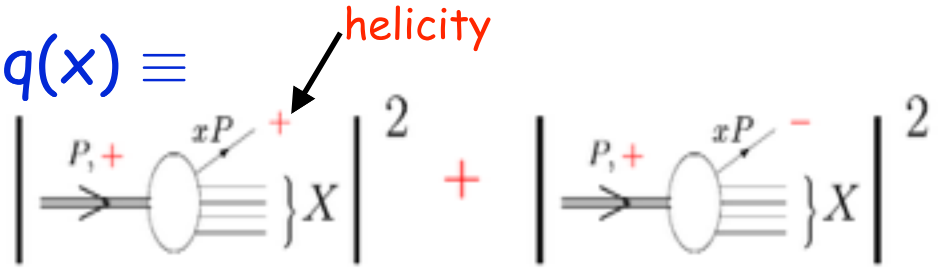
pictorial representation of PDFs

suppose we could take a snapshot of a nucleon with positive helicity

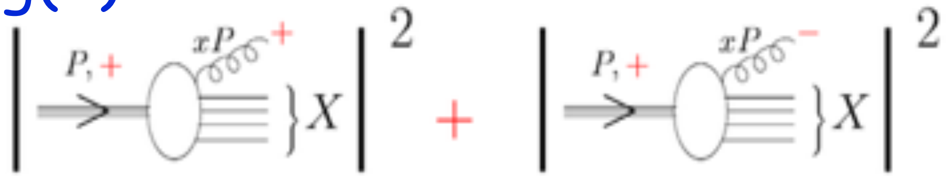


question: how many constituents (quark, anti-quarks, gluons) have momenta between xP and $(x+dx)P$ and how many have the same/opposite helicity?

$q(x) \equiv$



$g(x) =$

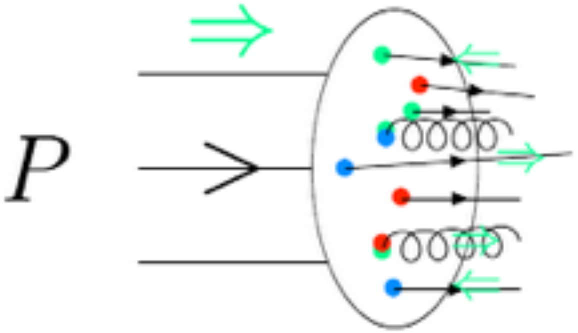


unpolarized PDFs

→ LHC phenomenology, etc.

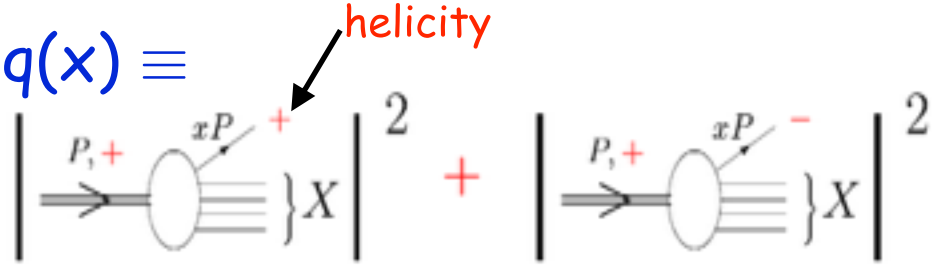
pictorial representation of PDFs

suppose we could take a snapshot of a nucleon with positive helicity

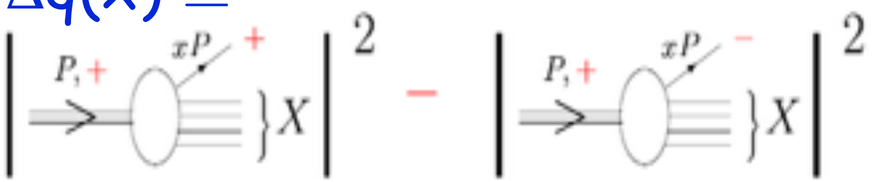


question: how many constituents (quark, anti-quarks, gluons) have momenta between xP and (x+dx)P and how many have the same/opposite helicity?

q(x) ≡



Δq(x) ≡



g(x) =

Δg(x) =

unpolarized PDFs

→ LHC phenomenology, etc.

helicity-dep. PDFs

→ spin of the nucleon

towards renormalization group equations

so far: infinities related to long-time/distance physics (soft/collinear emissions)

these singularities cancel for infrared safe observables
or can be systematically removed (factorization) by “hiding” them
in some non-perturbative parton distribution or fragmentation functions

towards renormalization group equations

so far: infinities related to long-time/distance physics (soft/collinear emissions)

these singularities cancel for infrared safe observables
or can be systematically removed (factorization) by "hiding" them
in some non-perturbative parton distribution or fragmentation functions

but: class of ultraviolet infinities related to the smallest time scales/distances:

towards renormalization group equations

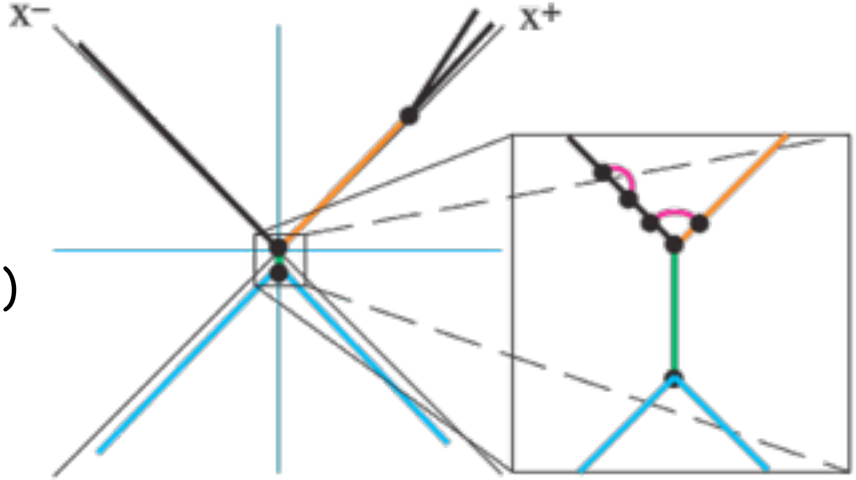
so far: infinities related to long-time/distance physics (soft/collinear emissions)

these singularities cancel for infrared safe observables
or can be systematically removed (factorization) by "hiding" them
in some non-perturbative parton distribution or fragmentation functions

but: class of ultraviolet infinities related to the smallest time scales/distances:

we can insert perturbative corrections
to vertices and propagators ("loops")

loop momenta can be very large (=infinite)
leading to virtual fluctuations on very
short time scales/distances

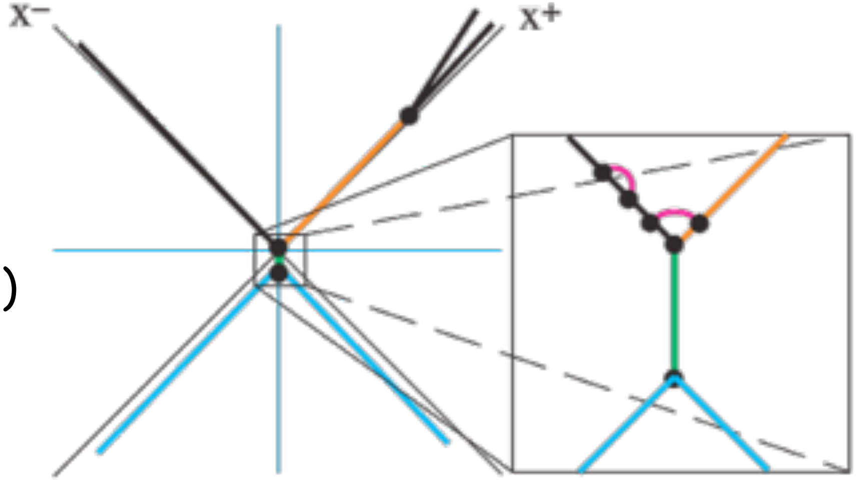


towards renormalization group equations

so far: infinities related to long-time/distance physics (soft/collinear emissions)

these singularities cancel for infrared safe observables
or can be systematically removed (factorization) by "hiding" them
in some non-perturbative parton distribution or fragmentation functions

but: class of ultraviolet infinities related to the smallest time scales/distances:

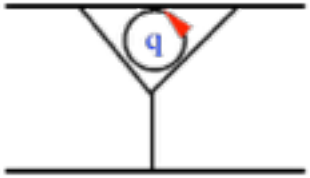


we can insert perturbative corrections
to vertices and propagators ("loops")

loop momenta can be very large (=infinite)
leading to virtual fluctuations on very
short time scales/distances

again, we need a suitable regulator for
divergent loop integrations:

$$\int_0^\infty d^4q$$



UV cut-off vs. **dim. regularization**

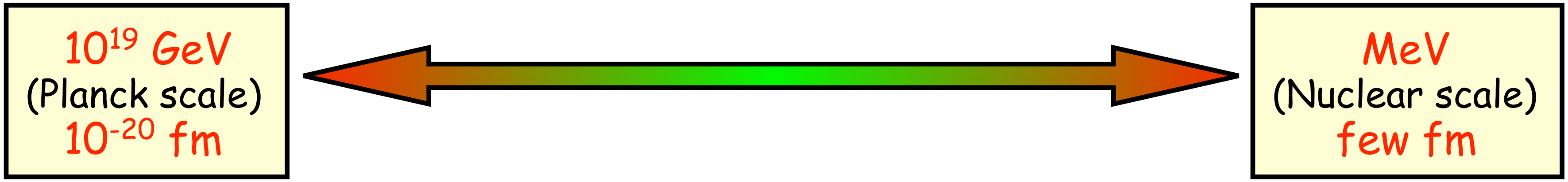
intuitive; not beyond NLO	involved; works to all orders

the importance of scales

factorization and renormalization play similar roles at opposite ends of the energy range of pQCD

the importance of scales

factorization and renormalization play similar roles
at opposite ends of the energy range of pQCD

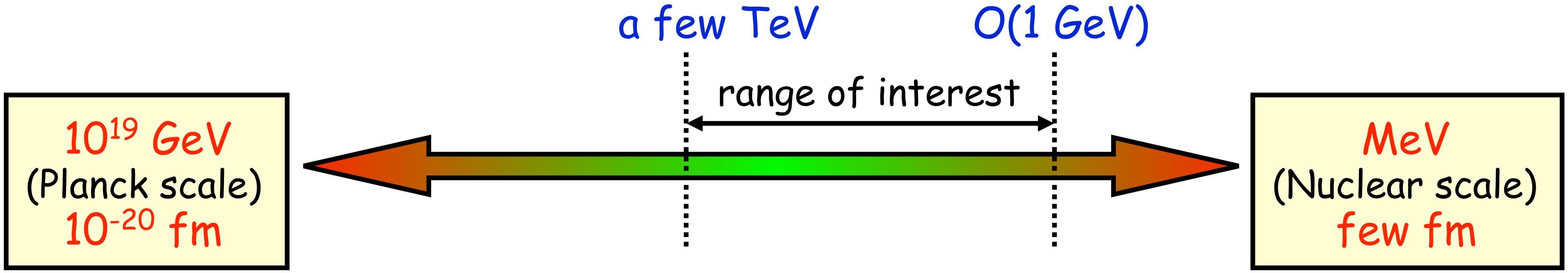


10^{19} GeV
(Planck scale)
10^{-20} fm

MeV
(Nuclear scale)
few fm

the importance of scales

factorization and renormalization play similar roles
at opposite ends of the energy range of pQCD



10^{19} GeV
(Planck scale)
10^{-20} fm

a few TeV

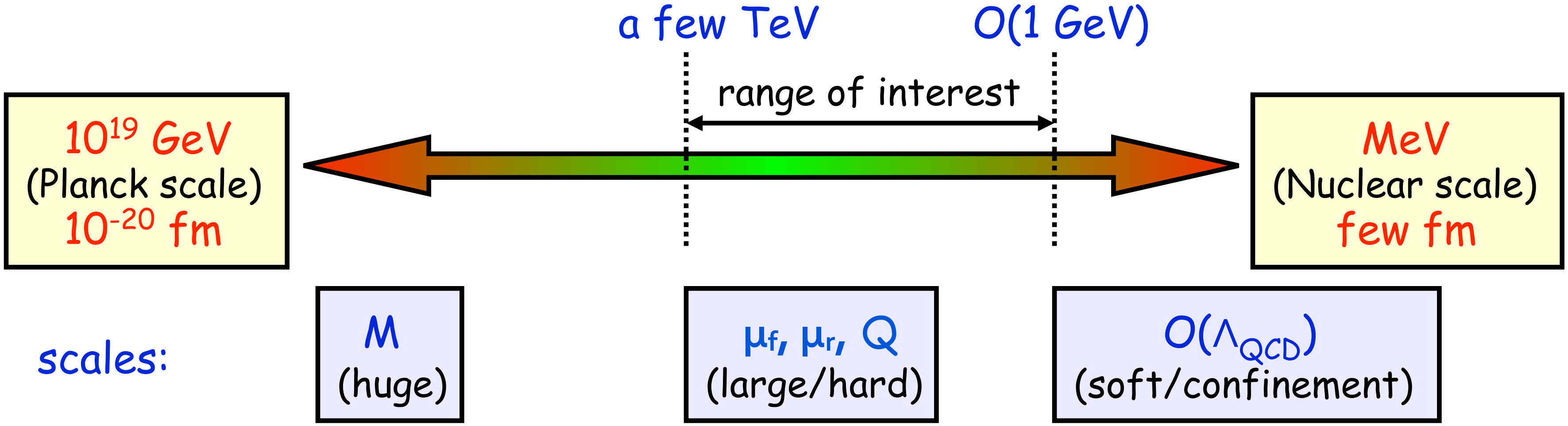
range of interest

O(1 GeV)

MeV
(Nuclear scale)
few fm

the importance of scales

factorization and renormalization play similar roles
at opposite ends of the energy range of pQCD



a few TeV

O(1 GeV)

range of interest

10^{19} GeV
(Planck scale)
10^{-20} fm

MeV
(Nuclear scale)
few fm

scales:

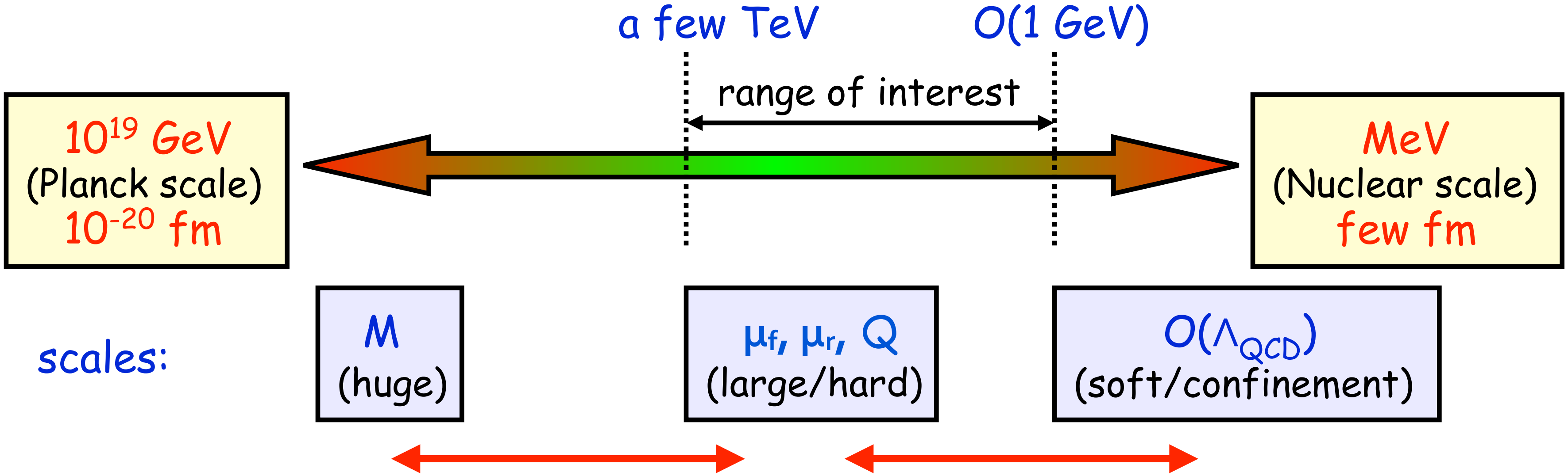
M
(huge)

μ_f, μ_r, Q
(large/hard)

O(Λ_{QCD})
(soft/confinement)

the importance of scales

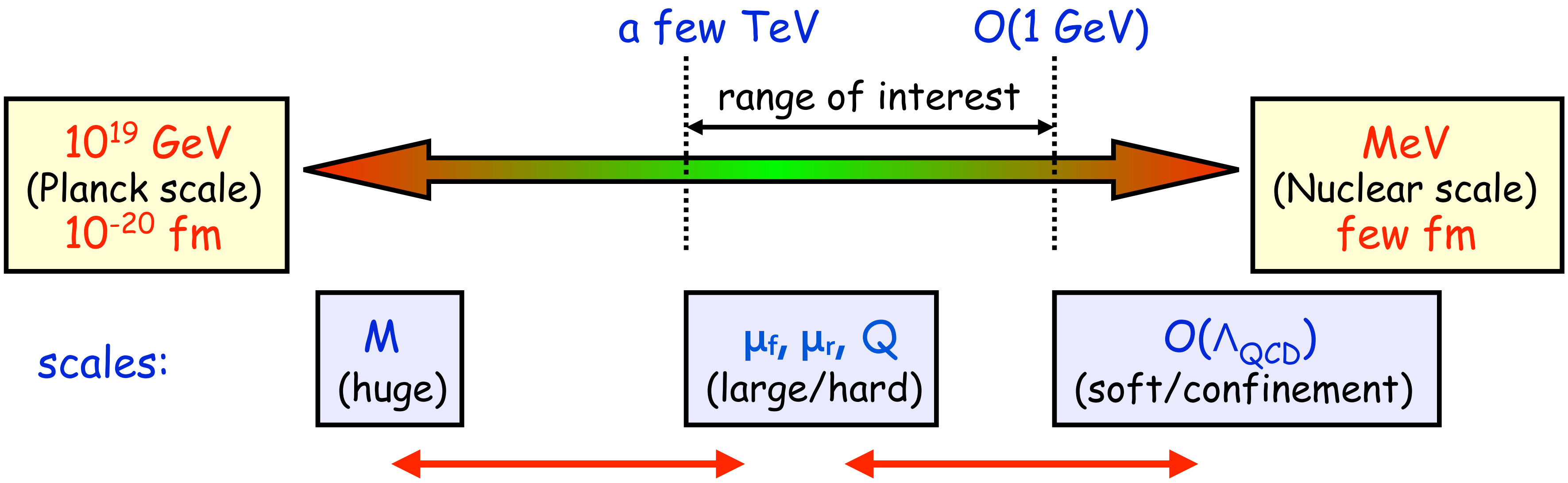
factorization and renormalization play similar roles
at opposite ends of the energy range of pQCD



renormalization group equations (RGE) relate physics at diff. scales

the importance of scales

factorization and renormalization play similar roles
at opposite ends of the energy range of pQCD



a few TeV

O(1 GeV)

range of interest

10^{19} GeV
(Planck scale)
10^{-20} fm

MeV
(Nuclear scale)
few fm

scales:

M
(huge)

μ_f, μ_r, Q
(large/hard)

$O(\Lambda_{QCD})$
(soft/confinement)

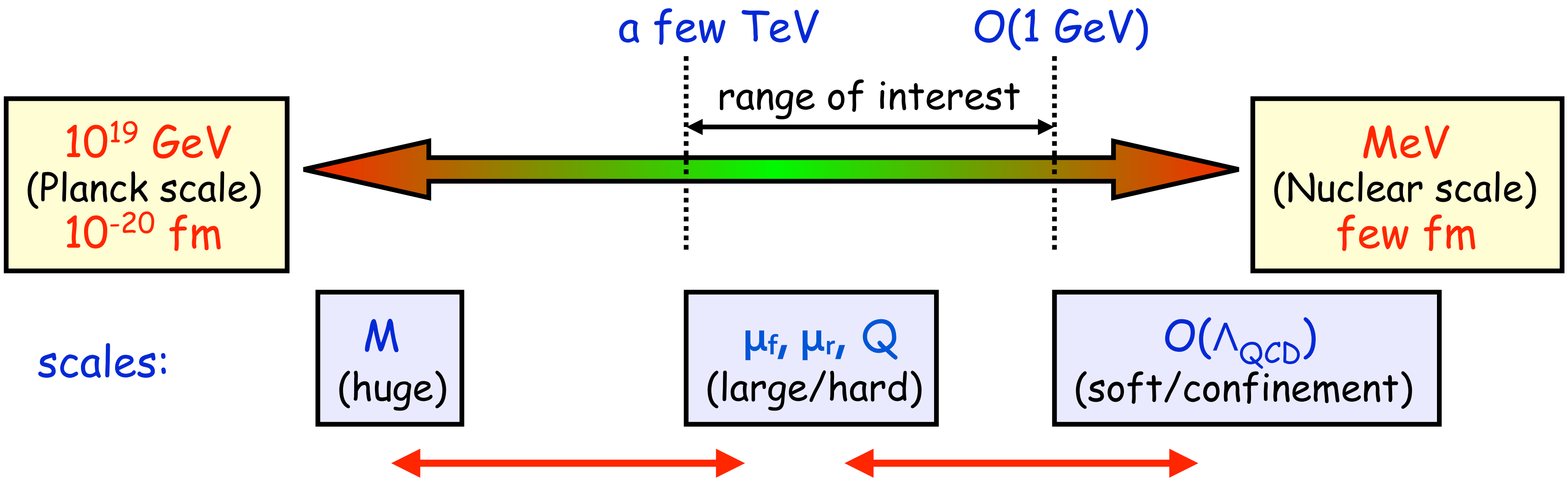
renormalization group equations (RGE) relate physics at diff. scales

UV renormalization

hides our ignorance of
physics at huge scales in
$\alpha_s(\mu_r)$, $m(\mu_r)$, …

the importance of scales

factorization and renormalization play similar roles
at opposite ends of the energy range of pQCD



a few TeV

O(1 GeV)

range of interest

10^{19} GeV
(Planck scale)
10^{-20} fm

MeV
(Nuclear scale)
few fm

scales:

M
(huge)

μ_f, μ_r, Q
(large/hard)

$O(\Lambda_{QCD})$
(soft/confinement)

renormalization group equations (RGE) relate physics at diff. scales

UV renormalization

hides our ignorance of
physics at huge scales in
$\alpha_s(\mu_r), m(\mu_r), \ldots$

IR/collinear factorization

hides non-perturbative QCD
at confinement scale in
$f_a(x,\mu_f), \Delta f_a(x,\mu_f), D_a^H(z,\mu_f), \ldots$

RGE: the swiss army knife of pQCD

we use α_s (and f_a, D_c^H) to absorb UV (IR) divergencies

→ **we cannot predict their values within pQCD**

RGE: the swiss army knife of pQCD

we use α_s (and f_a, D_c^H) to absorb UV (IR) divergencies

→ **we cannot predict their values within pQCD**

however, a **key prediction of pQCD** is their **scale variation**

RGE: the swiss army knife of pQCD

we use α_s (and f_a, D_c^H) to absorb UV (IR) divergencies

→ **we cannot predict their values within pQCD**

however, a **key prediction of pQCD** is their **scale variation**

the physical idea behind this is beautiful & simple:

both scale parameters μ_f and μ_r are not intrinsic to QCD

→ a measurable cross section $d\sigma$ must be independent of μ_r and μ_f

$$\mu_{r,f}\frac{d\sigma}{d\mu_{r,f}} = \frac{d\sigma}{d\ln\mu_{r,f}} = 0$$ ➡ **renormalization group equations**

RGE: the swiss army knife of pQCD

we use α_s (and f_a, D_c^H) to absorb UV (IR) divergencies

→ **we cannot predict their values within pQCD**

however, a **key prediction of pQCD** is their **scale variation**

the physical idea behind this is beautiful & simple:

both scale parameters μ_f and μ_r are not intrinsic to QCD

→ a measurable cross section $d\sigma$ must be independent of μ_r and μ_f

$$\mu_{r,f}\frac{d\sigma}{d\mu_{r,f}} = \frac{d\sigma}{d\ln\mu_{r,f}} = 0 \Rightarrow$$

renormalization group equations

all we need is a reference measurement at some scale μ_0

scale evolution of α_s and parton densities

simplest example of RGE: running coupling α_s derived from $\frac{d\sigma}{d \ln \mu_r} = 0$

→ recall part II $$\frac{da_s}{d \ln \mu^2} = -\beta_0 a_s^2 - \beta_1 a_s^3 - \beta_2 a_s^4 - \beta_3 a_s^5 + \ldots \qquad a_s \equiv \frac{\alpha_s}{4\pi}$$

scale evolution of α_s and parton densities

simplest example of RGE: running coupling α_s derived from $\frac{d\sigma}{d \ln \mu_r} = 0$

→ recall part II $\frac{da_s}{d \ln \mu^2} = -\beta_0 a_s^2 - \beta_1 a_s^3 - \beta_2 a_s^4 - \beta_3 a_s^5 + \ldots \quad a_s \equiv \frac{\alpha_s}{4\pi}$

---

scale dependence of PDFs: more complicated

simplified example:
F_2 for one quark flavor

$$F_2(x, Q^2) = q(x, \mu_f) \otimes \hat{F}_2(x, \frac{Q}{\mu_f})$$

physical quark pdf hard cross section

scale evolution of α_s and parton densities

simplest example of RGE: running coupling α_s derived from $\frac{d\sigma}{d\ln\mu_r} = 0$

→ recall part II $\frac{da_s}{d\ln\mu^2} = -\beta_0 a_s^2 - \beta_1 a_s^3 - \beta_2 a_s^4 - \beta_3 a_s^5 + \ldots \quad a_s \equiv \frac{\alpha_s}{4\pi}$

---

scale dependence of PDFs: more complicated

simplified example:
F_2 for one quark flavor

$$F_2(x,Q^2) = q(x,\mu_f) \otimes \hat{F}_2(x,\frac{Q}{\mu_f})$$

physical quark pdf hard cross section

versatile tool: Mellin moments

$$\boxed{f(n) \equiv \int_0^1 dx\, x^{n-1} f(x)}$$

turns nasty convolution into ordinary product

scale evolution of α_s and parton densities

simplest example of RGE: running coupling α_s derived from $\frac{d\sigma}{d\ln\mu_r} = 0$

→ recall part II

$$\frac{da_s}{d\ln\mu^2} = -\beta_0 a_s^2 - \beta_1 a_s^3 - \beta_2 a_s^4 - \beta_3 a_s^5 + \ldots \qquad a_s \equiv \frac{\alpha_s}{4\pi}$$

---

scale dependence of PDFs: more complicated

simplified example:
F_2 for one quark flavor

$$F_2(x,Q^2) = q(x,\mu_f) \otimes \hat{F}_2(x,\frac{Q}{\mu_f})$$

physical quark pdf hard cross section

versatile tool: Mellin moments

$$\boxed{f(n) \equiv \int_0^1 dx\, x^{n-1} f(x)}$$

turns nasty convolution into ordinary product

$$\int_0^1 dx x^{n-1}\left[\int_x^1 \frac{dy}{y} f(y) g\left(\frac{x}{y}\right)\right] =$$

$$\int_0^1 dx x^{n-1} \int_0^1 dy \int_0^1 dz\, \delta(x-zy) f(y) g(z) = f(n)\, g(n)$$

simplest example of DGLAP evolution

Dokshitzer; Gribov, Lipatov; Altarelli, Parisi

now we can compute $\frac{dF_2(x,Q^2)}{d\ln\mu_f} = 0$

$$\longleftrightarrow \qquad \frac{dq(n,\mu_f)}{d\ln\mu_f}\hat{F}_2(n,\frac{Q}{\mu_f}) + q(n,\mu_f)\frac{d\hat{F}_2(n,\frac{Q}{\mu_f})}{d\ln\mu_f} = 0$$

simplest example of DGLAP evolution

Dokshitzer; Gribov, Lipatov; Altarelli, Parisi

now we can compute $\dfrac{dF_2(x,Q^2)}{d\ln\mu_f} = 0$

$$\longleftrightarrow \quad \frac{dq(n,\mu_f)}{d\ln\mu_f}\hat{F}_2(n,\frac{Q}{\mu_f}) + q(n,\mu_f)\frac{d\hat{F}_2(n,\frac{Q}{\mu_f})}{d\ln\mu_f} = 0$$

splitting function

$$\longleftrightarrow \quad -\frac{d\ln\hat{F}_2(n,\frac{Q}{\mu_f})}{d\ln\mu_f} = \underline{\frac{d\ln q(n,\mu_f)}{d\ln\mu_f} = \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}P_{qq}(n)}$$

DGLAP evolution equation

simplest example of DGLAP evolution

Dokshitzer; Gribov, Lipatov; Altarelli, Parisi

now we can compute $\frac{dF_2(x,Q^2)}{d\ln\mu_f} = 0$

$$\leftrightarrow \quad \frac{dq(n,\mu_f)}{d\ln\mu_f}\hat{F}_2(n,\frac{Q}{\mu_f}) + q(n,\mu_f)\frac{d\hat{F}_2(n,\frac{Q}{\mu_f})}{d\ln\mu_f} = 0$$

splitting function

$$\leftrightarrow \quad -\frac{d\ln\hat{F}_2(n,\frac{Q}{\mu_f})}{d\ln\mu_f} = \underline{\frac{d\ln q(n,\mu_f)}{d\ln\mu_f} = \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}P_{qq}(n)}$$

DGLAP evolution equation

solve it

$$\boxed{q(n,\mu_f) = q(n,\mu_0)\exp\left[\frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}P_{qq}(n)\ln\left(\frac{\mu_f}{\mu_0}\right)\right]}$$

disclaimer: kept α_s constant for simplicity

simplest example of DGLAP evolution

Dokshitzer; Gribov, Lipatov; Altarelli, Parisi

now we can compute $\frac{dF_2(x,Q^2)}{d\ln\mu_f} = 0$

$$\longleftrightarrow \quad \frac{dq(n,\mu_f)}{d\ln\mu_f}\hat{F}_2(n,\frac{Q}{\mu_f}) + q(n,\mu_f)\frac{d\hat{F}_2(n,\frac{Q}{\mu_f})}{d\ln\mu_f} = 0$$

splitting function

$$\longleftrightarrow \quad -\frac{d\ln\hat{F}_2(n,\frac{Q}{\mu_f})}{d\ln\mu_f} = \underline{\frac{d\ln q(n,\mu_f)}{d\ln\mu_f} = \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}P_{qq}(n)}$$

DGLAP evolution equation

solve it

$$\boxed{q(n,\mu_f) = q(n,\mu_0)\exp\left[\frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}P_{qq}(n)\ln\left(\frac{\mu_f}{\mu_0}\right)\right]}$$

disclaimer: kept α_s constant for simplicity

→ **once we know the PDFs at a scale μ_0 we can predict them at $\mu > \mu_0$**

factorization → evolution → resummation

physical interpretation of the evolution eqs.:

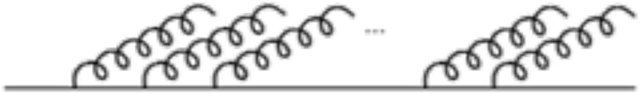
RGE resums collinear emissions to all orders

factorization → evolution → resummation

physical interpretation of the evolution eqs.:

RGE resums collinear emissions to all orders

- to see this expand the solution in α_s:

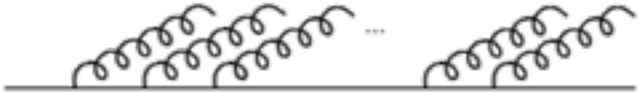


$$\exp[\ldots] = 1 + \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi} P_{qq}(n) \ln \frac{\mu_f}{\mu_0} + \frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi} P_{qq}(n) \ln \frac{\mu_f}{\mu_0}\right]^2 + \ldots$$

factorization $\to$ evolution $\to$ resummation

physical interpretation of the evolution eqs.:

RGE resums collinear emissions to all orders



- to see this expand the solution in α_s:

$$\exp[\ldots] = 1+\frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}P_{qq}(n)\ln\frac{\mu_f}{\mu_0}+\frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}P_{qq}(n)\ln\frac{\mu_f}{\mu_0}\right]^2+\ldots$$

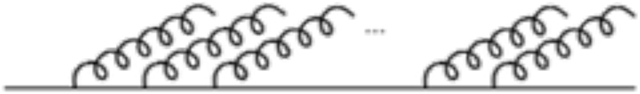
- the **splitting functions** $P_{ij}(n)$ **or** $P_{ij}(x)$ multiplying the log's are universal and calculable in pQCD order by order in α_s

factorization → evolution → resummation

physical interpretation of the evolution eqs.:

RGE resums collinear emissions to all orders

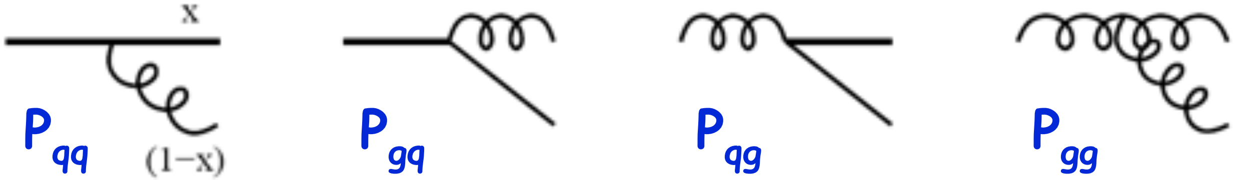
- to see this expand the solution in α_s:



$$\exp[\ldots] = 1 + \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi} P_{qq}(n) \ln\frac{\mu_f}{\mu_0} + \frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi} P_{qq}(n) \ln\frac{\mu_f}{\mu_0}\right]^2 + \ldots$$

- the **splitting functions** $P_{ij}(n)$ **or** $P_{ij}(x)$ multiplying the log's are universal and calculable in pQCD order by order in α_s
- the physical meaning of the splitting functions is easy:

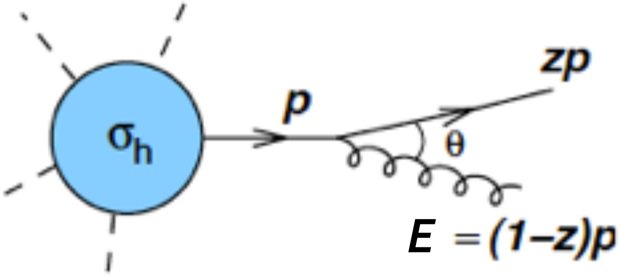
$P_{ij}(x)$: probability that a parton j splits collinearly into a parton i (and something) carrying a momentum fraction x



factorization recap: final-state vs initial-state

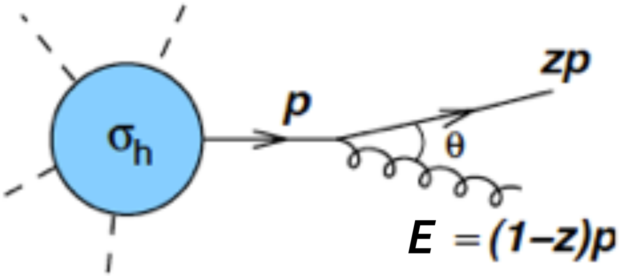
recall what we learned for **final-state radiation**

$$\sigma_{h+g} \simeq \sigma_h \frac{\alpha_s C_F}{\pi} \frac{dE}{E} \frac{d\theta^2}{\theta^2}$$



factorization recap: final-state vs initial-state

recall what we learned for **final-state radiation**



$$\sigma_{h+g} \simeq \sigma_h \frac{\alpha_s C_F}{\pi} \frac{dE}{E} \frac{d\theta^2}{\theta^2}$$

and rewrite in terms of new variable k_T

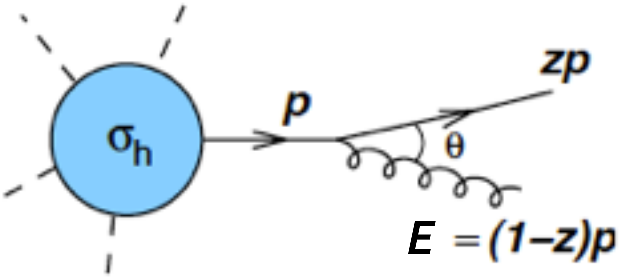
$$\sigma_{h+g} \simeq \sigma_h \frac{\alpha_s C_F}{\pi} \frac{dz}{1-z} \frac{dk_t^2}{k_t^2}$$

where we have used

$$\mathbf{E} = (\mathbf{1} - \mathbf{z})\mathbf{p}$$
$$\mathbf{k_T} = \mathbf{E} \sin\theta \simeq \mathbf{E}\theta$$

factorization recap: final-state vs initial-state

recall what we learned for **final-state radiation**



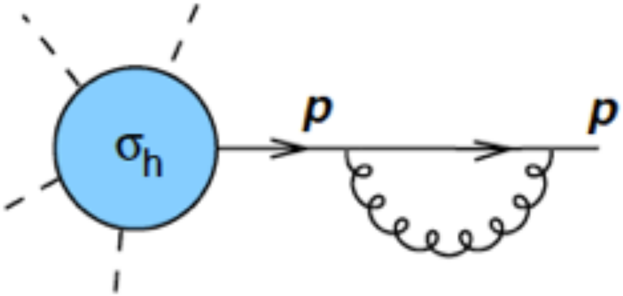
$$\sigma_{h+g} \simeq \sigma_h \frac{\alpha_s C_F}{\pi} \frac{dE}{E} \frac{d\theta^2}{\theta^2}$$

and rewrite in terms of new variable k_T

$$\sigma_{h+g} \simeq \sigma_h \frac{\alpha_s C_F}{\pi} \frac{dz}{1-z} \frac{dk_t^2}{k_t^2}$$

where we have used
$$\mathbf{E} = (\mathbf{1}-\mathbf{z})\mathbf{p}$$
$$\mathbf{k_T} = \mathbf{E}\sin\theta \simeq \mathbf{E}\theta$$

KLN: if we avoid distinguishing quark and collinear quark-gluon final-states (like for **jets**) divergencies cancel against virtual corrections

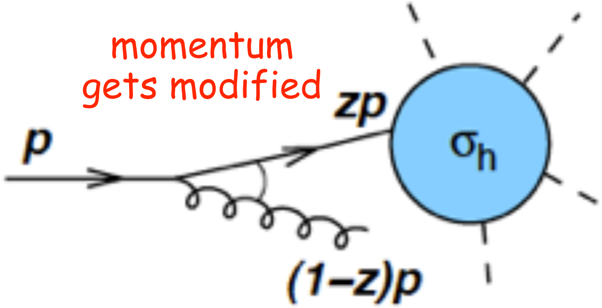


$$\sigma_{h+V} \simeq -\sigma_h \frac{\alpha_s C_F}{\pi} \frac{dz}{1-z} \frac{dk_t^2}{k_t^2}$$

factorization recap: initial-state peculiarities

initial-state radiation: crucial difference – hard scattering happens after splitting

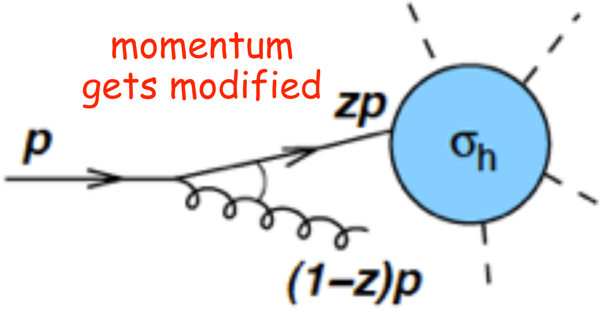
$$\sigma_{g+h}(p) \simeq \sigma_h(zp) \frac{\alpha_s C_F}{\pi} \frac{dz}{1-z} \frac{dk_t^2}{k_t^2}$$


momentum gets modified

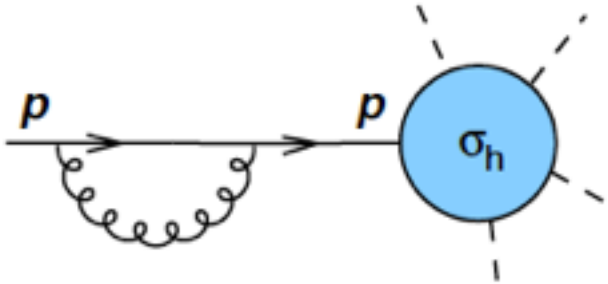
factorization recap: initial-state peculiarities

initial-state radiation: crucial difference – hard scattering happens after splitting

$$\sigma_{g+h}(p) \simeq \sigma_h(zp)\frac{\alpha_s C_F}{\pi}\frac{dz}{1-z}\frac{dk_t^2}{k_t^2}$$


momentum gets modified

but for the virtual piece the momentum is unchanged

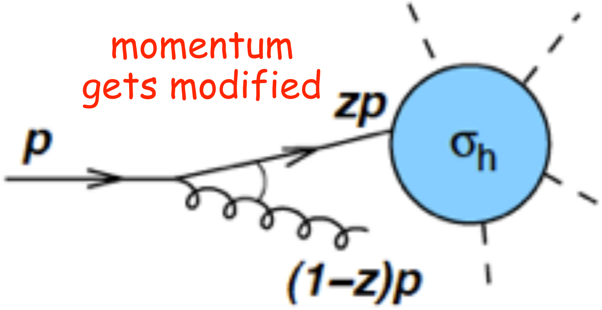


$$\sigma_{V+h}(p) \simeq -\sigma_h(p)\frac{\alpha_s C_F}{\pi}\frac{dz}{1-z}\frac{dk_t^2}{k_t^2}$$

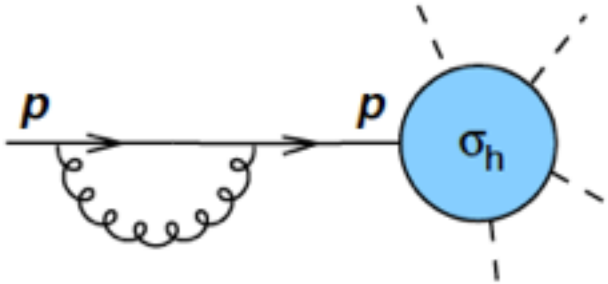
factorization recap: initial-state peculiarities

initial-state radiation: crucial difference – hard scattering happens after splitting

$$\sigma_{g+h}(p) \simeq \sigma_h(zp)\frac{\alpha_s C_F}{\pi}\frac{dz}{1-z}\frac{dk_t^2}{k_t^2}$$



but for the virtual piece the momentum is unchanged



$$\sigma_{V+h}(p) \simeq -\sigma_h(p)\frac{\alpha_s C_F}{\pi}\frac{dz}{1-z}\frac{dk_t^2}{k_t^2}$$

hence, the sum receives two contributions with different momenta

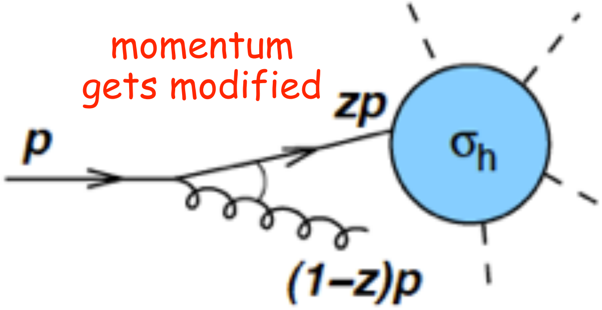
$$\sigma_{g+h} + \sigma_{V+h} \simeq \frac{\alpha_s C_F}{\pi}\int\frac{dk_t^2}{k_t^2}\frac{dz}{1-z}[\sigma_h(zp) - \sigma_h(p)]$$

disclaimer: we assume that $k_T \ll Q$ (large) to ignore other transverse momenta

factorization recap: initial-state peculiarities

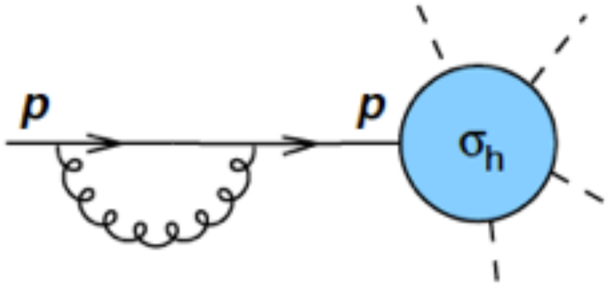
initial-state radiation: crucial difference – hard scattering happens after splitting

$$\sigma_{g+h}(p) \simeq \sigma_h(zp)\frac{\alpha_s C_F}{\pi}\frac{dz}{1-z}\frac{dk_t^2}{k_t^2}$$



momentum gets modified

but for the virtual piece the momentum is unchanged



$$\sigma_{V+h}(p) \simeq -\sigma_h(p)\frac{\alpha_s C_F}{\pi}\frac{dz}{1-z}\frac{dk_t^2}{k_t^2}$$

hence, the sum receives two contributions with different momenta

$$\sigma_{g+h} + \sigma_{V+h} \simeq \frac{\alpha_s C_F}{\pi}\int \frac{dk_t^2}{k_t^2}\frac{dz}{1-z}\left[\sigma_h(zp) - \sigma_h(p)\right]$$

leads to uncanceled collinear singularity

disclaimer: we assume that $k_T \ll Q$ (large) to ignore other transverse momenta

factorization revisited: collinear singularity

$$\sigma_{g+h} + \sigma_{V+h} \simeq \frac{\alpha_s C_F}{\pi} \underbrace{\int_0^{Q^2} \frac{dk_t^2}{k_t^2}}_{\text{infinite}} \underbrace{\int \frac{dz}{1-z} [\sigma_h(zp) - \sigma_h(p)]}_{\text{finite}}$$

- z=1: soft divergence cancels (KLN) as $\sigma_h(zp) - \sigma_h(p) \to 0$
- arbitrary z: $\sigma_h(zp) - \sigma_h(p) \neq 0$ but z integration is finite
- but k_T integration always diverges (at lower limit)

factorization revisited: collinear singularity

$$\sigma_{g+h} + \sigma_{V+h} \simeq \frac{\alpha_s C_F}{\pi} \underbrace{\int_0^{Q^2} \frac{dk_t^2}{k_t^2}}_{\text{infinite}} \underbrace{\int \frac{dz}{1-z}[\sigma_h(zp) - \sigma_h(p)]}_{\text{finite}}$$

- z=1: soft divergence cancels (KLN) as $\sigma_h(zp) - \sigma_h(p) \to 0$
- arbitrary z: $\sigma_h(zp) - \sigma_h(p) \neq 0$ but z integration is finite
- but k_T integration always diverges (at lower limit)

reflects collinear singularity

cross sections with incoming partons not collinear safe

factorization revisited: collinear singularity

$$\sigma_{g+h} + \sigma_{V+h} \simeq \frac{\alpha_s C_F}{\pi} \underbrace{\int_0^{Q^2} \frac{dk_t^2}{k_t^2}}_{\text{infinite}} \underbrace{\int \frac{dz}{1-z} [\sigma_h(zp) - \sigma_h(p)]}_{\text{finite}}$$

- z=1: soft divergence cancels (KLN) as $\sigma_\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{zp}) - \sigma_\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{p}) \to \mathbf{0}$
- arbitrary z: $\sigma_\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{zp}) - \sigma_\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{p}) \neq \mathbf{0}$ but z integration is finite
- but k_T integration always diverges (at lower limit)

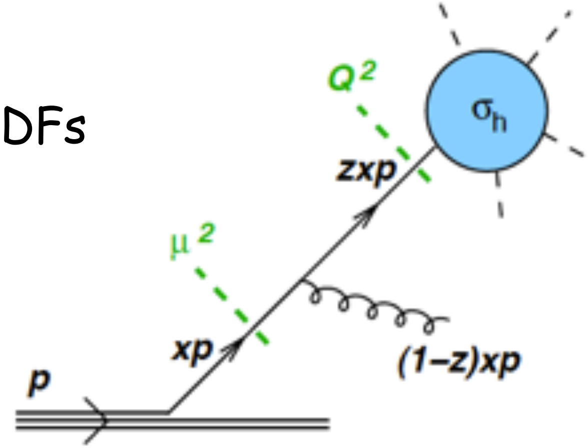
reflects collinear singularity

cross sections with incoming partons not collinear safe

factorization = collinear "cut-off"

- absorb divergent small k_T region in non-perturbative PDFs

$$\sigma_1 \simeq \frac{\alpha_s C_F}{\pi} \underbrace{\int_{\mu^2}^{Q^2} \frac{dk_t^2}{k_t^2}}_{\text{finite (large)}} \underbrace{\int \frac{dx\, dz}{1-z} [\sigma_h(zxp) - \sigma_h(xp)]\, q(x,\mu^2)}_{\text{finite}}$$

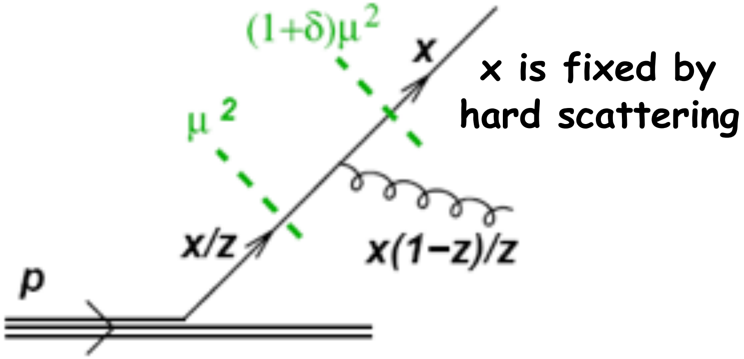


anatomy of splitting functions

splitting functions may receive two kinds of contributions:

anatomy of splitting functions

splitting functions may receive two kinds of contributions:

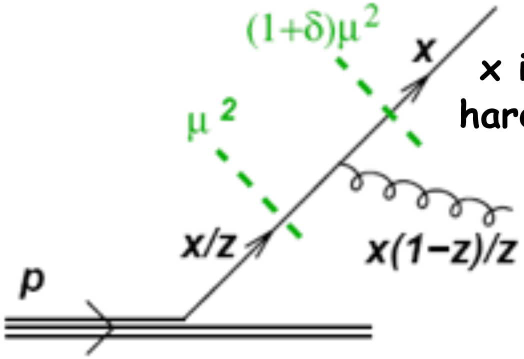


real emission
"something happens"

$$\frac{dq(x,\mu^2)}{d\ln\mu^2} = \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\int_x^1 dz P_{qq}(z)\frac{q(x/z,\mu^2)}{z}$$

anatomy of splitting functions

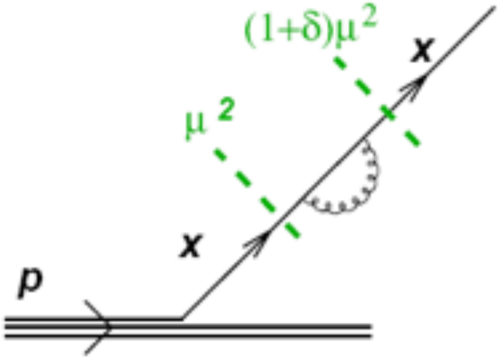
splitting functions may receive two kinds of contributions:



x is fixed by hard scattering

real emission
"something happens"

+

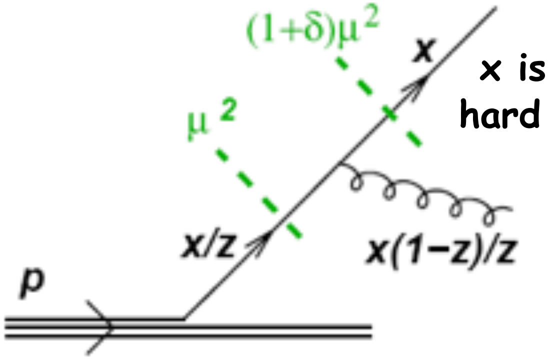


virtual emission
"nothing happens"

$$\frac{dq(x,\mu^2)}{d\ln\mu^2} = \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\int_x^1 dz P_{qq}(z)\frac{q(x/z,\mu^2)}{z} - \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\int_0^1 dz P_{qq}(z) q(x,\mu^2)$$

anatomy of splitting functions

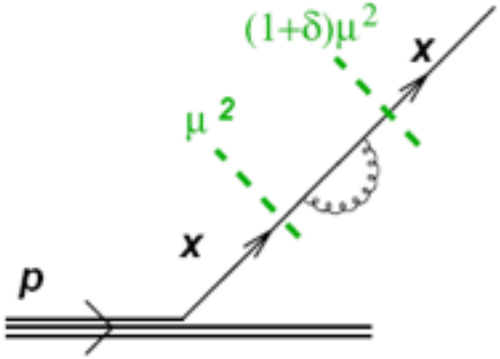
splitting functions may receive two kinds of contributions:



x is fixed by hard scattering

real emission
"something happens"

+



virtual emission
"nothing happens"

$$\frac{dq(x,\mu^2)}{d\ln\mu^2} = \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\int_x^1 dz\, P_{qq}(z)\frac{q(x/z,\mu^2)}{z} - \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\int_0^1 dz\, P_{qq}(z)\, q(x,\mu^2)$$

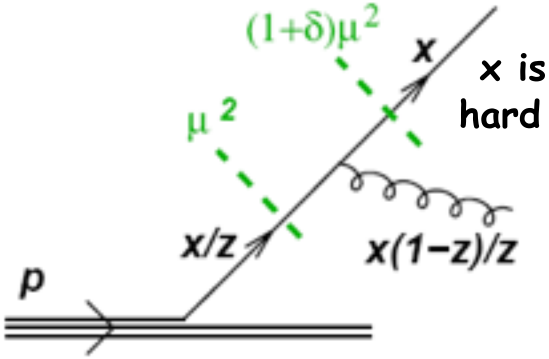
combine !

$$\frac{dq(x,\mu^2)}{d\ln\mu^2} = \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\underbrace{\int_x^1 dz\, P_{qq}(z)\frac{q(x/z,\mu^2)}{z}}_{P_{qq}\otimes q}$$

$$P_{qq}(z) = C_F\left(\frac{1+z^2}{1-z}\right)_+$$

anatomy of splitting functions

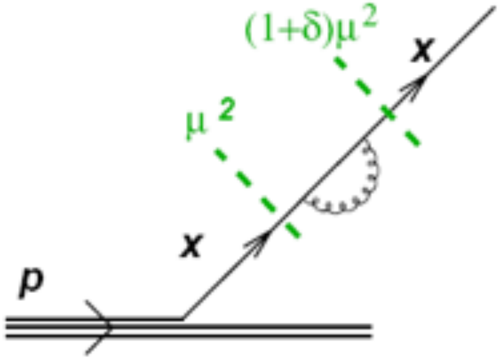
splitting functions may receive two kinds of contributions:



x is fixed by
hard scattering

+

real emission
"something happens"



virtual emission
"nothing happens"

$$\frac{dq(x,\mu^2)}{d\ln\mu^2} = \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\int_x^1 dz P_{qq}(z)\frac{q(x/z,\mu^2)}{z} - \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\int_0^1 dz P_{qq}(z) q(x,\mu^2)$$

combine !

$$\frac{dq(x,\mu^2)}{d\ln\mu^2} = \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\underbrace{\int_x^1 dz P_{qq}(z)\frac{q(x/z,\mu^2)}{z}}_{P_{qq}\otimes q} \qquad P_{qq}(z) = C_F\left(\frac{1+z^2}{1-z}\right)_+$$

involves "**plus distribution**"

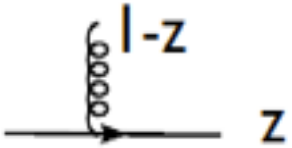
$$\int_0^1 dz\,[g(z)]_+ f(z) \equiv \int_0^1 dz\, g(z)\,[f(z) - f(1)]$$

condition: f(z) sufficiently smooth for z→ 1

properties of LO splitting functions

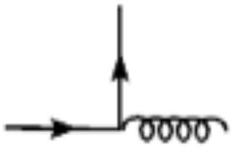
in general, quarks and gluons can split into quarks and gluons -> 4 functions

$$P_{qq}^{(0)} = P_{\bar{q}\bar{q}}^{(0)} = C_F \left[\frac{\mathbf{1+z^2}}{\mathbf{(1-z)}_+} + \frac{3}{2}\delta(1-z) \right]$$

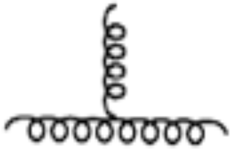


$$P_{qg}^{(0)} = P_{\bar{q}g}^{(0)} = T_R \left(z^2 + (1-z) \right)$$

$$P_{gq}^{(0)} = P_{g\bar{q}}^{(0)} = C_F \frac{1+(1-z)^2}{z}$$



$$P_{gg}^{(0)} = 2C_A \left[z \left(\frac{1}{1-z} \right)_+ + \frac{1-z}{z} + z(1-z) + b_0 \delta(1-z) \right]$$



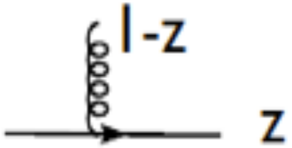
in higher orders more complicated, as $\mathbf{P_{q_i q_j} \neq 0}$ arise

properties of LO splitting functions

in general, quarks and gluons can split into quarks and gluons -> 4 functions

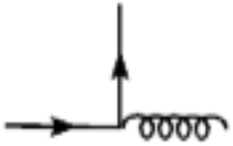
soft gluon divergence (z=1)
regulated by plus distribution

$$P^{(0)}_{qq} = P^{(0)}_{\bar{q}\bar{q}} = C_F\left[\frac{\mathbf{1+z^2}}{\mathbf{(1-z)}_+} + \frac{3}{2}\delta(1-z)\right]$$

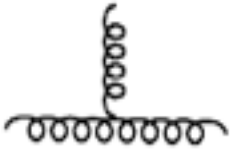


$$P^{(0)}_{qg} = P^{(0)}_{\bar{q}g} = T_R\left(z^2 + (1-z)\right)$$

$$P^{(0)}_{gq} = P^{(0)}_{g\bar{q}} = C_F\frac{1+(1-z)^2}{z}$$



$$P^{(0)}_{gg} = 2C_A\left[z\left(\frac{1}{1-z}\right)_+ + \frac{1-z}{z} + z(1-z) + b_0\delta(1-z)\right]$$



soft gluon divergence (z=1)
regulated by plus distribution

in higher orders more complicated, as $\mathbf{P_{q_iq_j}} \neq \mathbf{0}$ arise

properties of LO splitting functions

in general, quarks and gluons can split into quarks and gluons -> 4 functions

soft gluon divergence (z=1)
regulated by plus distribution

$$P_{qq}^{(0)} = P_{\bar{q}\bar{q}}^{(0)} = C_F \left[\frac{\mathbf{1+z^2}}{\mathbf{(1-z)}_+} + \frac{3}{2}\delta(1-z) \right]$$

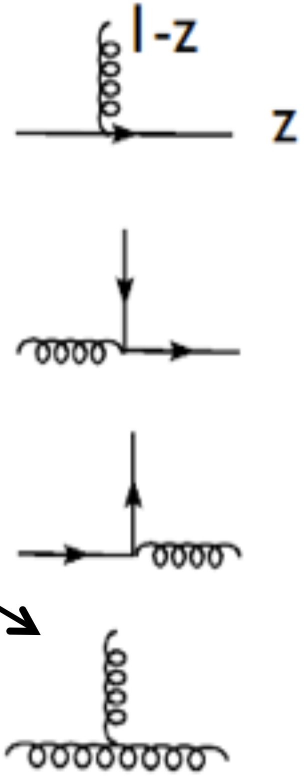
$$P_{qg}^{(0)} = P_{\bar{q}g}^{(0)} = T_R \left(z^2 + (1-z) \right)$$

$$P_{gq}^{(0)} = P_{g\bar{q}}^{(0)} = C_F \frac{1+(1-z)^2}{z}$$

$$P_{gg}^{(0)} = 2C_A \left[z\left(\frac{1}{1-z}\right)_+ + \frac{1-z}{z} + z(1-z) + b_0\delta(1-z) \right]$$

soft gluon divergence (z=1)
regulated by plus distribution

symmetric under
z -> (1-z)
except virtuals



in higher orders more complicated, as $\mathbf{P_{q_iq_j} \neq 0}$ arise

reaching for precision

$$\begin{aligned}
P^{(0)}_{\mathrm{ns}}(x) &= C_F\left(2p_{\mathrm{qq}}(x)+3\delta(1-x)\right) \\
P^{(0)}_{\mathrm{ps}}(x) &= 0 \\
P^{(0)}_{\mathrm{qg}}(x) &= 2n_f\, p_{\mathrm{qg}}(x) \\
P^{(0)}_{\mathrm{gq}}(x) &= 2C_F\, p_{\mathrm{gq}}(x) \\
P^{(0)}_{\mathrm{gg}}(x) &= C_A\left(4p_{\mathrm{gg}}(x)+\frac{11}{3}\delta(1-x)\right)-\frac{2}{3}n_f\,\delta(1-x)
\end{aligned}$$

LO: 1973

reaching for precision

$$
\begin{aligned}
P^{(0)}_{\mathrm{ns}}(x) &= C_F\left(2p_{\mathrm{qq}}(x)+3\delta(1-x)\right)\\
P^{(0)}_{\mathrm{ps}}(x) &= 0\\
P^{(0)}_{\mathrm{qg}}(x) &= 2n_f\,p_{\mathrm{qg}}(x)\\
P^{(0)}_{\mathrm{gq}}(x) &= 2C_F\,p_{\mathrm{gq}}(x)\\
P^{(0)}_{\mathrm{gg}}(x) &= C_A\left(4p_{\mathrm{gg}}(x)+\frac{11}{3}\delta(1-x)\right)-\frac{2}{3}n_f\,\delta(1-x)
\end{aligned}
$$

LO: 1973

$$
\begin{aligned}
P^{(1)+}_{\mathrm{ns}}(x) &= 4C_AC_F\Big(p_{\mathrm{qq}}(x)\Big[\frac{67}{18}-\zeta_2+\frac{11}{6}\mathrm{H}_0+\mathrm{H}_{0,0}\Big]+p_{\mathrm{qq}}(-x)\Big[\zeta_2+2\mathrm{H}_{-1,0}-\mathrm{H}_{0,0}\Big]\\
&\quad+\frac{14}{3}(1-x)+\delta(1-x)\Big[\frac{17}{24}+\frac{11}{3}\zeta_2-3\zeta_3\Big]\Big)-4C_Fn_f\Big(p_{\mathrm{qq}}(x)\Big[\frac{5}{9}+\frac{1}{3}\mathrm{H}_0\Big]+\frac{2}{3}(1-x)\\
&\quad+\delta(1-x)\Big[\frac{1}{12}+\frac{2}{3}\zeta_2\Big]\Big)+4C_F{}^2\Big(2p_{\mathrm{qq}}(x)\Big[\mathrm{H}_{1,0}-\frac{3}{4}\mathrm{H}_0+\mathrm{H}_2\Big]-2p_{\mathrm{qq}}(-x)\Big[\zeta_2+2\mathrm{H}_{-1,0}\\
&\quad-\mathrm{H}_{0,0}\Big]-(1-x)\Big[1-\frac{3}{2}\mathrm{H}_0\Big]-\mathrm{H}_0-(1+x)\mathrm{H}_{0,0}+\delta(1-x)\Big[\frac{3}{8}-3\zeta_2+6\zeta_3\Big]\Big)\\
P^{(1)-}_{\mathrm{ns}}(x) &= P^{(1)+}_{\mathrm{ns}}(x)+16C_F\Big(C_F-\frac{C_A}{2}\Big)\Big(p_{\mathrm{qq}}(-x)\Big[\zeta_2+2\mathrm{H}_{-1,0}-\mathrm{H}_{0,0}\Big]-2(1-x)\\
&\quad-(1+x)\mathrm{H}_0\Big)
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
P^{(1)}_{\mathrm{ps}}(x) = 4C_Fn_f\Big(\frac{20}{9}\frac{1}{x}-2+6x-4\mathrm{H}_0+x^2\Big[\frac{8}{3}\mathrm{H}_0-\frac{56}{9}\Big]+(1+x)\Big[5\mathrm{H}_0-2\mathrm{H}_{0,0}\Big]\Big)
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
P^{(1)}_{\mathrm{qg}}(x) &= 4C_An_f\Big(\frac{20}{9}\frac{1}{x}-2+25x-2p_{\mathrm{qg}}(-x)\mathrm{H}_{-1,0}-2p_{\mathrm{qg}}(x)\mathrm{H}_{1,1}+x^2\Big[\frac{44}{3}\mathrm{H}_0-\frac{218}{9}\Big]\\
&\quad+4(1-x)\Big[\mathrm{H}_{0,0}-2\mathrm{H}_0+x\mathrm{H}_1\Big]-4\zeta_2x-6\mathrm{H}_{0,0}+9\mathrm{H}_0\Big)+4C_Fn_f\Big(2p_{\mathrm{qg}}(x)\Big[\mathrm{H}_{1,0}+\mathrm{H}_{1,1}+\mathrm{H}_2\\
&\quad-\zeta_2\Big]+4x^2\Big[\mathrm{H}_0+\mathrm{H}_{0,0}+\frac{5}{2}\Big]+2(1-x)\Big[\mathrm{H}_0+\mathrm{H}_{0,0}-2x\mathrm{H}_1+\frac{29}{4}\Big]-\frac{15}{2}-\mathrm{H}_{0,0}-\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{H}_0\Big)
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
P^{(1)}_{\mathrm{gq}}(x) &= 4C_AC_F\Big(\frac{1}{x}+2p_{\mathrm{gq}}(x)\Big[\mathrm{H}_{1,0}+\mathrm{H}_{1,1}+\mathrm{H}_2-\frac{11}{6}\mathrm{H}_1\Big]-x^2\Big[\frac{8}{3}\mathrm{H}_0-\frac{44}{9}\Big]+4\zeta_2-2\\
&\quad-7\mathrm{H}_0+2\mathrm{H}_{0,0}-2\mathrm{H}_1x+(1+x)\Big[2\mathrm{H}_{0,0}-5\mathrm{H}_0+\frac{37}{9}\Big]-2p_{\mathrm{gq}}(-x)\mathrm{H}_{-1,0}\Big)-4C_Fn_f\Big(\frac{2}{3}x\\
&\quad-p_{\mathrm{gq}}(x)\Big[\frac{2}{3}\mathrm{H}_1-\frac{10}{9}\Big]\Big)+4C_F{}^2\Big(p_{\mathrm{gq}}(x)\Big[3\mathrm{H}_1-2\mathrm{H}_{1,1}\Big]+(1+x)\Big[\mathrm{H}_{0,0}-\frac{7}{2}+\frac{7}{2}\mathrm{H}_0\Big]-3\mathrm{H}_{0,0}\\
&\quad+1-\frac{3}{2}\mathrm{H}_0+2\mathrm{H}_1x\Big)
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
P^{(1)}_{\mathrm{gg}}(x) &= 4C_An_f\Big(1-x-\frac{10}{9}p_{\mathrm{gg}}(x)-\frac{13}{9}\Big(\frac{1}{x}-x^2\Big)-\frac{2}{3}(1+x)\mathrm{H}_0-\frac{2}{3}\delta(1-x)\Big)+4C_A{}^2\Big(27\\
&\quad+(1+x)\Big[\frac{11}{3}\mathrm{H}_0+8\mathrm{H}_{0,0}-\frac{27}{2}\Big]+2p_{\mathrm{gg}}(-x)\Big[\mathrm{H}_{0,0}-2\mathrm{H}_{-1,0}-\zeta_2\Big]-\frac{67}{9}\Big(\frac{1}{x}-x^2\Big)-12\mathrm{H}_0\\
&\quad-\frac{44}{3}x^2\mathrm{H}_0+2p_{\mathrm{gg}}(x)\Big[\frac{67}{18}-\zeta_2+\mathrm{H}_{0,0}+2\mathrm{H}_{1,0}+2\mathrm{H}_2\Big]+\delta(1-x)\Big[\frac{8}{3}+3\zeta_3\Big]\Big)+4C_Fn_f\Big(2\mathrm{H}_0\\
&\quad+\frac{2}{3}\frac{1}{x}+\frac{10}{3}x^2-12+(1+x)\Big[4-5\mathrm{H}_0-2\mathrm{H}_{0,0}\Big]-\frac{1}{2}\delta(1-
\end{aligned}
$$

Curci, Furmanski, Petronzio;
Floratos et al., …

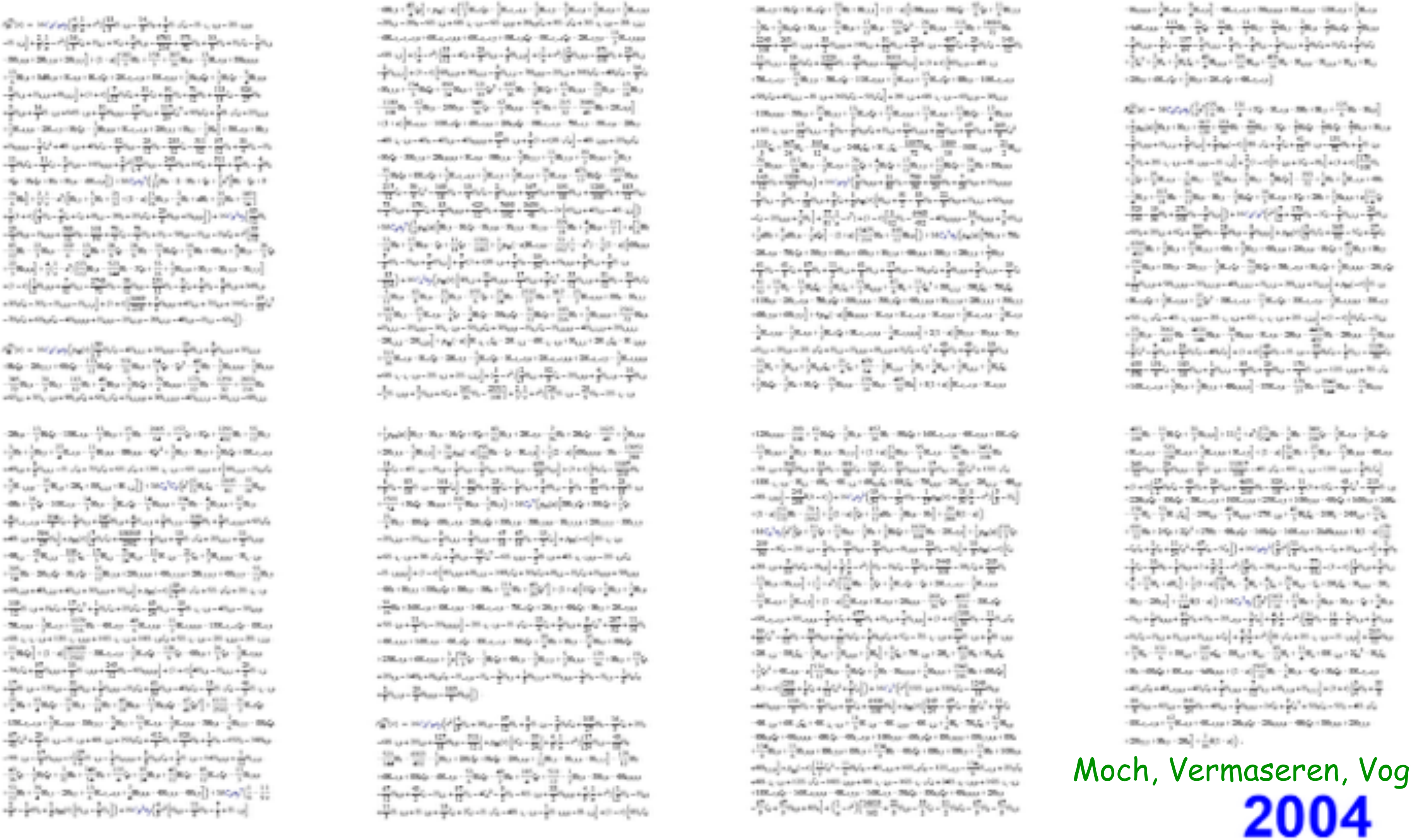
NLO: 1980

P_{ij} @ NNLO: a landmark calculation

10000 diagrams, 10^5 integrals, 10 man years, and several CPU years later:

P_{ij} @ NNLO: a landmark calculation

10000 diagrams, 10^5 integrals, 10 man years, and several CPU years later:

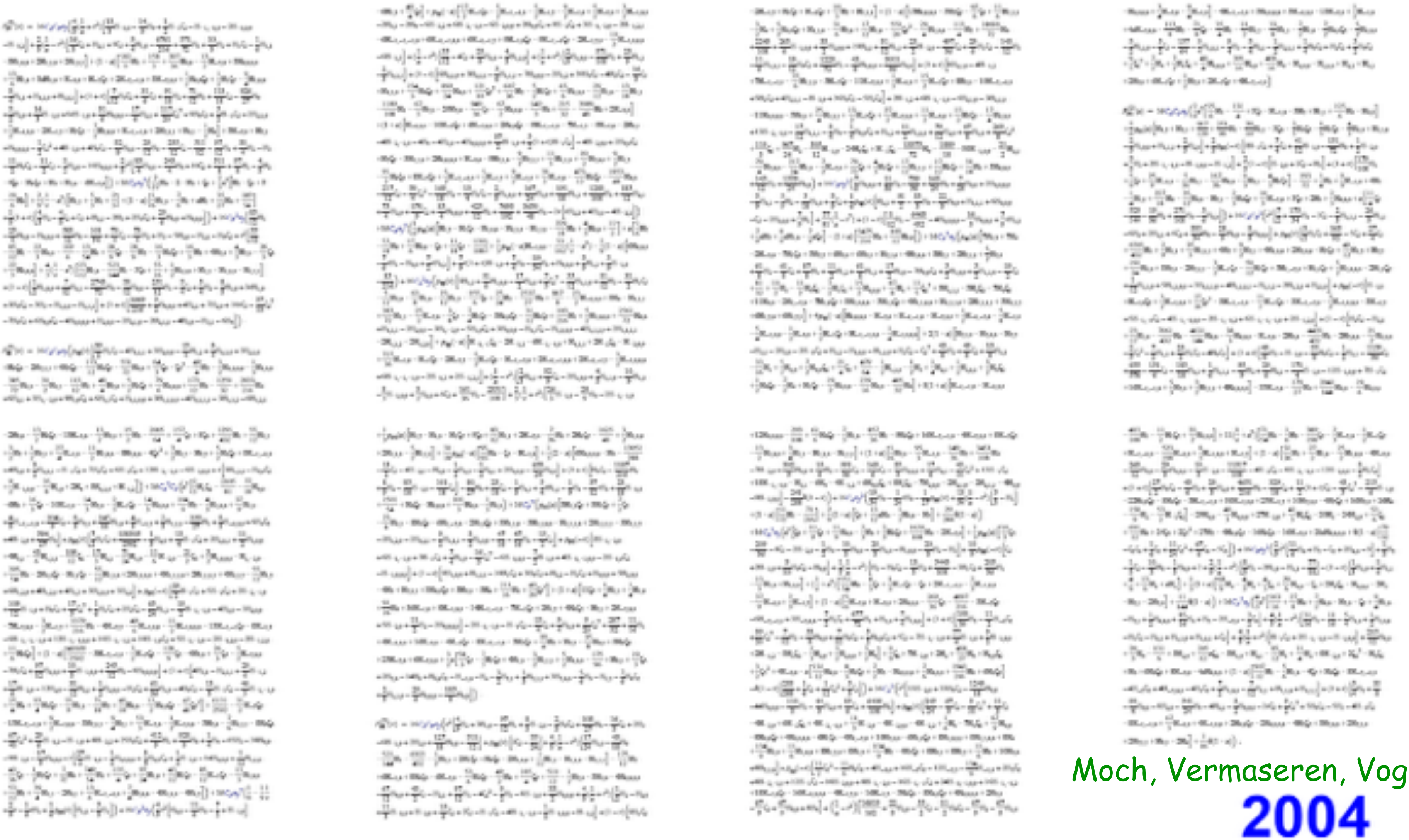


Moch, Vermaseren, Vogt

2004

P_{ij} @ NNLO: a landmark calculation

10000 diagrams, 10^5 integrals, 10 man years, and several CPU years later:



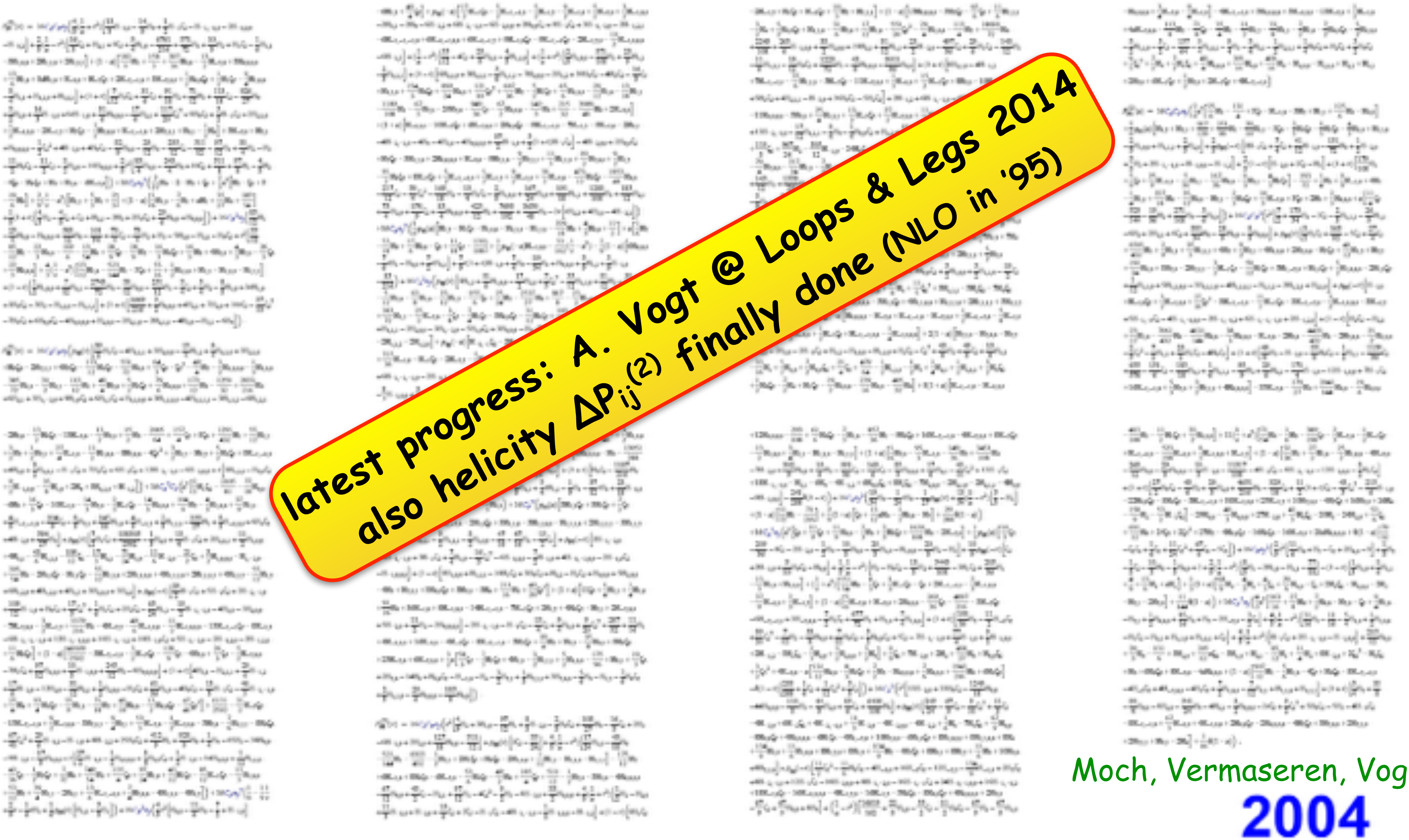
Moch, Vermaseren, Vogt

2004

NNLO the new emerging standard in QCD – essential for precision physics

P_{ij} @ NNLO: a landmark calculation

10000 diagrams, 10^5 integrals, 10 man years, and several CPU years later:



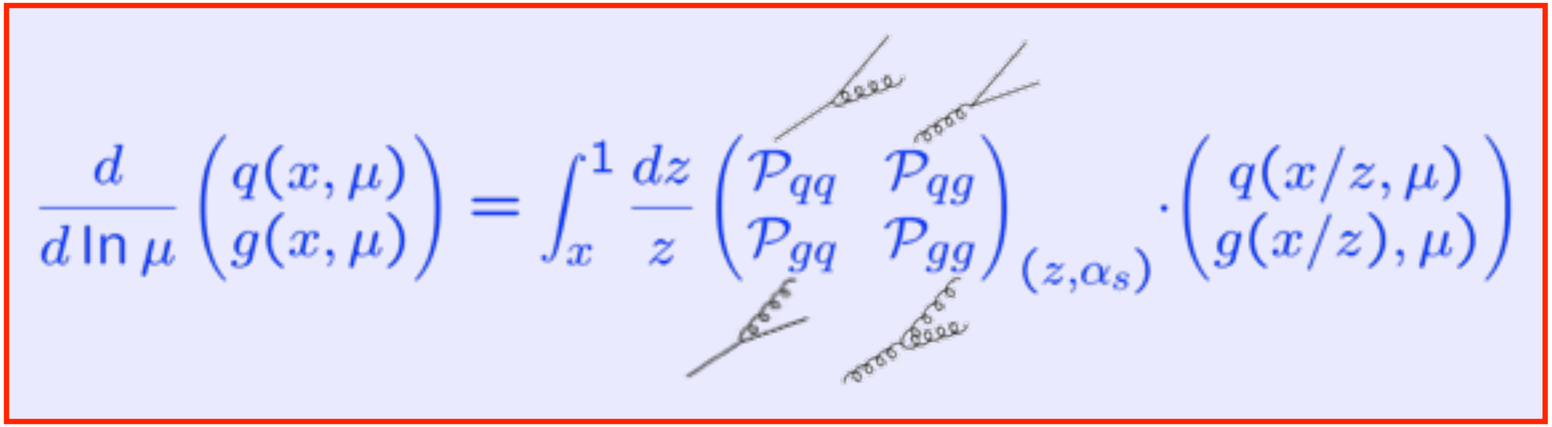
latest progress: A. Vogt @ Loops & Legs 2014
also helicity $\Delta P_{ij}^{(2)}$ finally done (NLO in '95)

Moch, Vermaseren, Vogt
2004

NNLO the new emerging standard in QCD – essential for precision physics

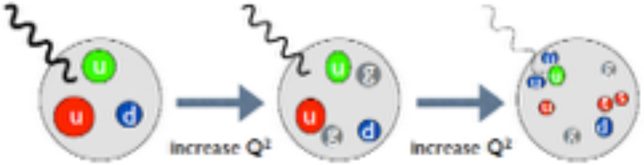
DGLAP evolution in full glory

taking quarks and gluons together: coupled integro-differential equations



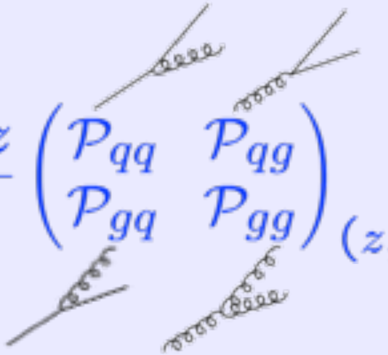
$$\frac{d}{d\ln\mu}\begin{pmatrix} q(x,\mu)\\ g(x,\mu)\end{pmatrix} = \int_x^1 \frac{dz}{z}\begin{pmatrix}\mathcal{P}_{qq} & \mathcal{P}_{qg}\\ \mathcal{P}_{gq} & \mathcal{P}_{gg}\end{pmatrix}_{(z,\alpha_s)} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} q(x/z,\mu)\\ g(x/z),\mu)\end{pmatrix}$$

best solved in Mellin moment space: set of ordinary differential eqs.;
no closed solution in exp. form beyond LO (commutators of P matrices!)



DGLAP evolution in full glory

taking quarks and gluons together: coupled integro-differential equations



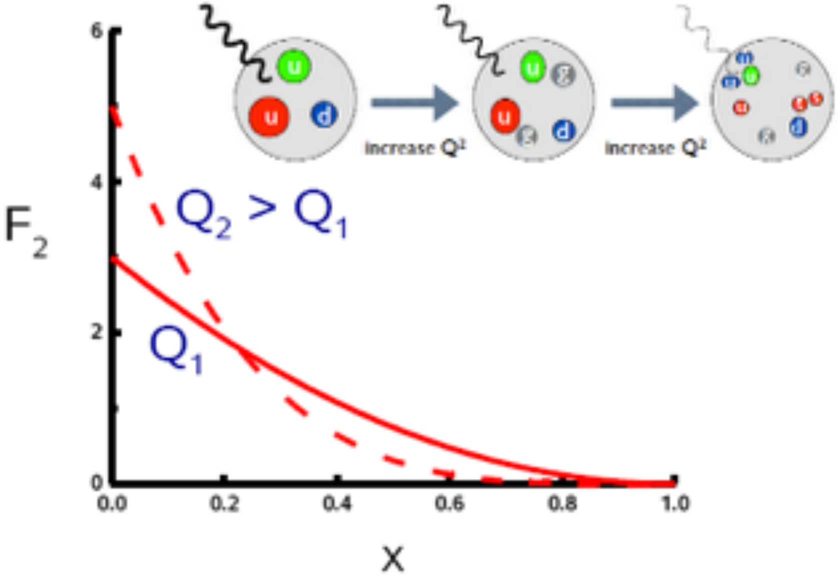
$$\frac{d}{d\ln\mu}\begin{pmatrix} q(x,\mu) \\ g(x,\mu) \end{pmatrix} = \int_x^1 \frac{dz}{z} \begin{pmatrix} \mathcal{P}_{qq} & \mathcal{P}_{qg} \\ \mathcal{P}_{gq} & \mathcal{P}_{gg} \end{pmatrix}_{(z,\alpha_s)} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} q(x/z,\mu) \\ g(x/z),\mu) \end{pmatrix}$$

best solved in Mellin moment space: set of ordinary differential eqs.;
no closed solution in exp. form beyond LO (commutators of P matrices!)

main effect/prediction of evolution:

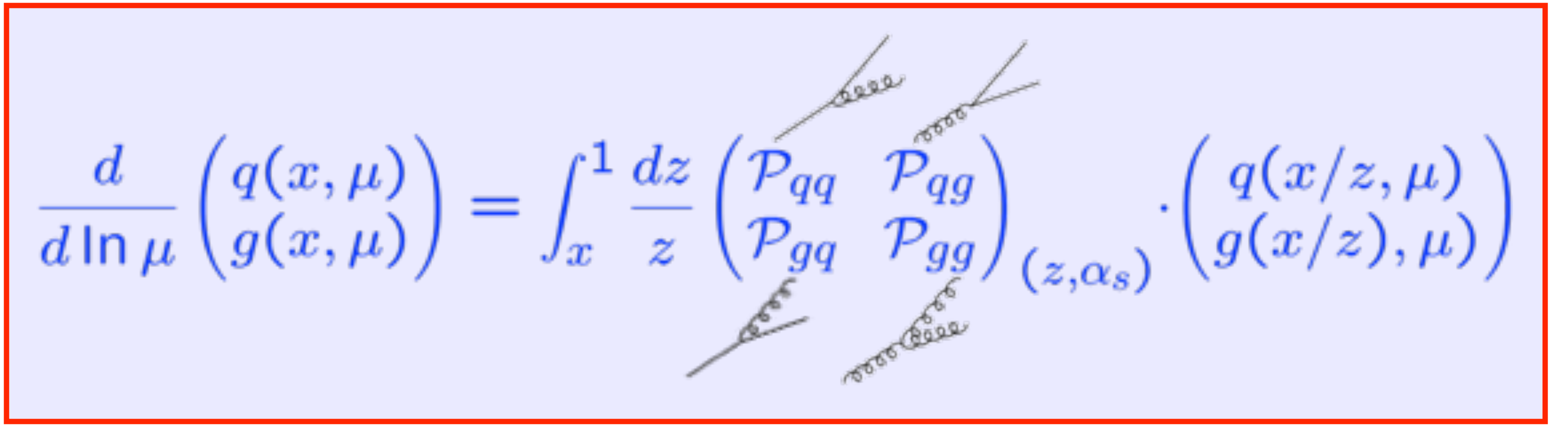
partons loose energy by evolution!

- large x depletion
- small x increase



DGLAP evolution in full glory

taking quarks and gluons together: coupled integro-differential equations



$$\frac{d}{d\ln\mu}\begin{pmatrix} q(x,\mu) \\ g(x,\mu) \end{pmatrix} = \int_x^1 \frac{dz}{z} \begin{pmatrix} \mathcal{P}_{qq} & \mathcal{P}_{qg} \\ \mathcal{P}_{gq} & \mathcal{P}_{gg} \end{pmatrix}_{(z,\alpha_s)} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} q(x/z,\mu) \\ g(x/z),\mu) \end{pmatrix}$$

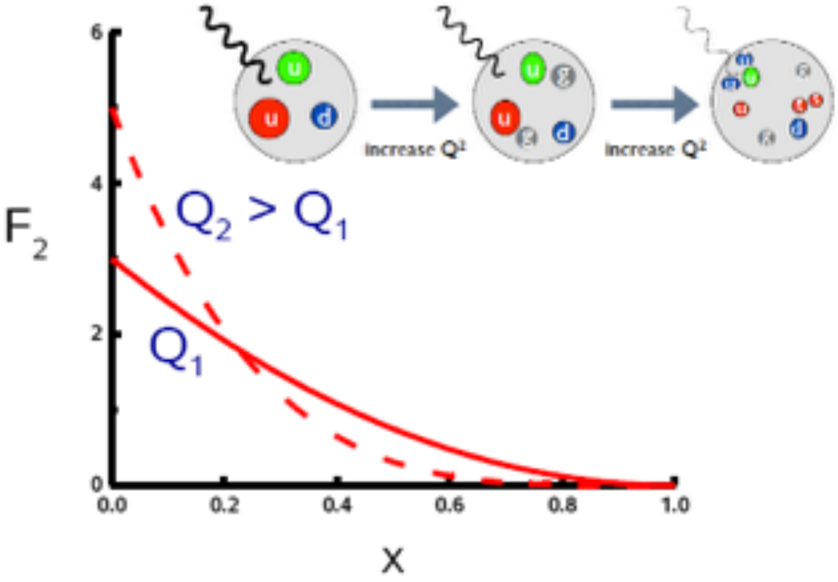
best solved in Mellin moment space: set of ordinary differential eqs.; no closed solution in exp. form beyond LO (commutators of P matrices!)

main effect/prediction of evolution:

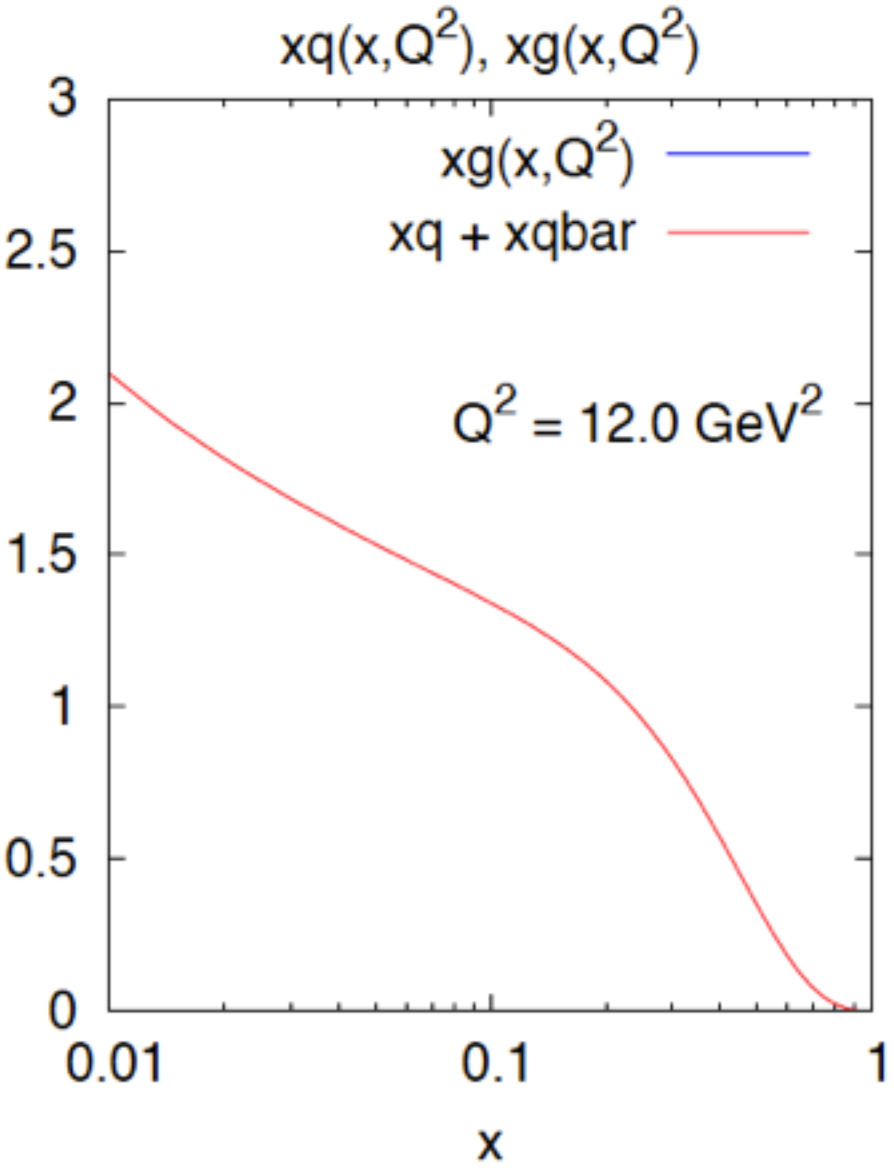
partons loose energy by evolution!

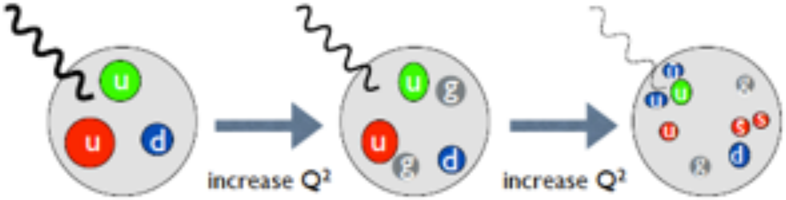
- large x depletion
- small x increase

exactly as observed in experiment
huge success of pQCD



DGLAP evolution at work: toy example



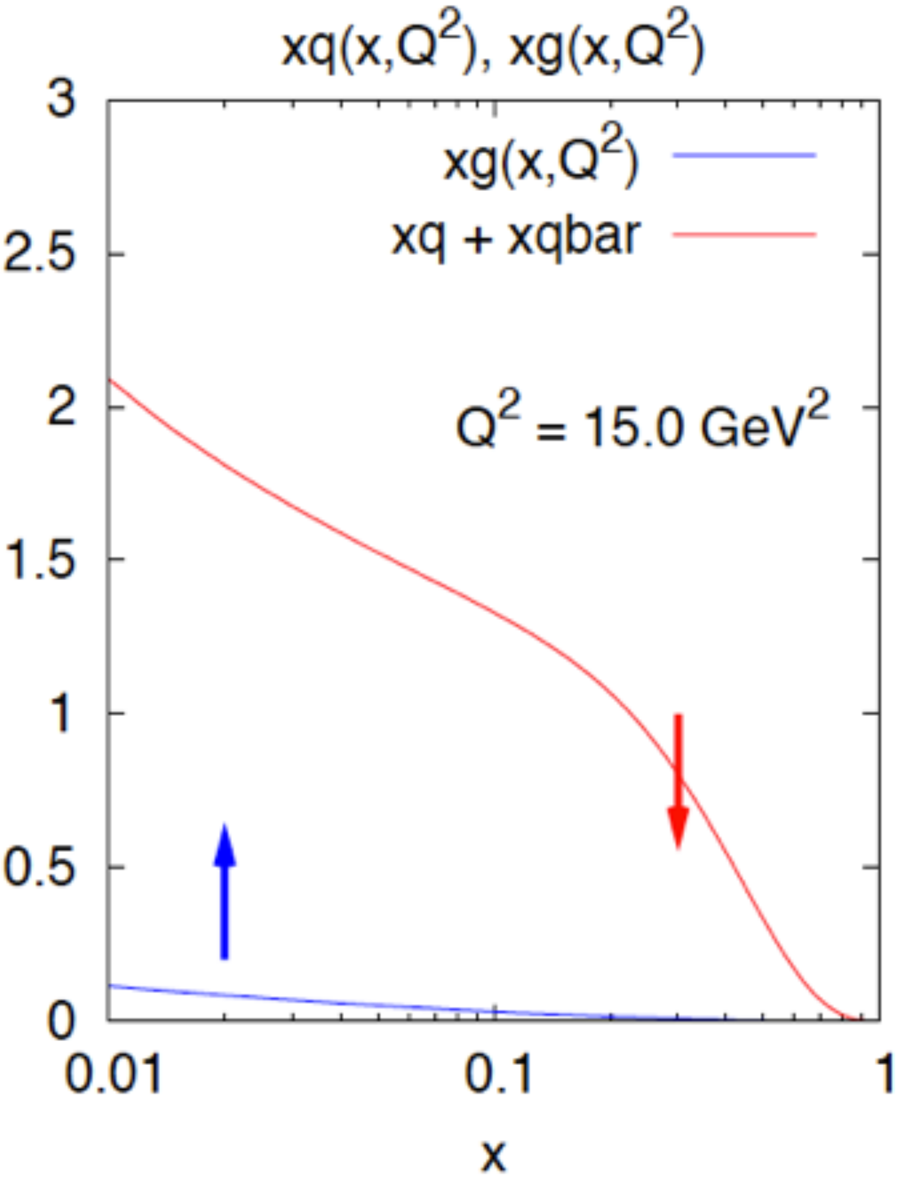


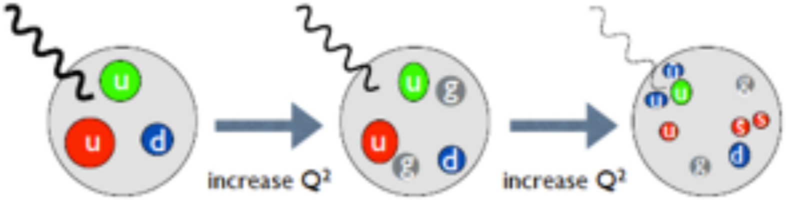
start off from just quarks, no gluons

- quarks reduced at large x
- gluons rise quickly at small x
  (which, btw, also generates sea quarks)

taken from G. Salam

DGLAP evolution at work: toy example



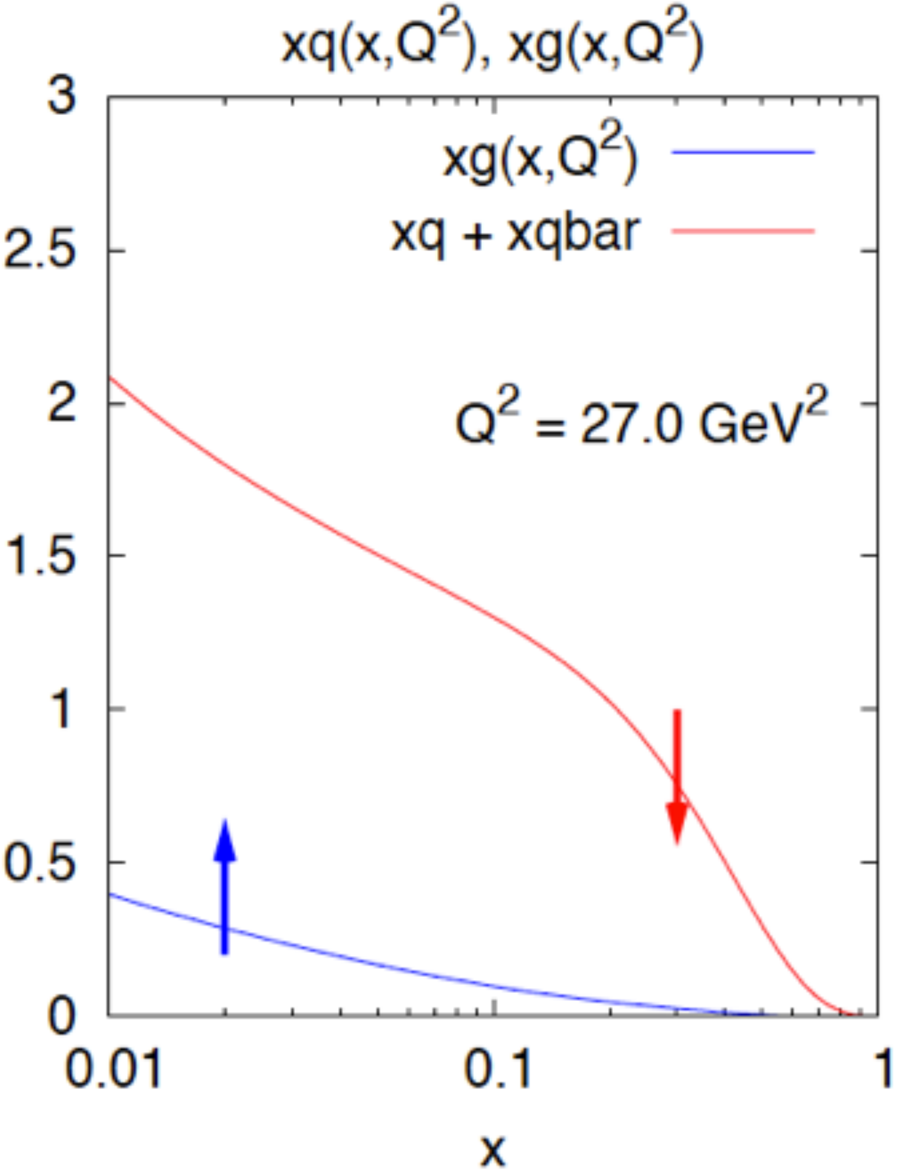


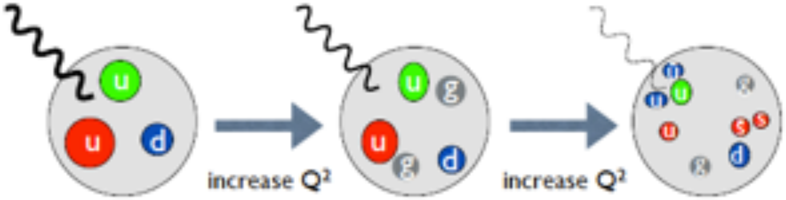
start off from just quarks, no gluons

- quarks reduced at large x
- gluons rise quickly at small x
  (which, btw, also generates sea quarks)

taken from G. Salam

DGLAP evolution at work: toy example



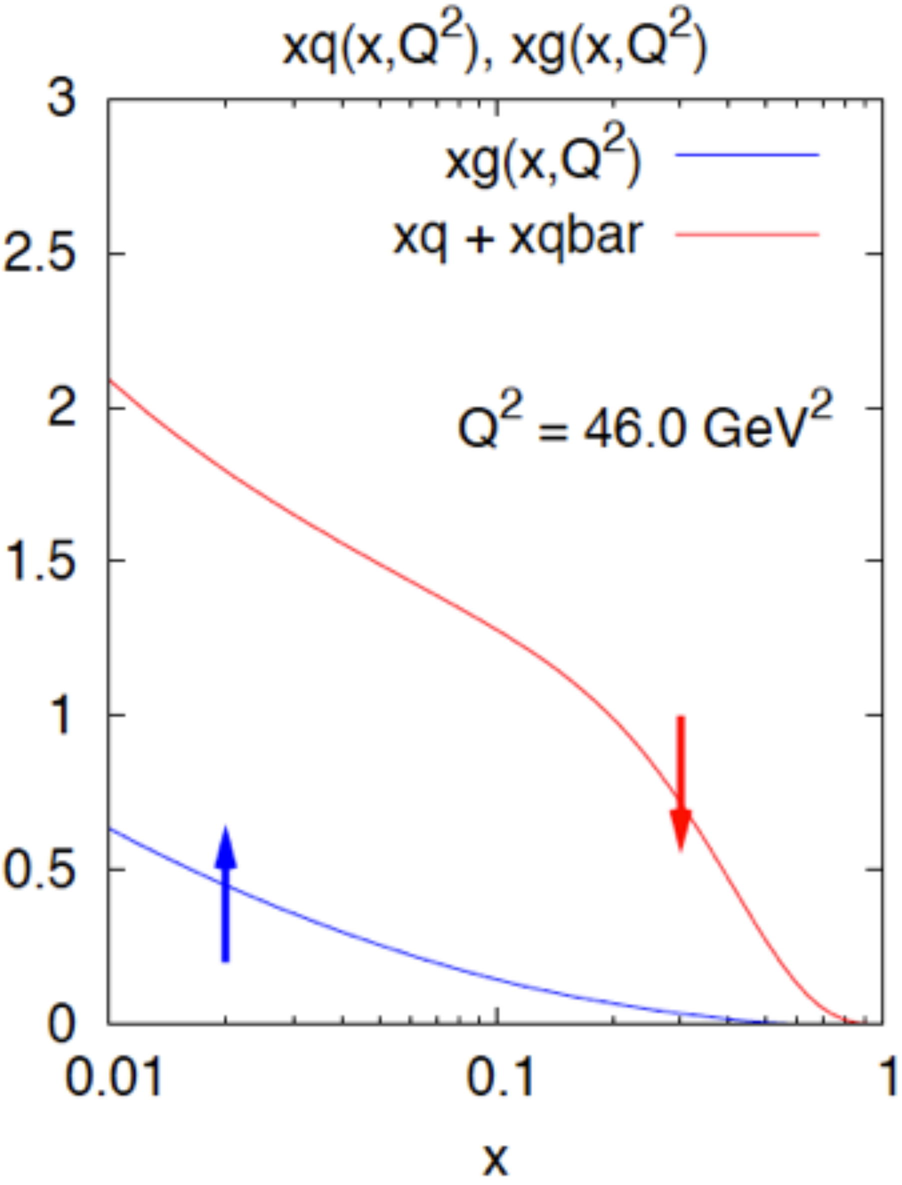


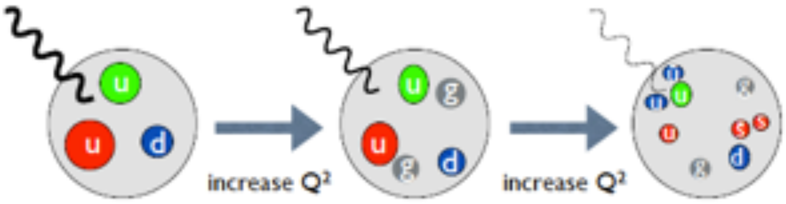
start off from just quarks, no gluons

- quarks reduced at large x
- gluons rise quickly at small x
  (which, btw, also generates sea quarks)

taken from G. Salam

DGLAP evolution at work: toy example



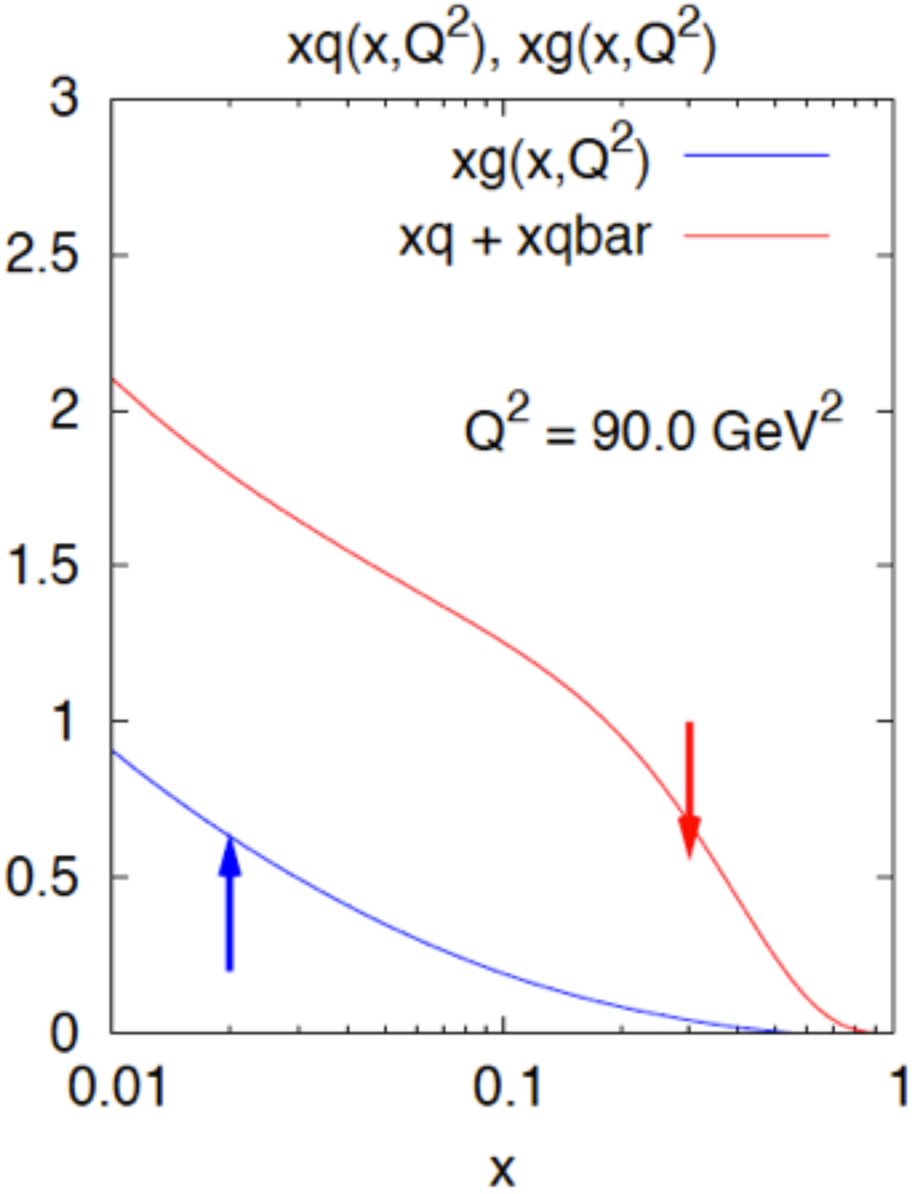


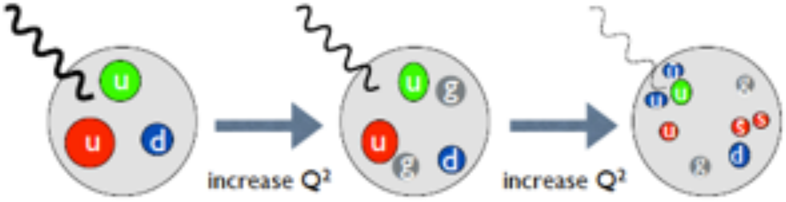
start off from just quarks, no gluons

- quarks reduced at large x
- gluons rise quickly at small x
  (which, btw, also generates sea quarks)

taken from G. Salam

DGLAP evolution at work: toy example



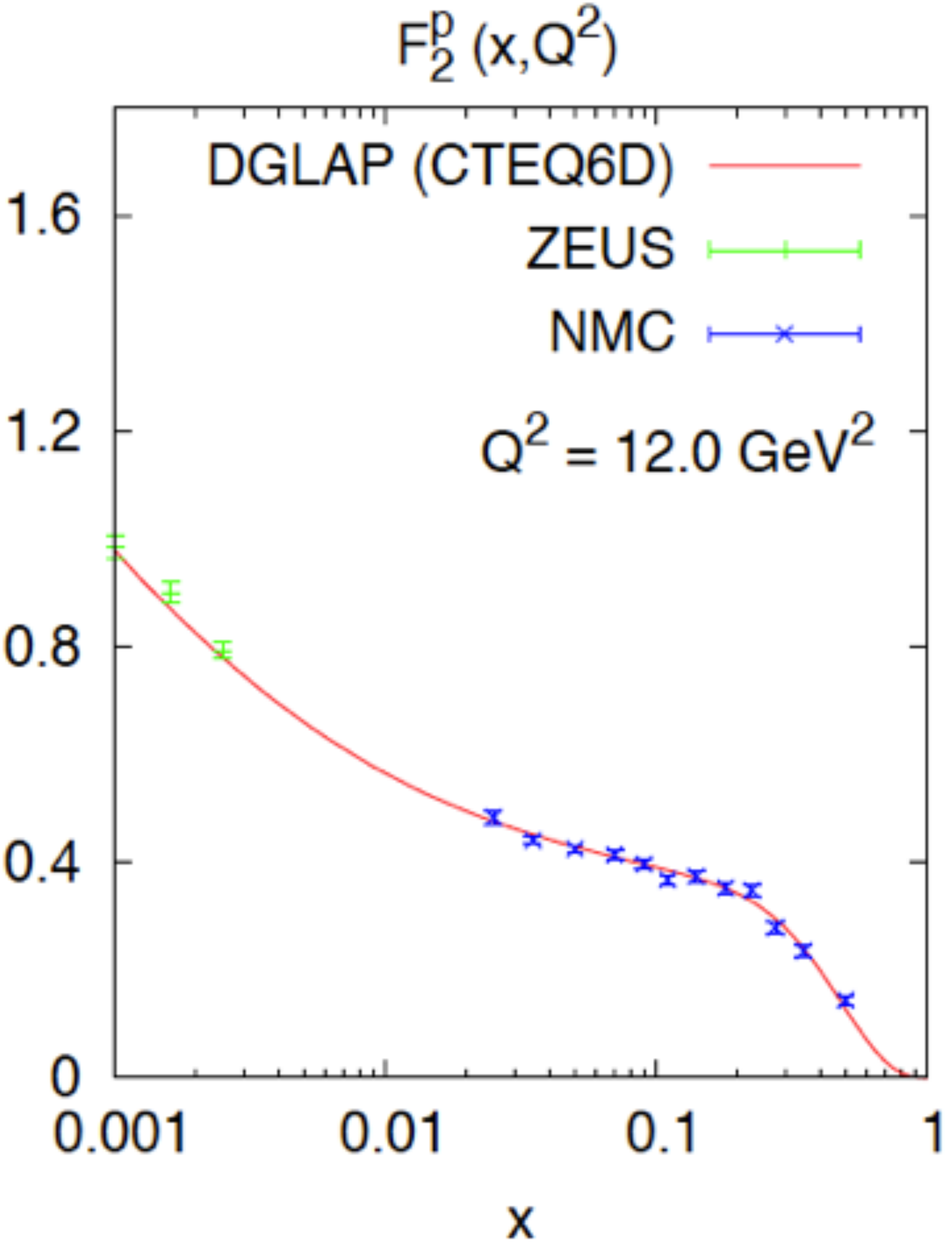


start off from just quarks, no gluons

- quarks reduced at large x
- gluons rise quickly at small x
  (which, btw, also generates sea quarks)

taken from G. Salam

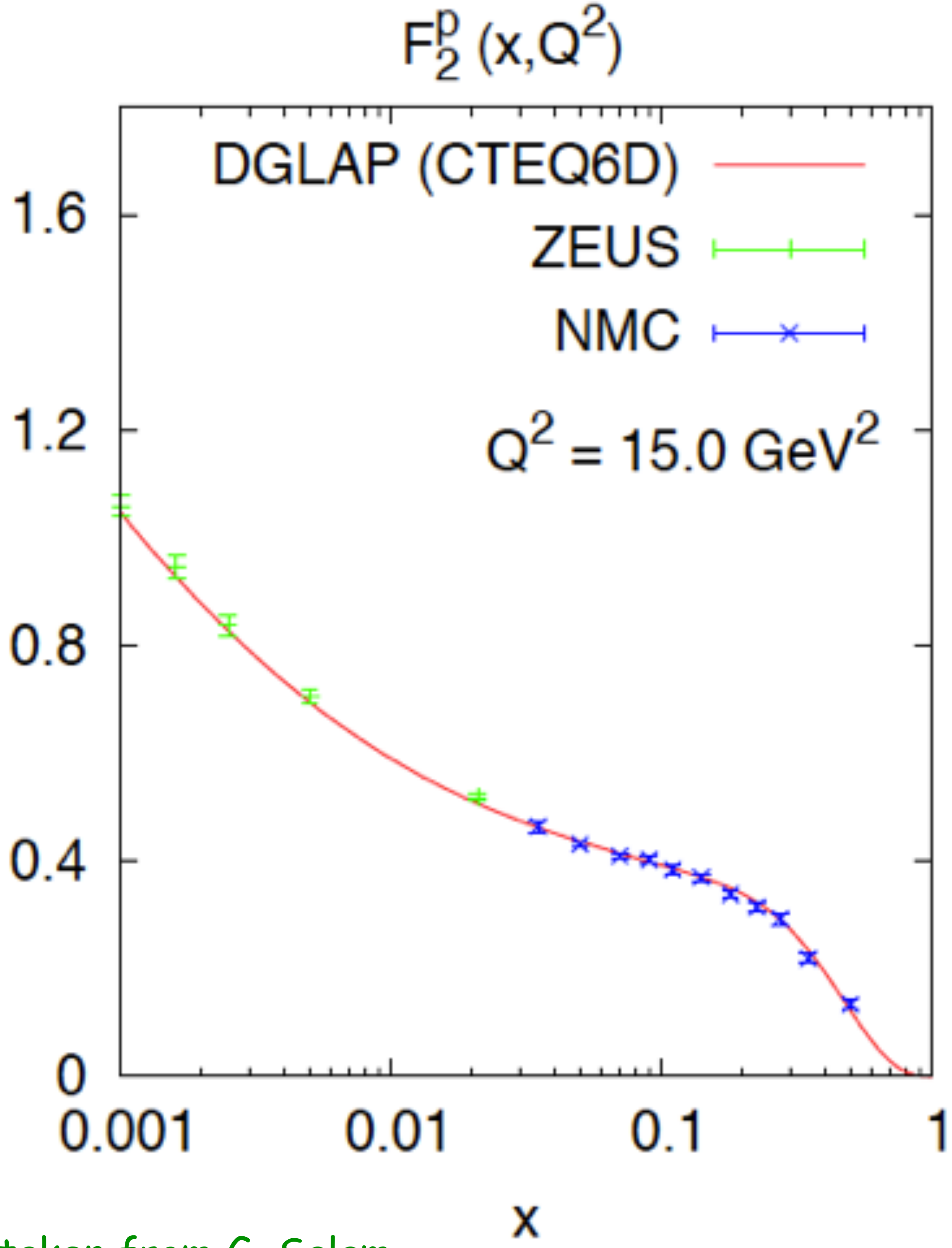
DGLAP evolution seen in DIS data



- use one of the global fits of PDFs to data by CTEQ
- steep rise of F_2 at small x (due to gluon evolution)

taken from G. Salam

DGLAP evolution seen in DIS data

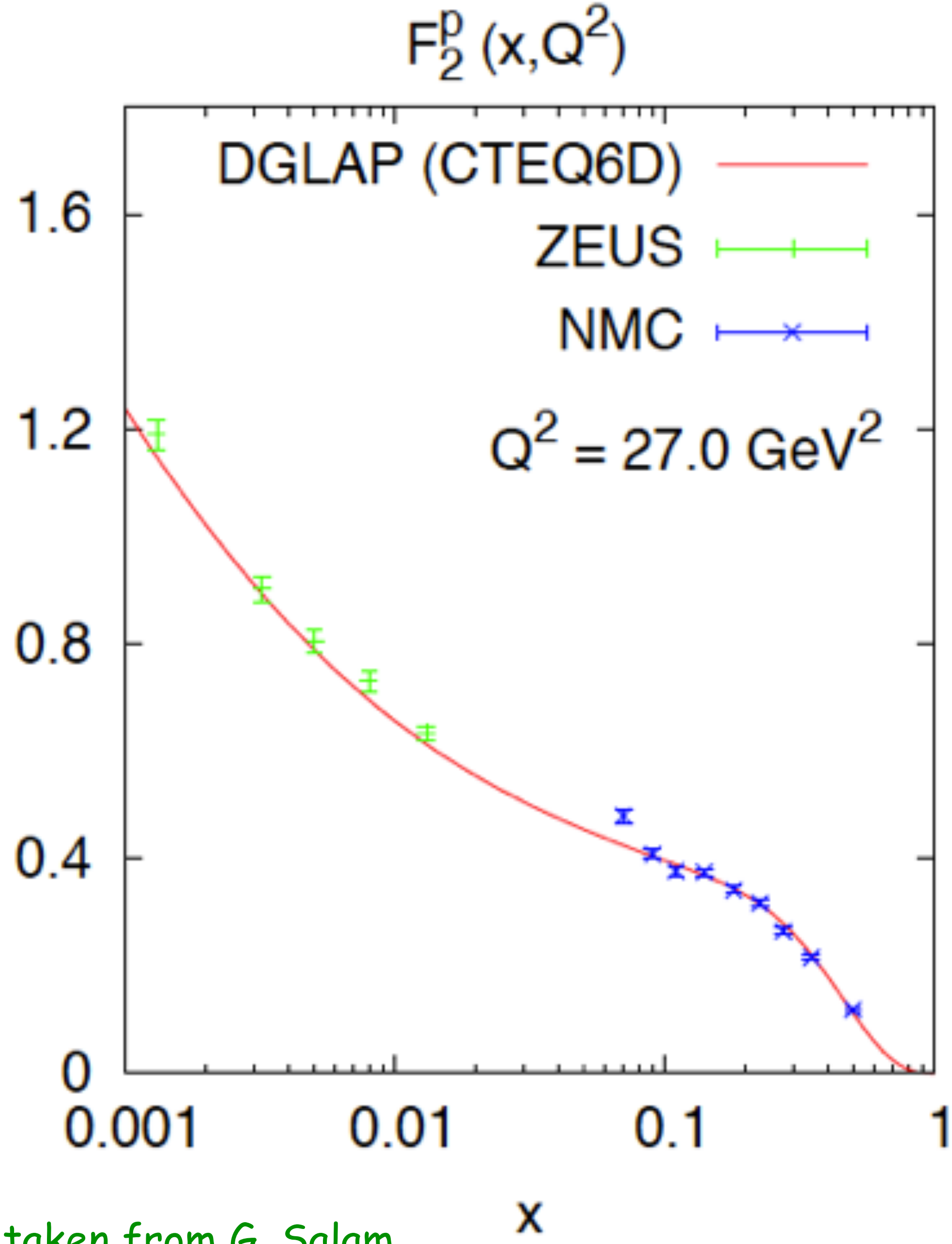


- use one of the global fits of PDFs to data by CTEQ

- steep rise of F_2 at small x (due to gluon evolution)

taken from G. Salam

DGLAP evolution seen in DIS data

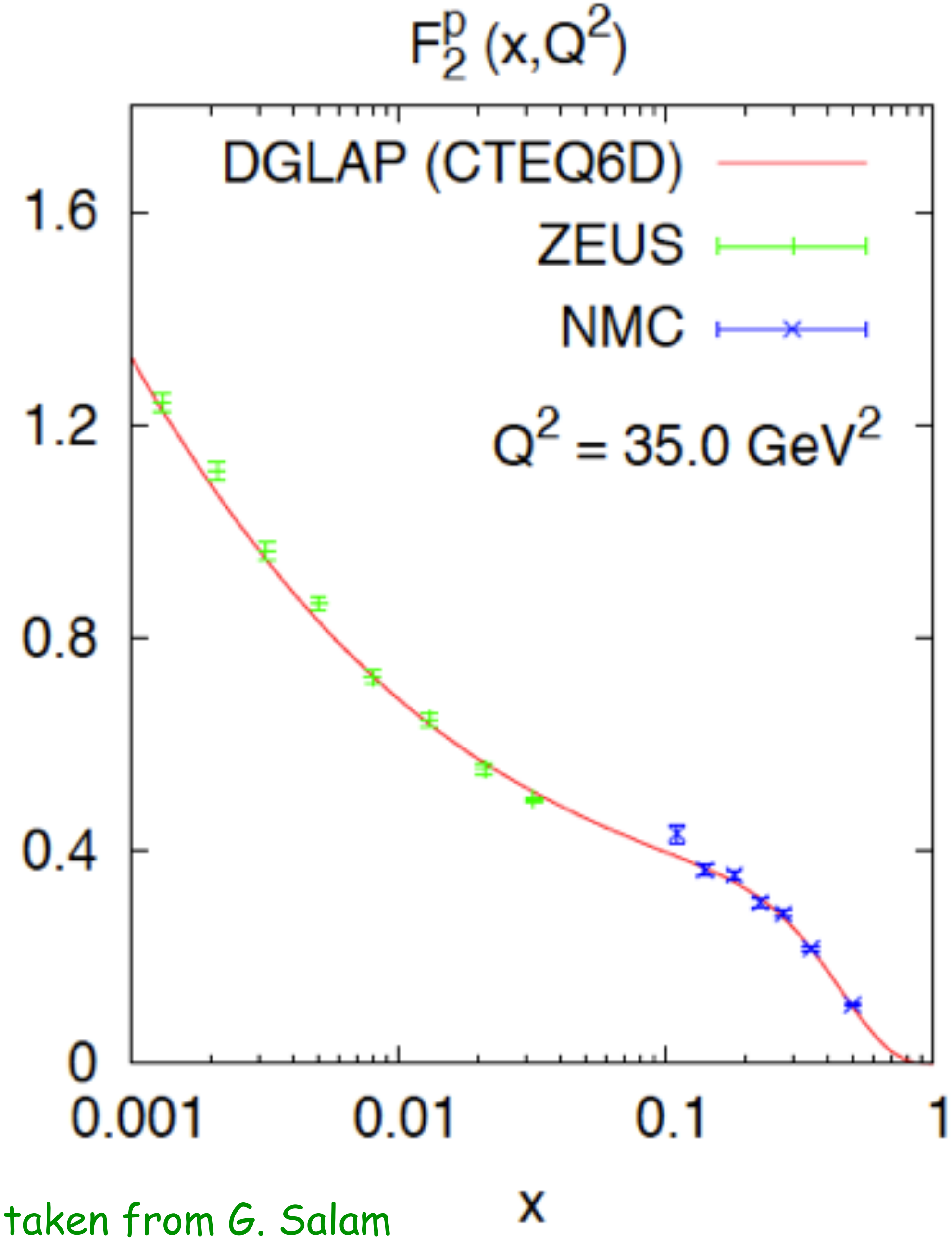


taken from G. Salam

- use one of the global fits of PDFs to data by CTEQ

- steep rise of F_2 at small x (due to gluon evolution)

DGLAP evolution seen in DIS data

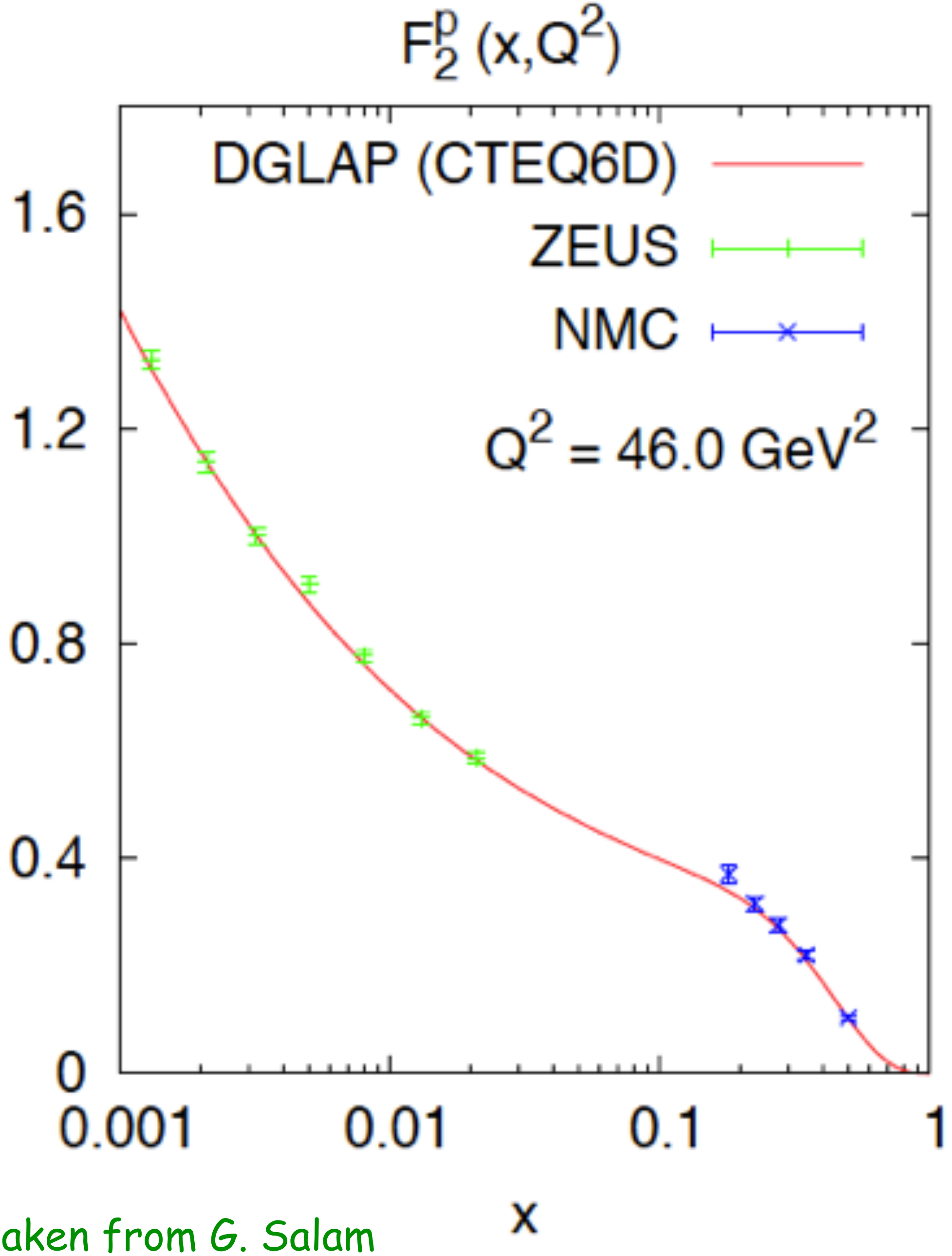


- use one of the global fits of PDFs to data by CTEQ

- steep rise of F_2 at small x (due to gluon evolution)

taken from G. Salam

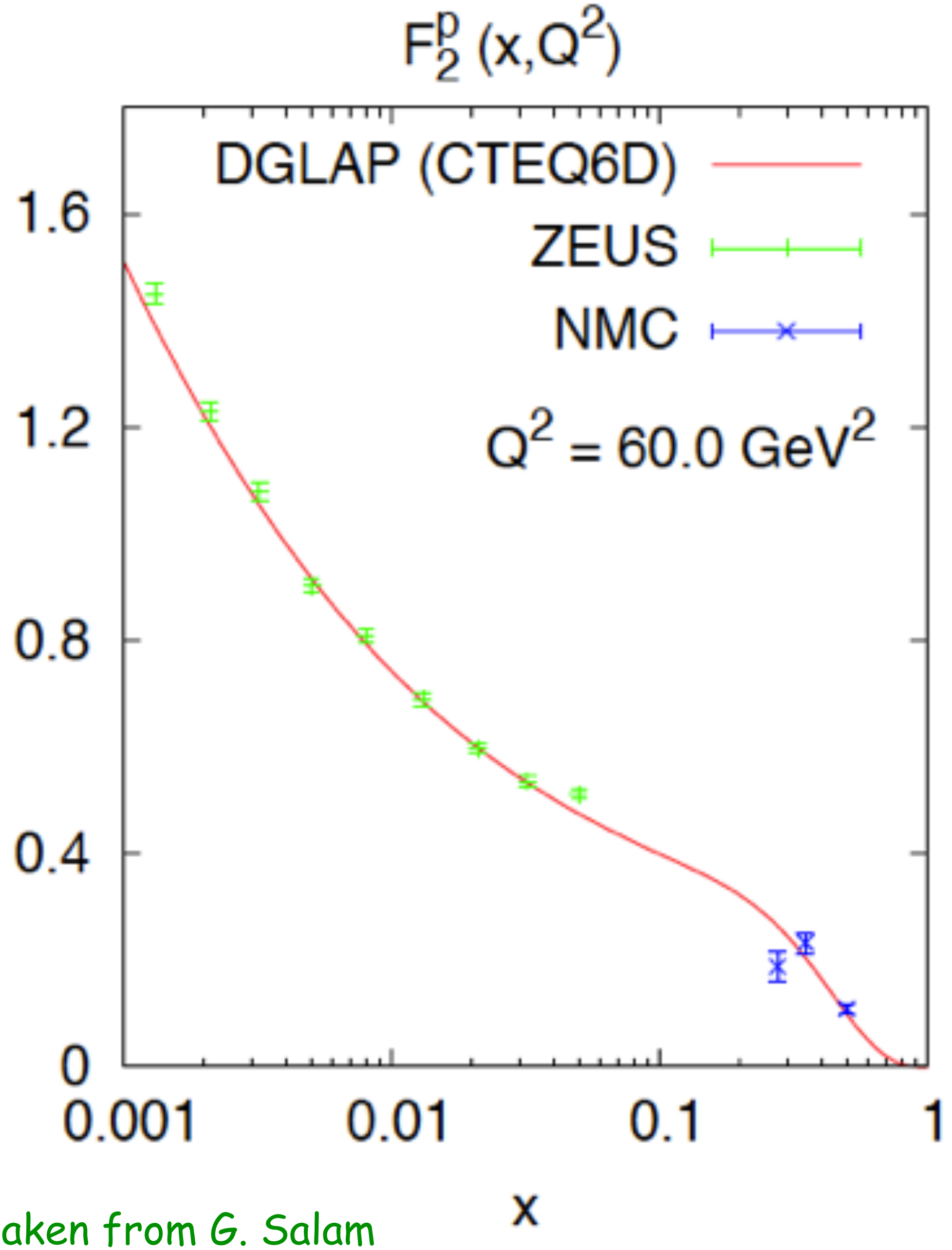
DGLAP evolution seen in DIS data



- use one of the global fits of PDFs to data by CTEQ
- steep rise of F_2 at small x (due to gluon evolution)

taken from G. Salam

DGLAP evolution seen in DIS data

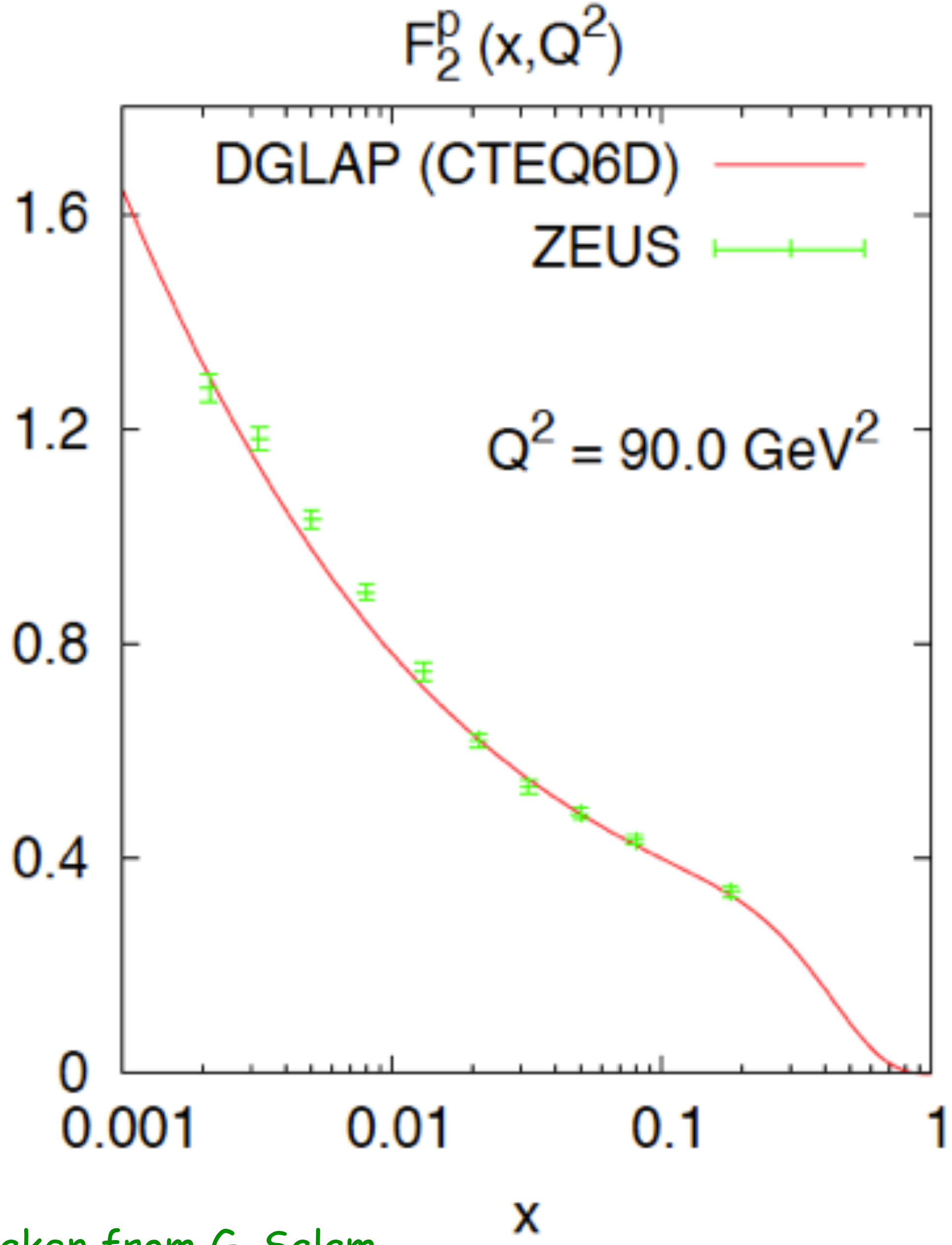


- use one of the global fits of PDFs to data by CTEQ

- steep rise of F_2 at small x (due to gluon evolution)

taken from G. Salam

DGLAP evolution seen in DIS data

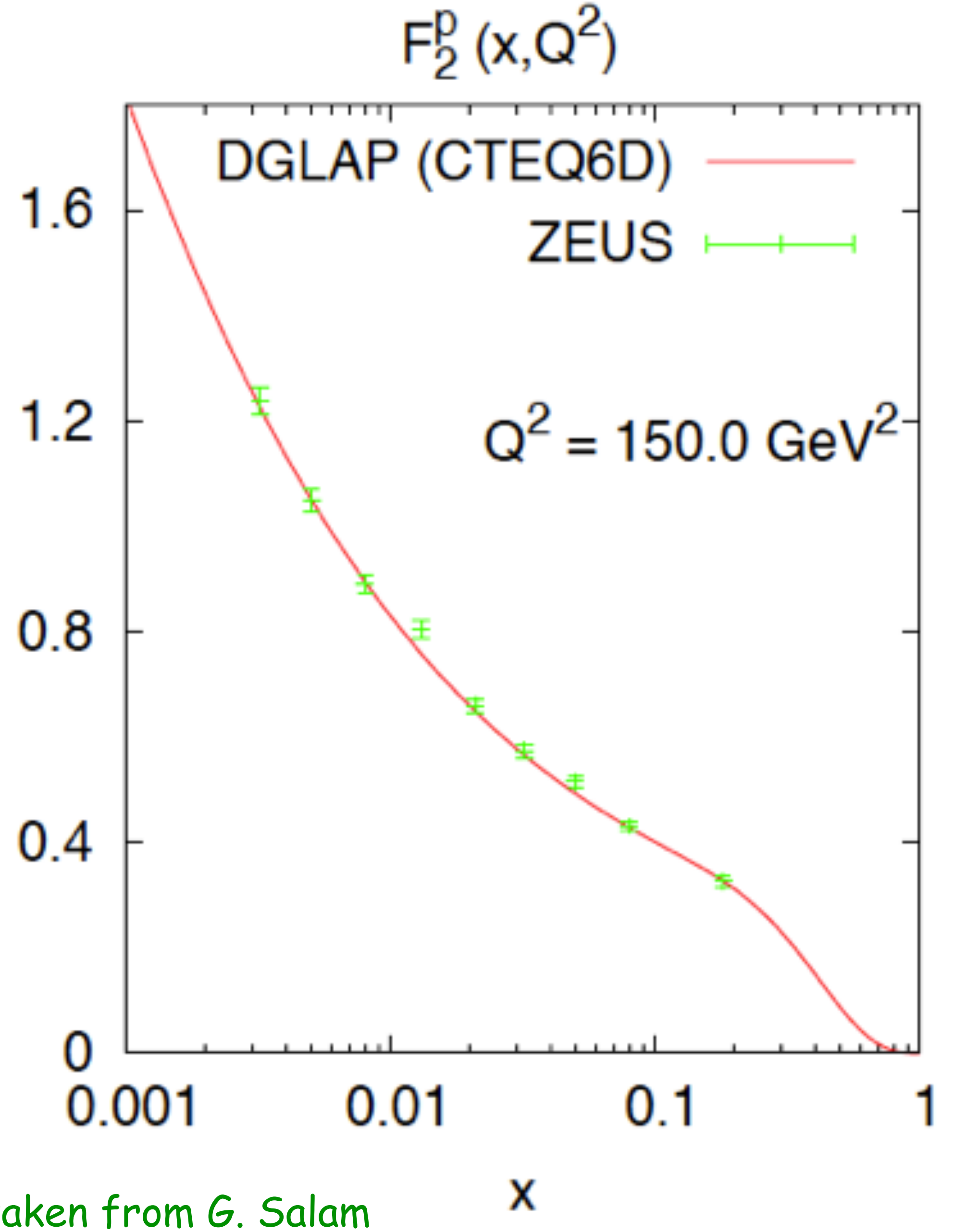


- use one of the global fits of PDFs to data by CTEQ

- steep rise of F_2 at small x (due to gluon evolution)

taken from G. Salam

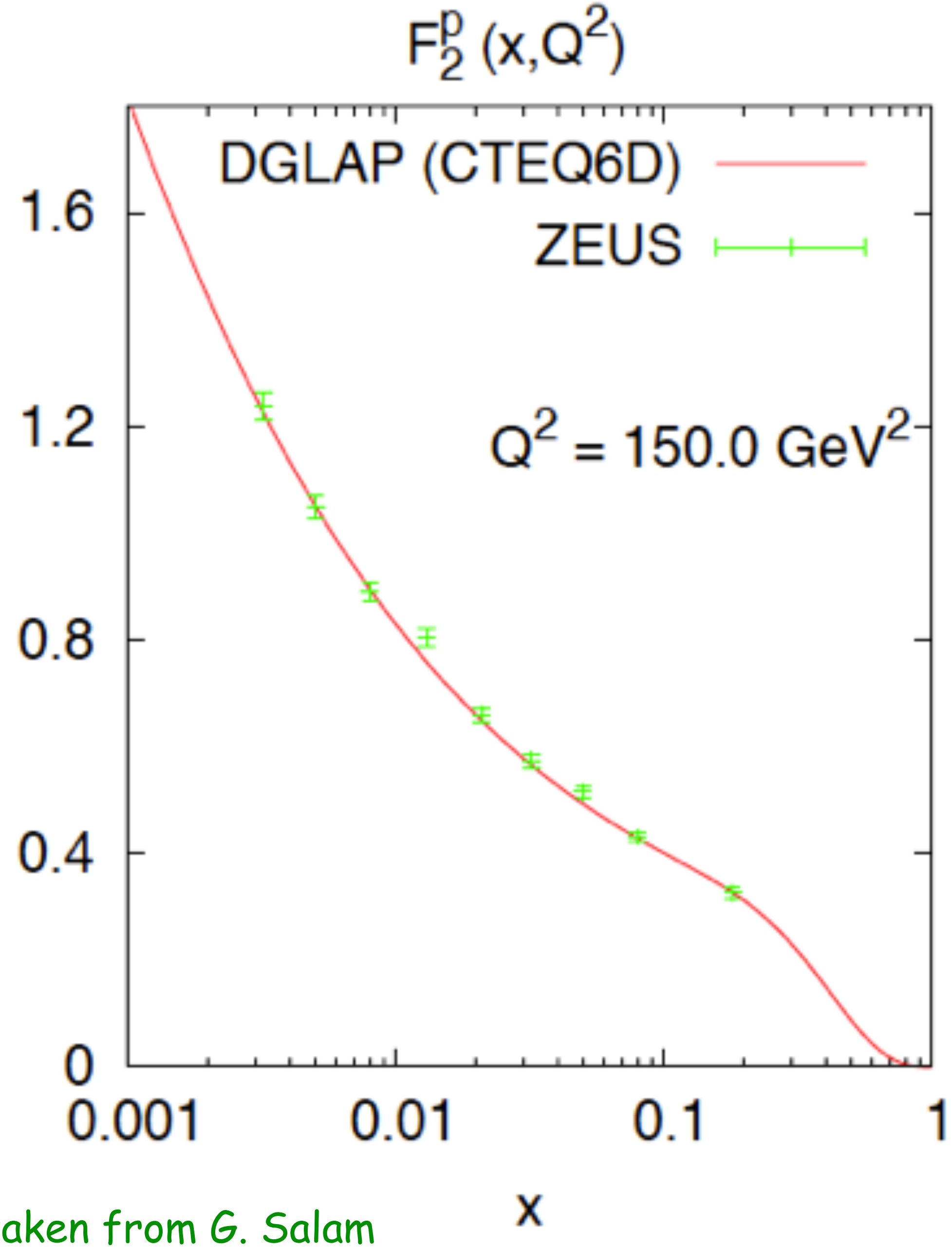
DGLAP evolution seen in DIS data



- use one of the global fits of PDFs to data by CTEQ
- steep rise of F_2 at small x (due to gluon evolution)

taken from G. Salam

DGLAP evolution seen in DIS data



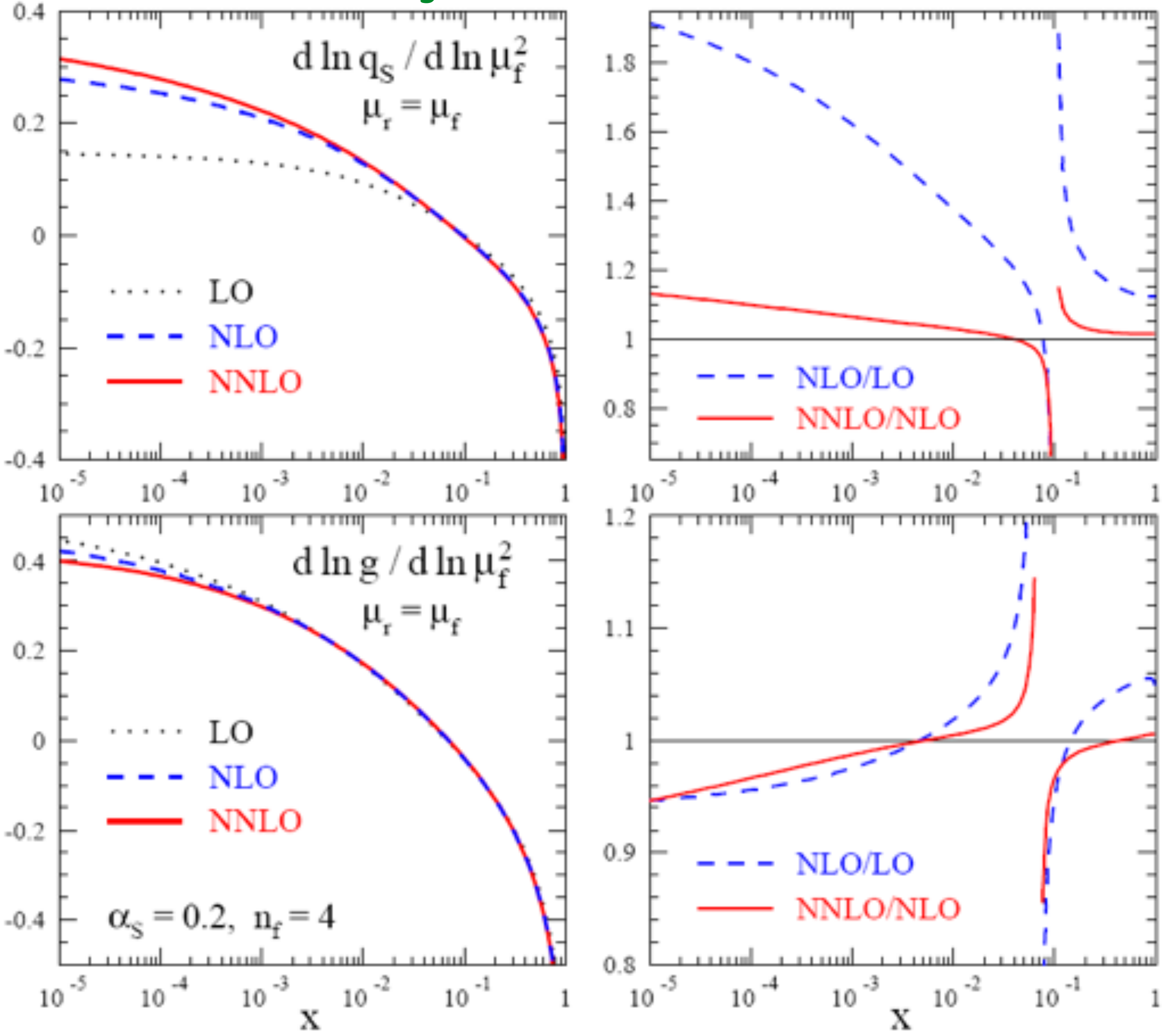
- use one of the global fits of PDFs to data by CTEQ
- steep rise of F_2 at small x (due to gluon evolution)

major success of pQCD and DGLAP evolution

taken from G. Salam

perturbative stability of evolution

Moch, Vermaseren, Vogt

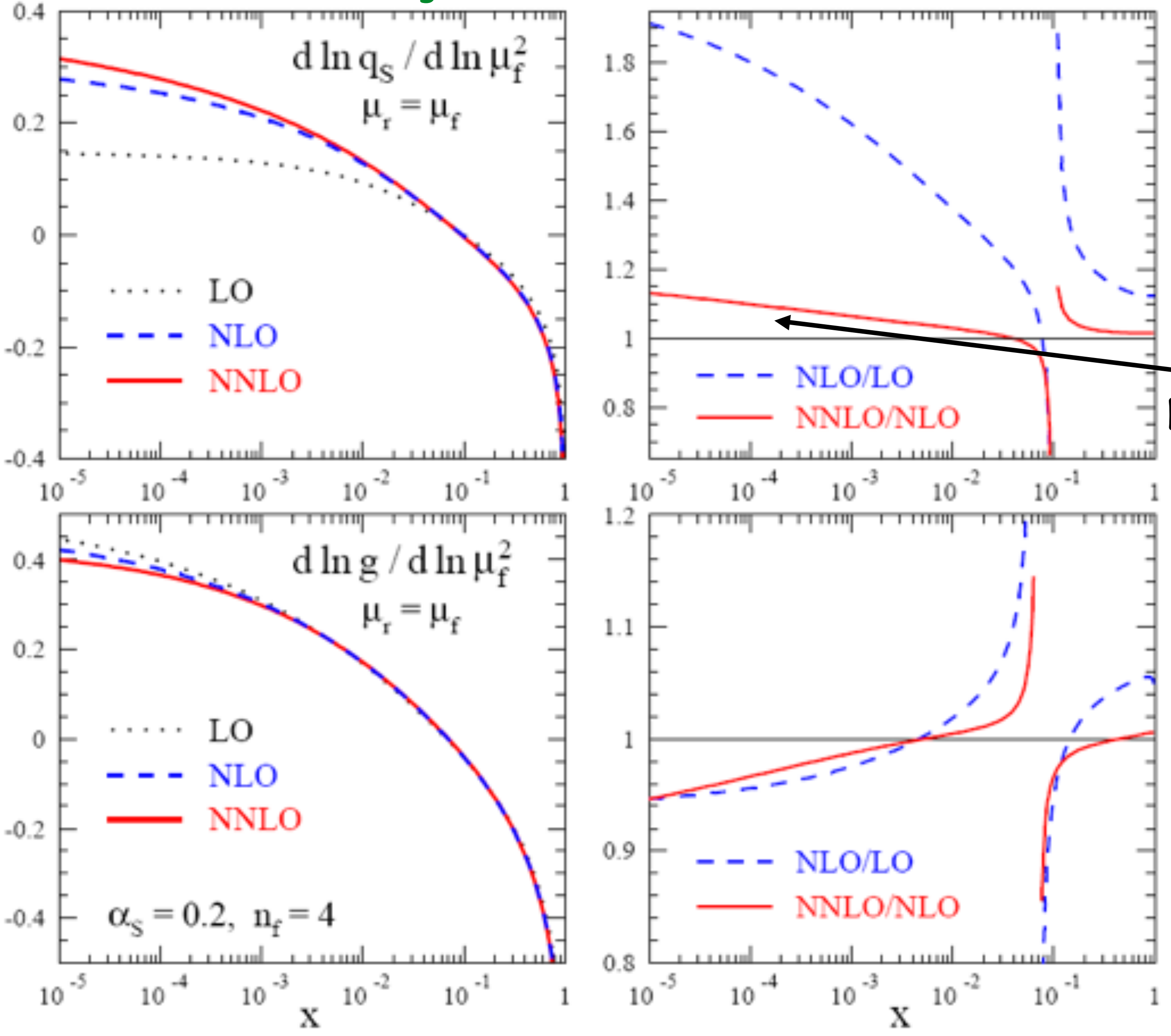


quarks

gluons

perturbative stability of evolution

Moch, Vermaseren, Vogt



quarks

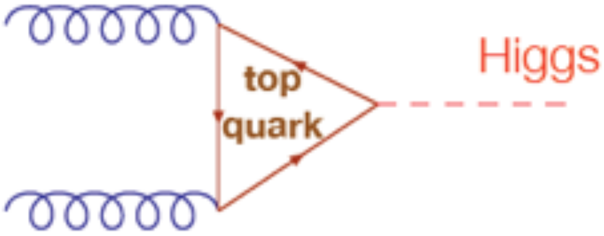
NNLO: >10% for $x<10^{-4}$

gluons

aside: universality of splitting fcts

example taken from J. Campbell

let's look at collinear singularities in a "QCD-ish" effective theory



can be simplified in the limit of infinite top mass

effective Lagrangian

$$\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{ggH}} = \frac{\mathbf{C}}{\mathbf{2}}\,\mathbf{H}\,\mathbf{F}^{\mathbf{a}}_{\mu\nu}\mathbf{F}_{\mathbf{a}}^{\mu\nu}$$

coupling

$$\mathbf{C} = \frac{\alpha_{\mathbf{s}}}{\mathbf{6}\pi\,\mathbf{v}}$$

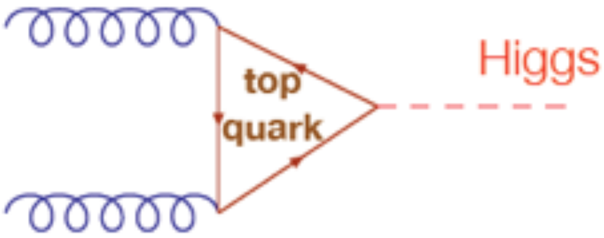
Higgs

usual gluon field strength

aside: universality of splitting fcts

example taken from J. Campbell

let's look at collinear singularities in a "QCD-ish" effective theory



can be simplified in the limit of infinite top mass

effective Lagrangian

$$\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{ggH}} = \frac{\mathbf{C}}{2}\,\mathbf{H}\,\mathbf{F}^{\mathbf{a}}_{\mu\nu}\mathbf{F}_{\mathbf{a}}^{\mu\nu}$$

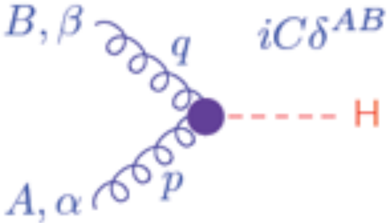
coupling

$$\mathbf{C} = \frac{\alpha_s}{6\pi\,\mathbf{v}}$$

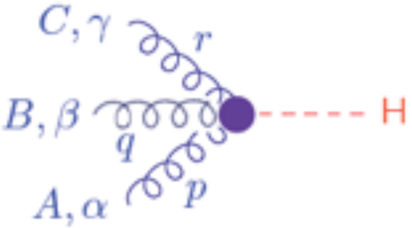
Higgs

usual gluon field strength

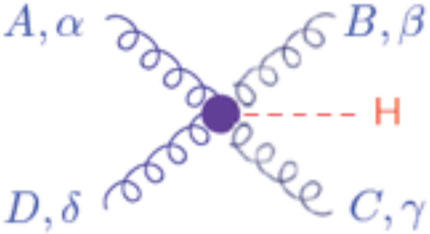
gives rise to new Feynman rules



$$iC\delta^{AB}\left(p\cdot q\, g^{\alpha\beta} - p^{\beta}q^{\alpha}\right)$$



$$-Cg_s f^{ABC}\Big[g^{\alpha\beta}(p^{\gamma}-q^{\gamma}) + g^{\beta\gamma}(q^{\alpha}-r^{\alpha}) + g^{\gamma\alpha}(r^{\beta}-p^{\beta})\Big]$$

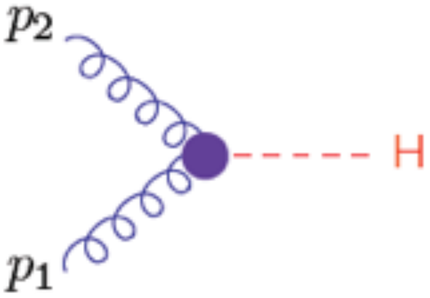


resembles all the features of QCD and reproduces full QCD calculation to within 10 – 20%

so, what do we encounter in an actual calculation?

sketch of a calculation in the effective Hgg theory

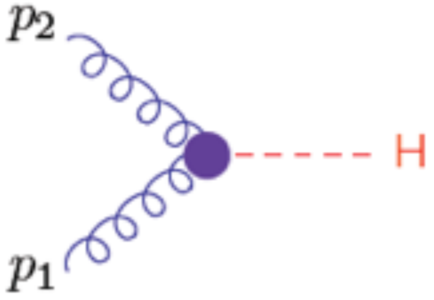
start with the tree-level diagram (recall: one-loop in full QCD)



$$|\mathcal{M}_{Hgg}|^2 = 2(N_c^2 - 1)C^2 m_H^4$$

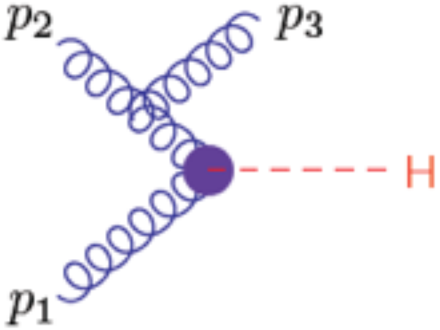
sketch of a calculation in the effective Hgg theory

start with the tree-level diagram (recall: one-loop in full QCD)



$$|\mathcal{M}_{Hgg}|^2 = 2(N_c^2 - 1)C^2 m_H^4$$

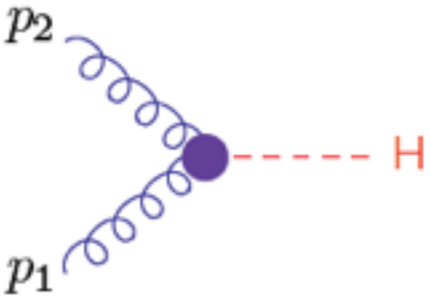
then add another gluon



$$|\mathcal{M}_{Hggg}|^2 = 4N_c(N_c^2 - 1)C^2 g_s^2 \times \left(\frac{m_H^8 + (2p_1.p_2)^4 + (2p_1.p_3)^4 + (2p_2.p_3)^4}{8p_1.p_2\, p_1.p_3\, p_2.p_3}\right)$$

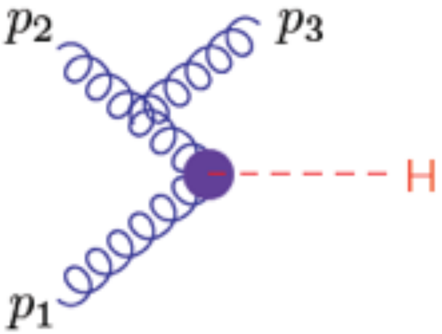
sketch of a calculation in the effective Hgg theory

start with the tree-level diagram (recall: one-loop in full QCD)



$$|\mathcal{M}_{Hgg}|^2 = 2(N_c^2-1)C^2 m_H^4$$

then add another gluon



$$|\mathcal{M}_{Hggg}|^2 = 4N_c(N_c^2-1)C^2 g_s^2 \times \left(\frac{m_H^8 + (2p_1.p_2)^4 + (2p_1.p_3)^4 + (2p_2.p_3)^4}{8p_1.p_2\, p_1.p_3\, p_2.p_3}\right)$$

plug in

and evaluate in the collinear limit for p_2 and p_3

use
$$\mathbf{2p_2 \cdot p_3 \rightarrow 0}$$
$$\mathbf{2p_1 \cdot p_2 \rightarrow zm_H^2}$$
$$\mathbf{2p_1 \cdot p_3 \rightarrow (1-z)m_H^2}$$

… arriving at a familiar function

find

$$|\mathcal{M}_{Hggg}|^2 \xrightarrow{\text{coll.}} 4N_c(N_c^2-1)C^2 g_s^2 m_H^4 \left(\frac{1+z^4+(1-z)^4}{2z(1-z)p_2.p_3}\right)$$

… arriving at a familiar function

find

$$|\mathcal{M}_{Hggg}|^2 \xrightarrow{\text{coll.}} 4N_c(N_c^2-1)C^2 g_s^2 m_H^4 \left(\frac{1+z^4+(1-z)^4}{2z(1-z)p_2.p_3}\right)$$

can factor out the LO result $|\mathcal{M}_{Hgg}|^2 = 2(N_c^2-1)C^2 m_H^4$

$$|\mathcal{M}_{Hggg}|^2 \xrightarrow{\text{coll.}} \frac{2g_s^2}{2p_2.p_3}|\mathcal{M}_{Hgg}|^2 P_{gg}(z)$$

… arriving at a familiar function

find

$$|\mathcal{M}_{Hggg}|^2 \xrightarrow{\text{coll.}} 4N_c(N_c^2-1)C^2g_s^2m_H^4\left(\frac{1+z^4+(1-z)^4}{2z(1-z)p_2.p_3}\right)$$

can factor out the LO result $|\mathcal{M}_{Hgg}|^2 = 2(N_c^2-1)C^2m_H^4$

$$|\mathcal{M}_{Hggg}|^2 \xrightarrow{\text{coll.}} \frac{2g_s^2}{2p_2.p_3}|\mathcal{M}_{Hgg}|^2 P_{gg}(z)$$

collinear sing. associated with
familiar gluon-gluon splitting fct.

$$P_{gg}(z) = 2N_c\left(\frac{z^2+(1-z)^2+z^2(1-z)^2}{z(1-z)}\right)$$

… arriving at a familiar function

find

$$|\mathcal{M}_{Hggg}|^2 \xrightarrow{\text{coll.}} 4N_c(N_c^2-1)C^2 g_s^2 m_H^4 \left(\frac{1+z^4+(1-z)^4}{2z(1-z)p_2.p_3}\right)$$

can factor out the LO result $|\mathcal{M}_{Hgg}|^2 = 2(N_c^2-1)C^2 m_H^4$

$$|\mathcal{M}_{Hggg}|^2 \xrightarrow{\text{coll.}} \frac{2g_s^2}{2p_2.p_3}|\mathcal{M}_{Hgg}|^2 \boxed{P_{gg}(z)}$$

universal ✓

collinear sing. associated with
familiar gluon-gluon splitting fct.

$$P_{gg}(z) = 2N_c\left(\frac{z^2+(1-z)^2+z^2(1-z)^2}{z(1-z)}\right)$$

… arriving at a familiar function

find

$$|\mathcal{M}_{Hggg}|^2 \xrightarrow{\text{coll.}} 4N_c(N_c^2-1)C^2 g_s^2 m_H^4 \left(\frac{1+z^4+(1-z)^4}{2z(1-z)p_2.p_3}\right)$$

can factor out the LO result $|\mathcal{M}_{Hgg}|^2 = 2(N_c^2-1)C^2 m_H^4$

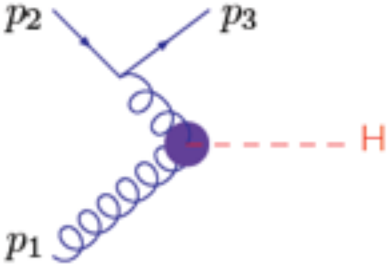
$$|\mathcal{M}_{Hggg}|^2 \xrightarrow{\text{coll.}} \frac{2g_s^2}{2p_2.p_3}|\mathcal{M}_{Hgg}|^2 P_{gg}(z)$$

universal ✓

collinear sing. associated with
familiar gluon-gluon splitting fct.

$$P_{gg}(z) = 2N_c\left(\frac{z^2+(1-z)^2+z^2(1-z)^2}{z(1-z)}\right)$$

similarly, one can obtains P_{qg} from



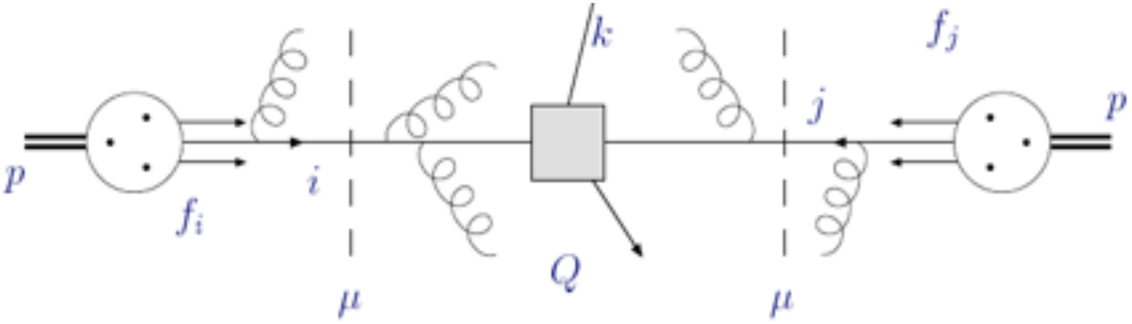
factorization in hadron-hadron collisions

What happens when two hadrons collide ?

factorization in hadron-hadron collisions

What happens when two hadrons collide ?

straightforward generalization of the concepts discussed so far:



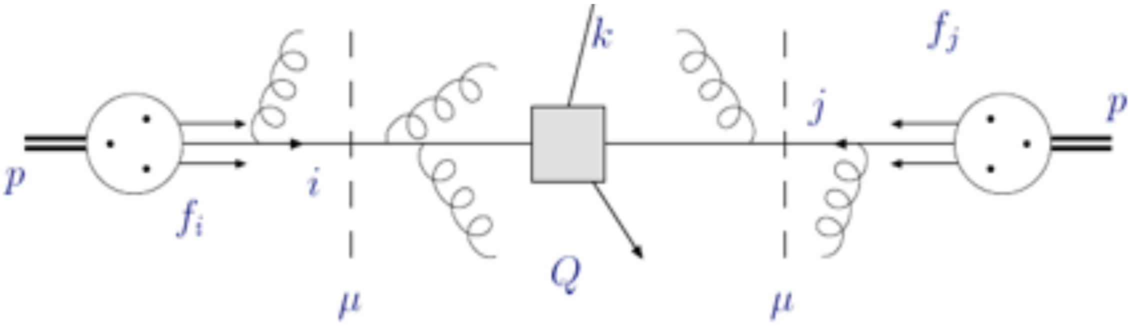
jets, hadrons, heavy quarks, ...

factorization in hadron-hadron collisions

What happens when two hadrons collide ?

straightforward generalization of the concepts discussed so far:

**jets, hadrons,
heavy quarks, ...**



$$d\sigma = \sum_{ij}\int dx_i dx_j\, f_i(x_i,\mu^2)\, f_j(x_j,\mu^2)\, d\hat{\sigma}_{ij}(\alpha_s(\mu_r),Q^2,\mu^2,x_i,x_j)$$

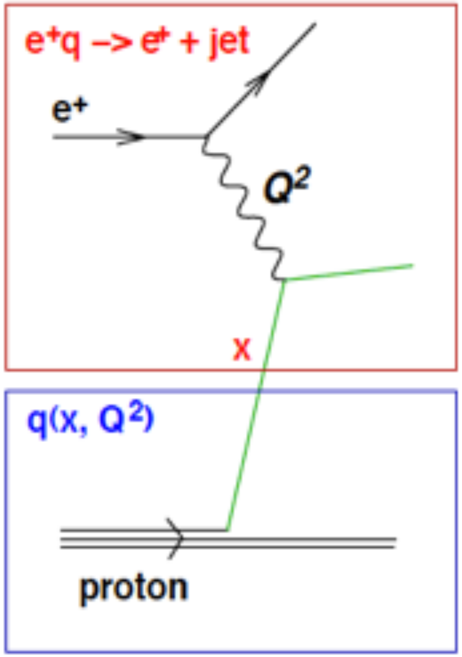
non-perturbative but universal PDFs $\xleftrightarrow[\text{by }\mu]{\text{linked}}$ **hard scattering of two partons → pQCD**

factorization at work

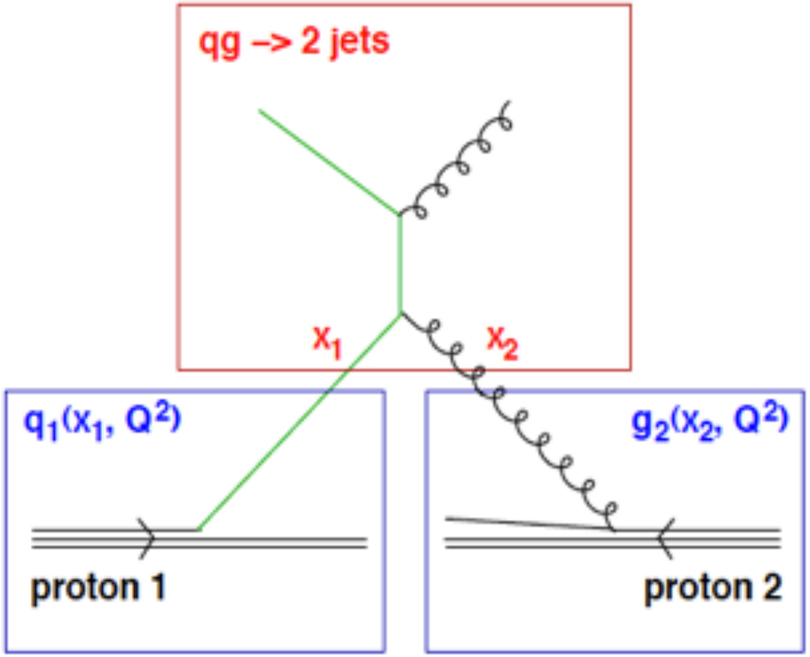
key assumption that a cross section factorizes into

- hard (perturbatively calculable) process-dep. partonic subprocesses
- non-perturbative but universal parton distribution functions

has great **predictive power** and can be challenged experimentally:



$$\sigma_{ep} = \sigma_{eq} \otimes q$$



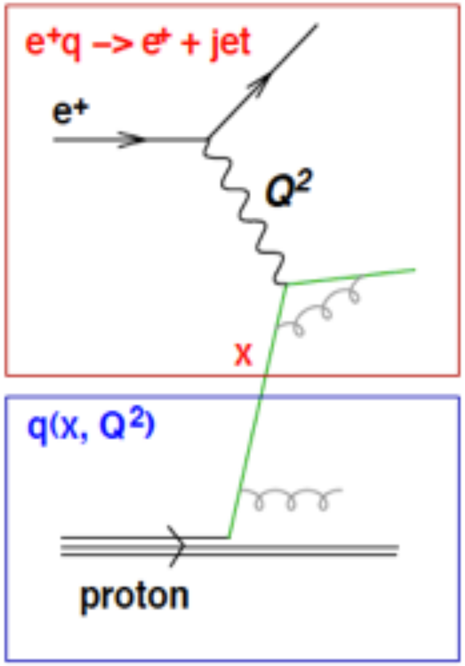
$$\sigma_{pp\to 2\,jets} = \sigma_{qg\to 2\,jets} \otimes q_1 \otimes g_2 + \cdots$$

factorization at work

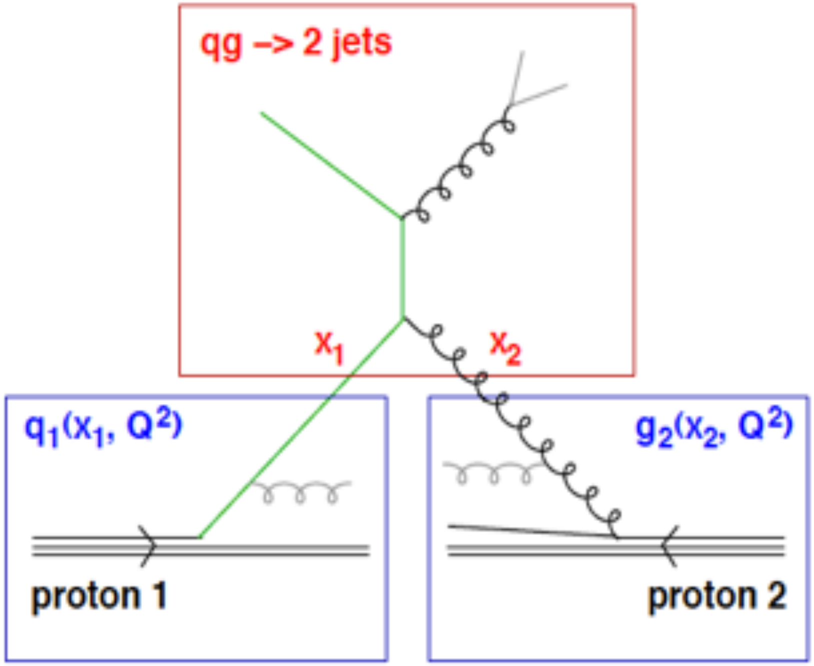
key assumption that a cross section factorizes into

- hard (perturbatively calculable) process-dep. partonic subprocesses
- non-perturbative but universal parton distribution functions

has great **predictive power** and can be challenged experimentally:

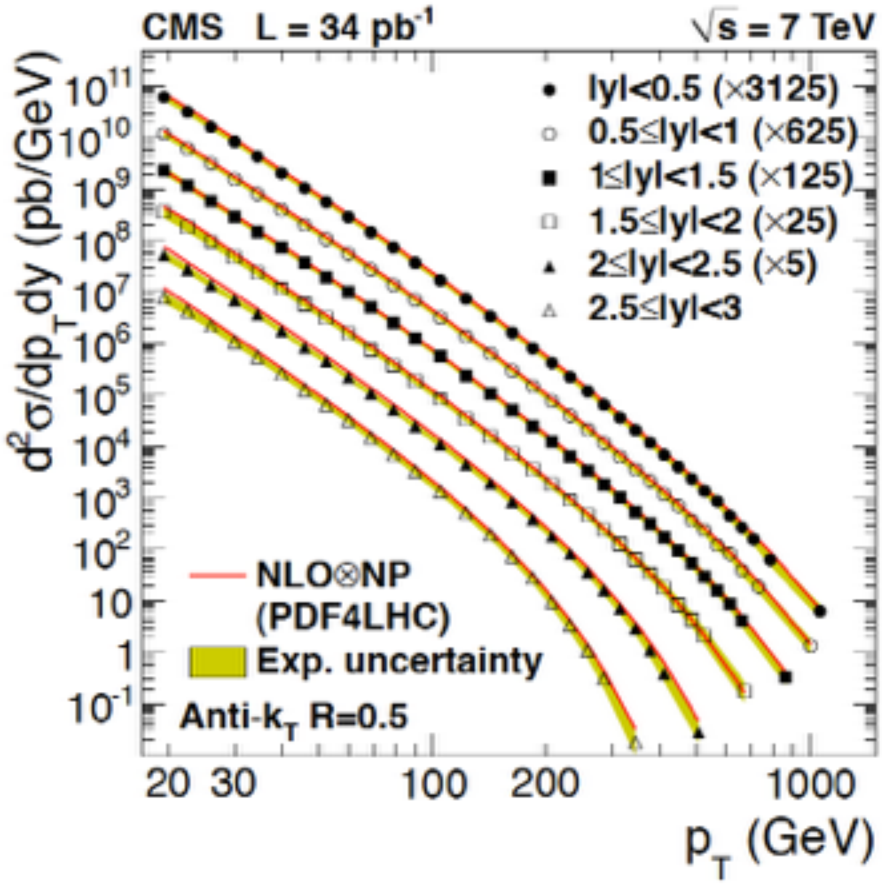


$$\sigma_{ep} = \sigma_{eq} \otimes q$$



$$\sigma_{pp\to 2\,jets} = \sigma_{qg\to 2\,jets} \otimes q_1 \otimes g_2 + \cdots$$

factorization: so far a success story



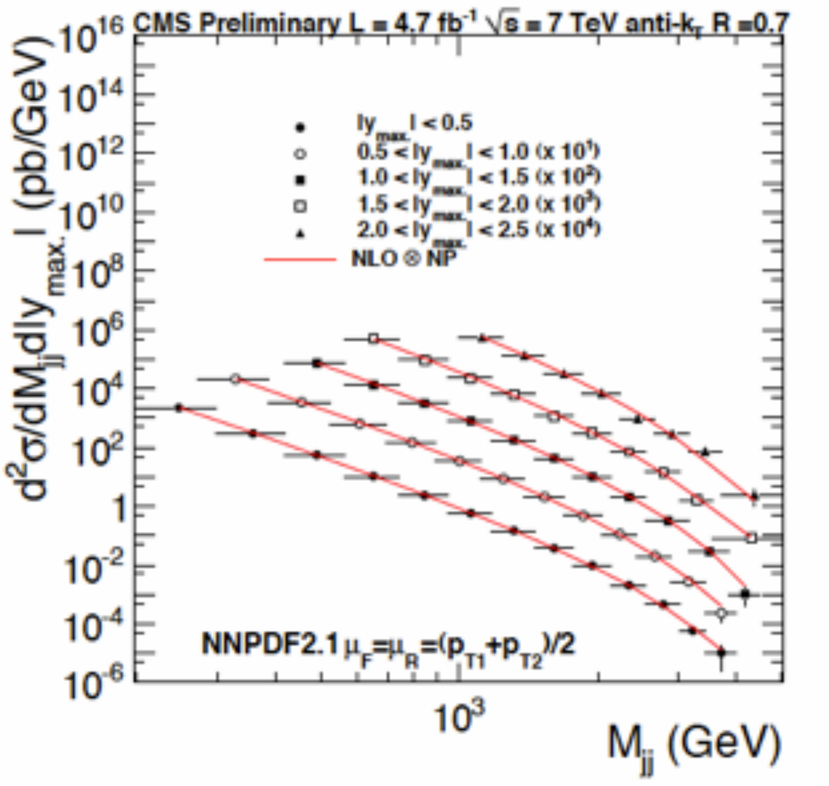
two recent examples from the LHC:

1-jet and di-jet cross sections

many other final-states available

$$y = \ln\tan\frac{\theta}{2} \sim \frac{1}{2}\ln\frac{x_1}{x_2} \qquad M = \sqrt{x_1 x_2 s}$$

$$x_1 = \frac{M}{\sqrt{s}}e^{+y} \qquad x_2 = \frac{M}{\sqrt{s}}e^{-y}$$



results now start to being used in global fits to constrain PDFs

particularly sensitive to gluons

$$gg \rightarrow gg \qquad gq \rightarrow gq$$

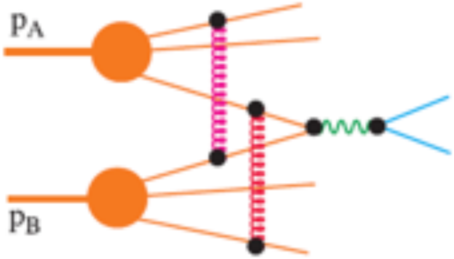
proofs of factorization

- to prove the validity of **factorization to all orders** of pQCD is a highly theoretical and technical matter

proofs of factorization

- to prove the validity of **factorization to all orders** of pQCD is a highly theoretical and technical matter

- **serious proofs** exist only for a limited number of processes such as DIS and Drell-Yan **Libby, Sterman; Ellis et al.; Amati et al.; Collins et al.;...**

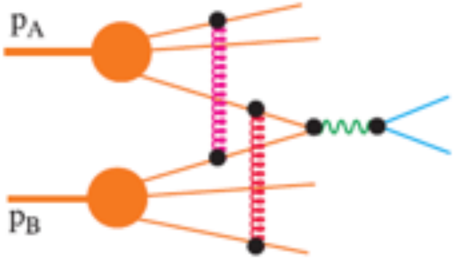


issues: factorization does not hold graph-by-graph; saved by the interplay between graphs, unitarity, causality, and gauge invariance

proofs of factorization

- to prove the validity of **factorization to all orders** of pQCD is a highly theoretical and technical matter

- **serious proofs** exist only for a limited number of processes such as DIS and Drell-Yan **Libby, Sterman; Ellis et al.; Amati et al.; Collins et al.;...**



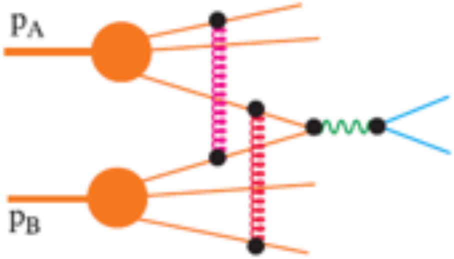
issues: factorization does not hold graph-by-graph; saved by the interplay between graphs, unitarity, causality, and gauge invariance

- factorization good up to powers of hard scale Q: $O(\Lambda_{QCD}/Q)^n$

proofs of factorization

- to prove the validity of **factorization to all orders** of pQCD is a highly theoretical and technical matter

- **serious proofs** exist only for a limited number of processes such as DIS and Drell-Yan **Libby, Sterman; Ellis et al.; Amati et al.; Collins et al.;...**



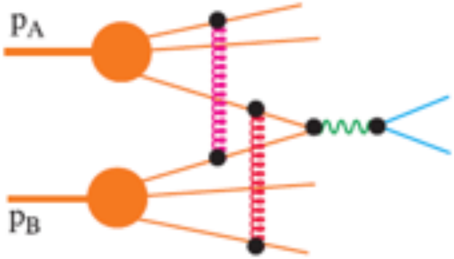
issues: factorization does not hold graph-by-graph; saved by the interplay between graphs, unitarity, causality, and gauge invariance

- factorization good up to powers of hard scale Q: $O(\Lambda_{QCD}/Q)^n$

faith in factorization rests on existing calculations and the tremendous success of pQCD in explaining data

proofs of factorization

- to prove the validity of **factorization to all orders** of pQCD is a highly theoretical and technical matter
- **serious proofs** exist only for a limited number of processes such as DIS and Drell-Yan **Libby, Sterman; Ellis et al.; Amati et al.; Collins et al.;...**



issues: factorization does not hold graph-by-graph; saved by the interplay between graphs, unitarity, causality, and gauge invariance

- factorization good up to powers of hard scale Q: $O(\Lambda_{QCD}/Q)^n$

faith in factorization rests on existing calculations and the tremendous success of pQCD in explaining data

---

recall: the renormalizibility of a non-abelian gauge theory like QCD was demonstrated by 't Hooft and Veltman

1999

now we have studied all relevant concepts of perturbative QCD !!

now we have studied all relevant concepts of perturbative QCD !!

recap: salient features of pQCD

now we have studied all relevant concepts of perturbative QCD !!

recap: salient features of pQCD

- strong interactions, yet perturbative methods are applicable
- confined quarks, yet calculations based on free partons can describe large classes of processes

now we have studied all relevant concepts of perturbative QCD !!

recap: salient features of pQCD

- strong interactions, yet perturbative methods are applicable
- confined quarks, yet calculations based on free partons can describe large classes of processes

keys to resolve the apparent dilemma:

- asymptotic freedom
- infrared safety
- factorization theorems & renormalizibility

pQCD: a tool for the most violent collisions

pQCD: a tool for the most violent collisions

high-p_T jet: factorization!

pQCD: a tool for the most violent collisions

“soft stuff”: difficult!

high-p_T jet: factorization!

pQCD: a tool for the most violent collisions

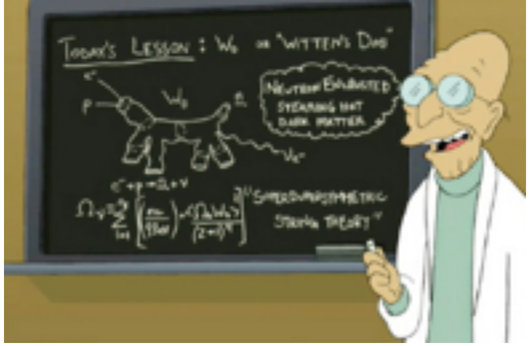
"soft stuff": difficult!

high-p_T jet: factorization!

"underlying event": more than difficult

to take home from this part of the lectures

INWARD BOUND - FEMTO'SCOPY



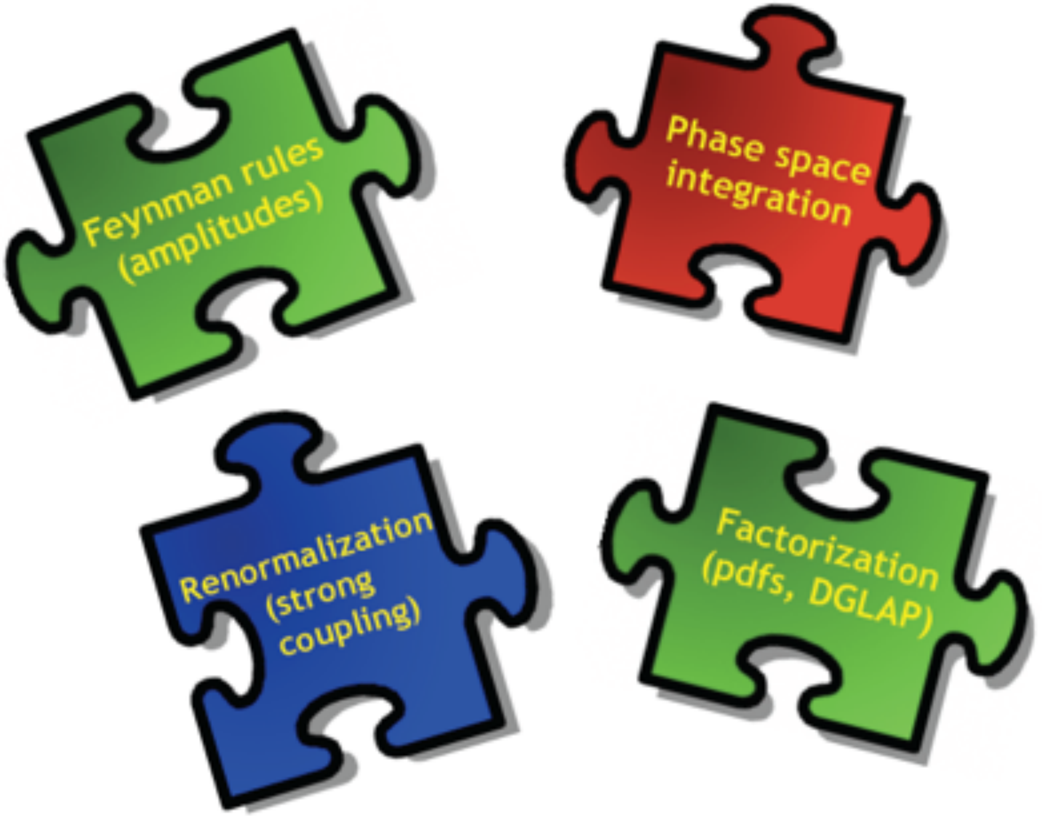
- factorization = isolating and absorbing long-distance singularities accompanying identified hadrons into parton densities (initial state) and fragmentation fcts. (final state)

- factorization and renormalization introduce arbitrary scales
  → powerful concept of renormalization group equations
  → α_s, PDFs, frag. fcts. depend on energy/resolution

- PDFs (and frag. fcts) have definitions as bilocal operators

- hard hadron-hadron interactions factorize as well: ffdσ

- strict proofs of factorization only for limited class of processes



Part IV

some applications & advanced topics

scales and theoretical uncertainties; Drell-Yan process
small-x physics; global QCD analysis; resummations

30+ years of hadron collider physics and counting

30+ years of hadron collider physics and counting

CERN S$p\bar{p}$S [1981 → 1990]

$p\bar{p}$ collisions 540, 630 GeV

W,Z discovery, jets, …
early successes of QCD

30+ years of hadron collider physics and counting

Fermilab TeVatron [1987 → 2011]

$p\bar{p}$ collisions 0.63, 1.8, 1.96 TeV

top discovery, jet physics, …
further established QCD

CERN $Sp\bar{p}S$ [1981 → 1990]

$p\bar{p}$ collisions 540, 630 GeV

W,Z discovery, jets, …
early successes of QCD

30+ years of hadron collider physics and counting

Fermilab TeVatron [1987 → 2011]

$\bar{p}p$ collisions 0.63, 1.8, 1.96 TeV

top discovery, jet physics, …
further established QCD

CERN Sp$\bar{p}$S [1981 → 1990]

$\bar{p}p$ collisions 540, 630 GeV

W,Z discovery, jets, …
early successes of QCD

BNL RHIC [2000 → …]

pp collisions up to 500 GeV

the World's first and only **polarized collider**
spin dep. phenomena, spin strct. of the nucleon
also very versatile heavy ion program

30+ years of hadron collider physics and counting

Fermilab TeVatron [1987 → 2011]

$p\bar{p}$ collisions 0.63, 1.8, 1.96 TeV

top discovery, jet physics, …
further established QCD

CERN S$p\bar{p}$S [1981 → 1990]

$p\bar{p}$ collisions 540, 630 GeV

W,Z discovery, jets, …
early successes of QCD

CERN LHC [operating]

pp collisions up to 14(?) TeV

a QCD machine, discoveries ?

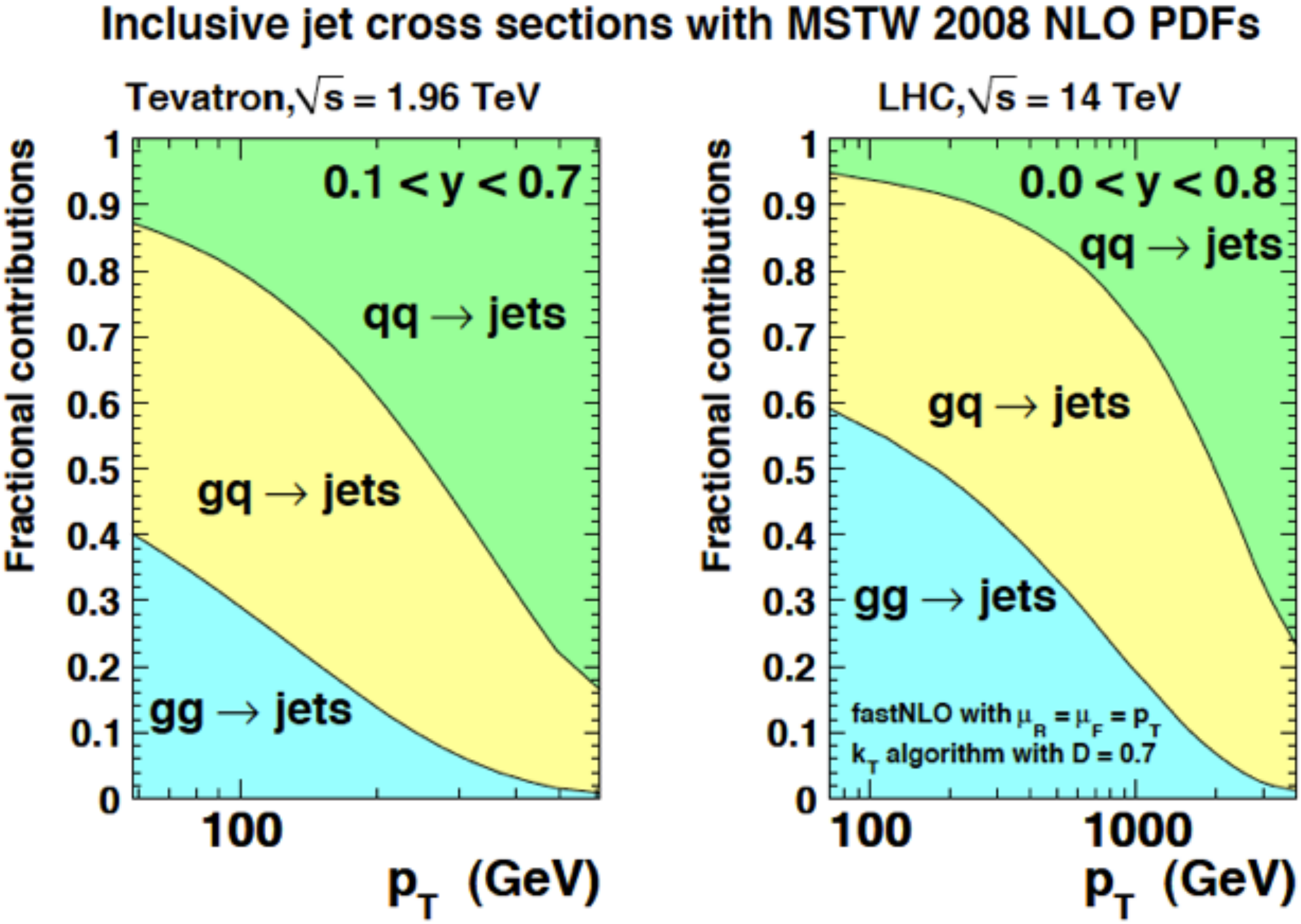
also a PbPb and pPb program

BNL RHIC [2000 → …]

pp collisions up to 500 GeV

the World's first and only **polarized collider**
spin dep. phenomena, spin strct. of the nucleon
also very versatile heavy ion program

jets: which parton processes contribute



from G. Salam's lectures

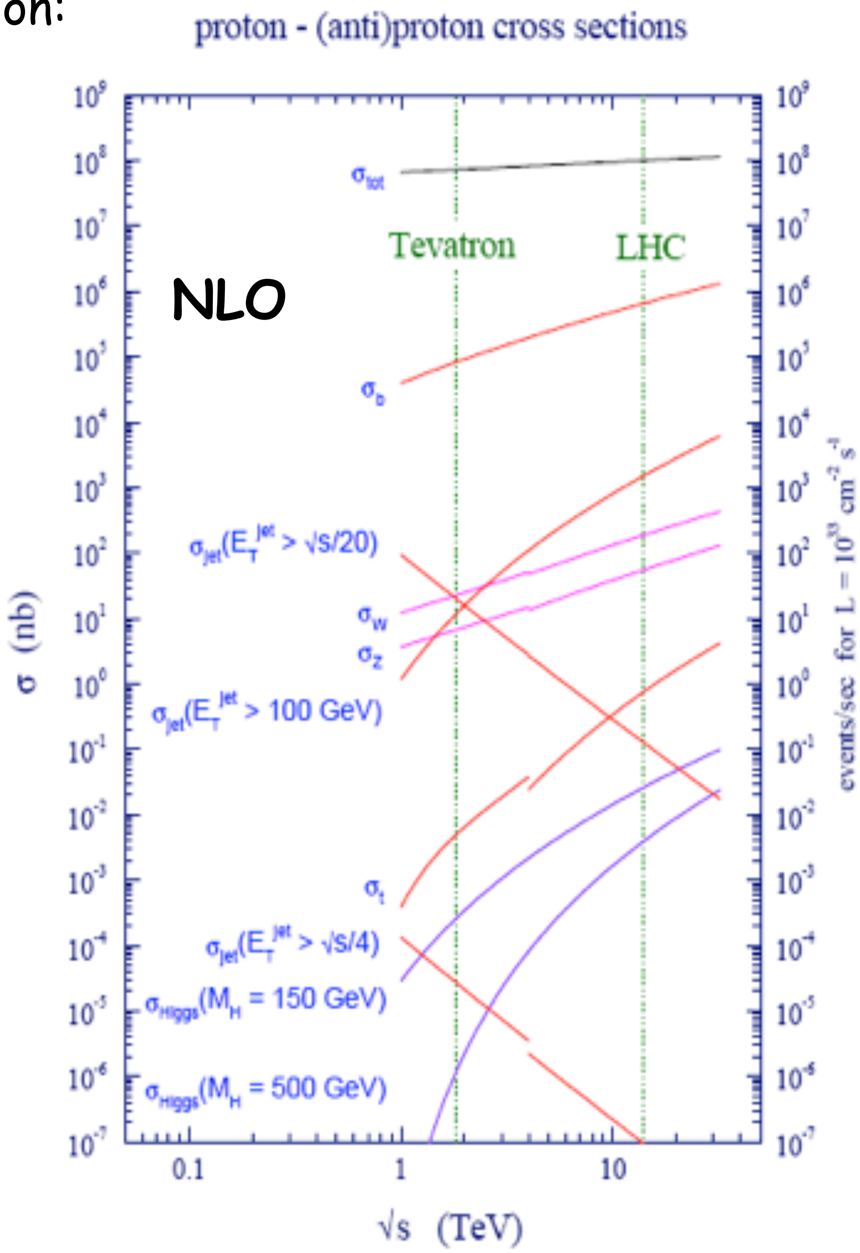
hadron colliders are gluon dominated up to rather large p_T

pQCD at the energy frontier

pQCD essential in solving the master equation:
"New Physics = data – Standard Model"

issues:

- **large rates for SM processes**
  e.g.: leptonic events for 10 fb^{-1} from
  W's (300M), Z's (33M), top (2.4M)
- **even lots of multi-particle states**
  —> background to "new physics"
- **QCD + e.w. effects mix**
  LHC well above e.w. scale M_Z
  —> e.w. bosons are "light"



Campbell, Huston, Stirling

pQCD at the energy frontier

pQCD essential in solving the master equation:

"New Physics = data – Standard Model"

issues:

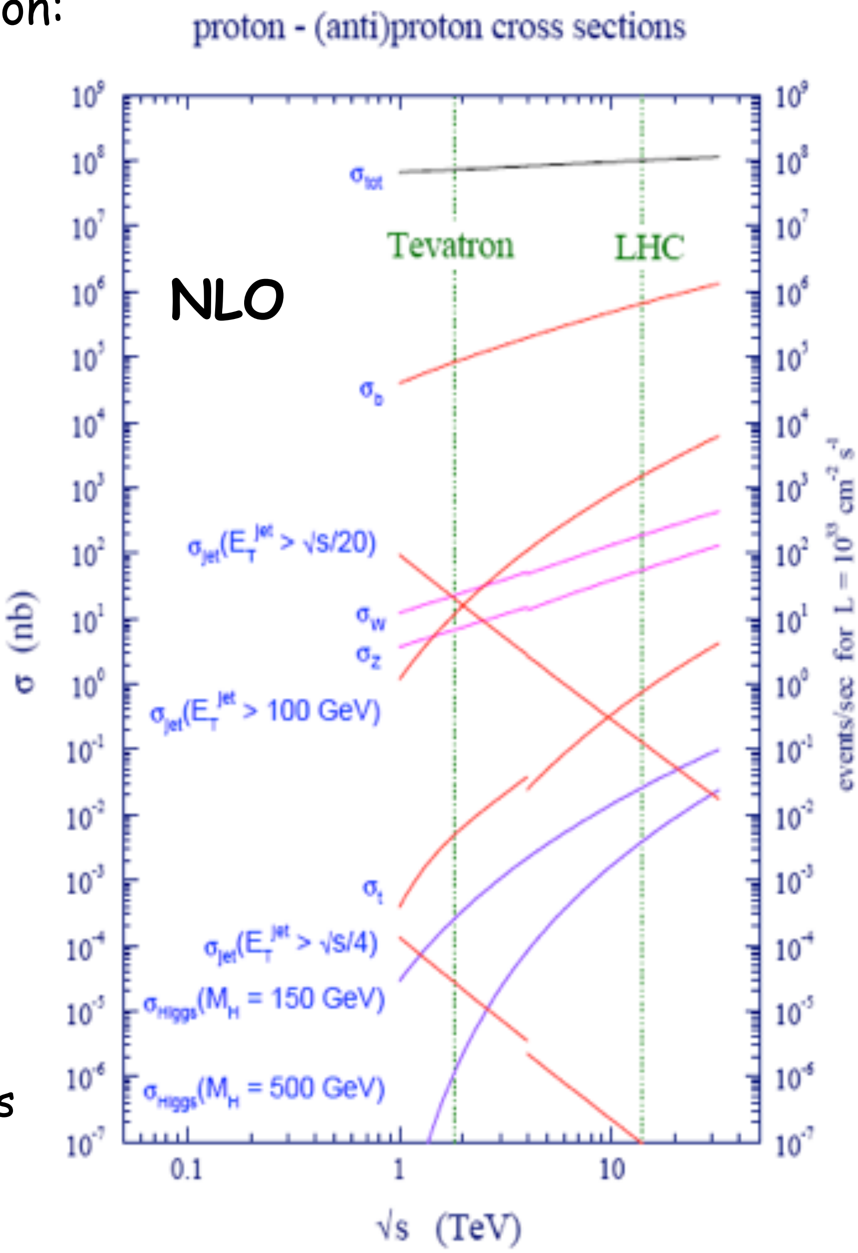
- **large rates for SM processes**
  e.g.: leptonic events for 10 fb^{-1} from
  W's (300M), Z's (33M), top (2.4M)
- **even lots of multi-particle states**
  —> background to "new physics"
- **QCD + e.w. effects mix**
  LHC well above e.w. scale M_Z
  —> e.w. bosons are "light"

need:

precision, precision, precision …

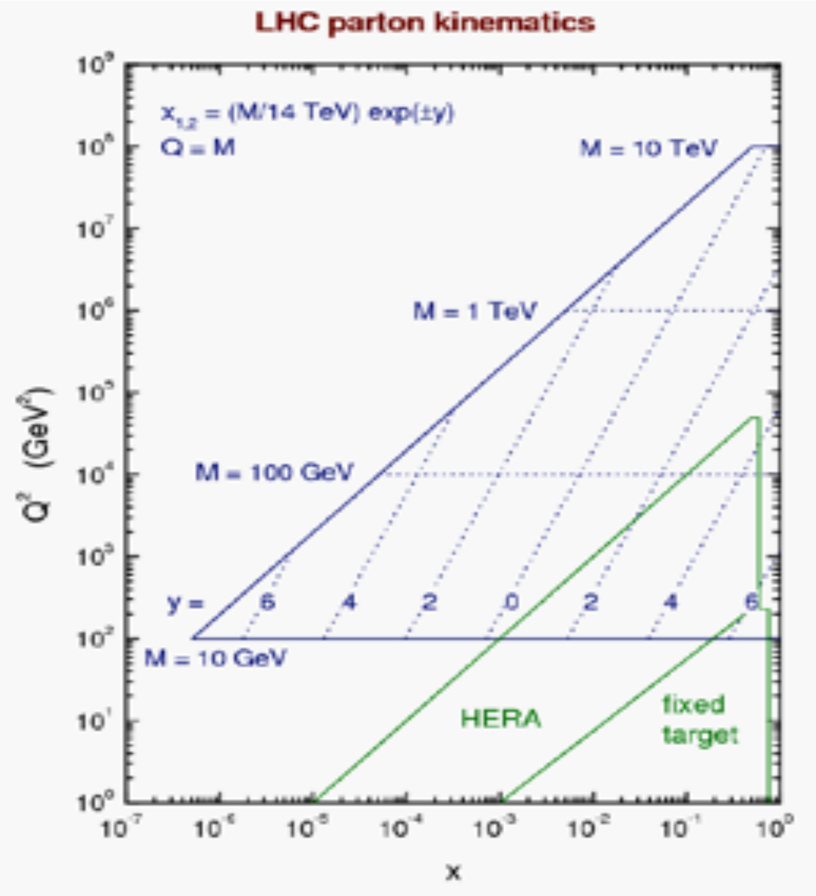
for hard scattering, PDFs, theor. uncertainties
+ novel methods for processes with many legs

Campbell, Huston, Stirling



pQCD at the energy frontier

Campbell, Huston, Stirling

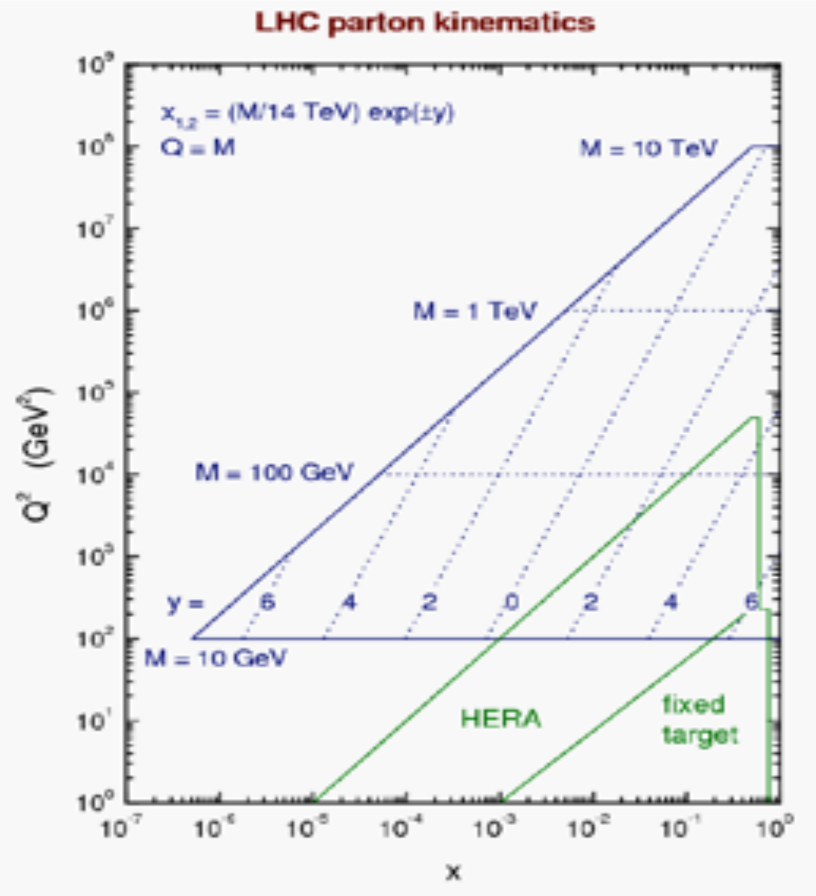


PDFs: vastly extended x,Q^2 landscape

- HERA —> LHC: evolution across up to 3 decades in Q^2
- M < 100 GeV physics: small x relevant
- TeV scale physics: large x relevant
- large angles/rapidities: extreme x

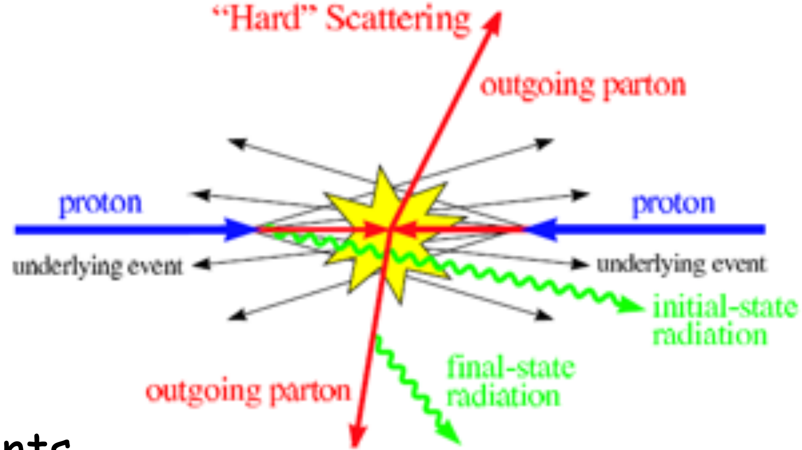
pQCD at the energy frontier

Campbell, Huston, Stirling



PDFs: vastly extended x,Q^2 landscape

- HERA —> LHC: evolution across up to 3 decades in Q^2
- M < 100 GeV physics: small x relevant
- TeV scale physics: large x relevant
- large angles/rapidities: extreme x



real events at the LHC are very messy:

- possible interactions of spectator partons leading to multiple interactions/underlying events

—> relies on event generators (Sherpa, Herwig, ...);
state-of-the-art: merge with NLO calculations (MC@NLO, POWHEG, ...)

Start your
business right
with Precision
Calculations
advise!

4-1

the Whys and Hows of
NLO Calculations & Beyond

why go beyond LO (and even NLO)?

recall factorization theorem for hadronic processes:

$$d\sigma = \sum_{ij} \int dx_i dx_j \, f_i(x_i, \mu^2) \, f_j(x_j, \mu^2) \, d\hat{\sigma}_{ij}(\alpha_s(\mu_r), Q^2, \mu^2, x_i, x_j)$$

non-perturbative but universal PDFs $\xleftrightarrow[\text{by } \mu]{\text{linked}}$ **hard scattering of two partons → pQCD**

☑ independence of physical $d\sigma$ on μ (and μ_r) has led us to powerful RGEs

why go beyond LO (and even NLO)?

recall factorization theorem for hadronic processes:

$$d\sigma = \sum_{ij} \int dx_i dx_j \, f_i(x_i, \mu^2) \, f_j(x_j, \mu^2) \, d\hat{\sigma}_{ij}(\alpha_s(\mu_r), Q^2, \mu^2, x_i, x_j)$$

non-perturbative but universal PDFs ← **linked by μ** → **hard scattering of two partons → pQCD**

☑ independence of physical $d\sigma$ on μ (and μ_r) has led us to powerful RGEs

caveat: we work with a perturbative series truncated at LO, NLO, NNLO, …

→ at any fixed order N there will be a **residual scale dependence** in our theoretical prediction

→ since μ is completely arbitrary this limits the precision of our results

why go beyond LO (and even NLO)?

recall factorization theorem for hadronic processes:

$$d\sigma = \sum_{ij}\int dx_i dx_j\, f_i(x_i,\mu^2)\, f_j(x_j,\mu^2)\, d\hat{\sigma}_{ij}(\alpha_s(\mu_r),Q^2,\mu^2,x_i,x_j)$$

non-perturbative but universal PDFs ⟵ **linked by μ** ⟶ **hard scattering of two partons → pQCD**

☑ independence of physical $d\sigma$ on μ (and μ_r) has led us to powerful RGEs

caveat: we work with a perturbative series truncated at LO, NLO, NNLO, …

→ at any fixed order N there will be a **residual scale dependence** in our theoretical prediction

→ since μ is completely arbitrary this limits the precision of our results

simplest example:

$e^+e^- \to$ hadrons

$$\frac{d}{d\ln\mu_r}\sum_{n=1}^{N} c_n(\mu_r)\,\alpha_s^n(\mu_r) \sim \mathcal{O}\left(\alpha_s^{N+1}(\mu_r)\right)$$

uncertainty is formally of higher order

-> gets smaller if higher orders are known

applies in general also for μ_f

explicit example: scale dependence of e^+e^- —> jets

recall: at NLO we have

$$\sigma^{\mathrm{NLO}}(\mu_R) = \sigma_{q\bar{q}}\left(1 + c_1\, \alpha_s(\mu_R)\right)$$

LO result

NLO coefficient
independent of scale

all **scale uncertainty**
from strong coupling

explicit example: scale dependence of e^+e^- —> jets

recall: at NLO we have $\sigma^{\mathrm{NLO}}(\mu_R) = \sigma_{q\bar{q}}\,(1 + c_1\,\alpha_s(\mu_R))$

LO result

NLO coefficient
independent of scale

all **scale uncertainty**
from strong coupling

suppose we want to choose a different scale Q – what do we need to do?

explicit example: scale dependence of e^+e^- —> jets

recall: at NLO we have $$\sigma^{\text{NLO}}(\mu_R) = \sigma_{q\bar{q}}\,(1 + c_1\, \alpha_s(\mu_R))$$

LO result

NLO coefficient independent of scale

all **scale uncertainty** from strong coupling

suppose we want to choose a different scale Q – what do we need to do?

recall: $$\alpha_s(\mu_r^2) = \frac{\alpha_s(Q^2)}{1 + 2b_0\alpha_s(Q^2)\ln(\mu_r/Q)}$$

explicit example: scale dependence of e^+e^- —> jets

recall: at NLO we have $$\sigma^{\mathrm{NLO}}(\mu_R) = \sigma_{q\bar{q}}\,(1 + c_1\,\alpha_s(\mu_R))$$

LO result

NLO coefficient independent of scale

all **scale uncertainty** from strong coupling

suppose we want to choose a different scale Q – what do we need to do?

recall: $$\alpha_s(\mu_r^2) = \frac{\alpha_s(Q^2)}{1 + 2b_0\alpha_s(Q^2)\ln(\mu_r/Q)} \underset{\text{expand}}{\overset{\text{coupling small}}{\approx}} \alpha_s(Q^2) - 2b_0\,\alpha_s^2(Q^2)\ln(\mu_r/Q)$$

explicit example: scale dependence of e^+e^- —> jets

recall: at NLO we have $$\sigma^{\rm NLO}(\mu_R) = \sigma_{q\bar{q}}\,(1\ +\ c_1\,\alpha_s(\mu_R))$$

LO result

NLO coefficient independent of scale

all scale uncertainty from strong coupling

suppose we want to choose a different scale Q – what do we need to do?

recall: $$\alpha_s(\mu_r^2) = \frac{\alpha_s(Q^2)}{1 + 2b_0\alpha_s(Q^2)\ln(\mu_r/Q)}$$ coupling small expand $$\approx \alpha_s(Q^2) - 2b_0\,\alpha_s^2(Q^2)\,\ln(\mu_r/Q)$$

plug back into $\sigma^{\rm NLO}$ $$= \sigma_{q\bar{q}}\left(1\ +\ c_1\,\alpha_s(Q) - 2c_1 b_0 \ln\frac{\mu_R}{Q}\,\alpha_s^2(Q) + \mathcal{O}\left(\alpha_s^3\right)\right)$$

explicit example: scale dependence of e^+e^- —> jets

recall: at NLO we have $$\sigma^{\mathrm{NLO}}(\mu_R) = \sigma_{q\bar{q}}\left(1 + c_1\, \alpha_s(\mu_R)\right)$$

LO result

NLO coefficient
independent of scale

all **scale uncertainty**
from strong coupling

suppose we want to choose a different scale Q – what do we need to do?

recall: $$\alpha_s(\mu_r^2) = \frac{\alpha_s(Q^2)}{1 + 2b_0\alpha_s(Q^2)\ln(\mu_r/Q)}$$

coupling small
expand

$$\approx \alpha_s(Q^2) - 2b_0\,\alpha_s^2(Q^2)\,\ln(\mu_r/Q)$$

plug back into σ^{NLO} $$= \sigma_{q\bar{q}}\left(1 + c_1\,\alpha_s(Q) - 2c_1\,b_0 \ln\frac{\mu_R}{Q}\,\alpha_s^2(Q) + \mathcal{O}\left(\alpha_s^3\right)\right)$$

variation of scale
introduces NNLO piece

explicit example: scale dependence of e^+e^- ⟶> jets

recall: at NLO we have $\sigma^{\rm NLO}(\mu_R) = \sigma_{q\bar{q}}\left(1 + c_1\,\alpha_s(\mu_R)\right)$

LO result

NLO coefficient independent of scale

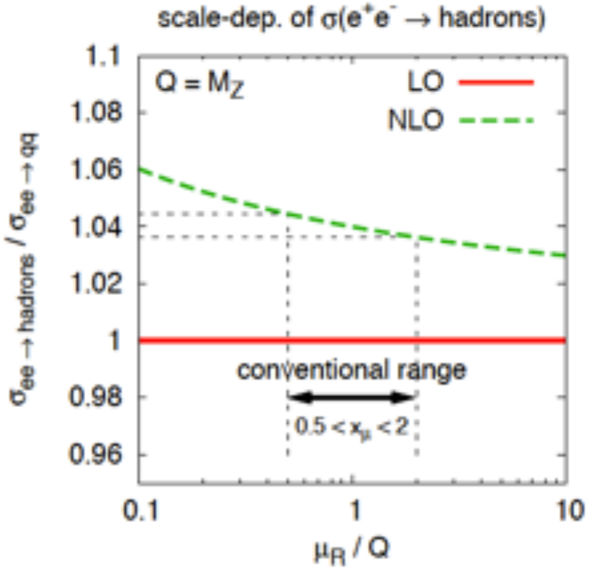
all **scale uncertainty** from strong coupling

suppose we want to choose a different scale Q – what do we need to do?

recall: $\alpha_s(\mu_r^2) = \dfrac{\alpha_s(Q^2)}{1 + 2b_0\alpha_s(Q^2)\ln(\mu_r/Q)}$ coupling small expand $\approx \alpha_s(Q^2) - 2b_0\,\alpha_s^2(Q^2)\,\ln(\mu_r/Q)$

plug back into $\sigma^{\rm NLO}$ $= \sigma_{q\bar{q}}\left(1 + c_1\,\alpha_s(Q) - 2c_1 b_0 \ln\frac{\mu_R}{Q}\,\alpha_s^2(Q) + \mathcal{O}\left(\alpha_s^3\right)\right)$

variation of scale introduces NNLO piece



LO is a pure el-mag process, no α_s , no scales

explicit example: scale dependence of e^+e^- —> jets

recall: at NLO we have $\sigma^{\rm NLO}(\mu_R) = \sigma_{q\bar{q}}\left(1 + c_1\, \alpha_s(\mu_R)\right)$

LO result

NLO coefficient independent of scale

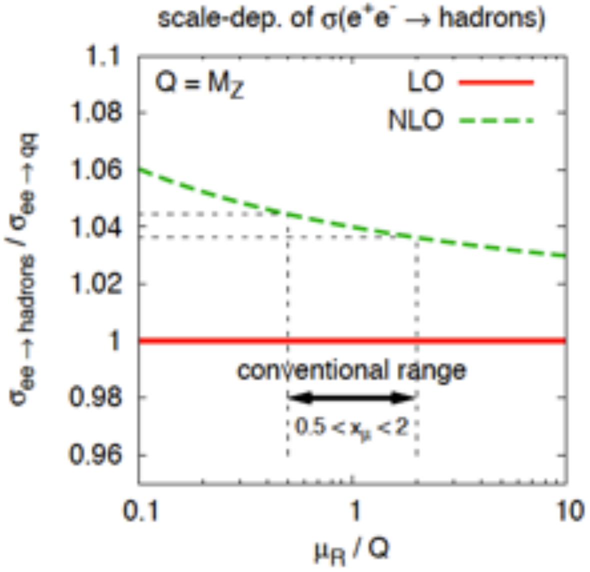
all **scale uncertainty** from strong coupling

suppose we want to choose a different scale Q – what do we need to do?

recall: $\alpha_s(\mu_r^2) = \dfrac{\alpha_s(Q^2)}{1 + 2b_0\alpha_s(Q^2)\ln(\mu_r/Q)}$ coupling small expand $\approx \alpha_s(Q^2) - 2b_0\,\alpha_s^2(Q^2)\,\ln(\mu_r/Q)$

plug back into $\sigma^{\rm NLO}$ $= \sigma_{q\bar{q}}\left(1 + c_1\,\alpha_s(Q) - 2c_1 b_0 \ln\dfrac{\mu_R}{Q}\,\alpha_s^2(Q) + \mathcal{O}\left(\alpha_s^3\right)\right)$

variation of scale introduces NNLO piece



LO is a pure el-mag process, no α_s , no scales

note: the scale ambiguity gets amplified if we ask for more than two jets at LO

$\alpha_s^n(\mu_r) \approx \alpha_s^n(Q^2)(1 - 2n\, b_0\, \alpha_s(Q^2)\,\ln(\mu_r/Q) + \ldots)$

explicit example - cont'd

next calculate full NNLO result:

$$\sigma^{\mathrm{NNLO}}(\mu_R) = \sigma_{q\bar{q}}\ \left[1\ +\ c_1\,\alpha_s(\mu_R) + c_2(\mu_R)\alpha_s^2(\mu_R)\right]$$

NNLO term starts to depend on the scale

explicit example - cont'd

next calculate full NNLO result:

$$\sigma^{\mathrm{NNLO}}(\mu_R) = \sigma_{q\bar{q}}\left[1 + c_1\,\alpha_s(\mu_R) + c_2(\mu_R)\alpha_s^2(\mu_R)\right]$$

NNLO term starts to depend on the scale

in fact c_2 must (and will !) cancel the scale ambiguity found at NLO:

$$c_2(\mu_R) = c_2(Q) + 2c_1\,b_0 \ln\frac{\mu_R}{Q}$$

explicit example - cont'd

next calculate full NNLO result:

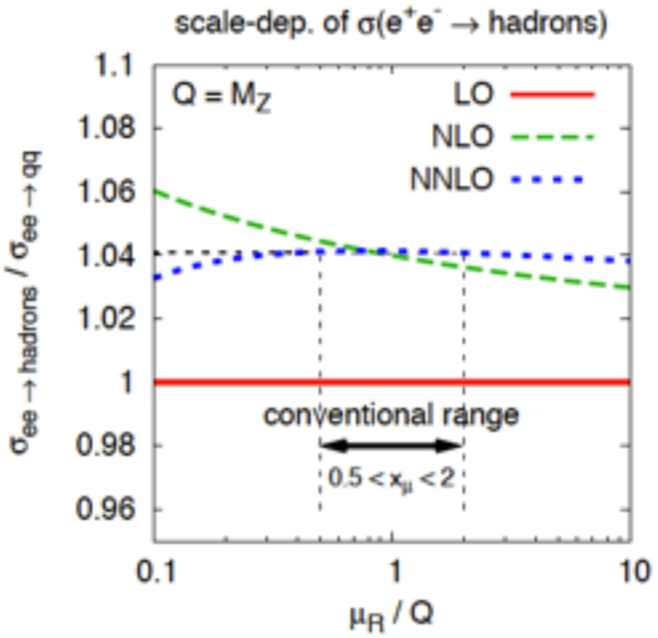
$$\sigma^{\rm NNLO}(\mu_R) = \sigma_{q\bar{q}}\left[1 + c_1\,\alpha_s(\mu_R) + c_2(\mu_R)\alpha_s^2(\mu_R)\right]$$

NNLO term starts to
depend on the scale

in fact c_2 must (and will !) cancel the scale ambiguity found at NLO:

$$c_2(\mu_R) = c_2(Q) + 2c_1\,b_0 \ln\frac{\mu_R}{Q}$$

such that the residual scale dependence is now $O(\alpha_s^3)$



explicit example - cont'd

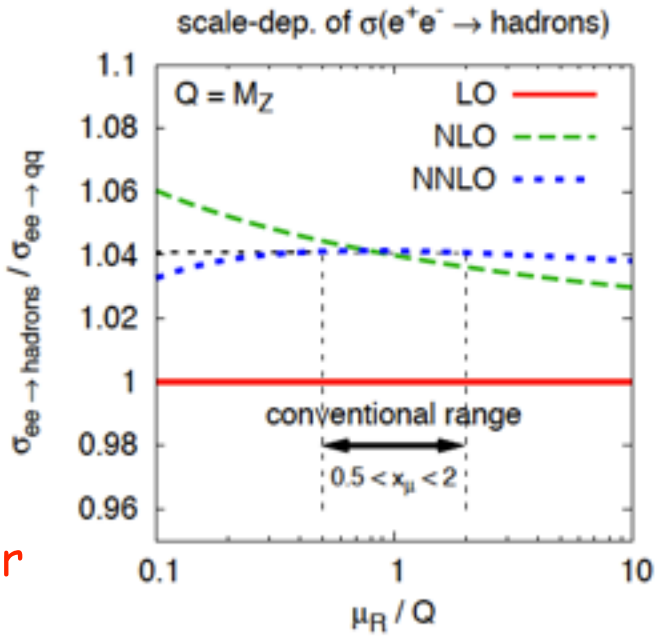
next calculate full NNLO result:

$$\sigma^{\mathrm{NNLO}}(\mu_R) = \sigma_{q\bar{q}}\left[1 + c_1\,\alpha_s(\mu_R) + c_2(\mu_R)\alpha_s^2(\mu_R)\right]$$

NNLO term starts to
depend on the scale

in fact c_2 must (and will !) cancel the scale ambiguity found at NLO:

$$c_2(\mu_R) = c_2(Q) + 2c_1\,b_0 \ln\frac{\mu_R}{Q}$$



such that the residual scale dependence is now $O(\alpha_s^3)$

at all orders the scale dependence would disappear

explicit example - cont'd

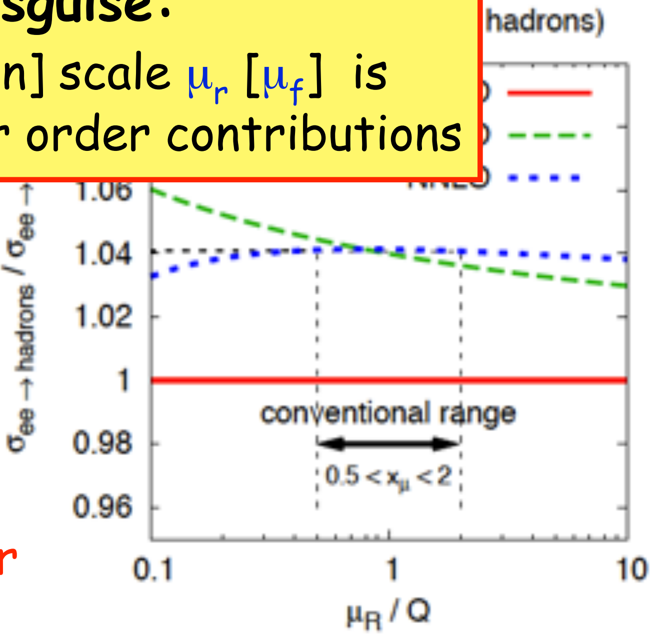
next calculate full NNLO result:

$$\sigma^{\mathrm{NNLO}}(\mu_R) = \sigma_{q\bar{q}}\left[1 + c_1\,\alpha_s(\mu_R) + c_2(\mu_R)\alpha_s^2(\mu_R)\right]$$

NNLO term starts to depend on the scale

in fact c_2 must (and will !) cancel the scale ambiguity found at NLO:

scale "ambiguity" is a blessing in disguise:
varying the renormalization [factorization] scale μ_r [μ_f] is a way of guessing yet uncalculated higher order contributions

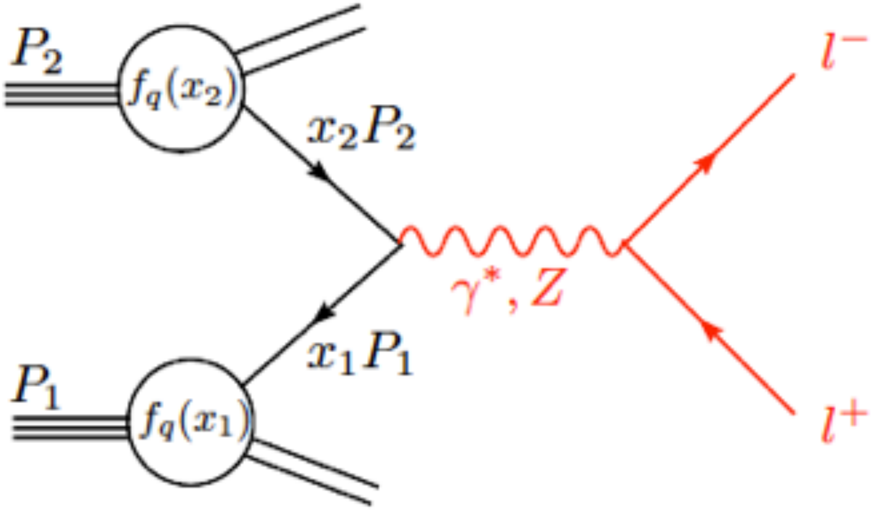


such that the residual scale dependence is now $O(\alpha_s^3)$

at all orders the scale dependence would disappear

example from hadronic collisions

take the "classic" Drell Yan process



- dominated by quarks in the initial-state
- at LO no colored particles in the final-state
- clean experimental signature
- at LO an electromagnetic process (low rate)
- one of the best studied processes (known to NNLO)

as "clean" as it can get at a hadron collider

uncertainties for the Drell Yan process – cont'd

at NLO:

LO piece

$$\sigma^{\mathrm{NLO}}_{pp\to Z} = \sum_{i,j} \int dx_1 dx_2\, f_i(x_1,\mu_F^2)\, f_j(x_2,\mu_F^2)\, [\hat{\sigma}_{0,ij\to Z}(x_1,x_2) + \\ + \alpha_s(\mu_R)\hat{\sigma}_{1,ij\to Z}(x_1,x_2,\mu_F)]$$

- no α_s at LO but μ_F appears in PDFs
- α_s enters at NLO and hence μ_R
- NLO terms reduce dep. on μ_F

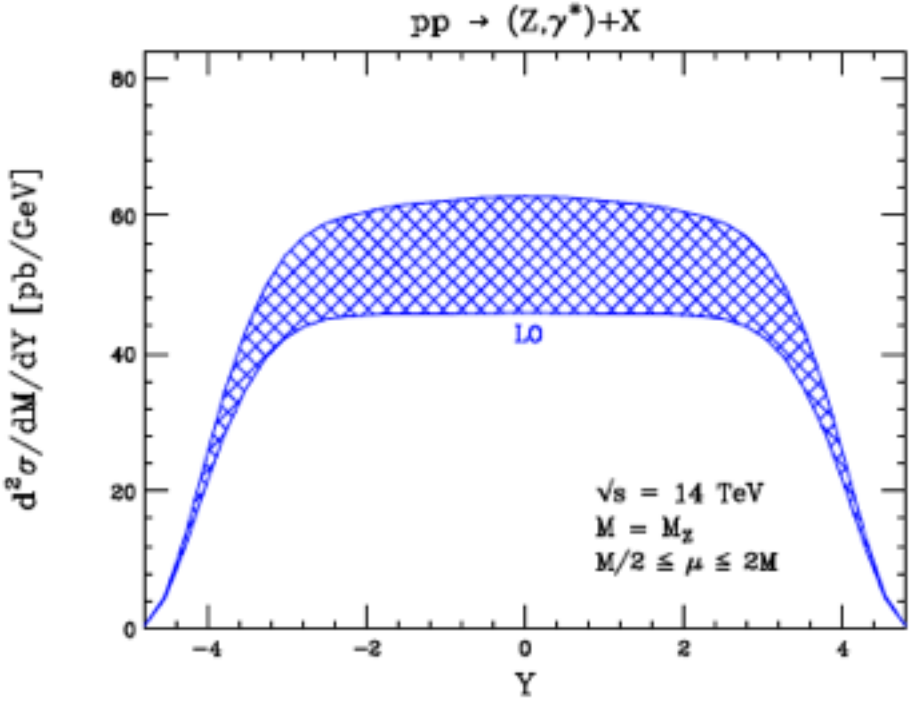
uncertainties for the Drell Yan process – cont’d

at NLO:

LO piece

$$\sigma^{\text{NLO}}_{pp\to Z} = \sum_{i,j} \int dx_1 dx_2\, f_i(x_1,\mu_F^2)\, f_j(x_2,\mu_F^2)\, [\hat{\sigma}_{0,ij\to Z}(x_1,x_2) + \\ + \alpha_s(\mu_R)\hat{\sigma}_{1,ij\to Z}(x_1,x_2,\mu_F)]$$

- no α_s at LO but μ_F appears in PDFs
- α_s enters at NLO and hence μ_R
- NLO terms reduce dep. on μ_F
- one often varies μ_F and μ_R together
  (but that can underestimate uncertainties)



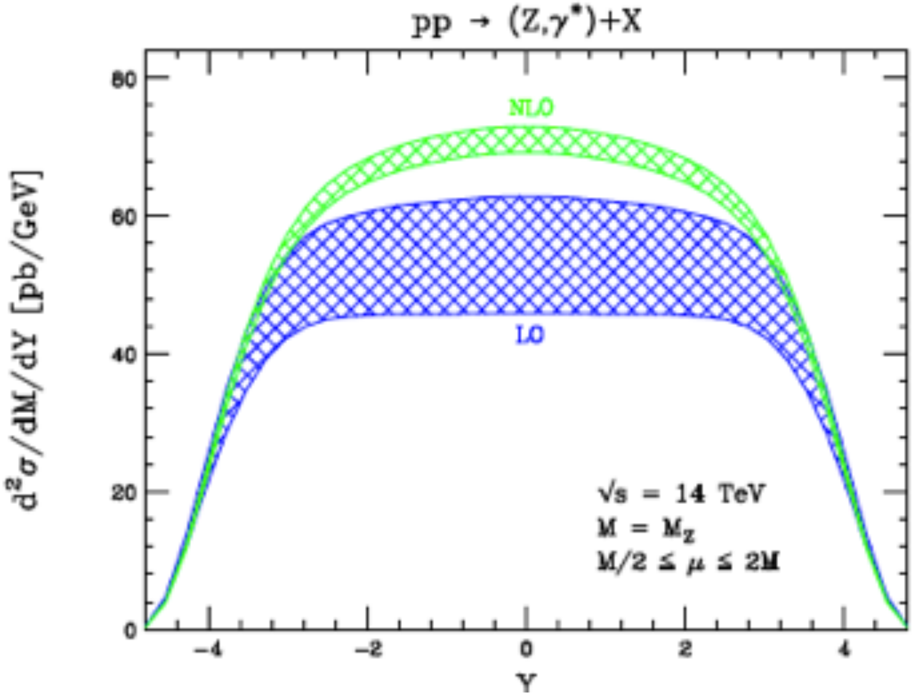
uncertainties for the Drell Yan process – cont'd

at NLO:

LO piece

$$\sigma^{\text{NLO}}_{pp\to Z} = \sum_{i,j} \int dx_1 dx_2\, f_i(x_1,\mu_F^2)\, f_j(x_2,\mu_F^2)\, [\hat{\sigma}_{0,ij\to Z}(x_1,x_2) + \\ + \alpha_s(\mu_R)\hat{\sigma}_{1,ij\to Z}(x_1,x_2,\mu_F)]$$

- no α_S at LO but μ_F appears in PDFs
- α_s enters at NLO and hence μ_R
- NLO terms reduce dep. on μ_F
- one often varies μ_F and μ_R together
  (but that can underestimate uncertainties)
- NLO corrections large but
  scale dependence is reduced



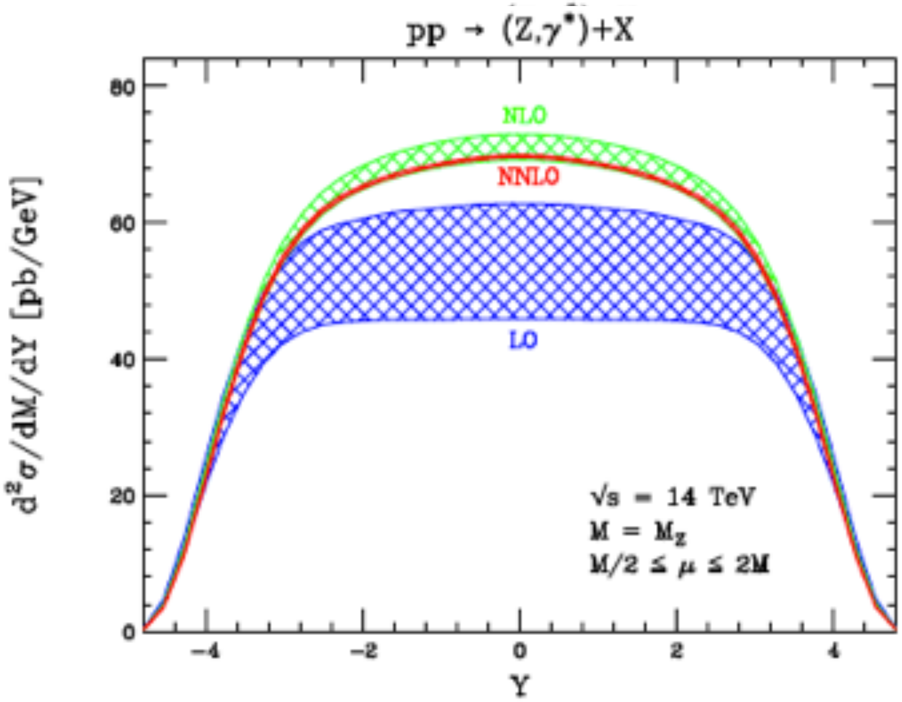
uncertainties for the Drell Yan process – cont'd

at NLO:

LO piece

$$\sigma^{\rm NLO}_{pp\to Z} = \sum_{i,j}\int dx_1 dx_2\, f_i(x_1,\mu_F^2)\, f_j(x_2,\mu_F^2)\,[\hat\sigma_{0,ij\to Z}(x_1,x_2) + \\ + \alpha_s(\mu_R)\hat\sigma_{1,ij\to Z}(x_1,x_2,\mu_F)]$$

- no α_s at LO but μ_F appears in PDFs
- α_s enters at NLO and hence μ_R
- NLO terms reduce dep. on μ_F
- one often varies μ_F and μ_R together
  (but that can underestimate uncertainties)
- NLO corrections large but
  scale dependence is reduced
- even better at NNLO



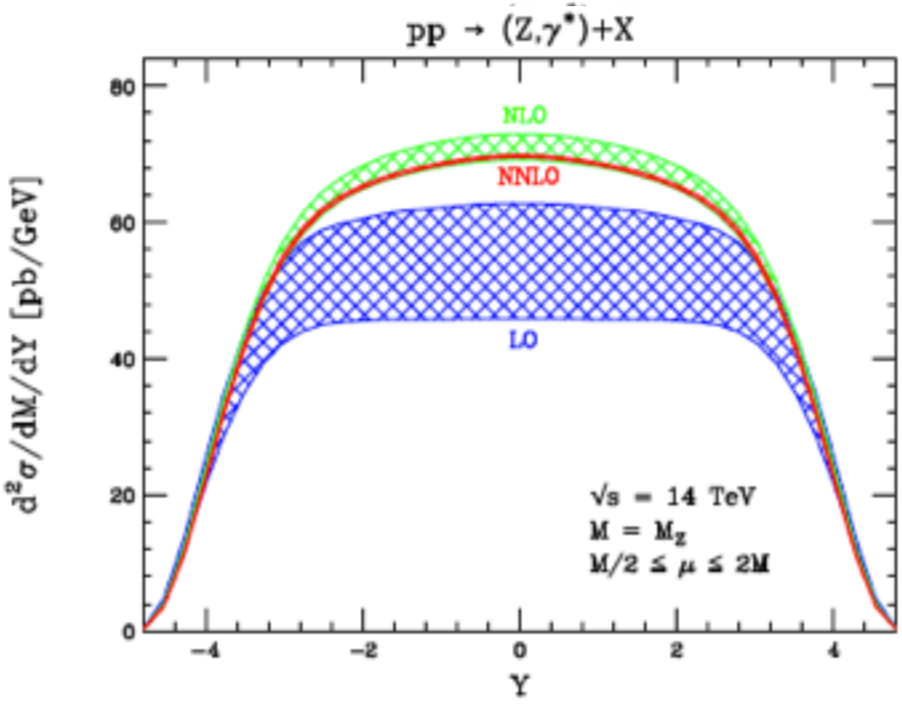
uncertainties for the Drell Yan process – cont'd

at NLO:

LO piece

$$\sigma^{\mathrm{NLO}}_{pp\to Z} = \sum_{i,j} \int dx_1 dx_2\, f_i(x_1,\mu_F^2)\, f_j(x_2,\mu_F^2)\, [\hat{\sigma}_{0,ij\to Z}(x_1,x_2) + \\ + \alpha_s(\mu_R)\hat{\sigma}_{1,ij\to Z}(x_1,x_2,\mu_F)]$$

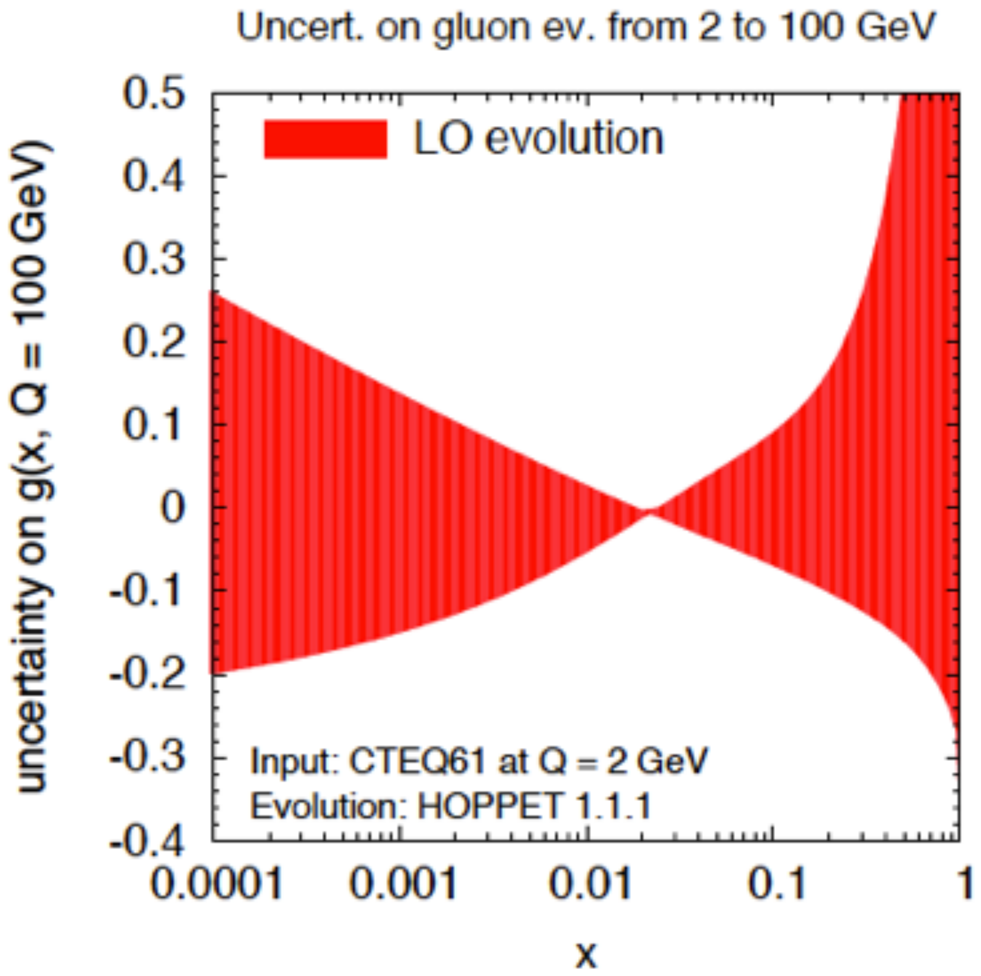
- no α_S at LO but μ_F appears in PDFs
- α_s enters at NLO and hence μ_R
- NLO terms reduce dep. on μ_F
- one often varies μ_F and μ_R together
  (but that can underestimate uncertainties)
- NLO corrections large but scale dependence is reduced
- even better at NNLO



perturbative accuracy of O(percent) achieved

changing scales in DGLAP evolution

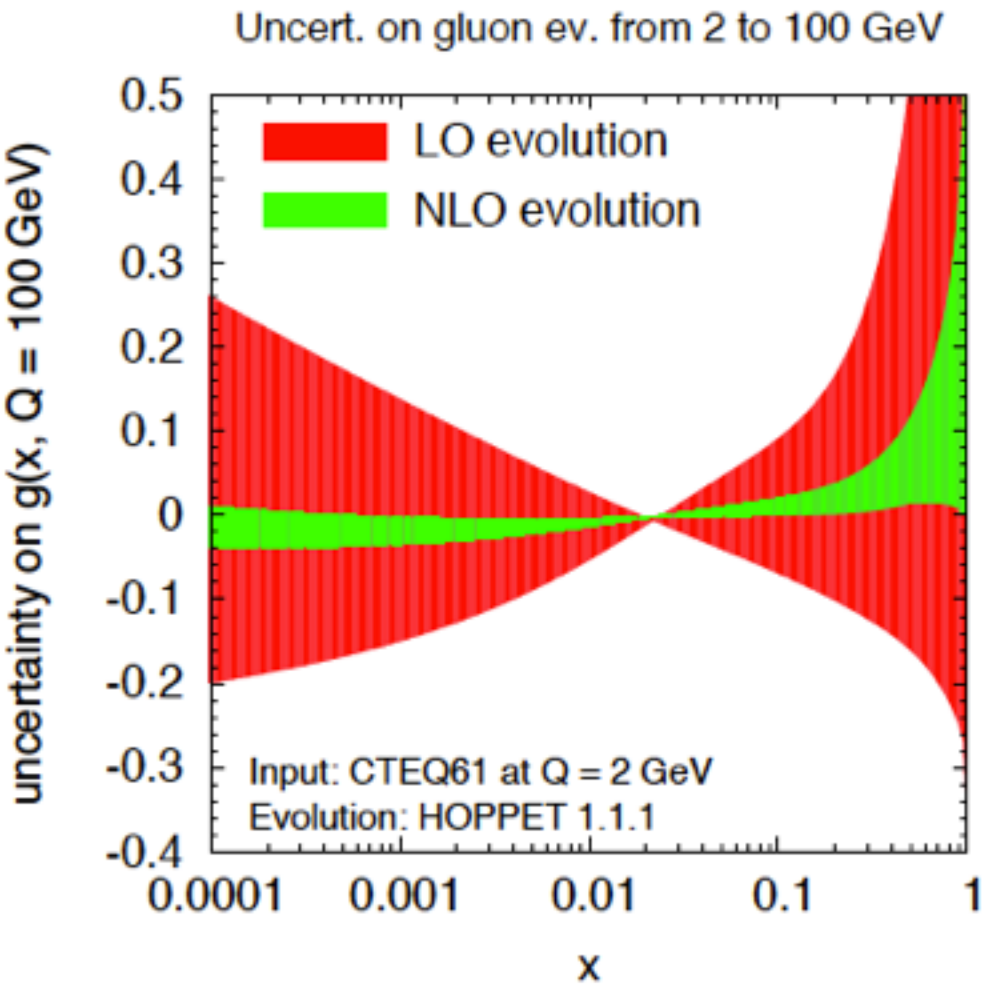
estimate by G. Salam: vary the scale of α_s in the DGLAP kernel



- about 30% in LO

changing scales in DGLAP evolution

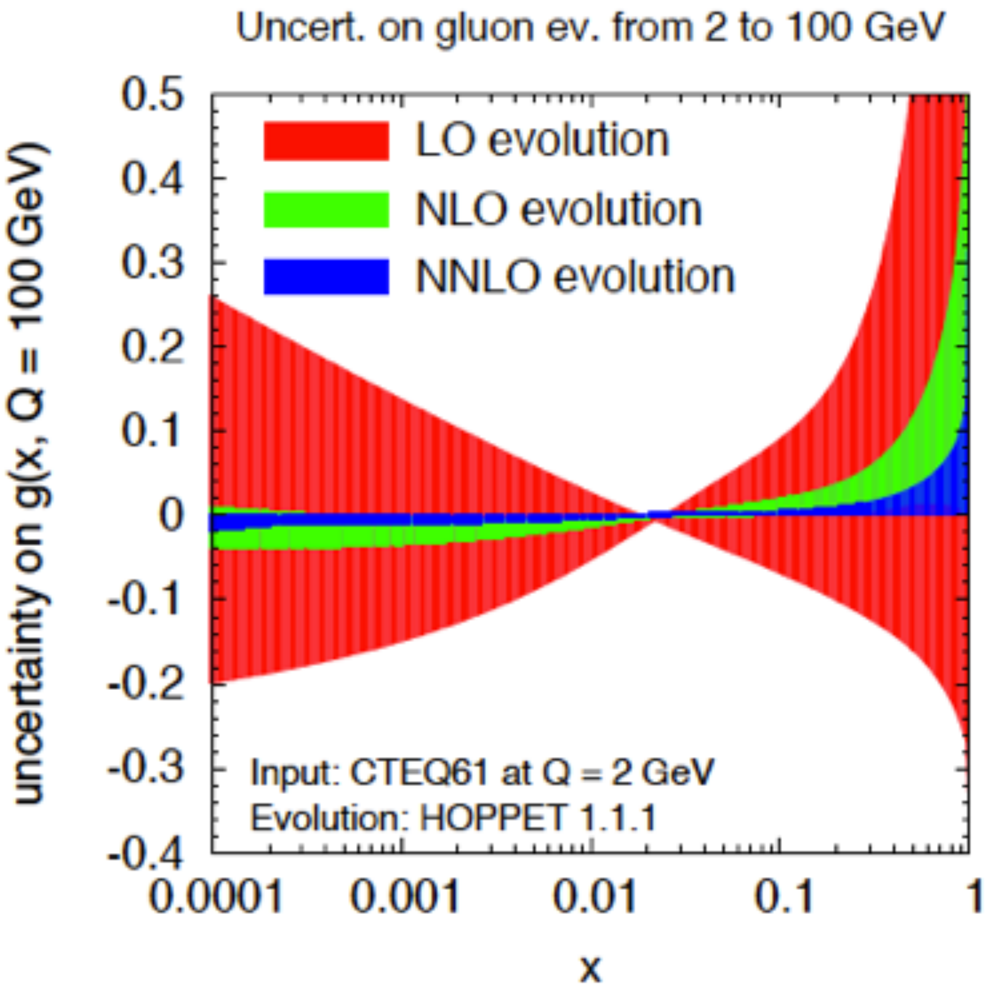
estimate by G. Salam: vary the scale of α_s in the DGLAP kernel



- about 30% in LO
- down to about 5% in NLO

changing scales in DGLAP evolution

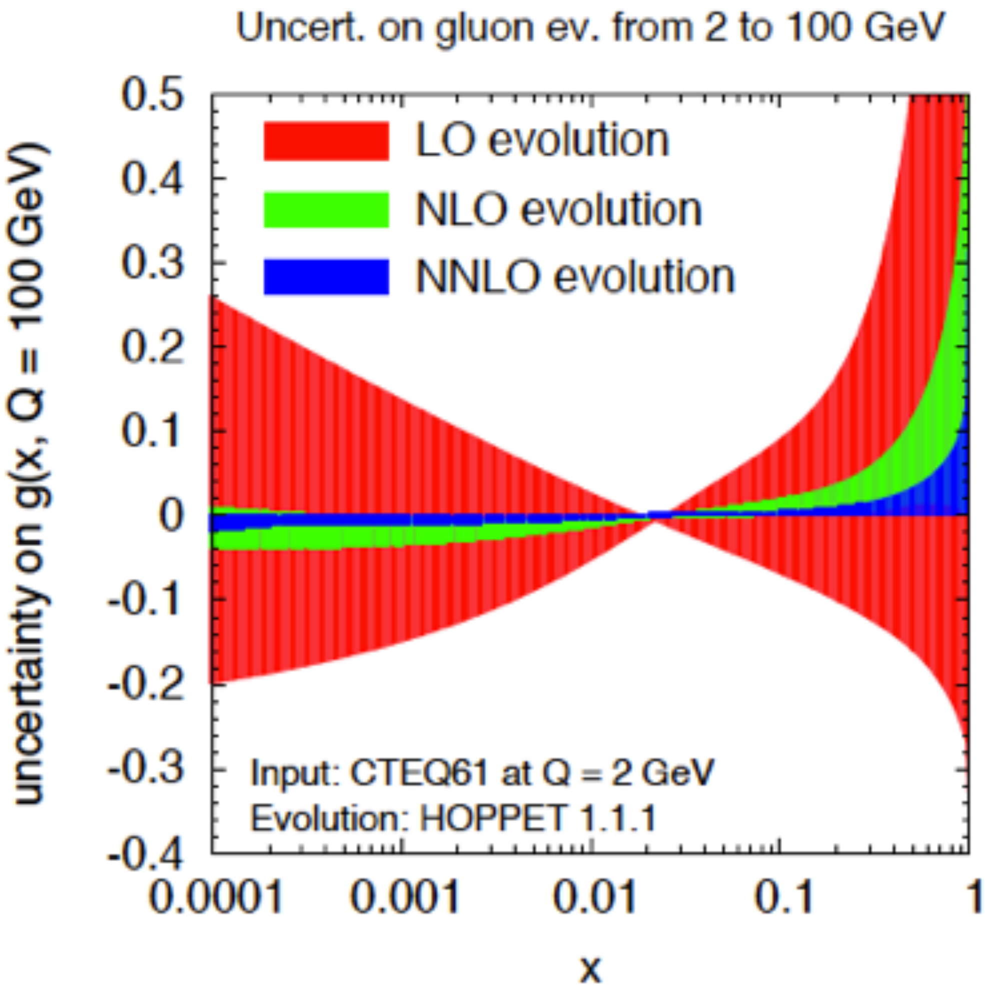
estimate by G. Salam: vary the scale of α_s in the DGLAP kernel



- about 30% in LO
- down to about 5% in NLO
- NNLO brings it down to 2%

changing scales in DGLAP evolution

estimate by G. Salam: vary the scale of α_s in the DGLAP kernel



- about 30% in LO
- down to about 5% in NLO
- NNLO brings it down to 2%

  which is about the precision of the HERA DIS data

other motivations for NLO and beyond

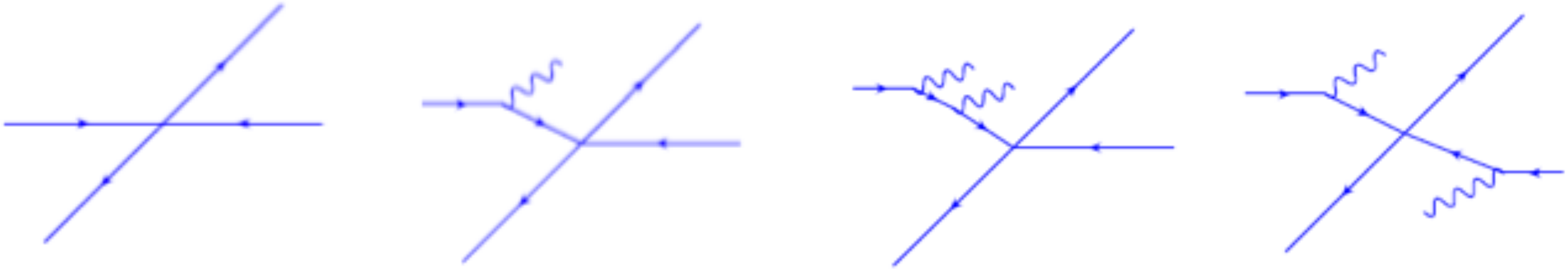
- much more realistic final states, e.g., more partons can form a jet

LO NLO NNLO

other motivations for NLO and beyond

- much more realistic final states, e.g., more partons can form a jet

- higher orders generate non-trivial k_T effects/dependence



state of the art – the current precision frontier

	2->1	2->2	2->3	2->4	2->5	2->6
1	LO					
α	NLO	LO				
α	NNLO	NLO	LO			
α		NNLO	NLO	LO		
α			NNLO	NLO	LO	
α					NLO	LO

green: done

red-green: partially done

red: barely touched yet

table presumably
already outdated

state of the art – the current precision frontier

	2->1	2->2	2->3	2->4	2->5	2->6
1	LO					
α	NLO	LO				
α	NNLO	NLO	LO			
α		NNLO	NLO	LO		
α			NNLO	NLO	LO	
α					NLO	LO

green: done

red-green: partially done

red: barely touched yet

table presumably
already outdated

LO matrix elements up to 2 → 8 and phase space integration (automatically generated); interfaced with parton shower; large μ uncertainties though

state of the art – the current precision frontier

	2->1	2->2	2->3	2->4	2->5	2->6
1	LO					
α	NLO	LO				
α	NNLO	NLO	LO			
α		NNLO	NLO	LO		
α			NNLO	NLO	LO	
α					NLO	LO

green: done

red-green: partially done

red: barely touched yet

table presumably already outdated

LO matrix elements up to 2 → 8 and phase space integration (automatically generated); interfaced with parton shower; large μ uncertainties though

NLO all 2 → 2 SM/MSSM processes; matching with parton shower started

NLO some 2 → 3 results: pp → jjj, Hjj, VVV, …

some 2 → 4 results: pp → VVjj, Hjjj, ttbb, ttjj,Vjjj, VVbb; also Wjjjj

state of the art – the current precision frontier

	2->1	2->2	2->3	2->4	2->5	2->6
1	LO					
α	NLO	LO				
α	NNLO	NLO	LO			
α		NNLO	NLO	LO		
α			NNLO	NLO	LO	
α					NLO	LO

green: done
red-green: partially done
red: barely touched yet

table presumably
already outdated

LO matrix elements up to 2 → 8 and phase space integration (automatically generated); interfaced with parton shower; large μ uncertainties though

NLO all 2 → 2 SM/MSSM processes; matching with parton shower started
some 2 → 3 results: pp → jjj, Hjj, VVV, …

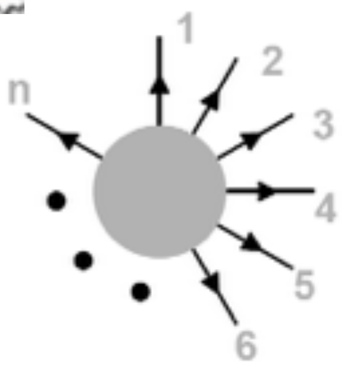
NLO some 2 → 4 results: pp → VVjj, Hjjj, ttbb, ttjj,Vjjj, VVbb; also Wjjjj

NNLO Drell-Yan type 2 → 1 processes (total and differential cross sections);
splitting functions; e^+e^- -> jjj; progress towards general 2 → 2 processes

NNLO including heavy flavor production (σ_{tot} at NNLO done)

new computational techniques & tools emerging

traditional Feynman diagram technique still going strong
but becomes very clumsy for high-multiplicity processes:



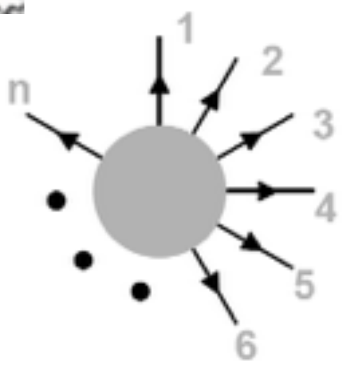
n	# diags
4	4
5	25
6	220
7	2485
8	34300
9	559405
10	10525900

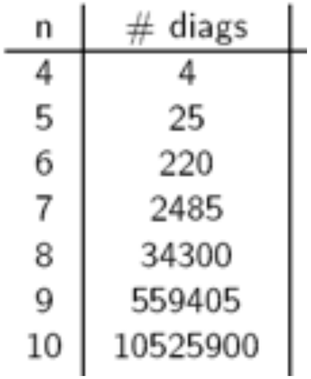
rapid growth in complexity,
but final answers often very simple

→ new ways to compute amplitudes?

new computational techniques & tools emerging

traditional Feynman diagram technique still going strong
but becomes very clumsy for high-multiplicity processes:





n	# diags
4	4
5	25
6	220
7	2485
8	34300
9	559405
10	10525900

rapid growth in complexity,
but final answers often very simple

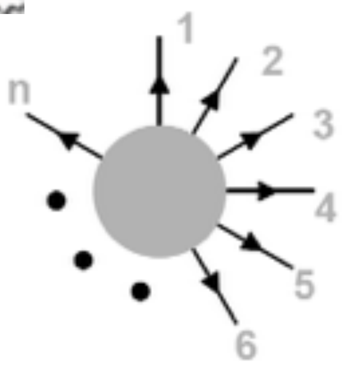
→ new ways to compute amplitudes?

ideas:

- use analytical properties of amplitudes (unitarity) as calculational tools
- build amplitudes from simpler amplitudes with fewer legs by recursion
- get "loops from trees"

new computational techniques & tools emerging

traditional Feynman diagram technique still going strong
but becomes very clumsy for high-multiplicity processes:



n	# diags
4	4
5	25
6	220
7	2485
8	34300
9	559405
10	10525900

rapid growth in complexity,
but final answers often very simple

→ new ways to compute amplitudes?

ideas:

- use analytical properties of amplitudes (unitarity) as calculational tools
- build amplitudes from simpler amplitudes with fewer legs by recursion
- get "loops from trees"

amazing progress in a short time (few years) guided by two principles:

The best way to have a good idea is to have a lot of ideas --- Linus Pauling
Those are my principles, and if you don't like them … well, I have others --- Groucho Marx

currently aiming at full automatization at 1-loop level

new computational techniques & tools emerging

traditional Feynman diagram technique still going strong
but becomes very clumsy for high-multiplicity processes:

for some ideas, see:

Berends, Giele 1988 - recursion relations (off-shell)

Britto, Cachazo, Feng 2004 – recursion relations (on-shell) / unitarity

Cachazo, Svrcek, Witten 2004 – MHV amplitudes

Ossola, Pittau, Papadopolous 2006 – NLO loop integrals w/o doing integrals

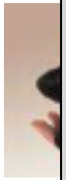
recent report on unitarity method:

Ellis, Kunszt, Melnikov, Zanderighi, arXiv:1105.4319

ple

les?

id



ols

on

amazing progress in a short time (few years) guided by two principles:

The best way to have a good idea is to have a lot of ideas --- Linus Pauling
Those are my principles, and if you don't like them … well, I have others --- Groucho Marx

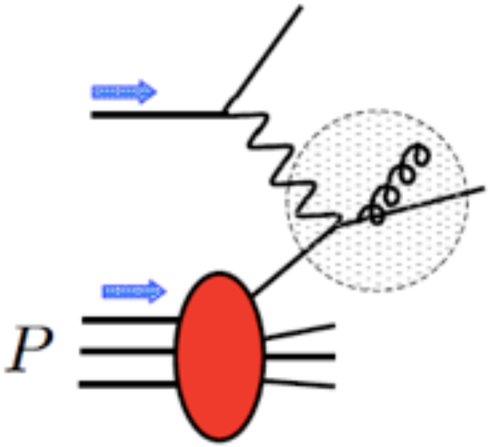
currently aiming at full automatization at 1-loop level

4-2

Anatomy of a Global QCD PDF Analysis

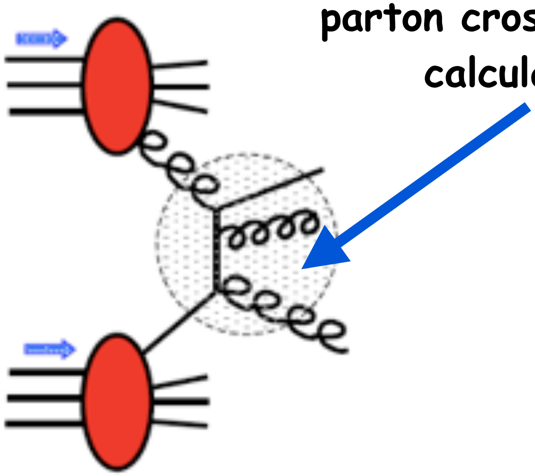
how to determine PDFs from data?

probes:



DIS

hard scale Q



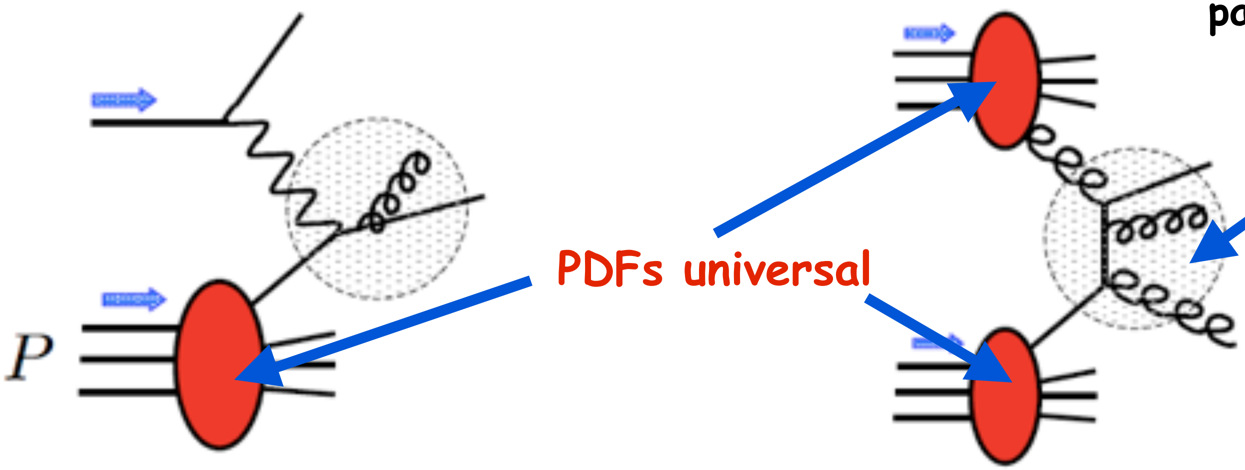
parton cross section calculable

hadron-hadron

hard scale p_T

how to determine PDFs from data?

probes:



parton cross section calculable

PDFs universal

DIS

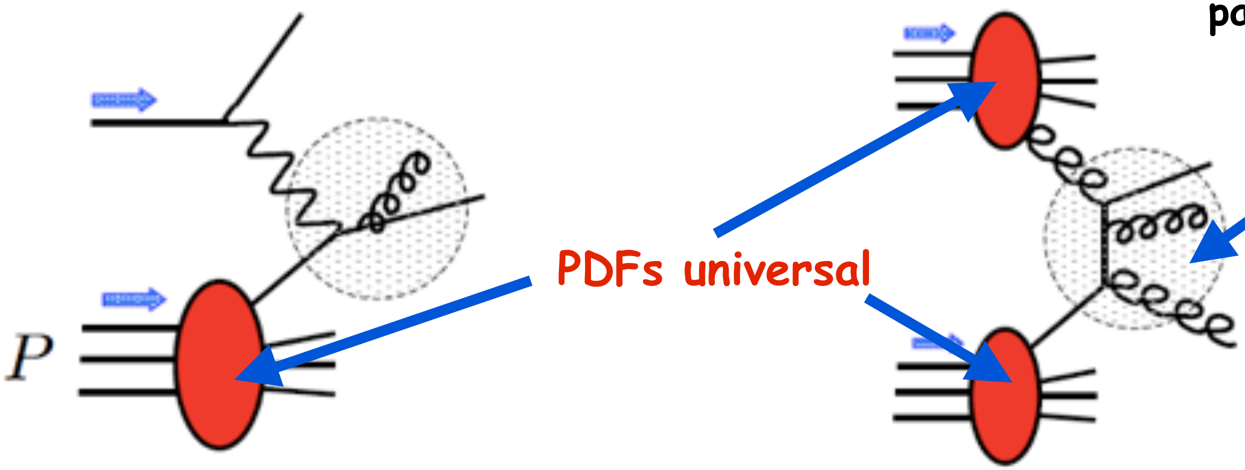
hard scale Q

hadron-hadron

hard scale p_T

how to determine PDFs from data?

probes:



PDFs universal

parton cross section calculable

DIS

hard scale Q

hadron-hadron

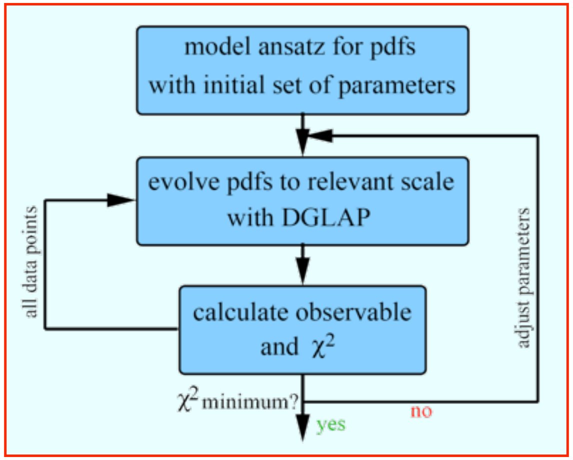
hard scale p_T

task: extract PDFs and their uncertainties (assume factorization)

- all processes tied together: universality of pdfs & Q^2 - evolution
- each reaction provides insights into different aspects and kinematics
- need at least NLO accuracy for quantitative analyses
- information on PDFs “hidden” inside complicated (multi-)convolutions

anatomy of global PDF analyses

obtain PDFs
through global χ^2 optimization



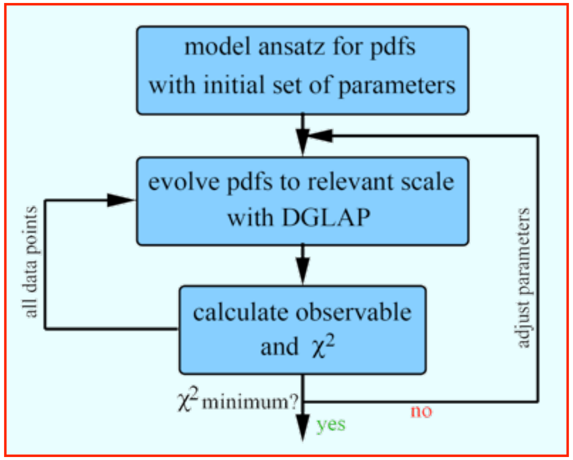
set of **optimum parameters**
for *assumed* functional form

computational challenge:

- up to O(20-30) parameters
- many sources of uncertainties
- very time-consuming NLO expressions

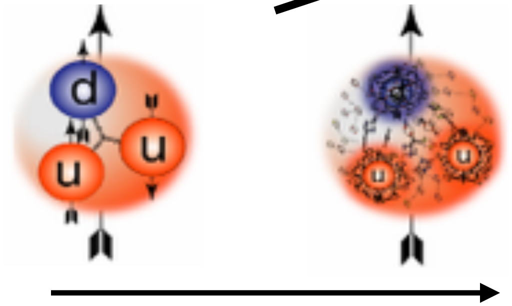
anatomy of global QCD analyses

obtain PDFs
through global χ^2 optimization



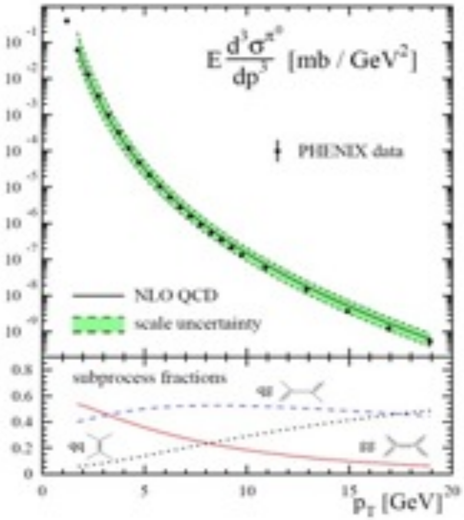
set of **optimum parameters**
for *assumed* functional form

evolution kernels



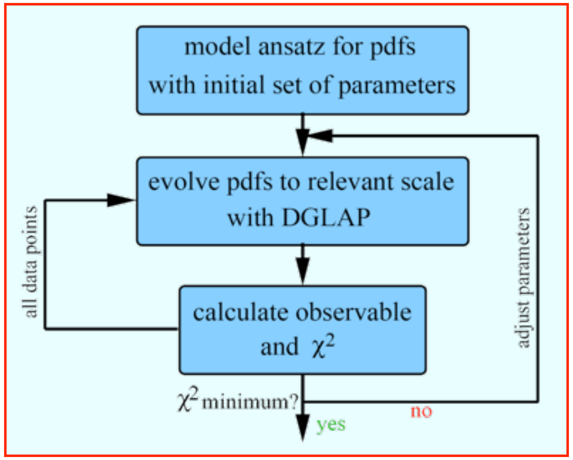
"resolution scale" μ

anatomy of global QCD analyses



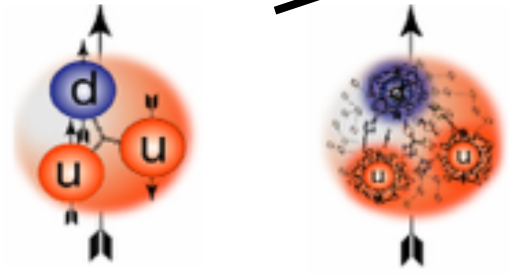
cross sections at NLO

obtain PDFs
through global χ^2 optimization



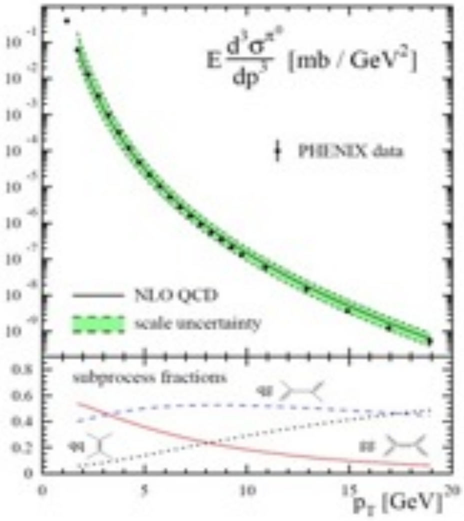
set of **optimum parameters**
for *assumed* functional form

evolution kernels



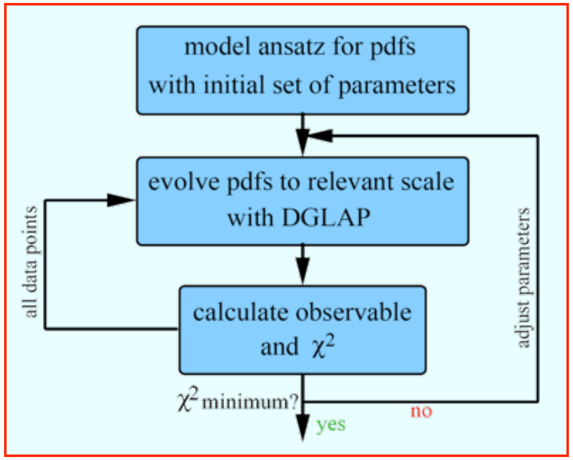
"resolution scale" μ

anatomy of global QCD analyses



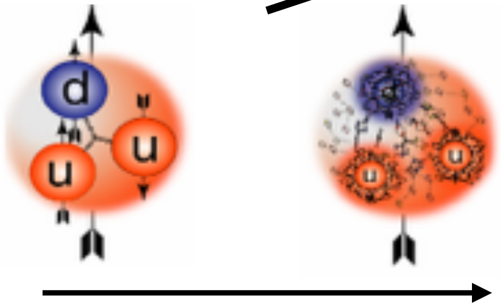
cross sections at NLO

obtain PDFs
through global χ^2 optimization



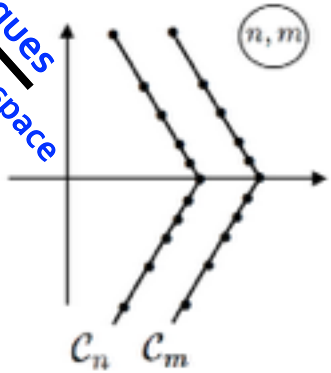
set of **optimum parameters**
for *assumed* functional form

evolution kernels

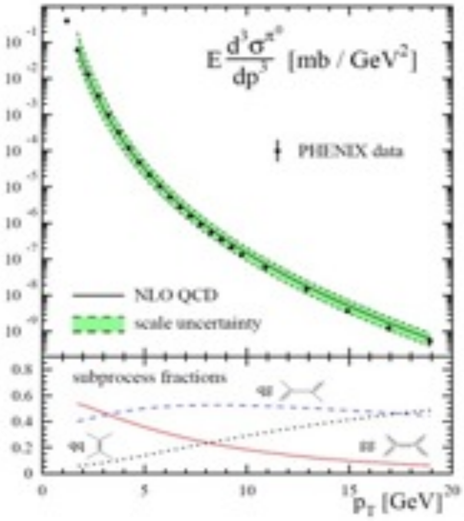


"resolution scale" μ

novel techniques
e.g. in complex Mellin space

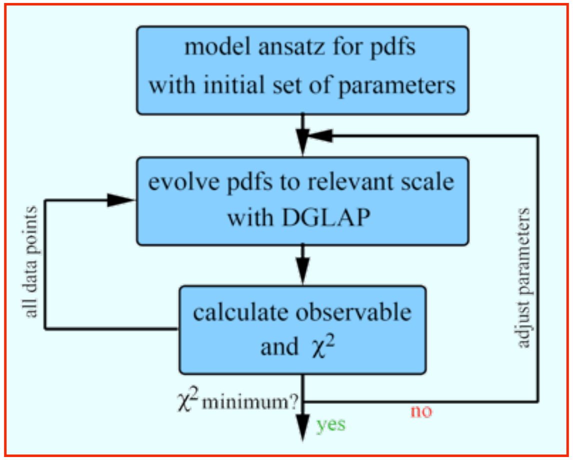


anatomy of global QCD analyses

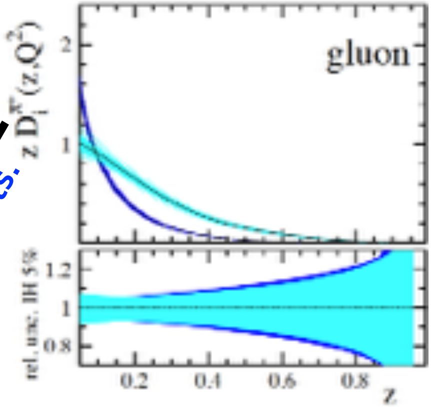


cross sections at NLO

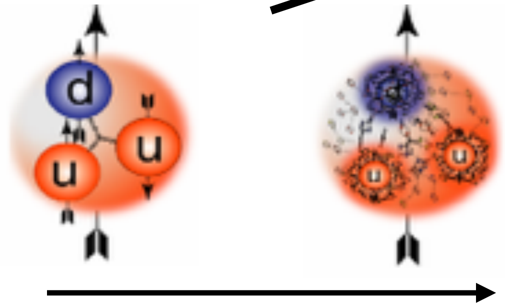
obtain PDFs
through global χ² optimization



non-pert. inputs
e.g. frag. fcts.



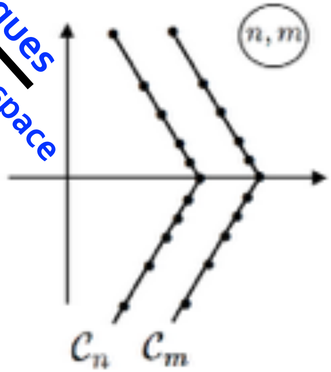
evolution kernels



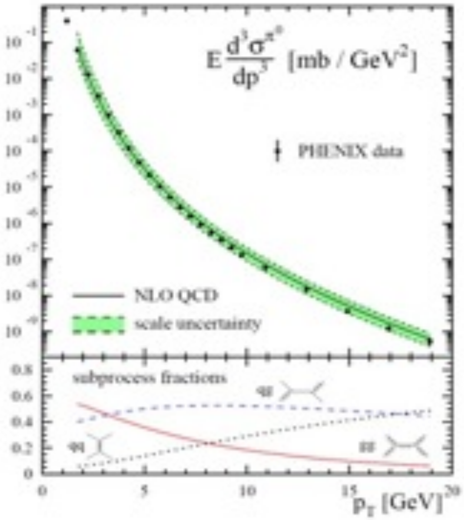
"resolution scale" μ

set of **optimum parameters**
for *assumed* functional form

novel techniques
e.g. in complex Mellin space



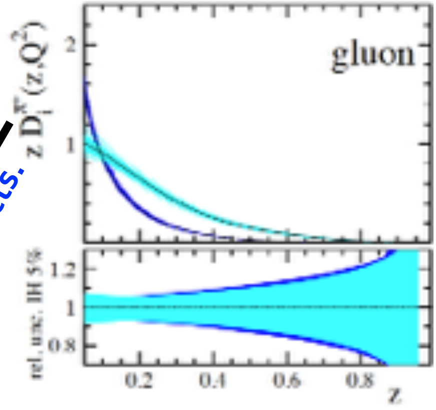
anatomy of global QCD analyses

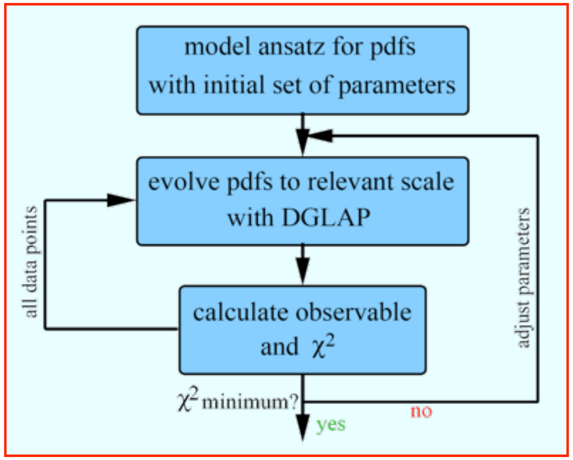


cross sections at NLO

obtain PDFs
through global χ^2 optimization

non-pert. inputs
e.g. frag. fcts.

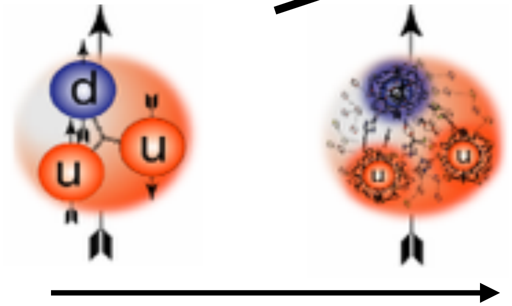




evolution kernels

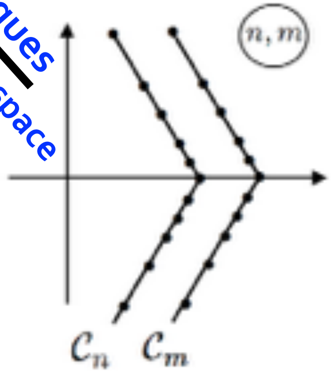
novel techniques
e.g. in complex Mellin space

set of **optimum parameters**
for *assumed* functional form



“resolution scale” μ

plus a prescription to
estimate & propagate
uncertainties



global analysis: computational challenge

- one has to deal with **O(2800) data points** from many processes and experiments
- need to determine **O(20-30) parameters** describing PDFs at μ_0
- NLO expressions often very complicated → computing time becomes excessive
  → develop **sophisticated algorithms & techniques**, e.g., based on Mellin moments
  Kosower; Vogt; Vogelsang, MS

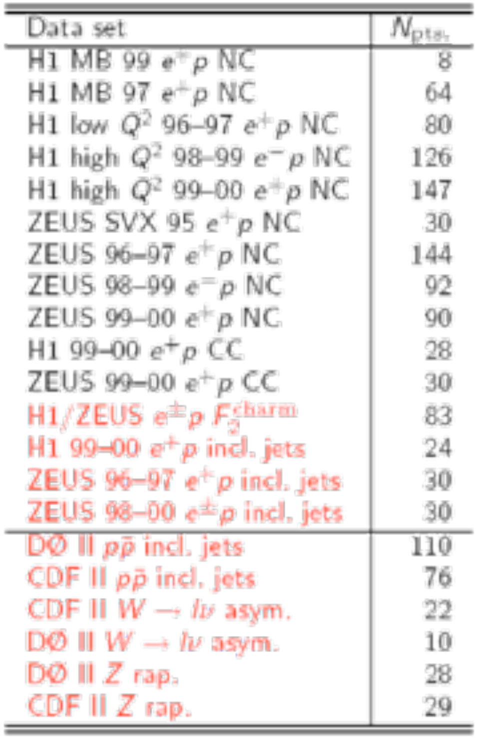
global analysis: computational challenge

- one has to deal with **O(2800) data points** from many processes and experiments
- need to determine **O(20-30) parameters** describing PDFs at μ_0
- NLO expressions often very complicated → computing time becomes excessive
  → develop **sophisticated algorithms & techniques**, e.g., based on Mellin moments

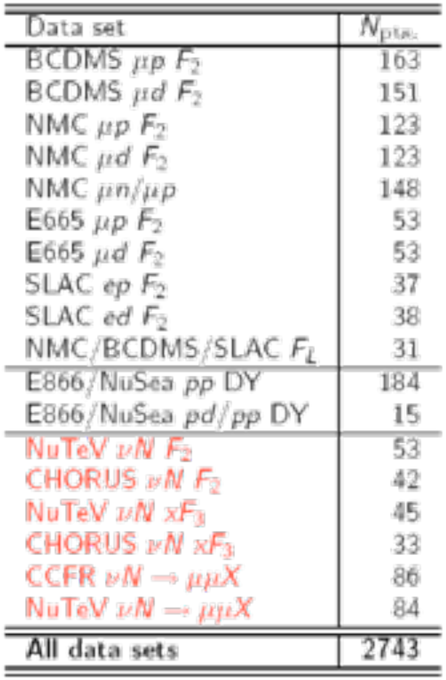
Kosower; Vogt; Vogelsang, MS

data sets & (x,Q^2) coverage used in MSTW fit

Martin, Stirling, Thorne, Watt, arXiv:0901.0002

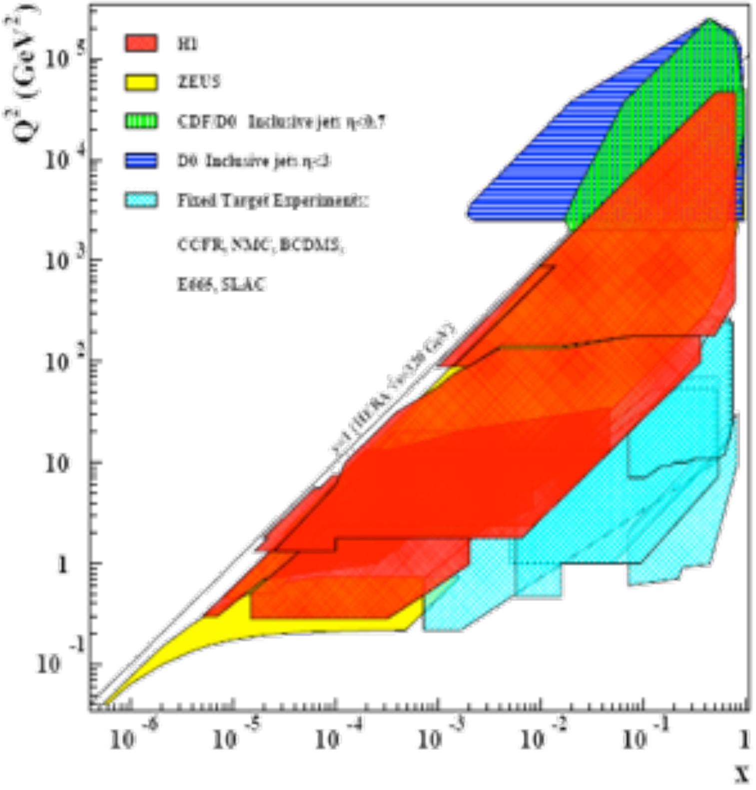


Data set	$N_{\rm pts.}$
H1 MB 99 e^+p NC	8
H1 MB 97 e^+p NC	64
H1 low Q^2 96–97 e^+p NC	80
H1 high Q^2 98–99 e^-p NC	126
H1 high Q^2 99–00 e^+p NC	147
ZEUS SVX 95 e^+p NC	30
ZEUS 96–97 e^+p NC	144
ZEUS 98–99 e^-p NC	92
ZEUS 99–00 e^+p NC	90
H1 99–00 e^+p CC	28
ZEUS 99–00 e^+p CC	30
H1/ZEUS $e^\pm p$ $F_2^{\rm charm}$	83
H1 99–00 e^+p incl. jets	24
ZEUS 96–97 e^+p incl. jets	30
ZEUS 98–00 $e^\pm p$ incl. jets	30
DØ II $p\bar{p}$ incl. jets	110
CDF II $p\bar{p}$ incl. jets	76
CDF II $W \to l\nu$ asym.	22
DØ II $W \to l\nu$ asym.	10
DØ II Z rap.	28
CDF II Z rap.	29

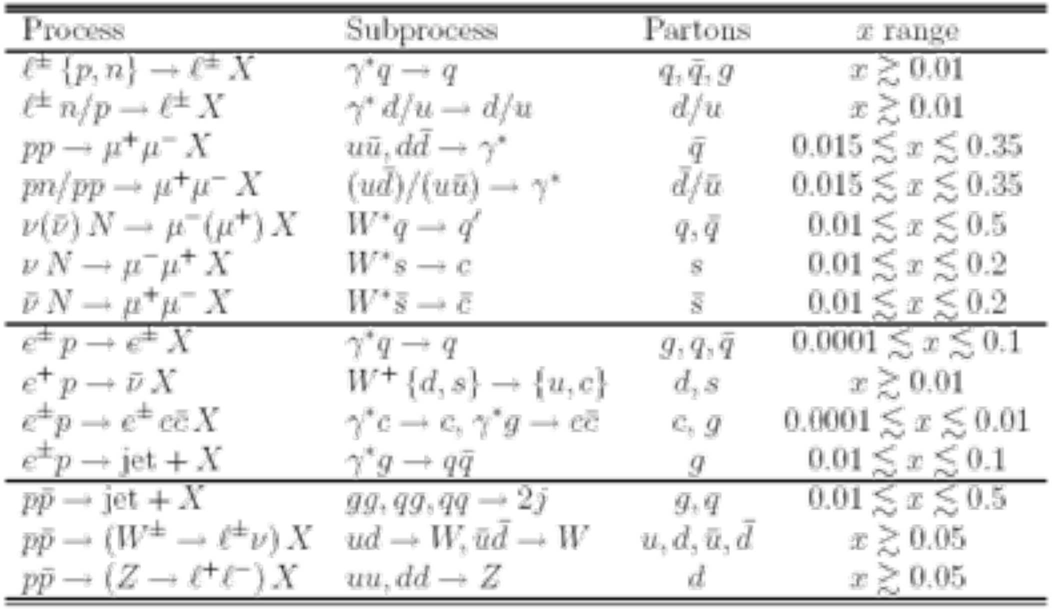


Data set	$N_{\rm pts.}$
BCDMS μp F_2	163
BCDMS μd F_2	151
NMC μp F_2	123
NMC μd F_2	123
NMC $\mu n/\mu p$	148
E665 μp F_2	53
E665 μd F_2	53
SLAC ep F_2	37
SLAC ed F_2	38
NMC/BCDMS/SLAC F_L	31
E866/NuSea pp DY	184
E866/NuSea pd/pp DY	15
NuTeV νN F_2	53
CHORUS νN F_2	42
NuTeV νN xF_3	45
CHORUS νN xF_3	33
CCFR $\nu N \to \mu\mu X$	86
NuTeV $\nu N \to \mu\mu X$	84
All data sets	**2743**

- Red = New w.r.t. MRST 2006 fit.



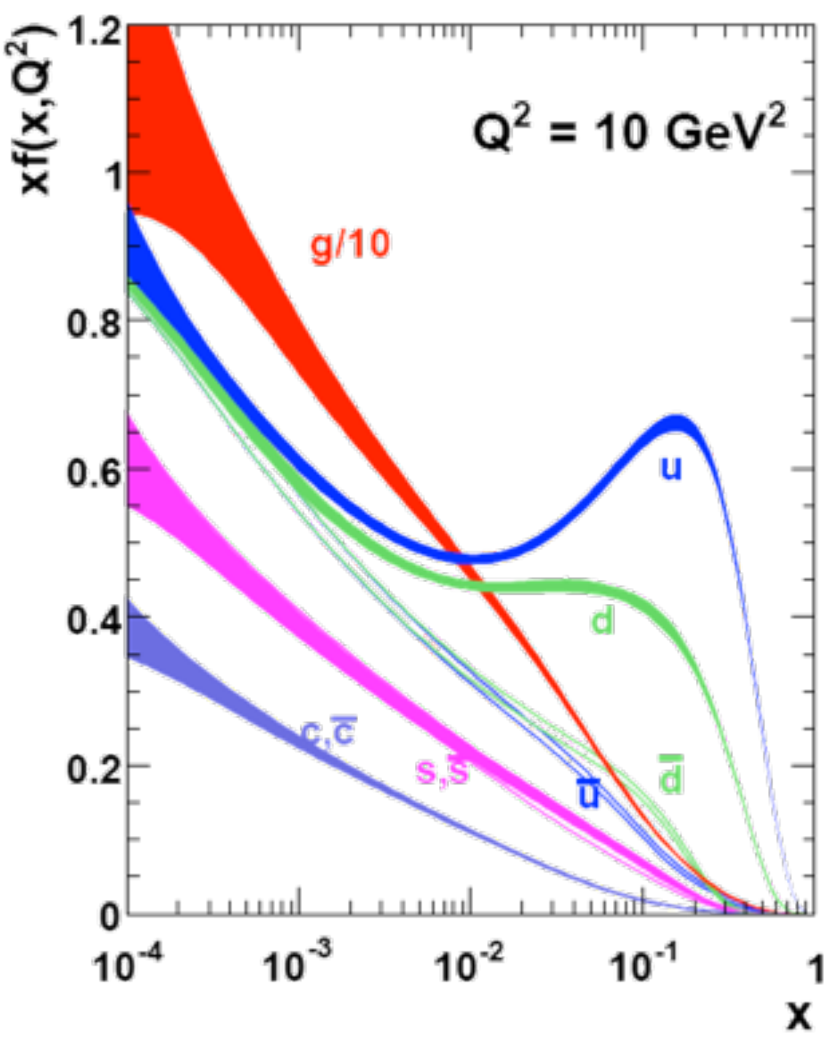
which data sets determine which partons



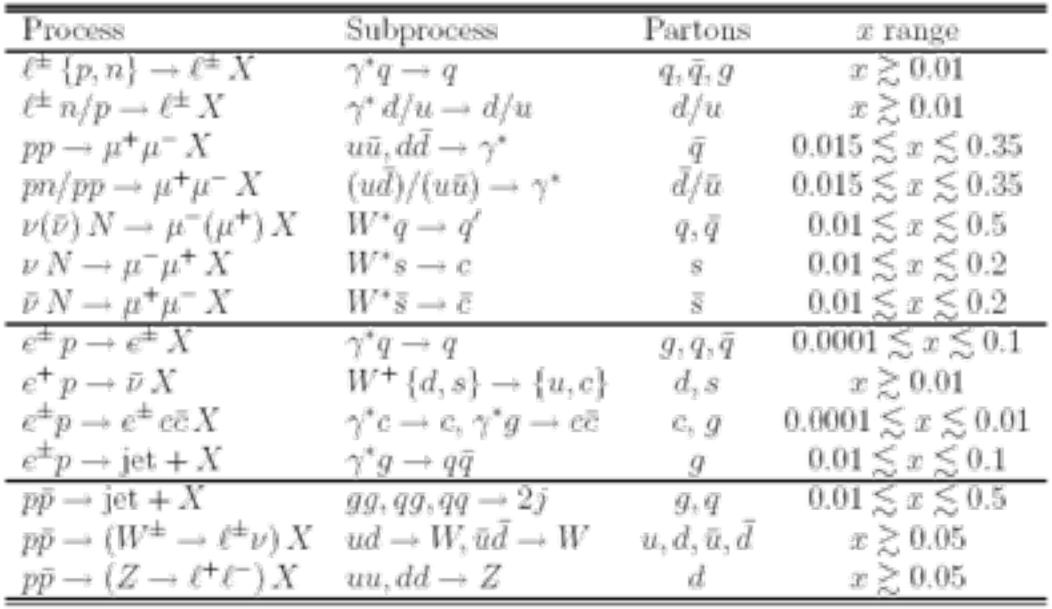
Process	Subprocess	Partons	x range
$\ell^\pm \{p,n\} \to \ell^\pm X$	$\gamma^* q \to q$	$q, \bar{q}, g$	$x \gtrsim 0.01$
$\ell^\pm n/p \to \ell^\pm X$	$\gamma^* d/u \to d/u$	d/u	$x \gtrsim 0.01$
$pp \to \mu^+\mu^- X$	$u\bar{u}, d\bar{d} \to \gamma^*$	$\bar{q}$	$0.015 \lesssim x \lesssim 0.35$
$pn/pp \to \mu^+\mu^- X$	$(u\bar{d})/(u\bar{u}) \to \gamma^*$	$\bar{d}/\bar{u}$	$0.015 \lesssim x \lesssim 0.35$
$\nu(\bar{\nu})\, N \to \mu^-(\mu^+)\, X$	$W^* q \to q'$	$q, \bar{q}$	$0.01 \lesssim x \lesssim 0.5$
$\nu\, N \to \mu^-\mu^+ X$	$W^* s \to c$	s	$0.01 \lesssim x \lesssim 0.2$
$\bar{\nu}\, N \to \mu^+\mu^- X$	$W^* \bar{s} \to \bar{c}$	$\bar{s}$	$0.01 \lesssim x \lesssim 0.2$
$e^\pm p \to e^\pm X$	$\gamma^* q \to q$	$g, q, \bar{q}$	$0.0001 \lesssim x \lesssim 0.1$
$e^+ p \to \bar{\nu} X$	$W^+ \{d,s\} \to \{u,c\}$	d, s	$x \gtrsim 0.01$
$e^\pm p \to e^\pm c\bar{c} X$	$\gamma^* c \to c,\ \gamma^* g \to c\bar{c}$	c, g	$0.0001 \lesssim x \lesssim 0.01$
$e^\pm p \to \text{jet} + X$	$\gamma^* g \to q\bar{q}$	g	$0.01 \lesssim x \lesssim 0.1$
$p\bar{p} \to \text{jet} + X$	$gg, qg, qq \to 2j$	g, q	$0.01 \lesssim x \lesssim 0.5$
$p\bar{p} \to (W^\pm \to \ell^\pm \nu)\, X$	$ud \to W, \bar{u}\bar{d} \to W$	$u, d, \bar{u}, \bar{d}$	$x \gtrsim 0.05$
$p\bar{p} \to (Z \to \ell^+\ell^-)\, X$	$uu, dd \to Z$	d	$x \gtrsim 0.05$

Martin, Stirling, Thorne, Watt, arXiv:0901.0002

NLO fit, 68% C.L.



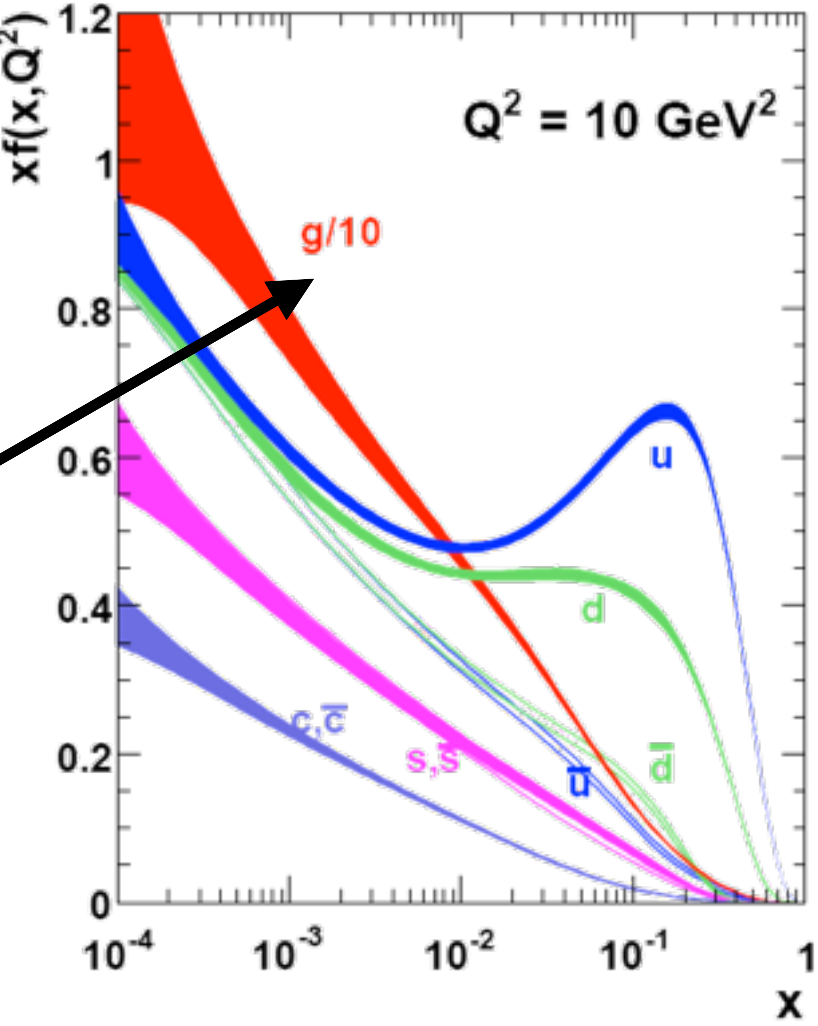
which data sets determine which partons



Process	Subprocess	Partons	x range
$\ell^{\pm}\{p,n\} \to \ell^{\pm} X$	$\gamma^* q \to q$	$q, \bar{q}, g$	$x \gtrsim 0.01$
$\ell^{\pm} n/p \to \ell^{\pm} X$	$\gamma^* d/u \to d/u$	d/u	$x \gtrsim 0.01$
$pp \to \mu^+\mu^- X$	$u\bar{u}, d\bar{d} \to \gamma^*$	$\bar{q}$	$0.015 \lesssim x \lesssim 0.35$
$pn/pp \to \mu^+\mu^- X$	$(u\bar{d})/(u\bar{u}) \to \gamma^*$	$\bar{d}/\bar{u}$	$0.015 \lesssim x \lesssim 0.35$
$\nu(\bar{\nu}) N \to \mu^-(\mu^+) X$	$W^* q \to q'$	$q, \bar{q}$	$0.01 \lesssim x \lesssim 0.5$
$\nu N \to \mu^-\mu^+ X$	$W^* s \to c$	s	$0.01 \lesssim x \lesssim 0.2$
$\bar{\nu} N \to \mu^+\mu^- X$	$W^* \bar{s} \to \bar{c}$	$\bar{s}$	$0.01 \lesssim x \lesssim 0.2$
$e^{\pm} p \to e^{\pm} X$	$\gamma^* q \to q$	$g, q, \bar{q}$	$0.0001 \lesssim x \lesssim 0.1$
$e^+ p \to \bar{\nu} X$	$W^+ \{d, s\} \to \{u, c\}$	d, s	$x \gtrsim 0.01$
$e^{\pm} p \to e^{\pm} c\bar{c} X$	$\gamma^* c \to c, \gamma^* g \to c\bar{c}$	c, g	$0.0001 \lesssim x \lesssim 0.01$
$e^{\pm} p \to \text{jet} + X$	$\gamma^* g \to q\bar{q}$	g	$0.01 \lesssim x \lesssim 0.1$
$p\bar{p} \to \text{jet} + X$	$gg, qg, qq \to 2j$	g, q	$0.01 \lesssim x \lesssim 0.5$
$p\bar{p} \to (W^{\pm} \to \ell^{\pm}\nu) X$	$ud \to W, \bar{u}\bar{d} \to W$	$u, d, \bar{u}, \bar{d}$	$x \gtrsim 0.05$
$p\bar{p} \to (Z \to \ell^+\ell^-) X$	$uu, dd \to Z$	d	$x \gtrsim 0.05$

Martin, Stirling, Thorne, Watt, arXiv:0901.0002

NLO fit, 68% C.L.



- notice the huge gluon distribution
- quality of the fit:

χ^2/ #data pts.

- 2543/2699 **NLO**
- 3066/2598 **LO**

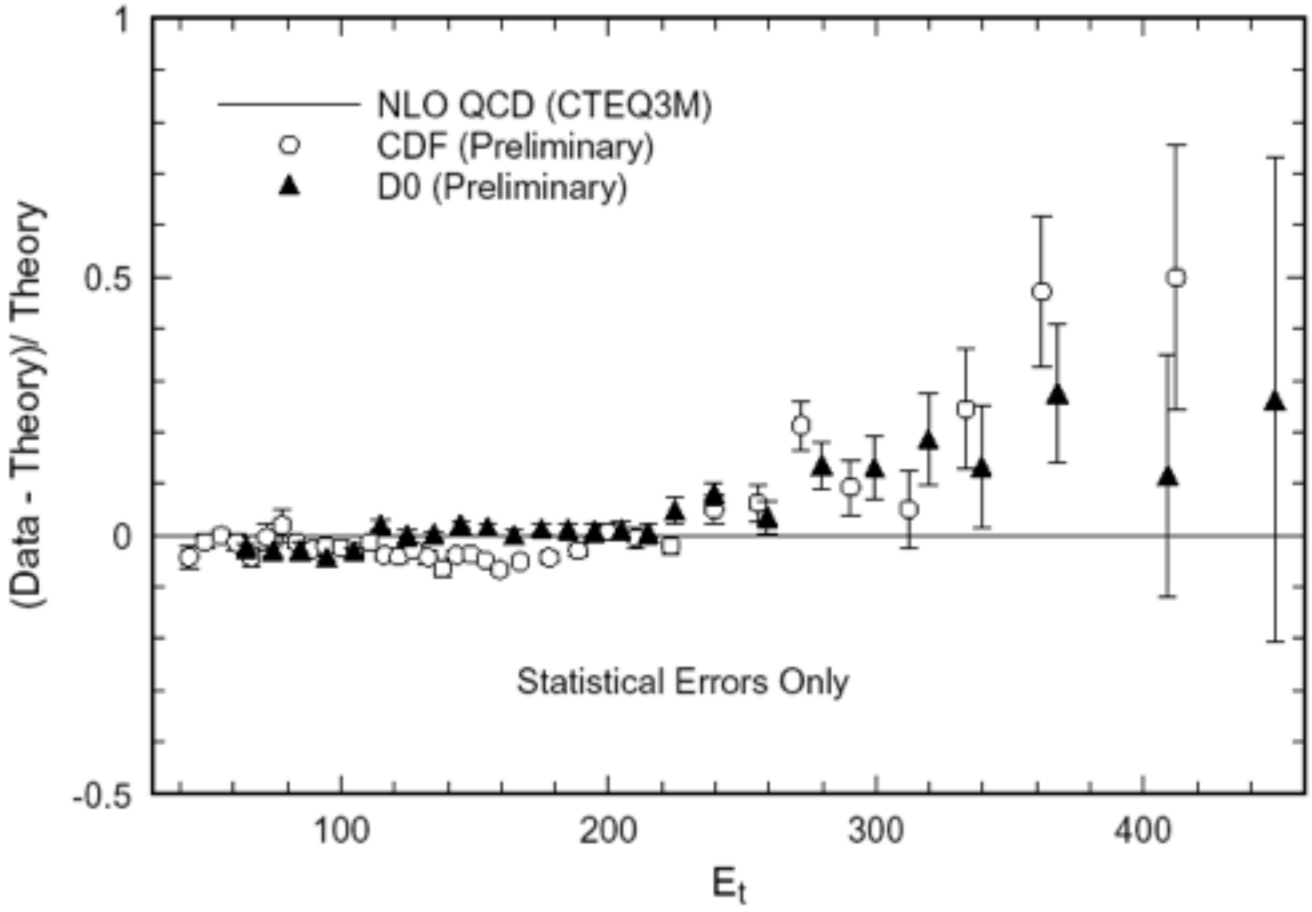
interplay of many data sets crucial


PARTON
Drive carefully
Burial place of
James Clerk Maxwell

from R.D. Ball

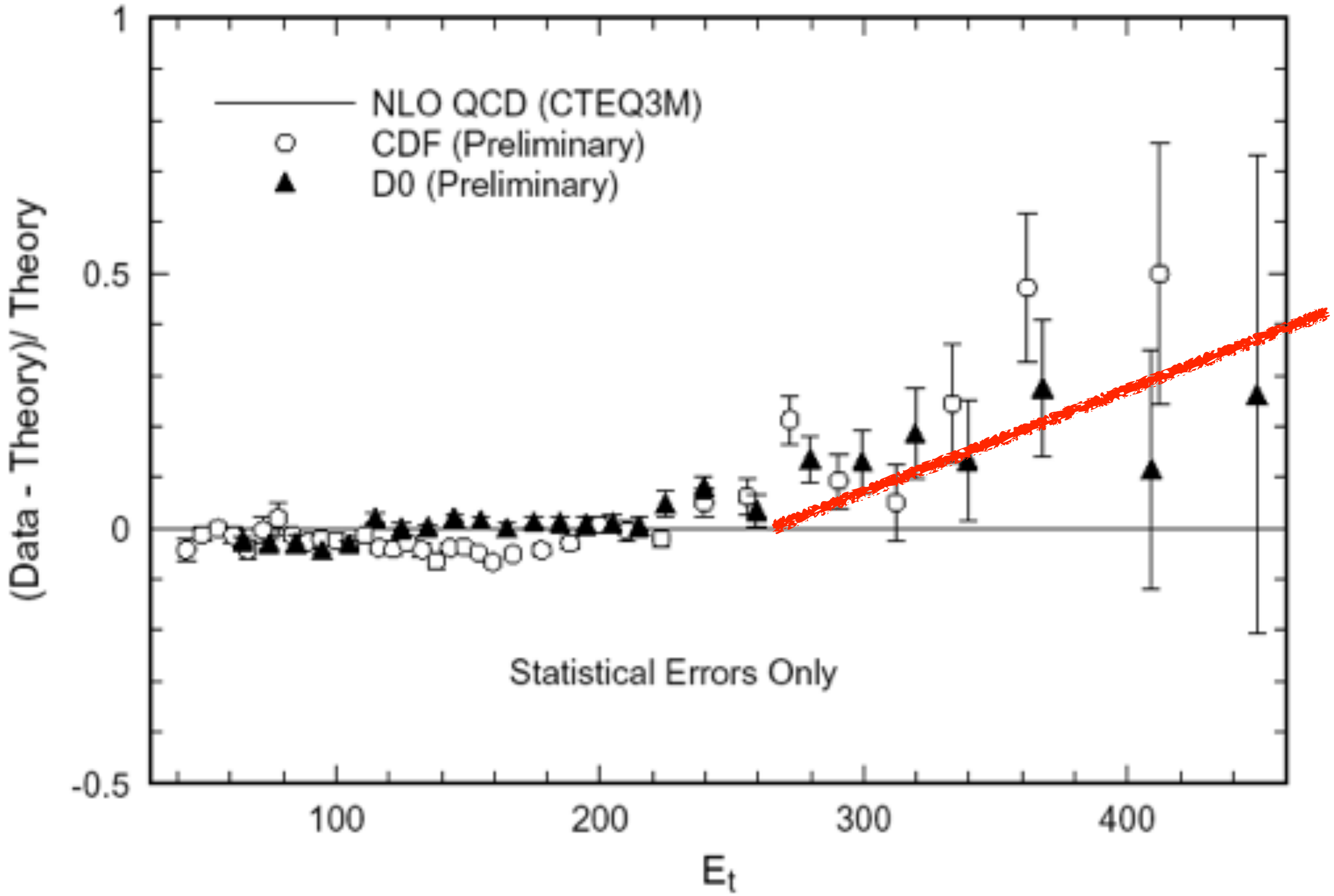
new physics or PDF uncertainties?

important lesson from the past: (in)famous TeVatron "excess" in jet yield



new physics or PDF uncertainties?

important lesson from the past: (in)famous TeVatron “excess” in jet yield



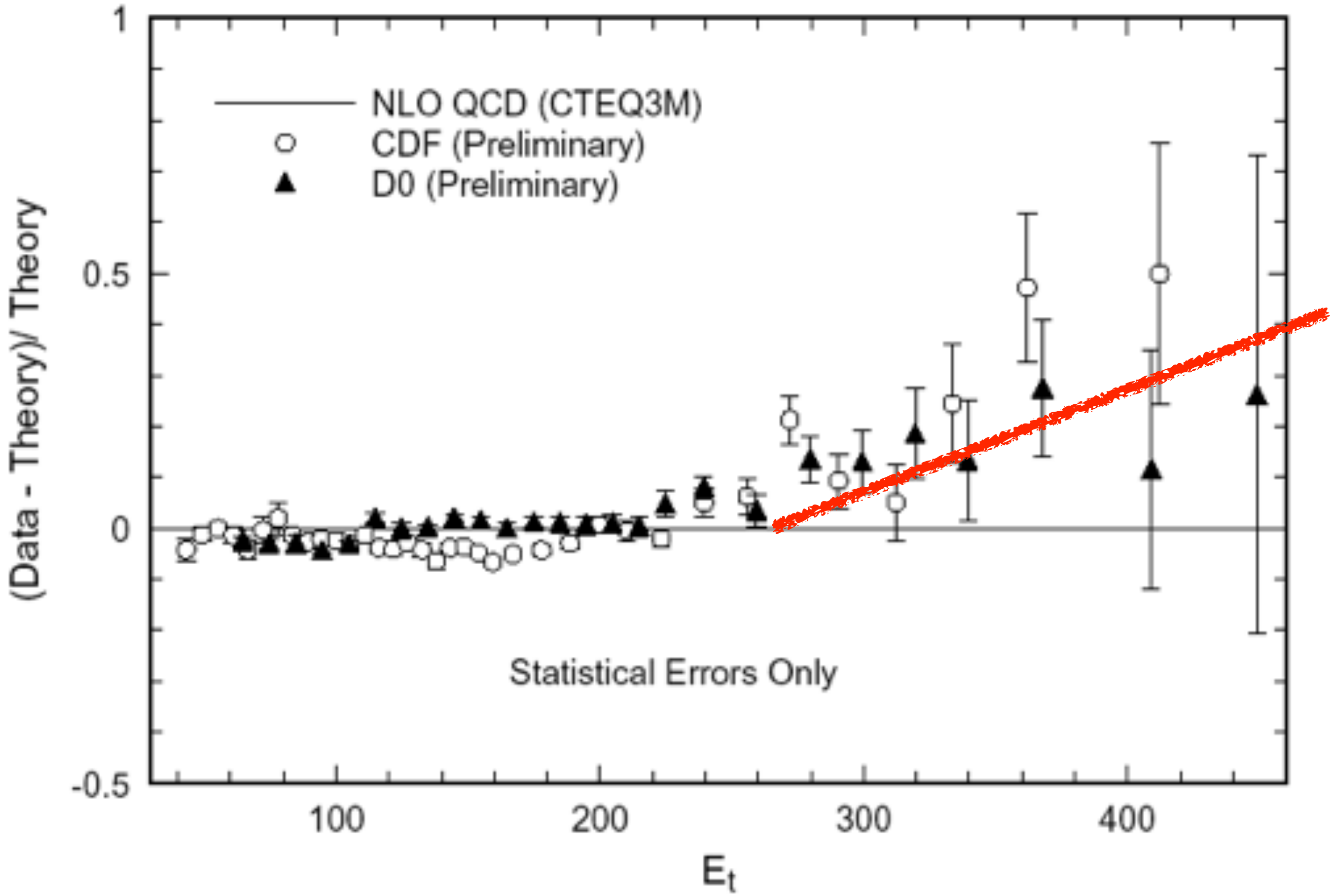
huge excess at large p_T

—> new particle with mass of a few 100 GeV?

arXiv got cluttered with New Physics papers

new physics or PDF uncertainties?

important lesson from the past: (in)famous TeVatron “excess” in jet yield



huge excess at large p_T

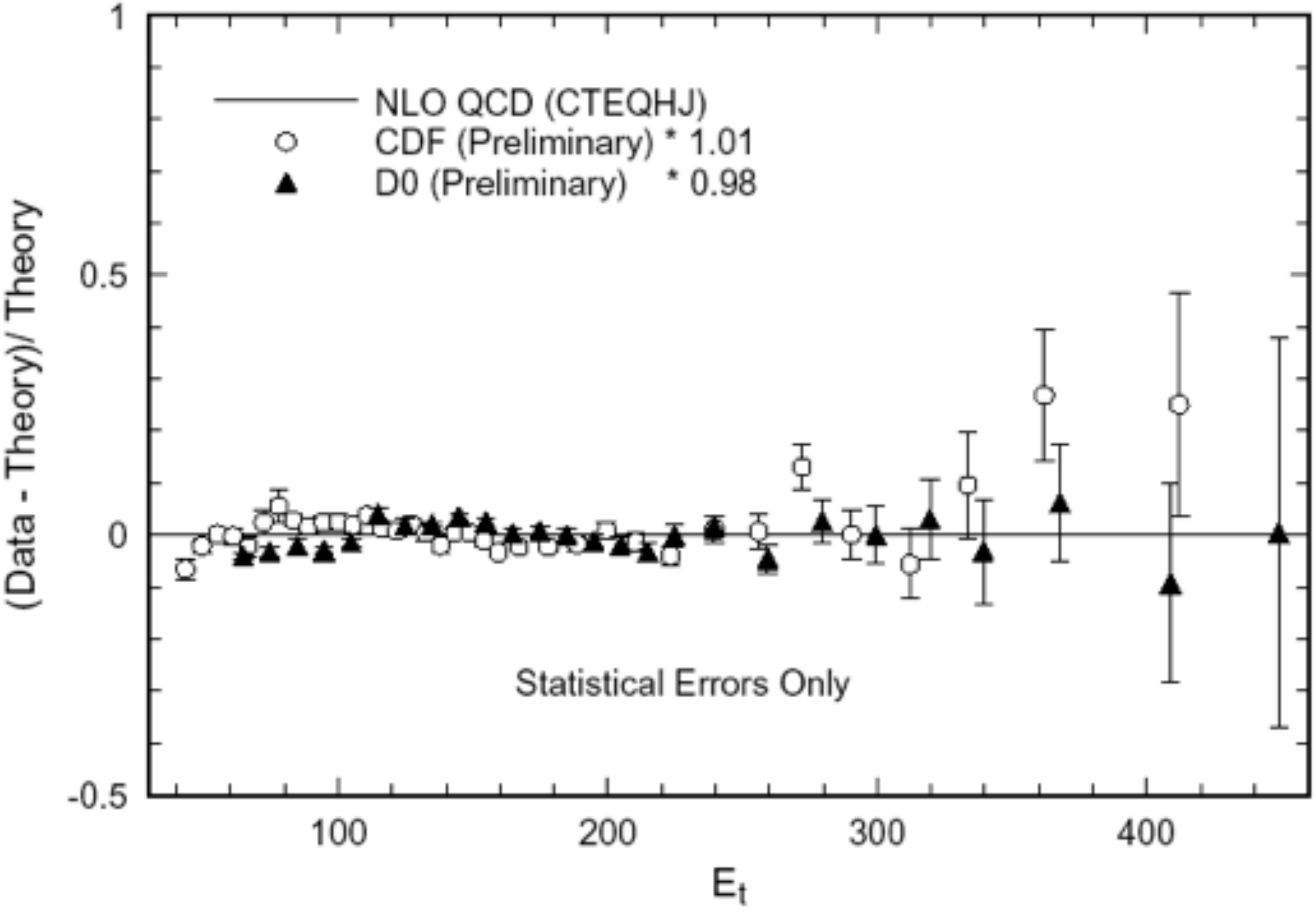
—> new particle with mass of a few 100 GeV?

arXiv got cluttered with New Physics papers

… but you better think twice - a MUCH less mundane explanation is usually at work

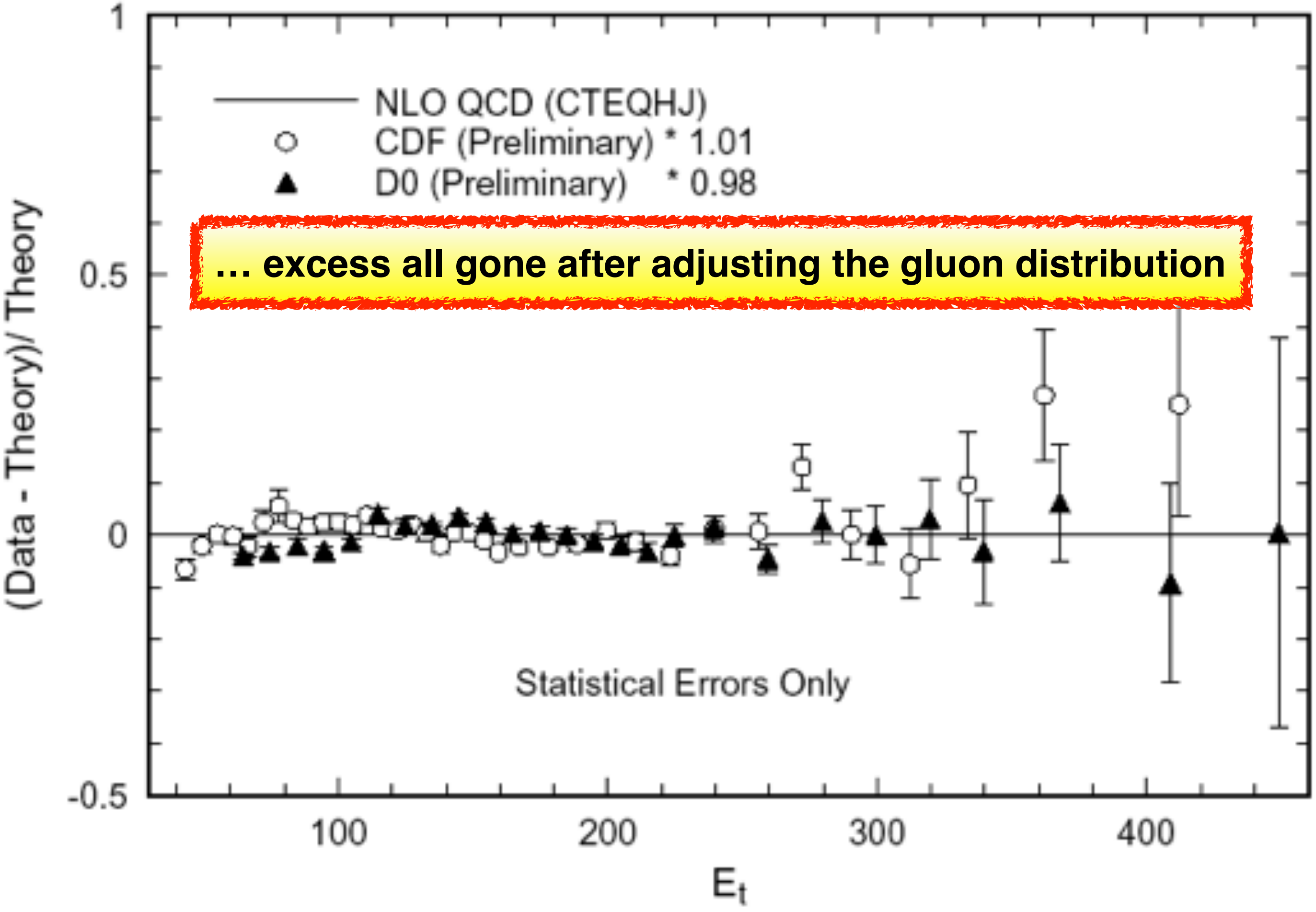
new physics or PDF uncertainties?

important lesson from the past: (in)famous TeVatron “excess” in jet yield



new physics or PDF uncertainties?

important lesson from the past: (in)famous TeVatron “excess” in jet yield



… excess all gone after adjusting the gluon distribution

what’s on the market?

set	H.O.	data	$\alpha_s(M_Z)@NNLO$	uncertainty	HQ	Comments
MSTW 2008	NNLO	DIS+DY+Jets	0.1171	Hessian (dynamical tolerance)	GM-VFN (ACOT+TR’)	old HERA DIS
CT10	NNLO	DIS+DY+Jets	0.118	Hessian (dynamical tolerance)	GM-VFN (SACOT-X)	New HERA DIS
NNPDF	NNLO	DIS+DY+Jets +LHC	0.1174	Monte Carlo	GM-VFN (FONLL)	New HERA DIS
ABKM	NNLO	DIS+DY(f.t.) +DY-tT(LHC)	0.1132	Hessian	FFN BMSN	New HERA DIS
(G)JR	NNLO	DIS+DY(f.t.)+ some jet	0.1124	Hessian	FFN (VFN massless)	valence like input pdfs
HERA PDF	NNLO	only DIS HERA	0.1176	Hessian	GM-VFN (ACOT+TR’)	Latest HERA DIS

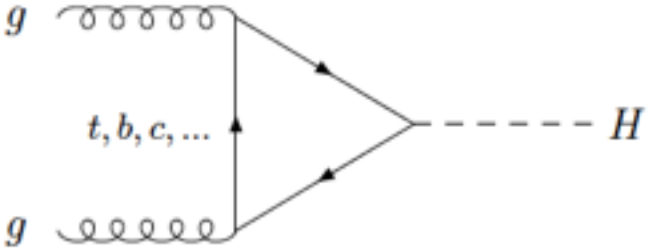
compilation by D. de Florian (DIS 2014)

PDF's and the LHC

important example: Higgs production through gluon-gluon fusion

PDF uncertainty: look a **parton-parton luminosities**

$$\mathcal{L}_{ij}(\tau \equiv M_X^2/S) = \frac{1}{S}\int_\tau^1 \frac{dx}{x} f_i(x, M_X^2) f_j(\tau/x, M_X^2)$$

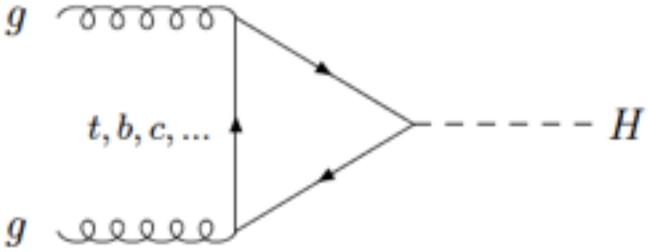


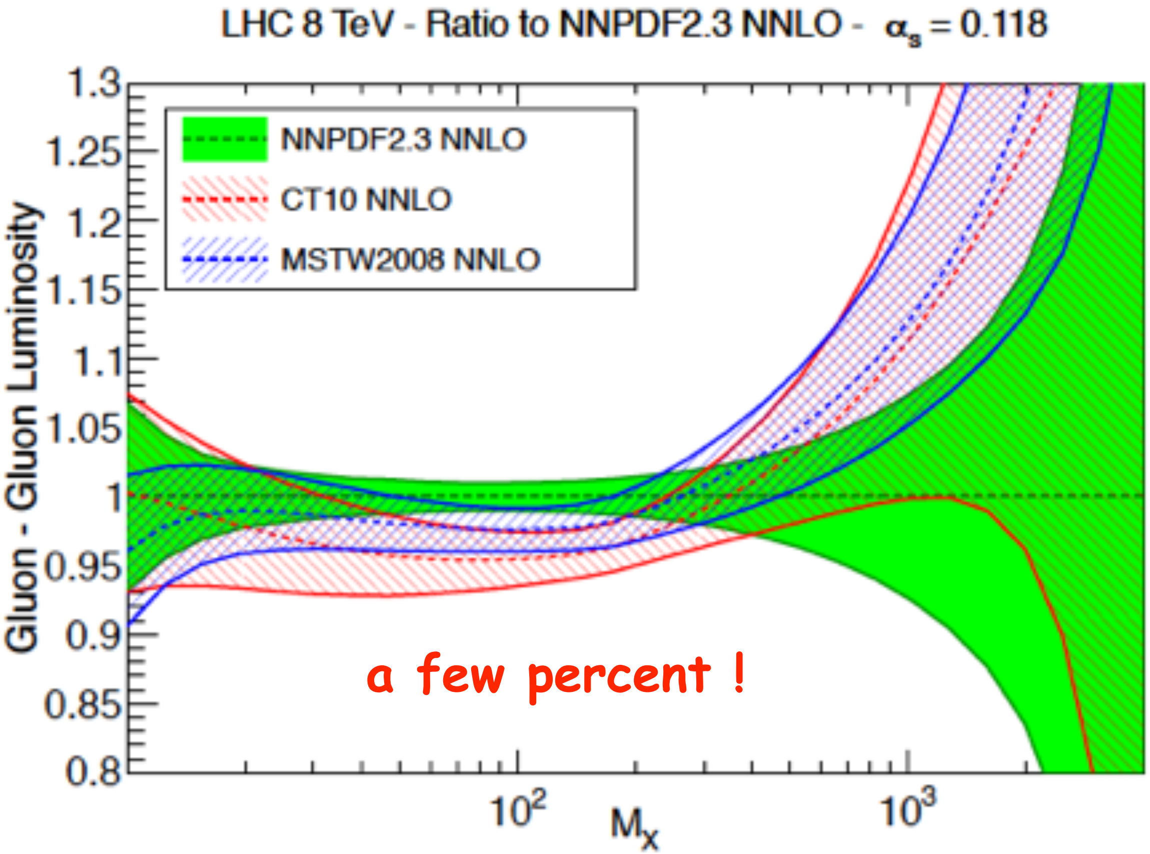
PDF's and the LHC

important example: Higgs production through gluon-gluon fusion

PDF uncertainty: look a **parton-parton luminosities**

$$\mathcal{L}_{ij}(\tau \equiv M_X^2/S) = \frac{1}{S}\int_\tau^1 \frac{dx}{x} f_i(x, M_X^2) f_j(\tau/x, M_X^2)$$





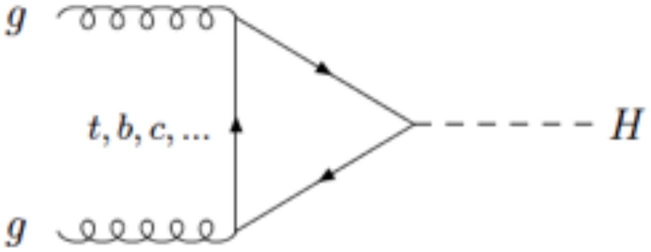
PDF4LHC group
1211.5142

PDF's and the LHC

important example: Higgs production through gluon-gluon fusion

PDF uncertainty: look a **parton-parton luminosities**

$$\mathcal{L}_{ij}(\tau \equiv M_X^2/S) = \frac{1}{S}\int_\tau^1 \frac{dx}{x} f_i(x, M_X^2) f_j(\tau/x, M_X^2)$$



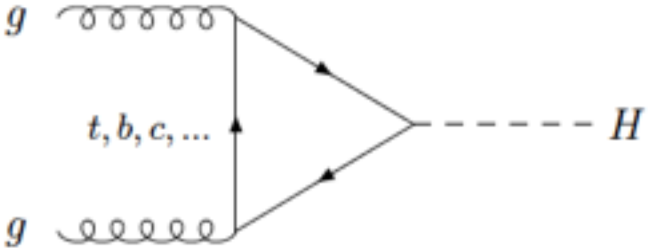
another culprit is the strong coupling:

- optimum α_s in global fits varies by about 5%

  error much larger than for "PDG average"

PDF's and the LHC

important example: Higgs production through gluon-gluon fusion



PDF uncertainty: look a **parton-parton luminosities**

$$\mathcal{L}_{ij}(\tau \equiv M_X^2/S) = \frac{1}{S}\int_\tau^1 \frac{dx}{x} f_i(x, M_X^2) f_j(\tau/x, M_X^2)$$

another culprit is the strong coupling:

- optimum α_s in global fits varies by about 5%

  error much larger than for "PDG average"

current (theory) status for total Higgs cross section:

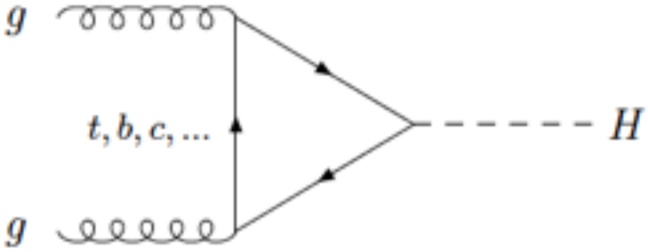
scale variation PDF & α_s variation

$$\sigma(\mathrm{M_H} = \mathbf{125}\,\mathrm{GeV}) = \mathbf{19.27}\,{}^{+\mathbf{7.2}\%}_{-\mathbf{7.8}\%}\,{}^{+\mathbf{7.5}\%}_{-\mathbf{6.9}\%}\,\mathrm{pb}$$

de Florian, Grazzini

PDF's and the LHC

important example: Higgs production through gluon-gluon fusion



PDF uncertainty: look a **parton-parton luminosities**

$$\mathcal{L}_{ij}(\tau \equiv M_X^2/S) = \frac{1}{S}\int_\tau^1 \frac{dx}{x} f_i(x, M_X^2) f_j(\tau/x, M_X^2)$$

another culprit is the strong coupling:

- optimum α_s in global fits varies by about 5%

error much larger than for "PDG average"

current (theory) status for total Higgs cross section:

scale variation PDF & α_s variation

$$\sigma(\mathrm{M_H} = \mathbf{125}\,\mathrm{GeV}) = \mathbf{19.27}\,{}^{+7.2\%}_{-7.8\%}\,{}^{+7.5\%}_{-6.9\%}\,\mathrm{pb}$$

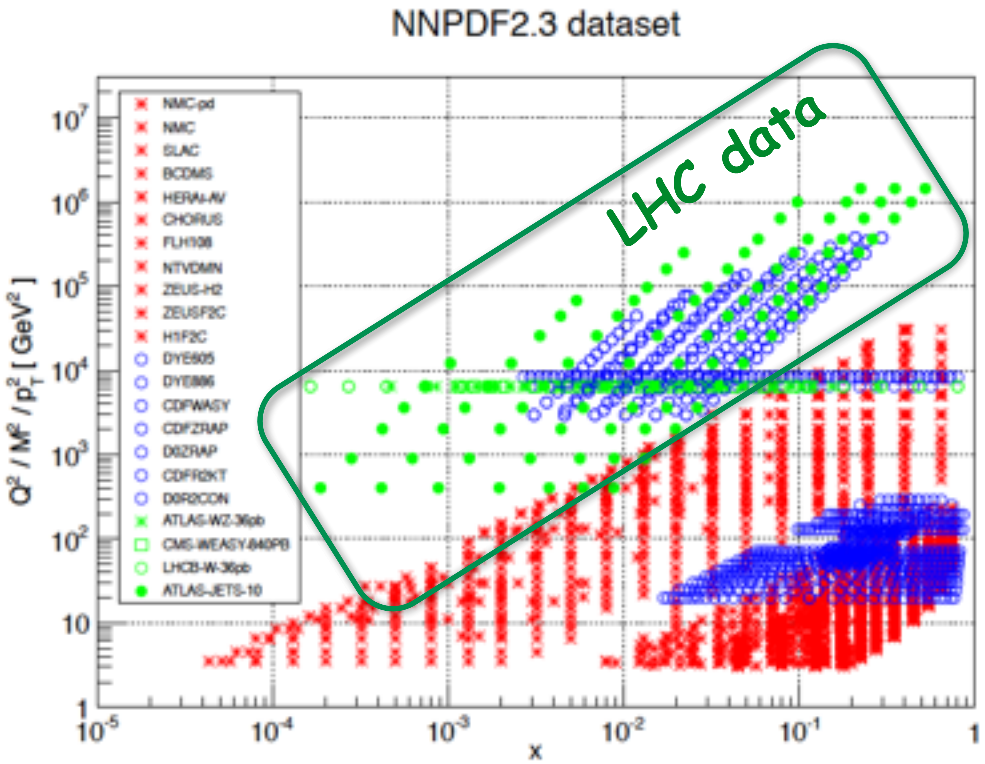
de Florian, Grazzini

precise LHC data important for validating and improving PDF and α_s determinations

improving PDF's at the LHC

efforts have already started

example: NNPDF 2.3 fit
1207.1303

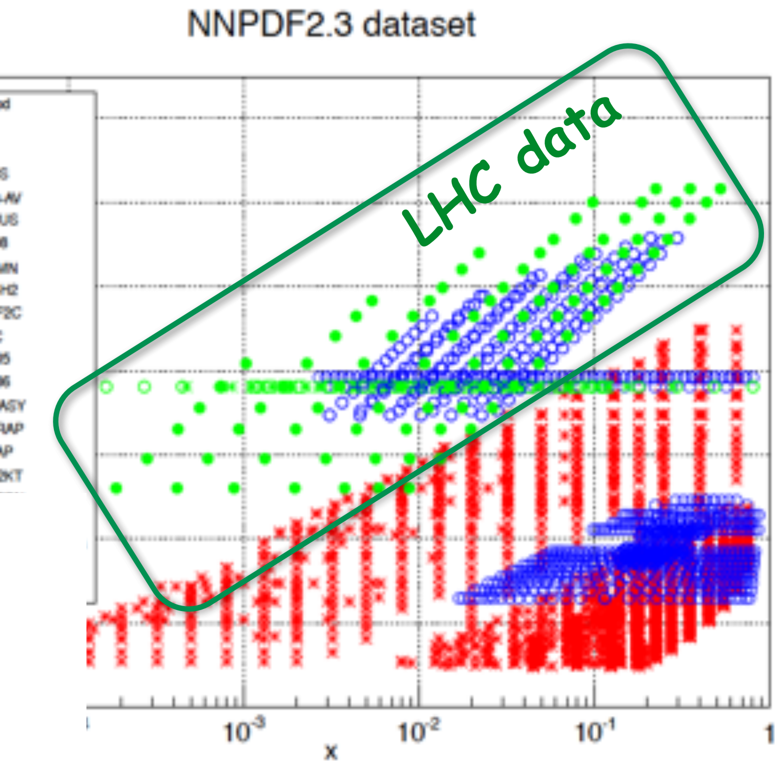


improving PDF's at the LHC

efforts have already started

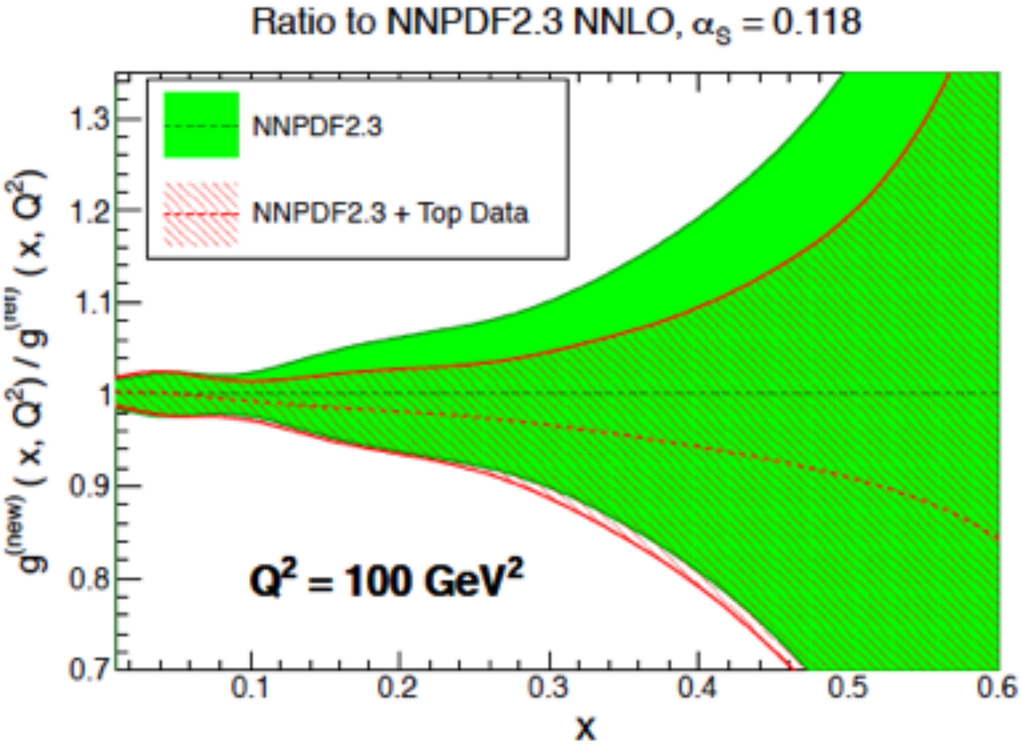
example: NNPDF 2.3 fit
1207.1303

NNPDF2.3 dataset



LHC data

Ratio to NNPDF2.3 NNLO, $\alpha_S = 0.118$

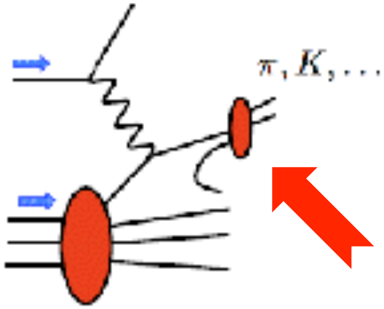


most recently: make use of recent NNLO results for top-pair production

Czakon, Mangano, Mitov, Rojo 1303.7215

find: about 20% error reduction for gluon at x values between 0.15 and 0.5

status of fragmentation functions



recall:

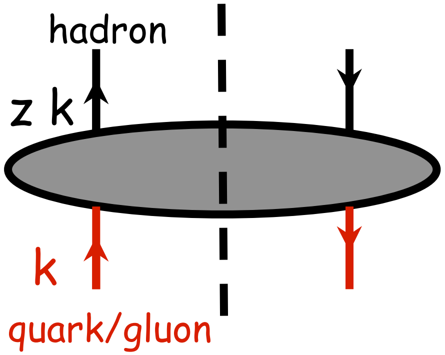
crucial for pQCD interpretation (factorization)
of all data with detected (identified) hadrons, e.g.,
SIDIS (HERMES, COMPASS), $pp \to \pi X$ (PHENIX, STAR, ALICE, ...)

global QCD analysis of fragmentation functions

very similar to PDFs:

- non-perturbative but universal
- pQCD predicts scale evolution
- describe the collinear transition of a parton "i" into a massless hadron "h" carrying fractional momentum z

$$\mathbf{D_i^h(z,\mu^2)}$$



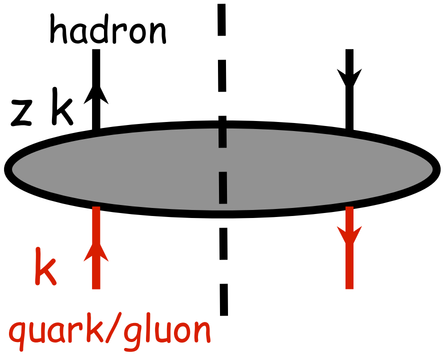
global QCD analysis of fragmentation functions

very similar to PDFs:

- non-perturbative but universal
- pQCD predicts scale evolution
- describe the collinear transition of a parton “i” into a massless hadron “h” carrying fractional momentum z
- bi-local operator: $D(z) \simeq \int dy^- e^{iP^+/zy^-} \mathrm{Tr}\gamma^+ \langle 0|\,\psi(y^-)\boxed{|hX\rangle\,\langle hX|}\,\overline{\psi}(0)\,|0\rangle$

  Collins, Soper ’81, ’83

$$\mathbf{D_i^h(z,\mu^2)}$$



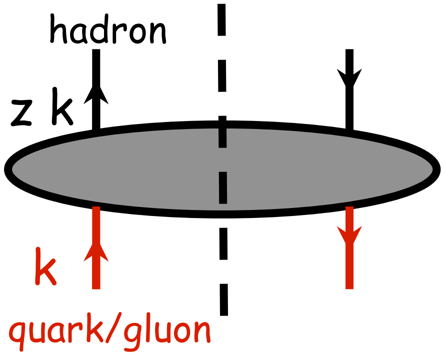
no inclusive final-state

no local OPE —> no lattice formulation

global QCD analysis of fragmentation functions

very similar to PDFs:

$$\mathbf{D_i^h(z, \mu^2)}$$



- non-perturbative but universal
- pQCD predicts scale evolution
- describe the collinear transition of a parton "i" into a massless hadron "h" carrying fractional momentum z
- bi-local operator: $D(z) \simeq \int dy^- e^{iP^+/zy^-} \mathrm{Tr}\gamma^+ \langle 0|\,\psi(y^-)\boxed{|hX\rangle\,\langle hX|}\bar{\psi}(0)\,|0\rangle$

  Collins, Soper '81, '83

no inclusive final-state
no local OPE —> no lattice formulation

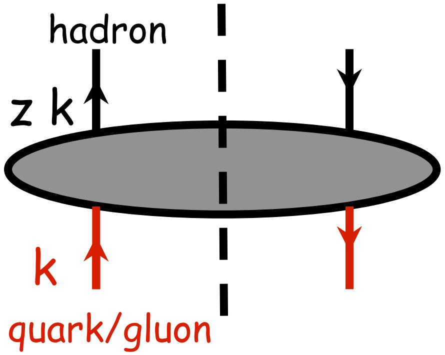
also determined from global fits to data:

- key process is e^+e^- **annihilation** to hadrons (plays similar role than DIS for PDFs)

global QCD analysis of fragmentation functions

very similar to PDFs:

$$\mathbf{D_i^h(z,\mu^2)}$$



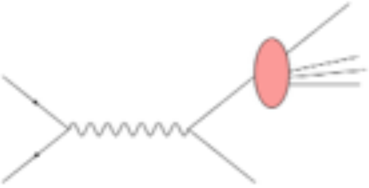
- non-perturbative but universal
- pQCD predicts scale evolution
- describe the collinear transition of a parton "i" into a massless hadron "h" carrying fractional momentum z
- bi-local operator: $D(z) \simeq \int dy^- e^{iP^+/zy^-} \mathrm{Tr}\gamma^+ \langle 0|\,\psi(y^-)\boxed{|hX\rangle\,\langle hX|}\bar{\psi}(0)\,|0\rangle$

  Collins, Soper '81, '83

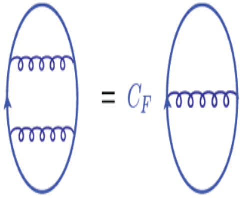
no inclusive final-state

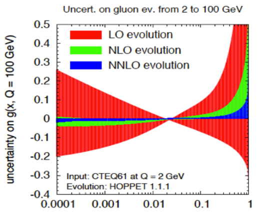
no local OPE —> no lattice formulation

also determined from global fits to data:



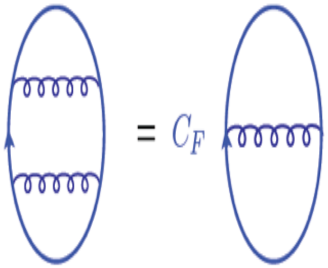
- key process is e^+e^- **annihilation** to hadrons (plays similar role than DIS for PDFs)
- **semi-inclusive DIS** provides flavor separation
- **pp data** (RHIC, LHC) important for gluon FF

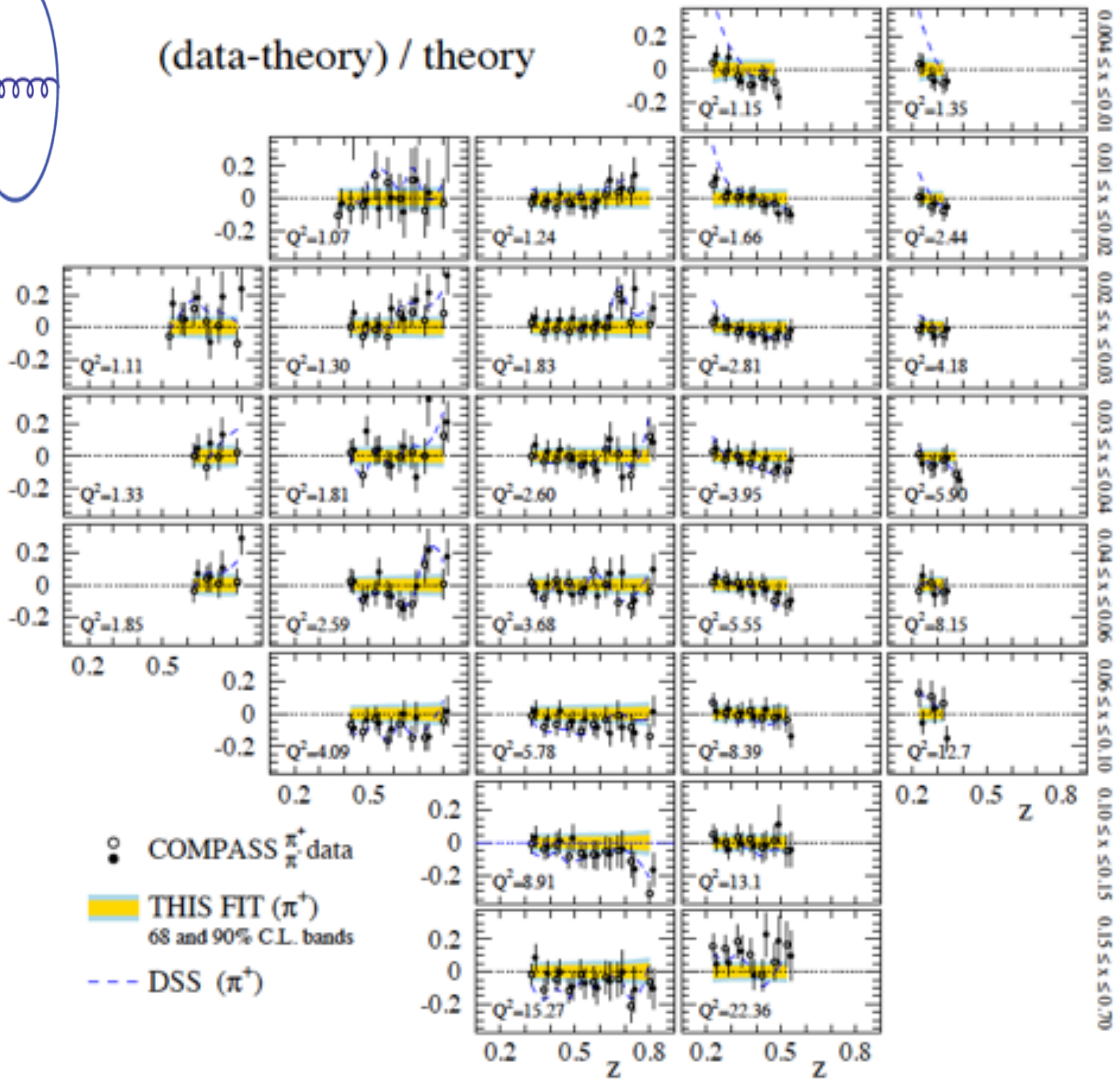




sneak preview of new global QCD analysis

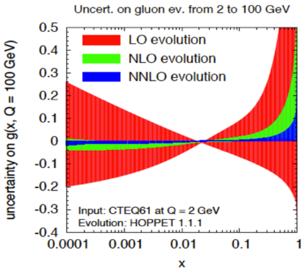
de Florian, Epele, Hernandez-Pinto, Sassot, MS

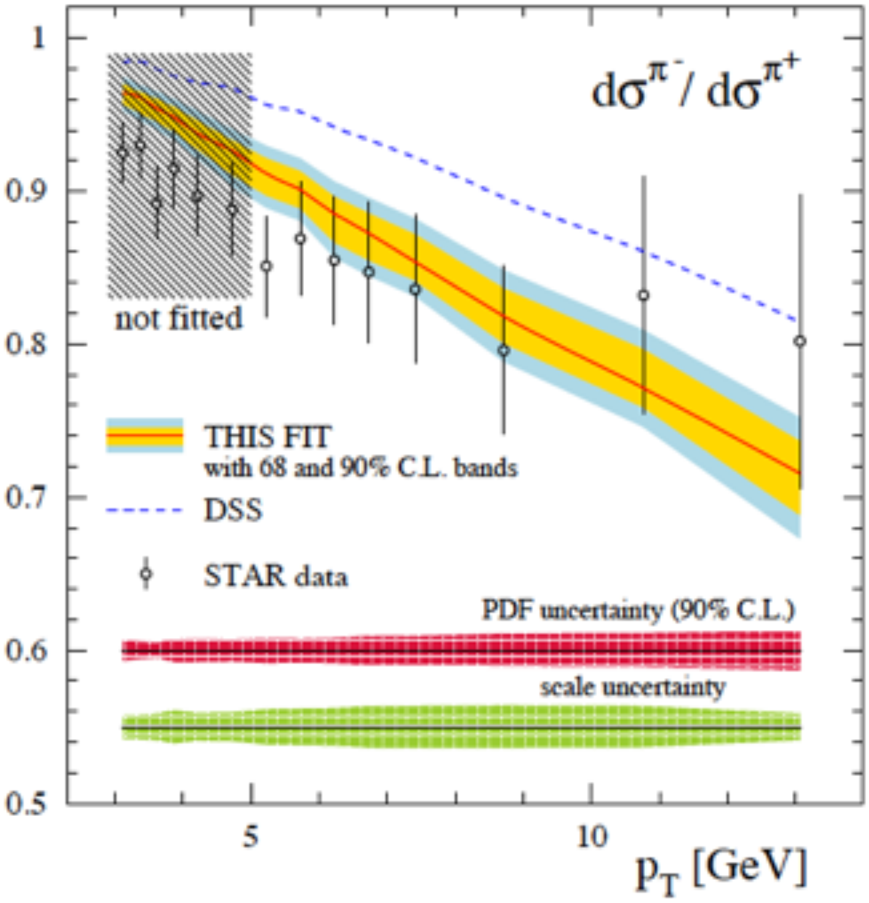


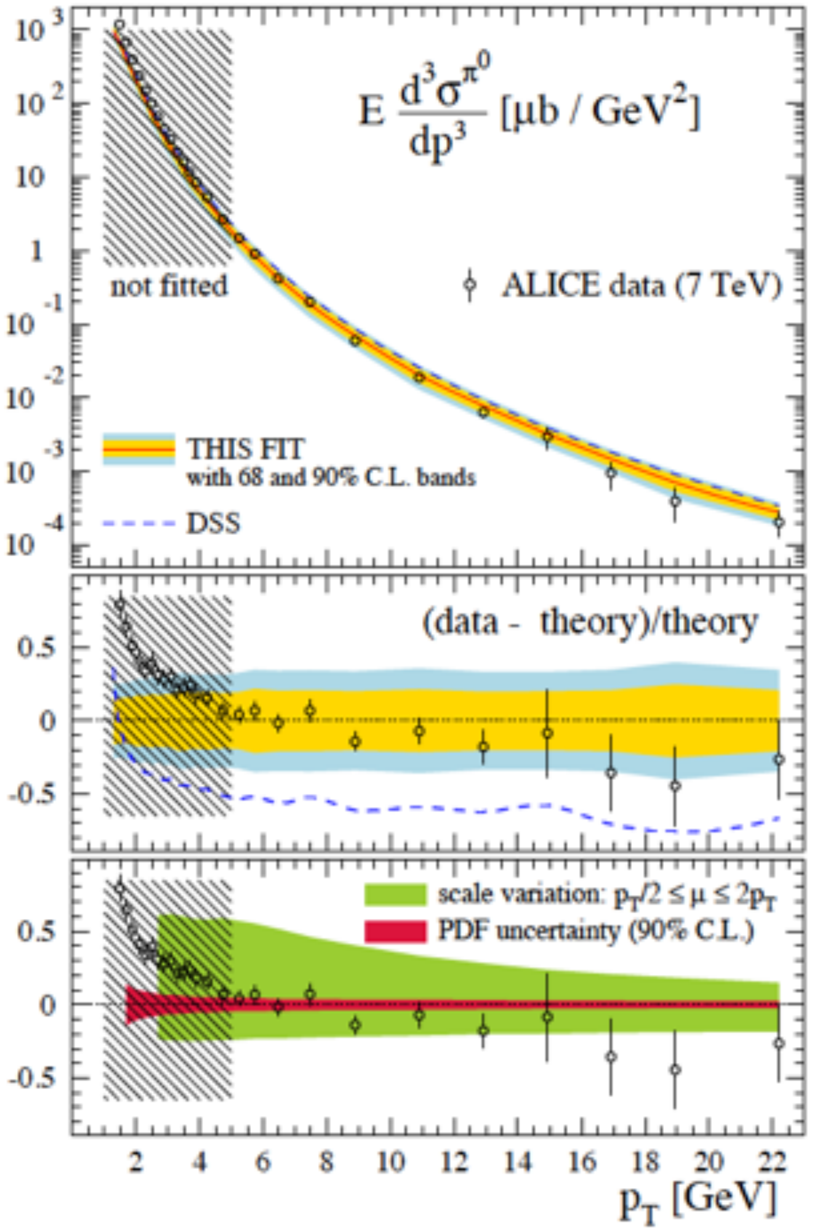


sneak preview of new global QCD analysis

de Florian, Epele, Hernandez-Pinto, Sassot, MS



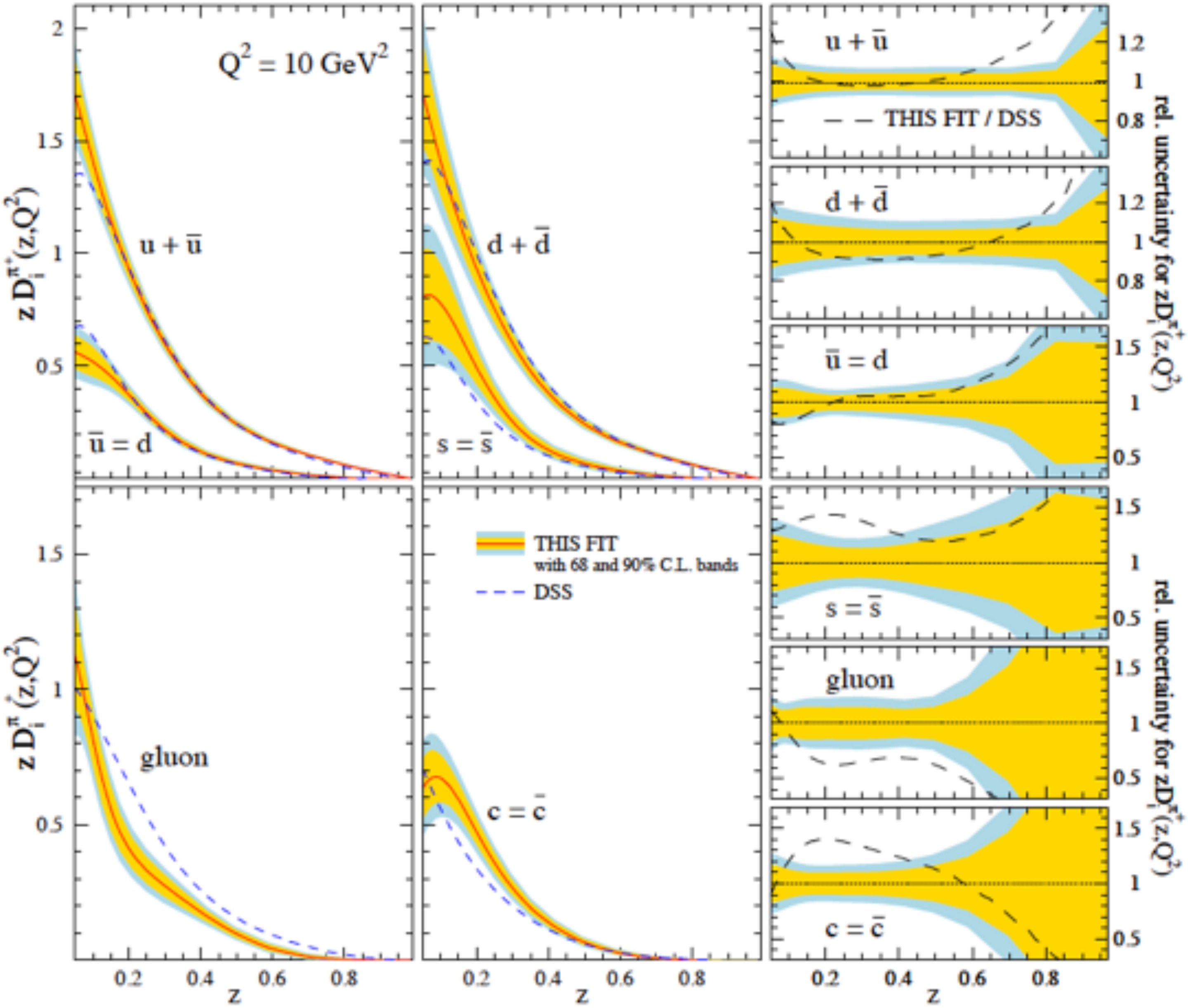




sneak preview of new global QCD analysis

de Florian, Epele, Hernandez-Pinto, Sassot, MS

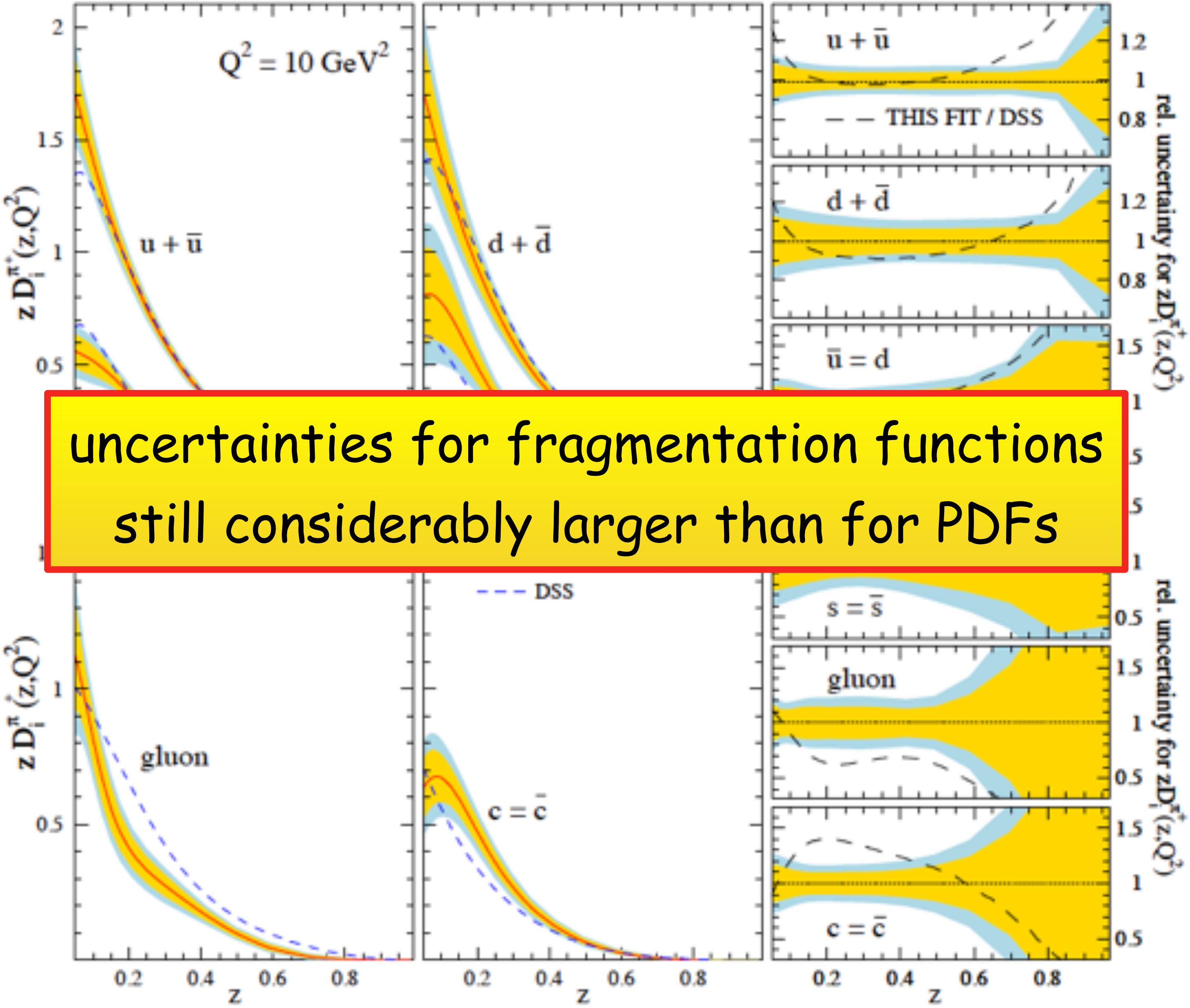
$\mathbf{D_i^{\pi^+}}$



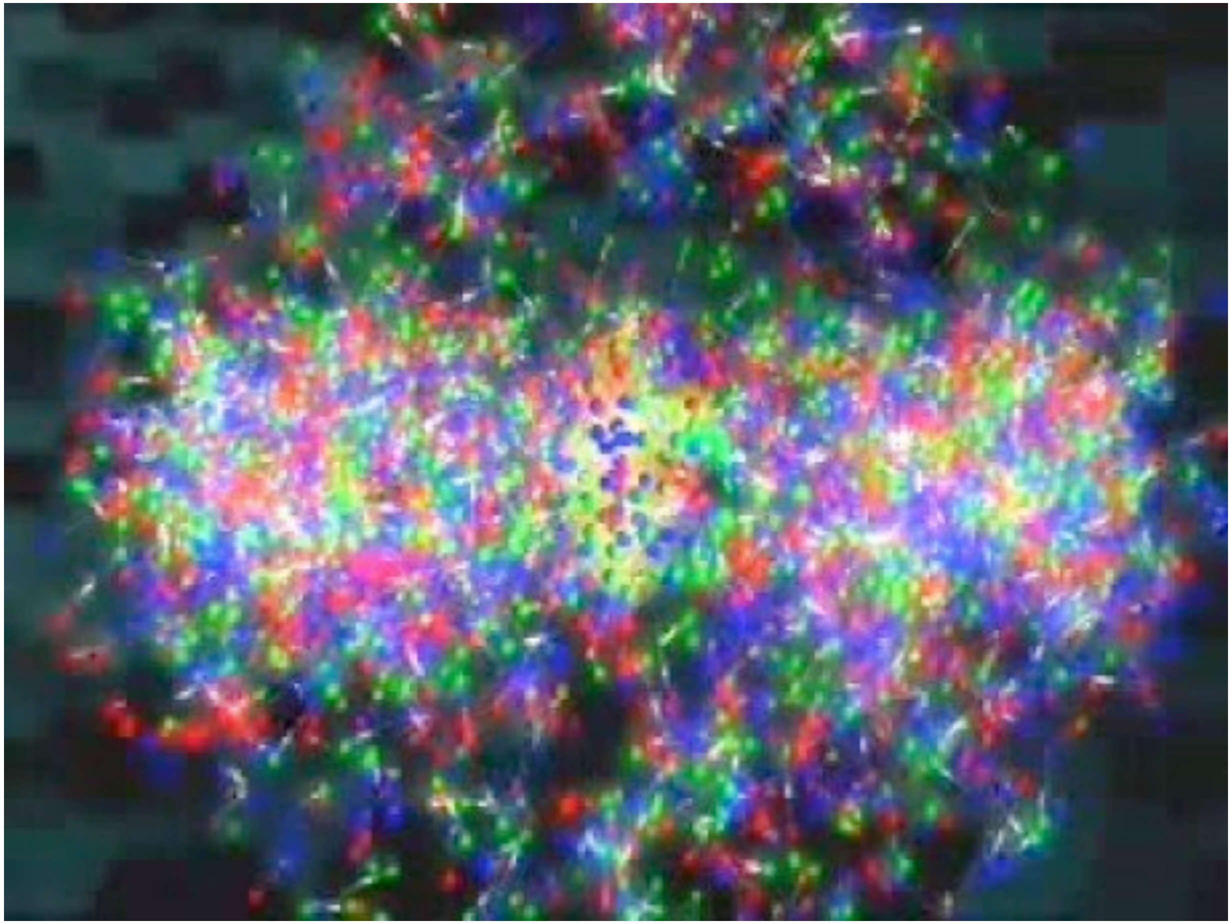
sneak preview of new global QCD analysis

de Florian, Epele, Hernandez-Pinto, Sassot, MS

$$D_i^{\pi^+}$$



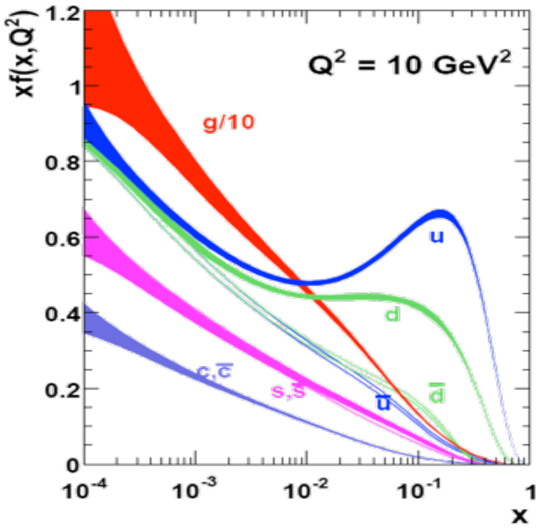
uncertainties for fragmentation functions still considerably larger than for PDFs



4-3

when there is not enough room: gluons at small x

what drives the growth of the gluon density

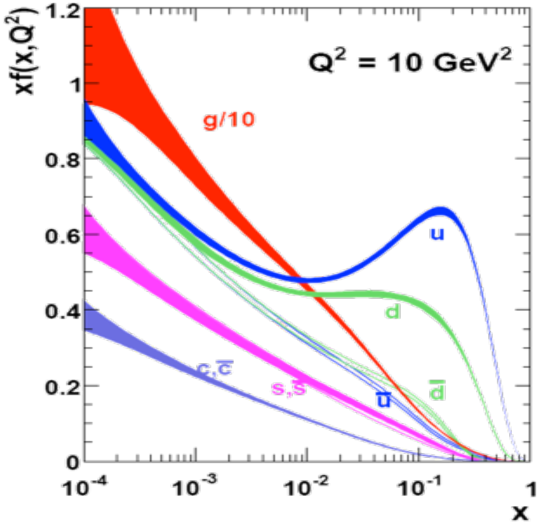


observe that only 2 splitting fcts are singular at small x

$$P_{gq}(x)\big|_{x\to 0} \approx \frac{2C_F}{x} \qquad P_{gg}(x)\big|_{x\to 0} \approx \frac{2C_A}{x}$$

-> small x region dominated by gluons

what drives the growth of the gluon density



observe that only 2 splitting fcts are singular at small x

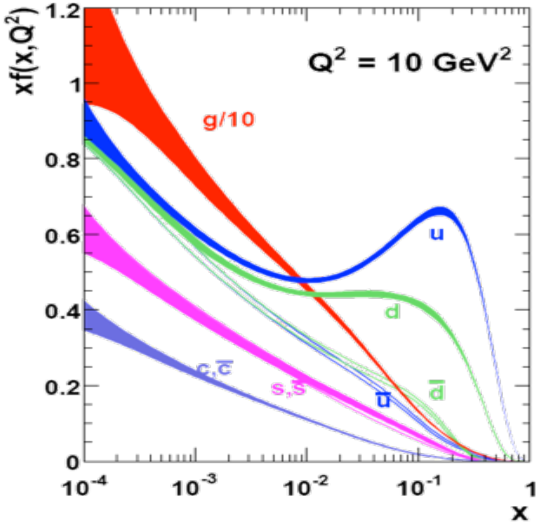
$$P_{gq}(x)\big|_{x\to 0} \approx \frac{2C_F}{x} \qquad P_{gg}(x)\big|_{x\to 0} \approx \frac{2C_A}{x}$$

-> small x region dominated by gluons

- write down **"gluon-only" DGLAP equation** **only valid for small x and large Q^2**

$$\frac{dg(x,\mu^2)}{d\log\mu^2} = \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\int_x^1 \frac{dz}{z}\frac{2C_A}{z} g(x/z,\mu^2)$$

what drives the growth of the gluon density



observe that only 2 splitting fcts are singular at small x

$$P_{gq}(x)\big|_{x\to 0} \approx \frac{2C_F}{x} \qquad P_{gg}(x)\big|_{x\to 0} \approx \frac{2C_A}{x}$$

-> small x region dominated by gluons

- write down **"gluon-only" DGLAP equation** **only valid for small x and large Q^2**

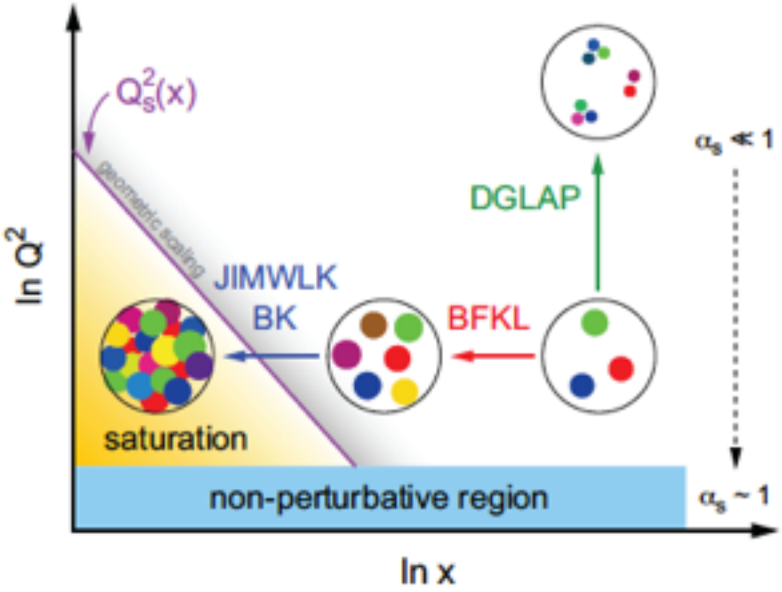
$$\frac{dg(x,\mu^2)}{d\log\mu^2} = \frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\int_x^1 \frac{dz}{z}\frac{2C_A}{z} g(x/z,\mu^2)$$

- for fixed coupling this leads to **"double logarithmic approximation"**

$$xg(x,Q^2) \sim \exp\left(2\sqrt{\frac{\alpha_S C_A}{\pi}\log(1/x)\log(Q^2/Q_0^2)}\right)$$

predicts rise that is faster than $\log^a(1/x)$ but slower than $(1/x)^a$

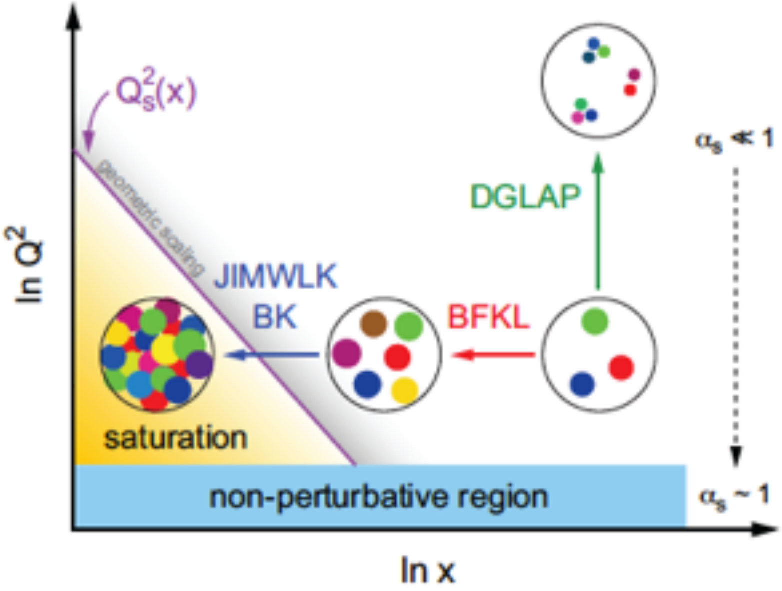
gluon occupancy



- DGLAP predicts an increase of gluons at small x but proton becomes more dilute as Q^2 increases

transverse size of partons ≈ 1/Q

gluon occupancy

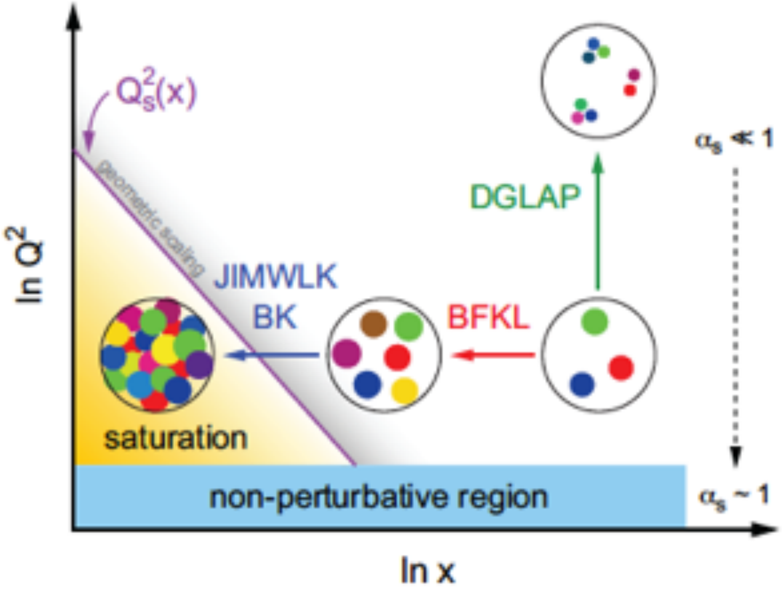


- DGLAP predicts an increase of gluons at small x but proton becomes more dilute as Q^2 increases

transverse size of partons ≈ 1/Q

but what happens at small x for not so large (fixed) **Q^2 ?**

gluon occupancy



- DGLAP predicts an increase of gluons at small x but proton becomes more dilute as Q^2 increases

transverse size of partons ≈ 1/Q

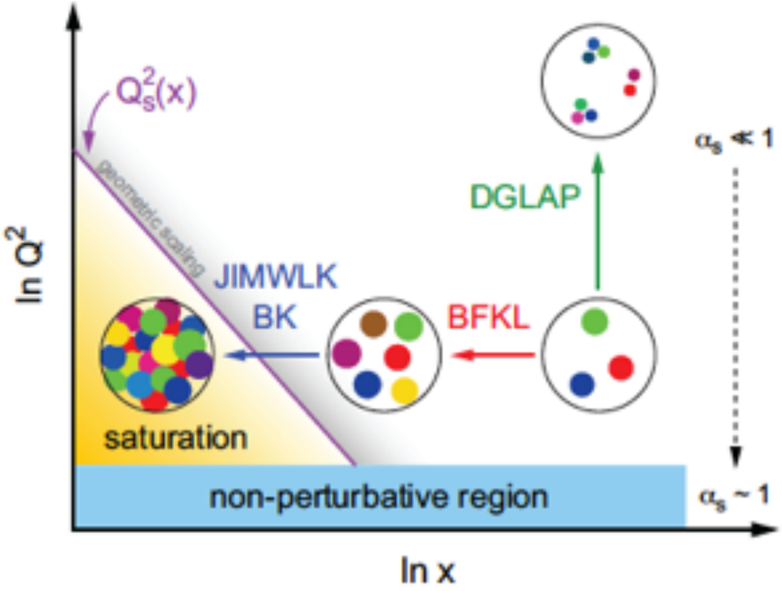
but what happens at small x
for not so large (fixed) Q^2 ?

"high-energy (Regge) limit of QCD"

- aim to resum terms ≈ $\alpha_s \log(1/x)$
- Balitsky-Fadin-Kuraev-Lipatov (**BFKL**) equation: evolves in x not Q^2
- BFKL predicts a power-like growth $xg(x, Q^2) \sim (1/x)^{\alpha_P - 1}$

much faster than in DGLAP

gluon occupancy



- DGLAP predicts an increase of gluons at small x but proton becomes more dilute as Q^2 increases

transverse size of partons ≈ 1/Q

but what happens at small x for not so large (fixed) **Q^2 ?**

"high-energy (Regge) limit of QCD"

- aim to resum terms ≈ α_s log(1/x)
- Balitsky-Fadin-Kuraev-Lipatov (**BFKL**) equation: evolves in x not Q^2
- BFKL predicts a power-like growth $xg(x, Q^2) \sim (1/x)^{\alpha_P - 1}$

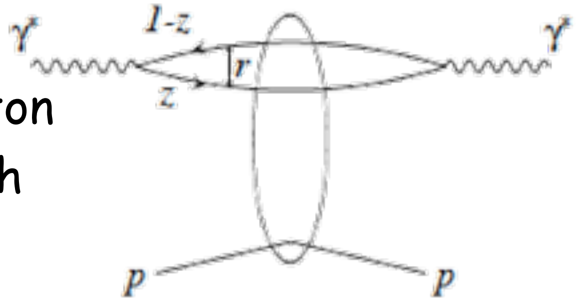
much faster than in DGLAP

BIG problem

- proton quickly fills up with gluons (transverse size now fixed !)
- hadronic cross sections violate ln^{2}s bound (Froissart-Martin) and grow like a power

color dipole model

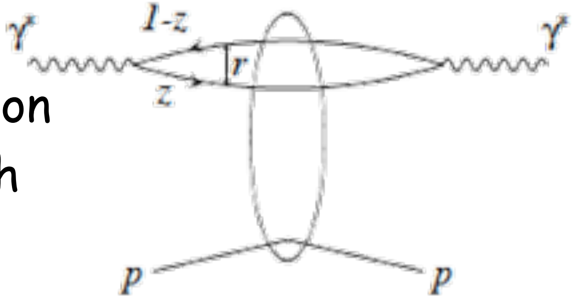
make progress by viewing, e.g., DIS from a "different angle"



DIS in the **proton rest frame** can be viewed as the photon splitting into a quark-antiquark pair ("**color dipole**") which scatters off the proton (= "slow" gluon field)

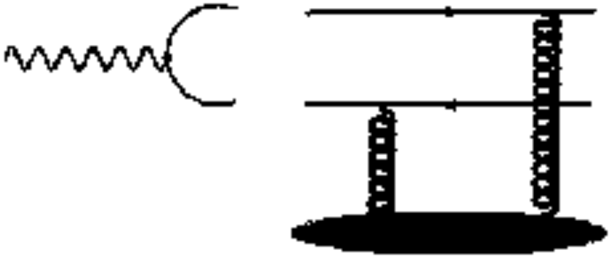
color dipole model

make progress by viewing, e.g., DIS from a “different angle”



DIS in the **proton rest frame** can be viewed as the photon splitting into a quark-antiquark pair (“**color dipole**”) which scatters off the proton (= “slow” gluon field)

- **factorization** now in terms of

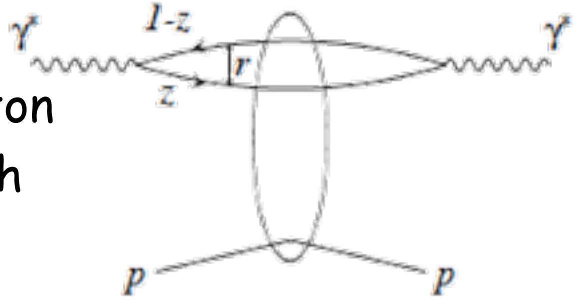


= probability of photon fluctuating into qq-pair ⊗ probability of dipole scattering on the target

QED QCD

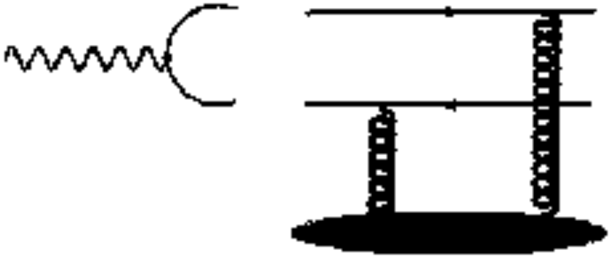
color dipole model

make progress by viewing, e.g., DIS from a “different angle”



DIS in the **proton rest frame** can be viewed as the photon splitting into a quark-antiquark pair (“**color dipole**”) which scatters off the proton (= “slow” gluon field)

- **factorization** now in terms of



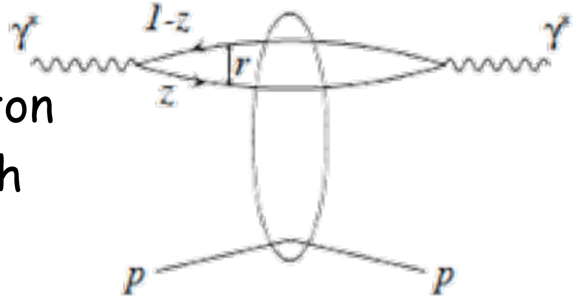
= **probability of photon fluctuating into qq-pair** ⊗ **probability of dipole scattering on the target**

QED **QCD**

- introduces **dipole-nucleon scattering amplitude N** as fund. building block
- energy dependence of N described by Balitsky-Kovchegov equation

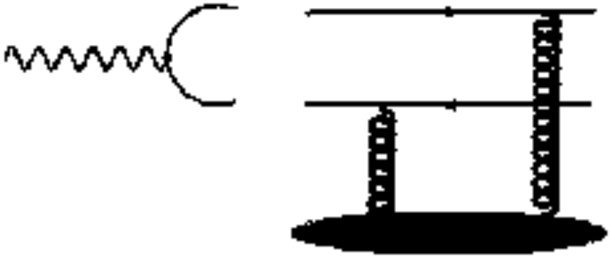
color dipole model

make progress by viewing, e.g., DIS from a “different angle”



DIS in the **proton rest frame** can be viewed as the photon splitting into a quark-antiquark pair (“**color dipole**”) which scatters off the proton (= “slow” gluon field)

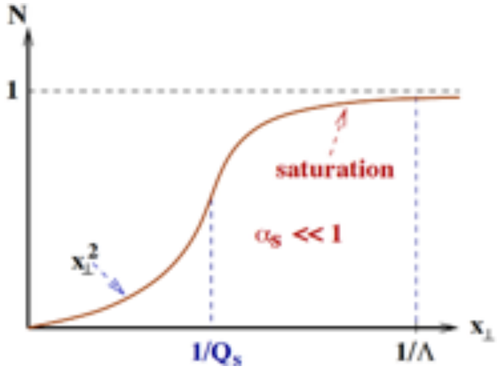
- **factorization** now in terms of



= **probability of photon fluctuating into qq-pair** ⊗ **probability of dipole scattering on the target**

QED **QCD**

- introduces **dipole-nucleon scattering amplitude N** as fund. building block
- energy dependence of N described by Balitsky-Kovchegov equation
  - **non-linear** -> includes multiple scatterings for unitarization
  - generates saturation scale Q_s
  - suited to treat collective phenomena (shadowing, diffration)
  - impact parameter dependence



4-4

when N^{x}LO is not enough: all order resummations

when a N^{x}LO calculation is not good enough

observation: fixed N^{x}LO order QCD calculations are not necessarily reliable
this often happens at low energy fixed-target experiments
and can be an issue also at colliders, even the LHC

reason: structure of the perturbative series and IR cancellation

at partonic threshold / near exclusive boundary:

- just enough energy to produce, e.g., high-p_T parton
- "inhibited" radiation (general phenomenon for gauge theories)

when a N^{x}LO calculation is not good enough

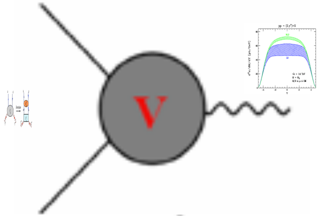
observation: fixed N^{x}LO order QCD calculations are not necessarily reliable
this often happens at low energy fixed-target experiments
and can be an issue also at colliders, even the LHC

reason: structure of the perturbative series and IR cancellation

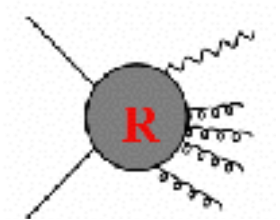
at partonic threshold / near exclusive boundary:

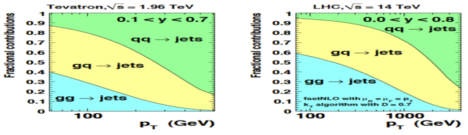
- just enough energy to produce, e.g., high-p_T parton
- "inhibited" radiation (general phenomenon for gauge theories)

simple example:
Drell-Yan process



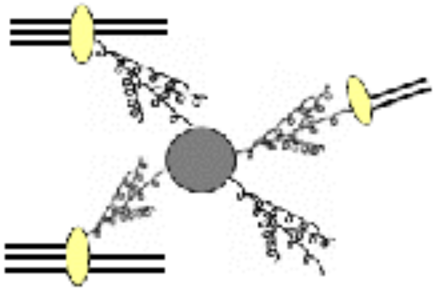
$$z \equiv \frac{Q^2}{\hat{s}} = 1$$





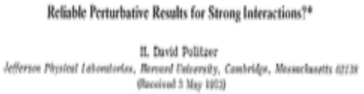
"imbalance" of real and virtual contributions: **IR cancellation leaves large log's**

all order structure of partonic cross sections



let's consider pp scattering:

logarithms related to
partonic threshold



Reliable Perturbative Results for Strong Interactions?*

H. David Politzer

Jefferson Physical Laboratories, Harvard University, Cambridge, Massachusetts 02138

(Received 3 May 1973)

general structure of partonic cross sections at the kth order:

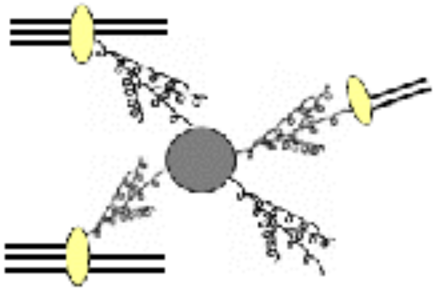
$$p_T^3 \frac{d\hat{\sigma}_{ab}}{dp_T} = p_T^3 \frac{d\hat{\sigma}_{ab}^{\mathrm{Born}}}{dp_T} \Bigg[1 + \underbrace{\mathcal{A}_1 \, \alpha_s \ln^2\left(1-\hat{x}_T^2\right) + \mathcal{B}_1 \, \alpha_s \ln\left(1-\hat{x}_T^2\right)}_{\text{NLO}}$$

$$+ \ldots + \mathcal{A}_k \, \alpha_s^k \ln^{2k}\left(1-\hat{x}_T^2\right) + \ldots \Bigg] + \ldots$$

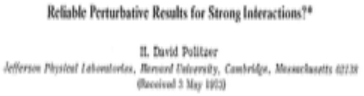
"threshold logarithms"

all order structure of partonic cross sections

let's consider pp scattering:



logarithms related to
partonic threshold



Reliable Perturbative Results for Strong Interactions?*

H. David Politzer

Jefferson Physical Laboratories, Harvard University, Cambridge, Massachusetts 02138

(Received 3 May 1973)

general structure of partonic cross sections at the k^th order:

$$p_T^3 \frac{d\hat{\sigma}_{ab}}{dp_T} \quad = \quad p_T^3 \frac{d\hat{\sigma}_{ab}^{\text{Born}}}{dp_T} \left[1 \; + \underbrace{\mathcal{A}_1 \, \alpha_s \, \ln^2 \left(1 - \hat{x}_T^2\right) \; + \mathcal{B}_1 \, \alpha_s \, \ln \left(1 - \hat{x}_T^2\right)}_{\text{NLO}} \right.$$

$$\left. + \ldots + \; \mathcal{A}_k \, \alpha_s^k \, \ln^{2k} \left(1 - \hat{x}_T^2\right) \; + \; \ldots \right] \; + \; \ldots$$

"threshold logarithms"

where relevant? … convolution with steeply falling parton luminosity L_{ab}:

$$d\sigma \propto \sum_{a,b} \int_\tau^1 \frac{dz}{z} \mathcal{L}_{ab}\left(\frac{\tau}{z}\right) d\hat{\sigma}_{ab}(z)$$

z = 1 emphasized,
in particular as τ → 1

large at small τ/z

→ important for fixed target phenomenology: threshold region more relevant (large τ)

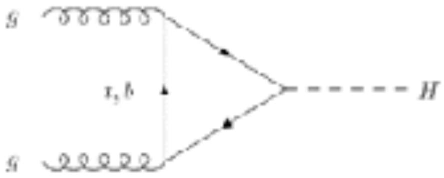
resummations – how are they done

$\alpha_s^k \ln^{2k}(1-\hat{x}_T^2)$ **may spoil perturbative series - unless taken into account to all orders**

resummation of such terms has reached a high level of sophistication

Sterman; Catani, Trentadue; Laenen, Oderda, Sterman;
Catani et al.; Sterman, Vogelsang; Kidonakis, Owens; ...

- worked out for most processes of interest at least to NLL
- well defined class of higher-order corrections
- often of much phenomenological relevance even for high mass particle production at the LHC



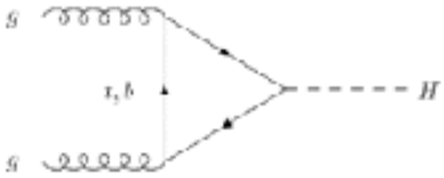
resummations – how are they done

$\alpha_s^k \ln^{2k}(1-\hat{x}_T^2)$ **may spoil perturbative series - unless taken into account to all orders**

resummation of such terms has reached a high level of sophistication

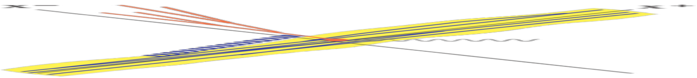
Sterman; Catani, Trentadue; Laenen, Oderda, Sterman; Catani et al.; Sterman, Vogelsang; Kidonakis, Owens; ...

- worked out for most processes of interest at least to NLL
- well defined class of higher-order corrections
- often of much phenomenological relevance even for high mass particle production at the LHC



resummation (= exponentiation) occurs when "right" moments are taken:

Mellin moments for threshold logs



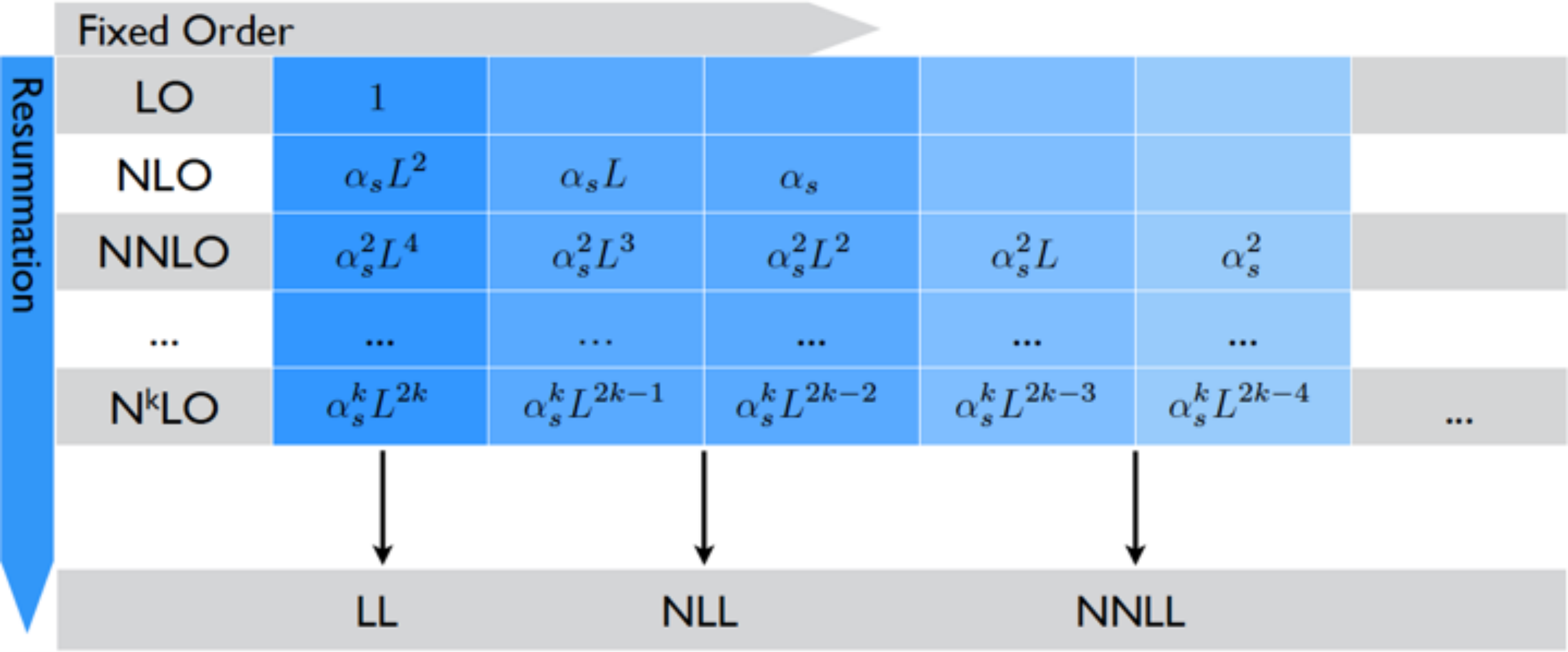
- fixed order calculations needed to determine "coefficients"
- the more orders are known, the more subleading logs can be resummed

resummations – terminology

Fixed Order

LO	1					
NLO	$\alpha_s L^2$	$\alpha_s L$	α_s			
NNLO	$\alpha_s^2 L^4$	$\alpha_s^2 L^3$	$\alpha_s^2 L^2$	$\alpha_s^2 L$	α_s^2	
...	...	$\cdots$	...	...	...	
N^{k}LO	$\alpha_s^k L^{2k}$	$\alpha_s^k L^{2k-1}$	$\alpha_s^k L^{2k-2}$	$\alpha_s^k L^{2k-3}$	$\alpha_s^k L^{2k-4}$	...

resummations – terminology



Fixed Order

Resummation

LO	1					
NLO	$\alpha_s L^2$	$\alpha_s L$	α_s			
NNLO	$\alpha_s^2 L^4$	$\alpha_s^2 L^3$	$\alpha_s^2 L^2$	$\alpha_s^2 L$	α_s^2	
...	...	$\cdots$	...	...	...	
N^kLO	$\alpha_s^k L^{2k}$	$\alpha_s^k L^{2k-1}$	$\alpha_s^k L^{2k-2}$	$\alpha_s^k L^{2k-3}$	$\alpha_s^k L^{2k-4}$	...

LL NLL NNLL

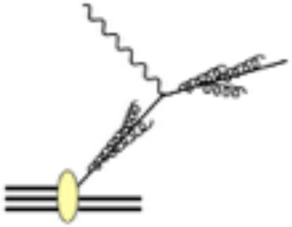
some leading log exponents

(assuming fixed α_s for simplicity)

color factors for soft gluon radiation matter:

unobserved parton Sudakov "suppression"

DIS



$$\exp\left[\frac{C_F\,\alpha_s}{\pi}\ \ln^2(N)\ -\ \frac{C_F\,\alpha_s}{\pi}\ \frac{1}{2}\ \ln^2(N)\right]$$

moderate enhancement, unless x_{Bj} large

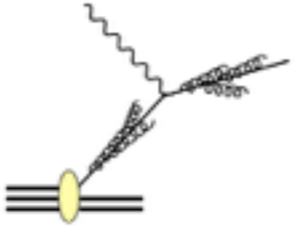
some leading log exponents

(assuming fixed α_s for simplicity)

color factors for soft gluon radiation matter:

unobserved parton Sudakov "suppression"

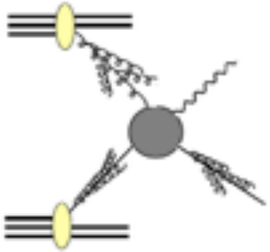
DIS



$$\exp\left[\frac{C_F\,\alpha_s}{\pi}\ln^2(N) - \frac{C_F\,\alpha_s}{\pi}\frac{1}{2}\ln^2(N)\right]$$

moderate enhancement, unless x_{Bj} large

prompt photons



$q\bar{q}\to\gamma g$ $$\exp\left[\left(C_F + C_F - \frac{1}{2}C_A\right)\frac{\alpha_s}{\pi}\ln^2(N)\right]$$

$qg\to\gamma q$ $$\exp\left[\left(C_F + C_A - \frac{1}{2}C_F\right)\frac{\alpha_s}{\pi}\ln^2(N)\right]$$

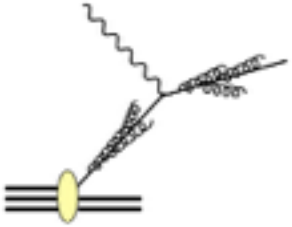
exponents positive ⟶ enhancement

some leading log exponents

(assuming fixed α_s for simplicity)

color factors for soft gluon radiation matter:

DIS

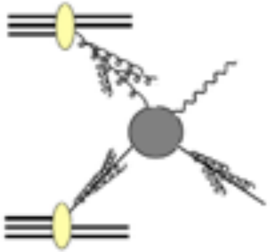


unobserved parton Sudakov "suppression"

$$\exp\left[\frac{C_F\,\alpha_s}{\pi}\ln^2(N)-\frac{C_F\,\alpha_s}{\pi}\frac{1}{2}\ln^2(N)\right]$$

moderate enhancement, unless x_{Bj} large

prompt photons

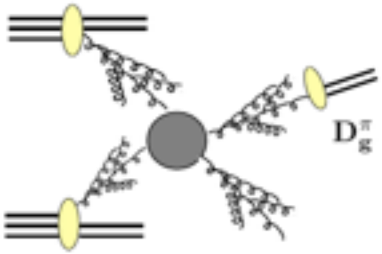


$q\bar{q}\to\gamma g$ $$\exp\left[\left(C_F+C_F-\frac{1}{2}C_A\right)\frac{\alpha_s}{\pi}\ln^2(N)\right]$$

$qg\to\gamma q$ $$\exp\left[\left(C_F+C_A-\frac{1}{2}C_F\right)\frac{\alpha_s}{\pi}\ln^2(N)\right]$$

exponents positive ⟶ enhancement

inclusive hadrons



e.g.

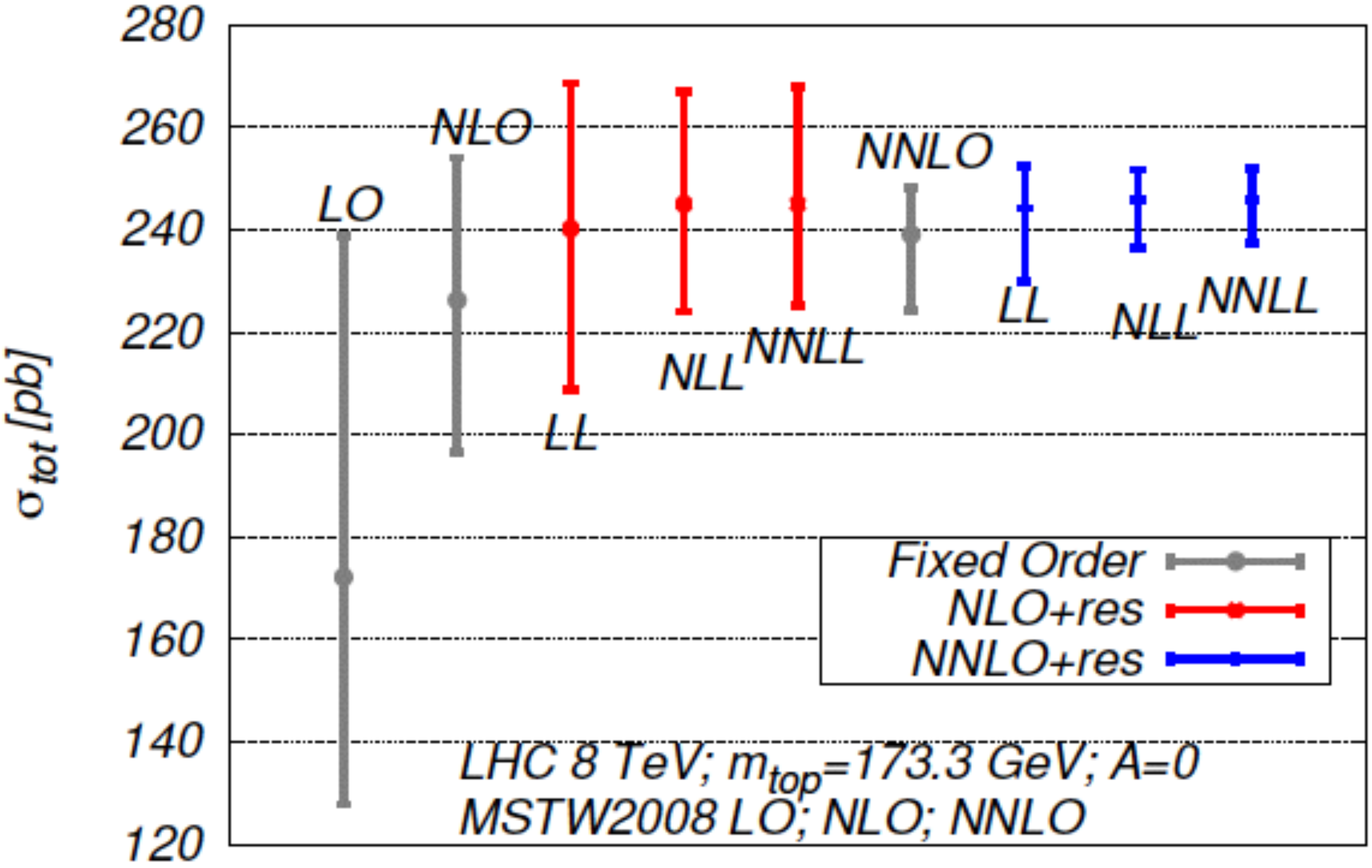
observed partons

unobserved

$gg\to gg$ $$\exp\left[\left(C_A+C_A+C_A-\frac{1}{2}C_A\right)\frac{\alpha_s}{\pi}\ln^2(N)\right]$$

expect much larger enhancement

one recent example: top-pair production



Czakon, Fiedler, Mitov, Rojo 1305.3892

resummations: window to non-perturbative regime

important technical issue:

resummations are sensitive to strong coupling regime

→ need some "minimal prescription" to avoid Landau pole (where $\alpha_s \to \infty$)

Catani, Mangano, Nason, Trentadue:

define resummed result such that series is asymptotic
w/o factorial growth associated with power corrections
[achieved by particular choice of Mellin contour]

→ power corrections may be added afterwards if pheno. needed
studying power corrections prior to resummations makes no sense

resummations: window to non-perturbative regime

important technical issue:

resummations are sensitive to strong coupling regime

→ need some “minimal prescription” to avoid Landau pole (where $\alpha_s \to \infty$)

Catani, Mangano, Nason, Trentadue:

define resummed result such that series is asymptotic
w/o factorial growth associated with power corrections
[achieved by particular choice of Mellin contour]

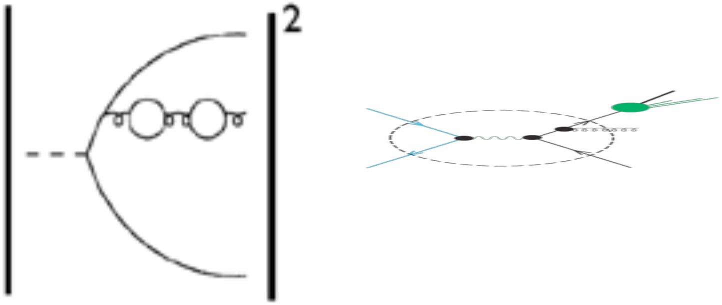
→ power corrections may be added afterwards if pheno. needed
studying power corrections prior to resummations makes no sense

window to the non-perturbative regime so far little explored

“convergence” of an asymptotic series

see, “Renormalons” review by M. Beneke, hep-ph/9807443

suppose we keep calculating
higher and higher orders



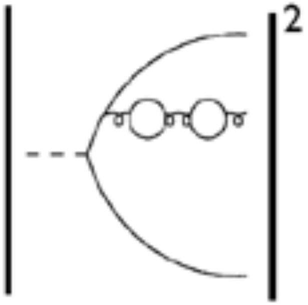
factorial
growth

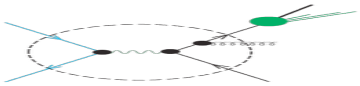
→ **big trouble**: the perturbative series is not convergent but only asymptotic

“convergence” of an asymptotic series

see, “Renormalons” review by M. Beneke, hep-ph/9807443

suppose we keep calculating higher and higher orders





factorial growth

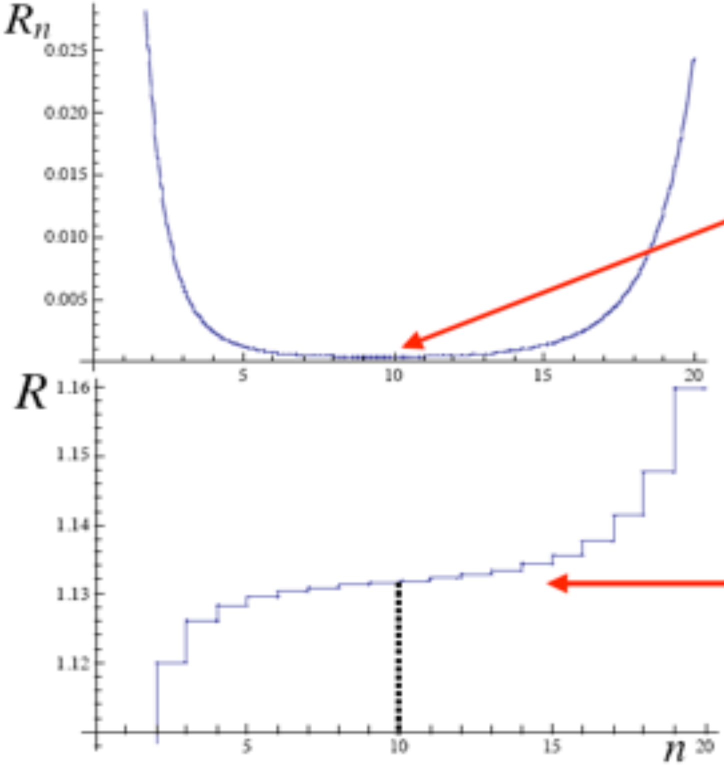
→ **big trouble**: the perturbative series is not convergent but only asymptotic

illustration:

try resumming

$$R = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_s^n n!$$

[with α_s= 0.1]



minimal term

$R_{min} = 1/\alpha_s$

asymptotic value of the sum:

$$R_{asymp} = \sum_{n=0}^{n_{min}} \alpha_s^n n!$$

taken from M. Cacciari

pQCD – non-perturbative bridge

- "renormalon ambiguity" ↔ incompleteness of pQCD series

  → we can only define what the sum of the perturbative series is like truncating it at the minimal term

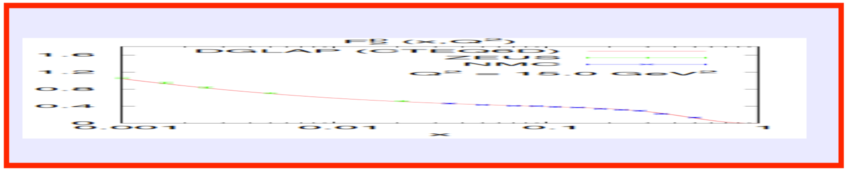
pQCD – non-perturbative bridge

- "renormalon ambiguity" ↔ incompleteness of pQCD series

  → we can only define what the sum of the perturbative series is like truncating it at the minimal term

- what is missing is a genuine ambiguity

  → eventually lifted by non-perturbative (NP) corrections:



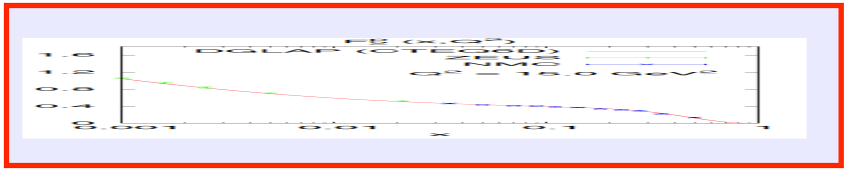
pQCD – non-perturbative bridge

- “renormalon ambiguity” ↔ incompleteness of pQCD series

  → we can only define what the sum of the perturbative series is like truncating it at the minimal term

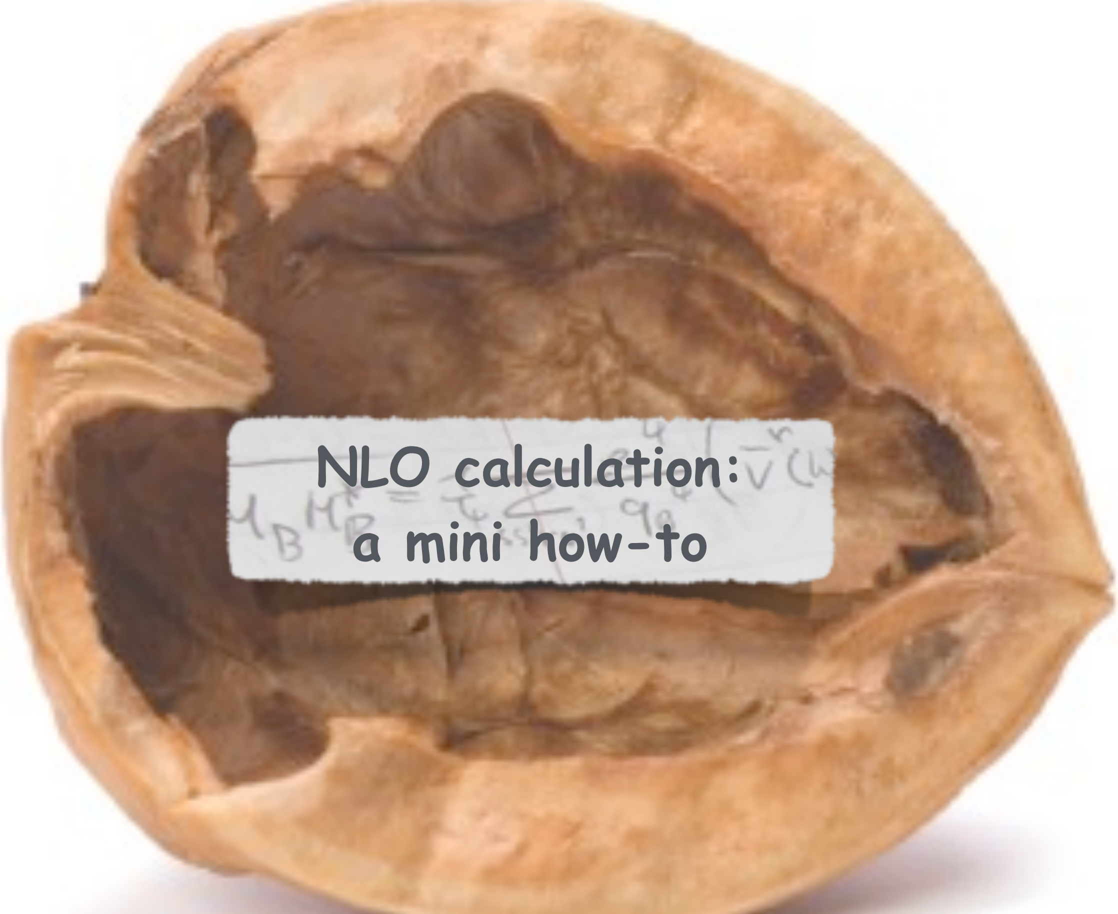
- what is missing is a genuine ambiguity

  → eventually lifted by non-perturbative (NP) corrections:



- QCD: NP corrections are power suppressed:

the value of p depends on the process and can sometimes be predicted

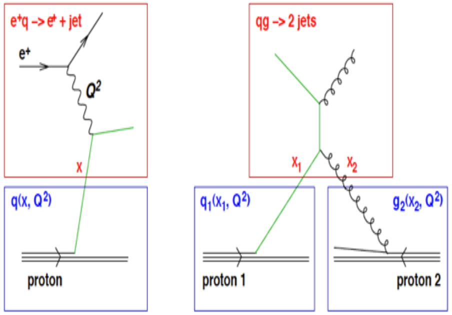


NLO calculation:
a mini how-to

4-5

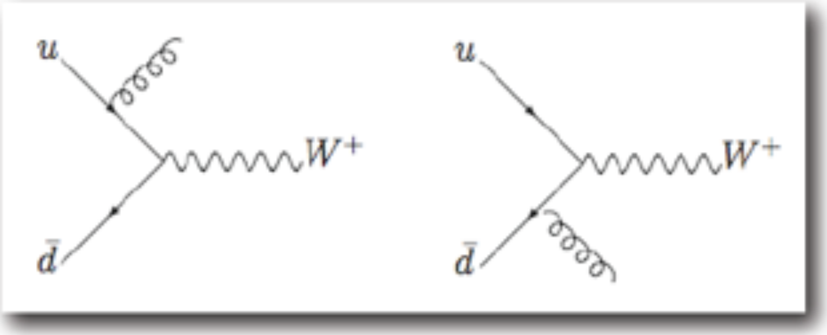
NLO calculation in a nutshell: Drell-Yan

at NLO we need to compute two contributions:



$\sigma_{ep} = \sigma_{eq} \otimes q$

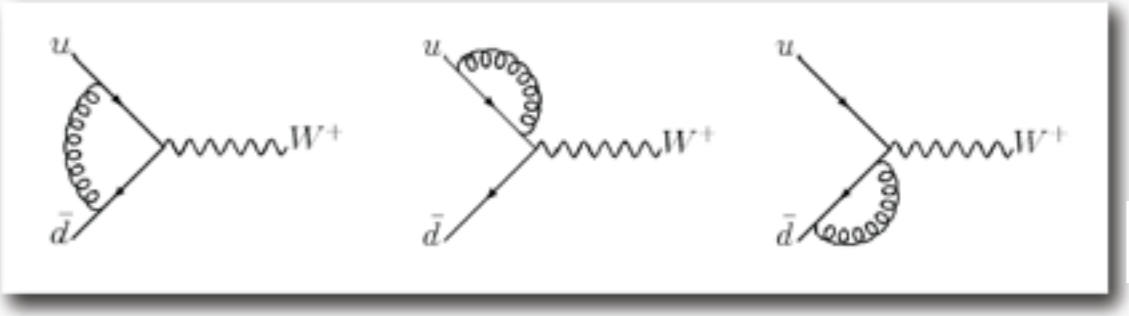
$\sigma_{pp\to 2\,jets} = \sigma_{qg\to 2\,jets} \otimes q_1 \otimes g_2 + \cdots$



real radiation corrections

one extra parton in final-state

$$|\mathcal{M}_{W+g}|^2 \sim (g_s)^2$$



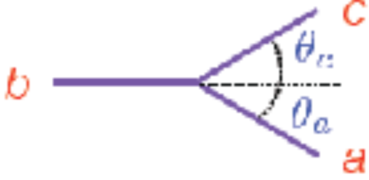
one-loop virtual corrections

only interference with Born contributes at NLO

$$(\mathcal{M}_{W,1-\mathrm{loop}} \times \mathcal{M}_{W,\mathrm{tree}}) \sim g_s^2 \times 1$$

NLO in a nutshell: real radiation

recall: collinear/soft kinematics



$$p_a - z p_b \ , p_c - (1 - z) p_b$$

$$\longrightarrow \ E_a - z E_b \ ; E_c - (1 - z) E_b$$

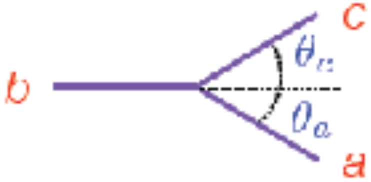
$$z\theta_a - (1 - z)\theta_c - 0 \quad \longrightarrow \ \theta_a - (1 - z)(\theta_a \quad \theta_c)$$

rewrite in terms of $\frac{d}{d\ln\mu}\begin{pmatrix} q(x,\mu) \\ g(x,\mu) \end{pmatrix} = \int_x^1 \frac{dz}{z} \begin{pmatrix} P_{qq} & P_{qg} \\ P_{gq} & P_{gg} \end{pmatrix}_{(z,\alpha_s)} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} q(x/z,\mu) \\ g(x/z),\mu) \end{pmatrix}$ $\begin{aligned} R_{u,d,s,c,b} &= R_{u,d,s,c} + 3 \times \left(-\frac{1}{3}\right)^2 \\ &= \frac{11}{3} \end{aligned}$

then $d\sigma_{(\ldots)ac} \sim \int |\mathcal{M}_{(\ldots)ac}|^2 E_a^2 dE_a \, \theta_a d\theta_a \sim d\sigma_{(\ldots)b} \left(\frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\right) \frac{dt}{t} P_{ab}(z) \, dz$

NLO in a nutshell: real radiation

recall: collinear/soft kinematics



$$p_a = z p_b \,, p_c = (1-z) p_b$$

$$\Longrightarrow \; E_a = z E_b \,; E_c = (1-z) E_b$$

$$z\theta_a - (1-z)\theta_c = 0 \quad \Longrightarrow \; \theta_a = (1-z)(\theta_a + \theta_c)$$

rewrite in terms of $\frac{d}{d\ln\mu}\begin{pmatrix} q(x,\mu) \\ g(x,\mu) \end{pmatrix} = \int_x^1 \frac{dz}{z} \begin{pmatrix} P_{qq} & P_{qg} \\ P_{gq} & P_{gg} \end{pmatrix}_{(z,\alpha_s)} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} q(x/z,\mu) \\ g(x/z),\mu) \end{pmatrix}$ $\begin{aligned} R_{u,d,s,c,b} &= R_{u,d,s,c} + 3 \times \left(-\frac{1}{3}\right)^2 \\ &= \frac{11}{3} \end{aligned}$

then $\quad d\sigma_{(\ldots)ac} \sim \int |\mathcal{M}_{(\ldots)ac}|^2 E_a^2 dE_a \, \theta_a d\theta_a \sim d\sigma_{(\ldots)b} \left(\frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\right) \frac{dt}{t} P_{ab}(z)\, dz$

since we cannot calculate with infinities we need to regularize them:

this time we choose **dimensional regularization** (i.e. work in d=4-2ε dimensions)

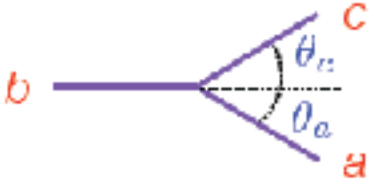
$$E_a^2 dE_a \, \theta_a d\theta_a \to E_a^{2-2\epsilon} dE_a \, \theta_a^{1-2\epsilon} d\theta_a = E_a^2 dE_a \, \theta_a d\theta_a \, z^{-\epsilon}(1-z)^{-\epsilon}\, t^{-\epsilon}$$

and obtain

$$d\sigma^{4-2\epsilon}_{(\ldots)ac} = d\sigma_{(\ldots)b} \left(\frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\right) \frac{dt}{t^{1+\epsilon}} P_{ab}(z) z^{-\epsilon}(1-z)^{-\epsilon}\, dz$$

NLO in a nutshell: real radiation

recall: collinear/soft kinematics



$$p_a = z p_b \,, p_c = (1-z) p_b$$

$$\longrightarrow \; E_a = z E_b \,; E_c = (1-z) E_b$$

$$z\theta_a - (1-z)\theta_c = 0 \qquad \longrightarrow \; \theta_a = (1-z)(\theta_a - \theta_c)$$

rewrite in terms of $\frac{d}{d\ln\mu}\begin{pmatrix} q(x,\mu) \\ g(x,\mu) \end{pmatrix} = \int_x^1 \frac{dz}{z} \begin{pmatrix} P_{qq} & P_{qg} \\ P_{gq} & P_{gg} \end{pmatrix}_{(z,\alpha_s)} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} q(x/z,\mu) \\ g(x/z),\mu) \end{pmatrix}$ $\begin{aligned} R_{u,d,s,c,b} &= R_{u,d,s,c} + 3 \times \left(-\frac{1}{3}\right)^2 \\ &= \frac{11}{3} \end{aligned}$

then $d\sigma_{(\ldots)ac} \sim \int |\mathcal{M}_{(\ldots)ac}|^2 E_a^2 dE_a \, \theta_a d\theta_a \sim d\sigma_{(\ldots)b} \left(\frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\right) \frac{dt}{t} P_{ab}(z) \, dz$

since we cannot calculate with infinities we need to regularize them:

this time we choose **dimensional regularization** (i.e. work in d=4-2ε dimensions)

$$E_a^2 dE_a \, \theta_a d\theta_a \rightarrow E_a^{2-2\epsilon} dE_a \, \theta_a^{1-2\epsilon} d\theta_a = E_a^2 dE_a \, \theta_a d\theta_a \, z^{-\epsilon} (1-z)^{-\epsilon} \, t^{-\epsilon}$$

and obtain

familiar splitting function accompanying IR term

$$d\sigma_{(\ldots)ac}^{4-2\epsilon} = d\sigma_{(\ldots)b} \left(\frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\right) \frac{dt}{t^{1+\epsilon}} \boxed{P_{ab}(z)} z^{-\epsilon} (1-z)^{-\epsilon} \, dz$$

integrals now finite

NLO in a nutshell: poles

we can now see how the singularities are regularized in d dimensions

$$d\sigma^{4-2\epsilon}_{(\ldots)ac} = d\sigma_{(\ldots)b}\left(\frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\right)\frac{dt}{t^{1+\epsilon}}P_{ab}(z)z^{-\epsilon}(1-z)^{-\epsilon}\,dz$$

- **collinear pole** $\int \frac{dt}{t^{1+\epsilon}} \to \frac{1}{\epsilon}$

recall: such a factor is present in P_{qq} (and P_{gg})

- **soft pole** $\int dz(1-z)^{-\epsilon}\left(\frac{1}{1-z}\right) \to \frac{1}{\epsilon}$

NLO in a nutshell: poles

we can now see how the singularities are regularized in d dimensions

$$d\sigma^{4-2\epsilon}_{(\dots)ac} = d\sigma_{(\dots)b} \left(\frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\right) \frac{dt}{t^{1+\epsilon}} P_{ab}(z) z^{-\epsilon}(1-z)^{-\epsilon}\, dz$$

- **collinear pole** $\int \frac{dt}{t^{1+\epsilon}} \to \frac{1}{\epsilon}$

recall: such a factor is present in P_{qq} (and P_{gg})

- **soft pole** $\int dz(1-z)^{-\epsilon}\left(\frac{1}{1-z}\right) \to \frac{1}{\epsilon}$

putting all together one obtains the following (general) structure

$$d\sigma_{W+g} = \left(\frac{2}{\epsilon^2} + \frac{3}{\epsilon} - \frac{2}{\epsilon} P_{qq} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^0)\right) d\sigma_{W,\text{tree}}$$

+ finite terms

NLO in a nutshell: poles

we can now see how the singularities are regularized in d dimensions

$$d\sigma^{4-2\epsilon}_{(\ldots)ac} = d\sigma_{(\ldots)b}\left(\frac{\alpha_s}{2\pi}\right)\frac{dt}{t^{1+\epsilon}}P_{ab}(z)z^{-\epsilon}(1-z)^{-\epsilon}\,dz$$

- **collinear pole** $\int \frac{dt}{t^{1+\epsilon}} \to \frac{1}{\epsilon}$

- **soft pole** $\int dz(1-z)^{-\epsilon}\left(\frac{1}{1-z}\right) \to \frac{1}{\epsilon}$

recall: such a factor is present in P_{qq} (and P_{gg})

putting all together one obtains the following (general) structure

$$d\sigma_{W+g} = \left(\frac{2}{\epsilon^2}+\frac{3}{\epsilon}-\frac{2}{\epsilon}P_{qq}+\mathcal{O}(\epsilon^0)\right)d\sigma_{W,\text{tree}}$$

+ finite terms

IR poles will cancel in sum with virtual corrections

needs to be absorbed into bare PDFs by factorization

NLO in a nutshell: virtual corrections

only one loop diagram to consider at NLO
(selfenergy on massless external lines zero in d dimensions)

obtain for amplitude:

$$\int \frac{d^{4-2\epsilon}\ell \quad \mathcal{N}}{\ell^2(\ell+p_{\bar{d}})^2(\ell+p_{\bar{d}}+p_u)^2}$$

with some complicated Dirac structure in numerator

$$\mathcal{N} = [\bar{u}(p_{\bar{d}})\gamma^\alpha \not{\ell}\gamma^\mu(\not{\ell}+\not{p}_{\bar{d}}+\not{p}_u)\gamma_\alpha u(p_u)]\, V_\mu(p_W)$$

NLO in a nutshell: virtual corrections

only one loop diagram to consider at NLO

(selfenergy on massless external lines zero in d dimensions)

obtain for amplitude:

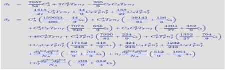
$$\int \frac{d^{4-2\epsilon}\ell \quad \mathcal{N}}{\ell^2(\ell+p_{\bar{d}})^2(\ell+p_{\bar{d}}+p_u)^2}$$

with some complicated Dirac structure in numerator

$$\mathcal{N} = [\bar{u}(p_{\bar{d}})\gamma^\alpha \not{\ell}\gamma^\mu(\not{\ell}+\not{p}_{\bar{d}}+\not{p}_u)\gamma_\alpha u(p_u)]\, V_\mu(p_W)$$

inspect denominator:

$$\ell^2(\ell+p_{\bar{d}})^2(\ell+p_{\bar{d}}+p_u)^2 \xrightarrow{\text{can shift momenta}} \ell^2(\ell-p_{\bar{d}})^2(\ell+p_u)^2$$



- soft singularity for l -> 0
- singularities for l collinear to quark lines

regularize again in d dimensions

NLO in a nutshell: loop integration

can decompose Dirac structure into given set of simpler scalar integrals
(**Passarino Veltman decomposition**)

then: $$\frac{1}{\ell^2(\ell+p_{\bar{d}})^2(\ell+p_{\bar{d}}+p_u)^2}$$

NLO in a nutshell: loop integration

can decompose Dirac structure into given set of simpler scalar integrals
(**Passarino Veltman decomposition**)

then:

$$\frac{1}{\ell^2(\ell+p_{\bar{d}})^2(\ell+p_{\bar{d}}+p_u)^2}$$

$$= 2\int_0^1 dx_1 \int_0^1 dx_2 \int_0^1 dx_3 \, \frac{\delta(x_1+x_2+x_3-1)}{\left[x_1\ell^2+x_2(\ell+p_{\bar{d}})^2+x_3(\ell+p_{\bar{d}}+p_u)^2\right]^3}$$

need to combine different terms in denominator
with help of **Feynman parameter integrals**

NLO in a nutshell: loop integration

can decompose Dirac structure into given set of simpler scalar integrals
(**Passarino Veltman decomposition**)

then:

$$\frac{1}{\ell^2(\ell+p_{\bar{d}})^2(\ell+p_{\bar{d}}+p_u)^2}$$

need to combine different terms in denominator with help of **Feynman parameter integrals**

$$= 2\boxed{\int_0^1 dx_1 \int_0^1 dx_2 \int_0^1 dx_3} \frac{\delta(x_1+x_2+x_3-1)}{\left[x_1\ell^2 + x_2(\ell+p_{\bar{d}})^2 + x_3(\ell+p_{\bar{d}}+p_u)^2\right]^3}$$

$$F_2^n(x) = x\left(\frac{1}{9}d_n(x) + \frac{4}{9}u_n(x)\right) = x\left(\frac{4}{9}d_p(x) + \frac{1}{9}u_p(x)\right)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \left.\frac{d^2\hat{\sigma}}{dx dQ^2}\right|_{F_2} &\equiv \hat{F}_2^q \\ &= e_q^2 x \left[\delta(1-x) + \frac{\alpha_s(\mu_r)}{4\pi}\left[P_{qq}(x)\ln\frac{Q^2}{m_q^2} + C_2^q(x)\right]\right] \end{aligned}$$

this can be evaluated using:

$$\int \frac{d^d L}{(2\pi)^d} \frac{1}{(L^2-\Delta)^n} = i\frac{(-1)^n}{(4\pi)^{d/2}} \frac{\Gamma\left(n-\frac{d}{2}\right)}{\Gamma(n)} \Delta^{d/2-n}$$

NLO in a nutshell: loop integration

can decompose Dirac structure into given set of simpler scalar integrals
(**Passarino Veltman decomposition**)

then:
$$\frac{1}{\ell^2(\ell+p_{\bar{d}})^2(\ell+p_{\bar{d}}+p_u)^2}$$

need to combine different terms in denominator
with help of **Feynman parameter integrals**

$$= 2\int_0^1 dx_1 \int_0^1 dx_2 \int_0^1 dx_3 \frac{\delta(x_1+x_2+x_3-1)}{\left[x_1\ell^2+x_2(\ell+p_{\bar{d}})^2+x_3(\ell+p_{\bar{d}}+p_u)^2\right]^3}$$

$$F_2^n(x) = x\left(\frac{1}{9}d_n(x)+\frac{4}{9}u_n(x)\right) = x\left(\frac{4}{9}d_p(x)+\frac{1}{9}u_p(x)\right)$$

where
$$\left.\frac{d^2\hat{\sigma}}{dx dQ^2}\right|_{F_2} \equiv \hat{F}_2^q$$
$$= e_q^2 x\left[\delta(1-x)+\frac{\alpha_s(\mu_r)}{4\pi}\left[P_{qq}(x)\ln\frac{Q^2}{m_q^2}+C_2^q(x)\right]\right]$$

this can be evaluated using:
$$\int\frac{d^dL}{(2\pi)^d}\frac{1}{(L^2-\Delta)^n} = i\frac{(-1)^n}{(4\pi)^{d/2}}\frac{\Gamma\left(n-\frac{d}{2}\right)}{\Gamma(n)}\Delta^{d/2-n}$$

and one obtains:
$$\int_0^1 dx_1\int_0^{1-x_1} dx_3\,(-2x_1x_3\,p_u\cdot p_{\bar{d}})^{-1-\epsilon} = (-2p_u\cdot p_{\bar{d}})^{-1-\epsilon}\int_0^1 dx_1\,x_1^{-1-\epsilon}\left(-\frac{1}{\epsilon}\right)x_1^{-\epsilon}$$

$$= (-2p_u\cdot p_{\bar{d}})^{-1-\epsilon}\left(-\frac{1}{\epsilon}\right)\frac{\Gamma(-\epsilon)\Gamma(1-\epsilon)}{\Gamma(1-2\epsilon)} = (-2p_u\cdot p_{\bar{d}})^{-1-\epsilon}\left(\frac{1}{\epsilon^2}\right)\frac{\Gamma^2(1-\epsilon)}{\Gamma(1-2\epsilon)}$$

IR singularity

NLO in a nutshell: final result

once all scalar integrals are computed and put together, find:

$$d\sigma_{W,1-\text{loop}} = \left(-\frac{2}{\epsilon^2} - \frac{3}{\epsilon} + \text{finite} \right) d\sigma_{W,\text{tree}}$$

NLO in a nutshell: final result

once all scalar integrals are computed and put together, find:

$$d\sigma_{W,1-\text{loop}} = \left(-\frac{2}{\epsilon^2} - \frac{3}{\epsilon} + \text{finite} \right) d\sigma_{W,\text{tree}}$$

which cancels all the IR poles in

recall:
factorized into PDFs

$$d\sigma_{W+g} = \left(\frac{2}{\epsilon^2} + \frac{3}{\epsilon} - \frac{2}{\epsilon} P_{qq} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^0) \right) d\sigma_{W,\text{tree}}$$

and one ends up with the finite NLO result (where d->4) ✓

NLO in a nutshell: final result

once all scalar integrals are computed and put together, find:

$$d\sigma_{W,1-\mathrm{loop}} = \left(-\frac{2}{\epsilon^2} - \frac{3}{\epsilon} + \mathrm{finite} \right) d\sigma_{W,\mathrm{tree}}$$

which cancels all the IR poles in

recall:
factorized into PDFs

$$d\sigma_{W+g} = \left(\frac{2}{\epsilon^2} + \frac{3}{\epsilon} - \frac{2}{\epsilon} P_{qq} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^0) \right) d\sigma_{W,\mathrm{tree}}$$

and one ends up with the finite NLO result (where d->4) ✓

this is one of the simplest loop calculations !

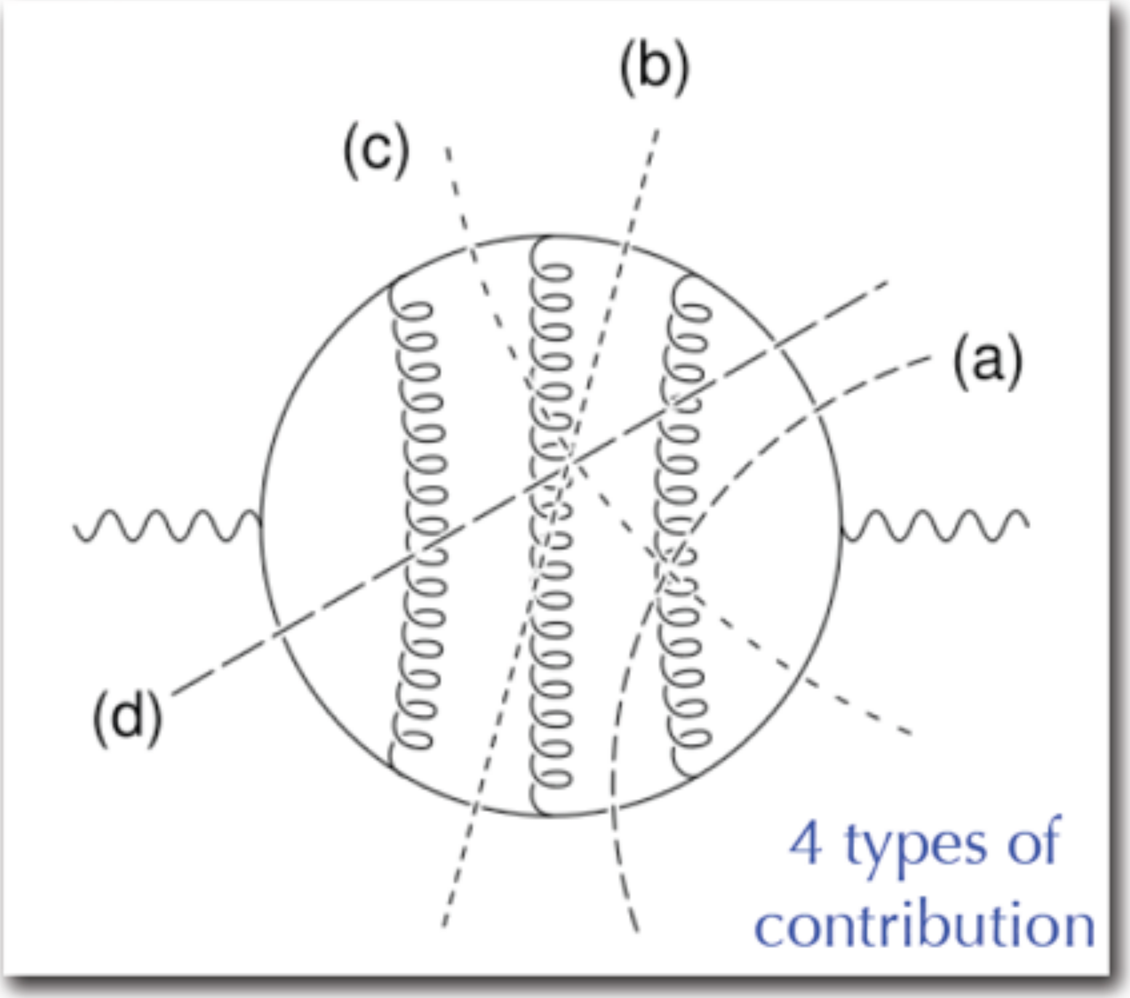
in general it is much more complicated

but the general ideas are the same

for high multiplicity final states one needs novel methods "beyond" Feynman diagrams

NNLO complexity

one can envision the contributions to a NNLO calculation by considering all possible cuts to a 3-loop diagram:



example:

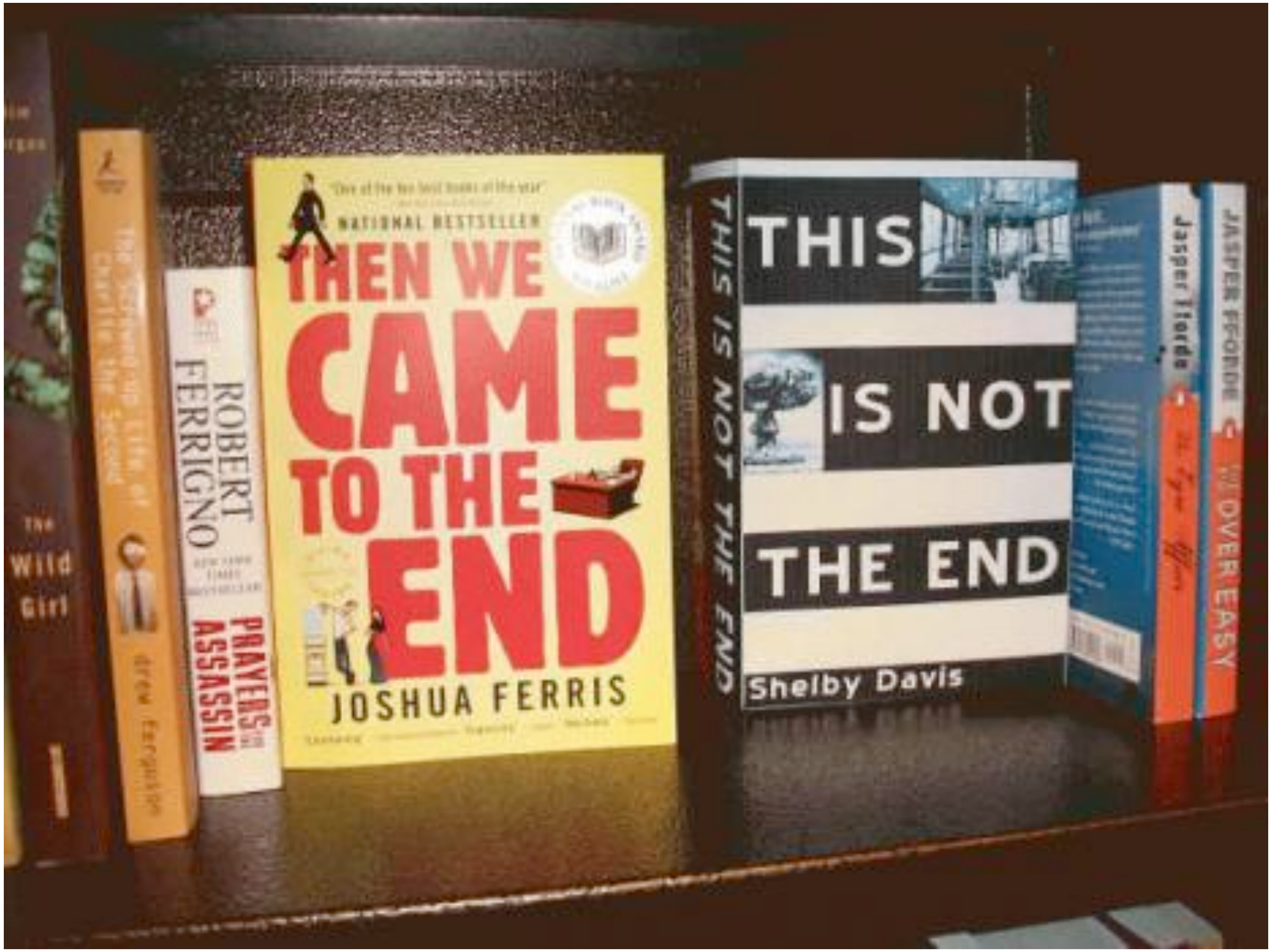
3 jet production in e^+e^-

(a) **two-loop virtual correction**

(b) **one-loop x one-loop**

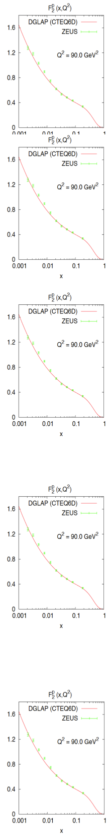
(c) **one-loop x real**
both with an extra parton

(d) **real**
with two extra partons



SUMMARY & OUTLOOK

QCD: the most perfect gauge theory (so far)



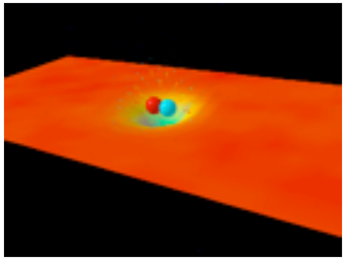
simple $\mathcal{L}$ but rich & complex phenomenology; few parameters

in principle complete up to the Planck scale
(issue: CP, axions?)

highly non-trivial ground state responsible
for all the structure in the visible universe

emergent phenomena: confinement,
chiral symmetry breaking, hadrons

confinement



D. Leinweber

non-perturbative
structure of hadrons

e.g. through lattice QCD

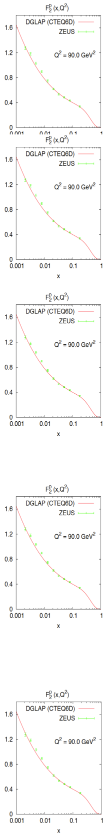
interplay between
High Energy and
Hadron Physics

asymptotic freedom

hard scattering
cross sections
and
renormalization group

perturbative methods

QCD: the most perfect gauge theory (so far)



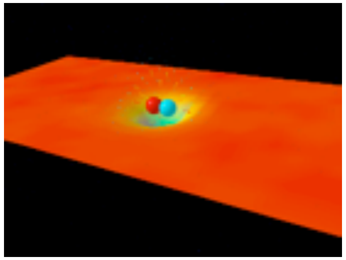
simple $\mathcal{L}$ but rich & complex phenomenology; few parameters

in principle complete up to the Planck scale
(issue: CP, axions?)

highly non-trivial ground state responsible
for all the structure in the visible universe

emergent phenomena: confinement,
chiral symmetry breaking, hadrons

confinement



D. Leinweber

non-perturbative
structure of hadrons

e.g. through lattice QCD

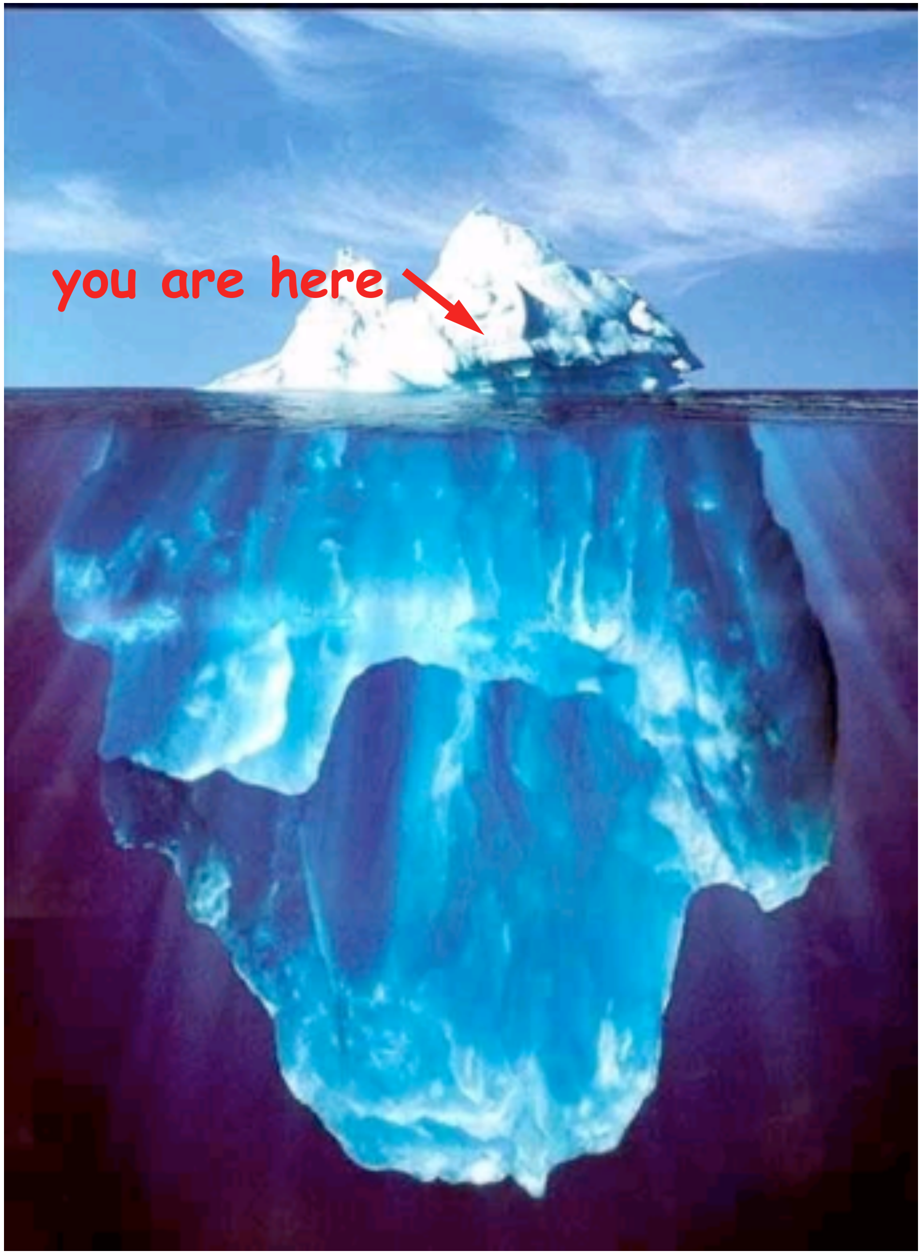
**interplay between
High Energy and
Hadron Physics**

asymptotic freedom

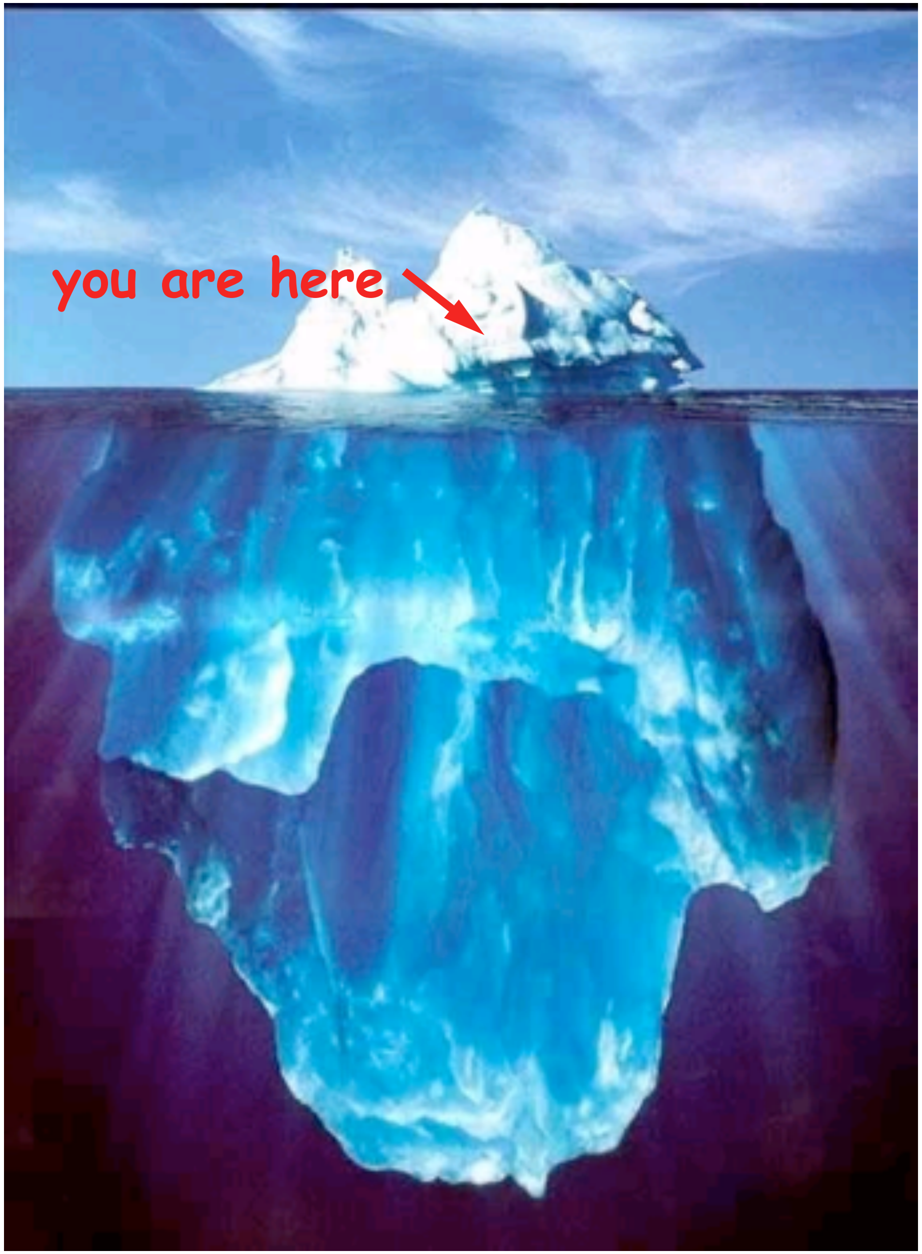
hard scattering
cross sections
and
renormalization group

perturbative methods

we have just explored the tip of the iceberg



we have just explored the
tip of the iceberg



enjoy the other lectures !